

A  
MIDDLE ENGLISH  
VOCABULARY

BY

*J. R. R. TOLKIEN*

# ABBREVIATIONS

- AFr.** Anglo-French.  
**allit.** alliterative; (in) alliterative verse, &c.  
**cf.** in etymologies indicates uncertain or indirect relation.  
**constr.** constructed with; construction.  
**Du.** Dutch.  
**E.; Mn.E.** (Modern) English.  
**E.D.D.** The English Dialect Dictionary.  
**Fr.** French.  
**Fris.** (Modern) Frisian (dialects).  
**from** is prefixed to etymologies when the word illustrated has additional suffixes, &c., not present in the etymon.  
**G.** German.  
**Goth.** Gothic.  
**Icel.** (Modern) Icelandic.  
**Kt.; OKt.** Kentish; Kentish dialect of Old English.  
**L.; Med.L.** Latin; Mediaeval Latin.  
**MDu.** Middle Dutch.  
**ME.** Middle English.  
**MHG.** Middle High German.  
**MLG.** Middle Low German.  
**N.E.D.** The Oxford (New) English Dictionary.  
**Nth.; ONth.** Northumbrian; Northumbrian dialect of Old English.  
**NWM.** North West Midland.  
**OE.** Old English.  
**OFr.** Old French.  
**OFris.** Old Frisian.  
**OHG.** Old High German.  
**OIr.** Old Irish.  
**ON.** Old Norse, especially Old Icelandic.  
**ONFr.** Northern dialects of Old French.  
**OS.** Old Saxon (Old Low German).  
**prec.** preceding word.  
**red.** reduced; reduction.  
**Swed.** Swedish.  
**WS; OWS.** West Saxon (dialect of Old English).  
 \* is prefixed where forms are theoretically reconstructed.  
 + between the elements shows that a compound or derivative is first recorded in Middle English.

FIRST EDITION 1922

REPRINTED 1924, 1925, 1929

1933, 1939, 1946, 1947, 1948, 1950, 1955, 1956

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN

## NOTE

THIS glossary does not aim at completeness, and it is not primarily a glossary of rare or 'hard' words. A good working knowledge of Middle English depends less on the possession of an abstruse vocabulary than on familiarity with the ordinary machinery of expression—with the precise forms and meanings that common words may assume; with the uses of such innocent-looking little words as the prepositions *of* and *for*; with idiomatic phrases, some fresh-minted and some worn thin, but all likely to recur again and again in an age whose authors took no pains to avoid usual or hackneyed turns of expression. These are the features of the older language which an English reader is predisposed to pass over, satisfied with a half-recognition: and space seldom permits of their adequate treatment in a compendious general dictionary or the word-list to a single text. So in making a glossary for use with a book itself designed to be a preparation for the reading of complete texts, I have given exceptionally full treatment to what may rightly be called the backbone of the language.

Brief indications of the etymology of each word are given, with references in difficult cases to the Oxford English Dictionary (*N.E.D.*). Apart from their usefulness as a basis for exercises in phonology and the analysis of vocabulary, these will serve to differentiate words distinct in origin which coincide in some of their forms or spellings. The Old English or Old French forms cited are those that best illustrate the Middle English; in consequence the Old English forms frequently differ from normal West-Saxon, and the Old French forms are especially those of the French current in England (Anglo-French is rarely specified). Old Norse words have usually been cited in the normal spelling (e.g. of Zoëga's *Old Icelandic Dictionary*). Accordingly, long vowels in Old Norse words are marked as in *bráðr*. In Old English words stable long vowels are marked as in *brād*; uncertain quantity or probable shortening in Old English times is marked as in *adrædd*; vowels that were lengthened in the Old English period (e.g. before *ld*, *mb*, *nd*) are marked as in *cāld*, *clīmban*, *bīndan*.

For the convenience of beginners the glossary is liberally supplied with cross references, and the prefixed Table summarizes the principal variations of form or spelling. Particular attention should be given to the following points of arrangement: (i) *ȝ* has a separate alphabetical place following *G*; cross-references to *gh* are not given; (ii) *ȝ* has a separate alphabetical place following *T*; variation between *ȝ* and *th* is disregarded, and initial *Th* is entered under *ȝ*; (iii) *U*, *V* are alternative forms of the same letter; variation between them is disregarded, and initial *U* is entered under *V*; (iv) *Y* initially has its usual place; but medial or final *Y* will be found in the alphabetical position of *I*.

J. R. R. T.

# PRINCIPAL VARIATIONS OF FORM OR SPELLING

1. **a** *varies with o* (before m, n); as land, lang, lamb—lond, long, lomb; man, name—(Western) mon, nome.
2. **a** (=  $\bar{a}$ ) *varies in Northern texts with* (i) ai, ay; as (a) fare, fare—fayre (b) layre—farest, fairest: (ii) *with Southern* o, oo; see 14.
3. **ai**, **ay** *varies with* (i) ei, ey; as mayntene—meyntene: (ii) **a**: see 2: (iii) o, oo; see 2.
4. **au** (before m, n) *varies with a* (chiefly in French words); as daunce—dance.
5. **be-**, *prefix varies with bi-*; as begynne—biginne.
6. **c** *varies with k*; as bac, court—bak, kort.
7. **des-**, *prefix varies with dis-*; as des-, disavauntage.
8. **e** (=  $\bar{e}$ ) *varies in Northern texts with* ei, ey; as wel(e)—weill, weyl; stele—steill. See 13, 20.
9. **ei**, **ey** *varies with* (i) ai, ay (cf. 3); as weie, wey(e)—way(e): (ii) *hence in Northern texts with a*; as strat-ly—streyte: (iii) *with e*; see 8.
10. **er** *varies with later ar*; as fer, hertely—far, hartely.
11. **f** *varies with u* (= v): (i) *initially (Southern)*; as fader—uader: (ii) *finally (Northern)*; as haf(e)—haue.
12. **ght** *varies with* ȝt, cht (Scottish), ht, st; as nyght—niȝt, nycht, nyht, seuenist.
13. **i** (vowel) *varies with y, passim*: **i**, **y** *varies with* (i) **e** in Northern texts; as hider, liuen, myddel—heder, leue, medill: (ii) *with e*, (South) Western **u**; as hul, fyrst—hell, uerst—hul, fuist.
14. **o**, **oo** (=  $\bar{o}$ ) *varies in Northern texts with* (i) **a**; as hot, hoot—hate: (ii) *hence also with ai* (see 2): (iii) *with oi, oy*; see next.
15. **o**, **oo** (=  $\bar{o}$ ) *varies in Northern texts with* (i) ou, u; as god, good—goud, gud(e): (ii) oi, oy; as none, noon—noyne.
16. (s)sch *varies with* (s)sh, ss; as schewe—shewe, ssewe; fle(s)sch—flessch.
17. **þ** *varies with th, passim*.
18. **u** (in au, eu, ou) *varies with w, passim*; see 21.
19. **u**, **v** (= u) *varies with o* (asp. before m, n); as sun(ne)—sonne; but—bot(e); see also 15.
20. **u**, **v** (=  $\bar{u}$ ) *varies in Western texts with* (i) **e**, **eo**; as erthe—(Western) eorþe, vrþe: (ii) *with i, y, e*; see 13.
21. **w** *varies medially with* gh, ȝ (u); as owen, own—oghne, oȝene, oune: *initially (Scottish) with v*; as woundit—voundit.
22. **y** (consonant) *varies initially with* ȝ; as ye—ȝe; *medially with i*, (i)gh, (i)ȝ; as say, se(i)gh, se(i)ȝe, saw.
23. *single consonant varies with double*; as sad—sadde.
24. *single vowel varies with double*; as breed—brede, breadth; wod—wood, mad.



# GLOSSARY

- A**, *pron.* he, XIII a 27, 47, 48; they, XIII a 13, b 22, 36, 39, 61, 64, 66. [Unaccented form of ME. *ha*. See Hare, Ham.]
- A**, *v. inf.* have, I 127. [Reduced unaccented form of *haue*; see Habbe(n).]
- A(n)**, *adj.* one, IV b 34; *indef. art.* a(n), I 22; VIII b 7, &c. See Ane, On(e).
- A(n)**, *prep.* on, in, &c. II 137, III *introd.*, 22, VIII a 43, XIII a 11, b 19, 34, &c.; *a blode*, with blood, XV g 16; *a nyghtes*, at night (OE. *on niht, nihtes*), VIII b 16; *a pre*, in three, XIII b 49 (see Ato, Atwynne); *a Goddes half*, for God's sake, XII b 80. [Weakened form of On, *q.v.*; *an* in III is possibly dialectal; *a* is used only before following consonant.] See Ane.
- Abandoune**, *v.* to abandon, resign, x 50. [OFr. *abandonner*.]
- Abasshed**, *pp.* perturbed, XVI 177 (note to XVI 59). [AFr. *abaiss-*; OFr. *e(s)bair, e(s)baiss-*.]
- Abate**, *v.* to lessen, XIV b 19; reduce, VIII a 209 (*imper. sg.*); *intr.* XVII 445; **Abatid** (*of*), *pp.* ceased, VII 104. [OFr. *abatire*.]
- Abedde**, *adv.* in bed, XII a 141. [OE. *on bedde*.] See Bedd(e).
- Abhomynable**, *adj.* abominable, XI b 90. [OFr. *abominable*.]
- Abide**, *Abide*, *Abide*, *v.* (i) *intr.* to wait, remain, stay, II 84, IX 197, XVII 531; tarry, II 348; *imper.* wait!, v 149; halt!, XVI 213; (ii) *trans.* to await, XVII 334; withstand, endure, XIV b 31; **Abode**, *pa. t.* XIV c 68, XVII 373; **Abyde**, *pp.* in *ys abyde*, has survived, XIII b 50. [OE. *ā-bīdan*.] See Bide.
- Abite**, *n.* outward appearance, XI b 99. [OFr. (*h*)*abit*.]
- Able**, *adj.* able, VI 239, XI b 92. [OFr. (*h*)*able*.] See Vnable.
- Abone**, *adv.* above, XVII 146. See Abone(n).
- Abosted**, *pa. t. sg.* threatened boastfully, VIII a 148. [ME. *a- + Boste*, *q. v.*]
- Aboue(n)**, **Abovin**, **Abuf**, *adv.* above, overhead, on top, v 149, VII 105, 135, IX 56, x 61; on the surface, VII 160; *prep.* above, higher than, XI b 182, XVII 83; *quasi-sb. in be at here aboue*, get the upper hand of them, XIII a 61. [OE. *\*on-bufan, abufan*.] See Abone.
- Aboueseyd**, *adj.* aforesaid, IX 307. [Prec. + *pp.* of Seie.]
- Aboute(n)**, **Abowte**, **About** (XIV a), (i) *adv.* about, round, on all sides, here and there, to and fro, I 233, v 165, VIII a 297, XI b 270, XII a 143, b 117, XIV a 15, XV i 3, XVII 303, 351, &c.; round about, VII 83, &c.; round it, II 359; *al aboute round*, all round about, XII a 79; (ii) *prep.* about, round, &c. (often following *n.* or *pron.*), I 54, II 274, 284, v 95, XIV b 68, &c.; on, XI b 236; in, XI b 293, 296; *about al*, in all directions, II 387; *aboute with for to (vn-hynde)*, XVI 7. [OE. *onbūtan, ābūtan*.]
- Abrod**, *adv.* out wide, XII a 176. [OE. *on + brād*.]
- Abuf**. See Aboue.
- Abugge**, *v.* to pay for (it), VIII a 75, 159. [OE. *ā-byrgan*.] See Bigge.
- Ac**, *conj.* but, II 56, III 34, VIII 67, &c. [OE. *ac*.]
- Acheue**, *v.* achieve, VI 115. [OFr. *acheuer*.] See Cheue.

# GLOSSARY

- Aacordandly**, *adv.* accordingly, IV b 33. [From pres. p. of *Acorde*.]
- Aacord(e)**, *Aacord*, *n.* agreement, VI 149, XI a 32; concurrence, united will, XVII 30; *made acorde of care and me*, associated me with, caused me to know, care, VI 11. [OFr. *acord(e)*.]
- Aaorde(n)**, *v. trans.* to reconcile, V 337; *to acorde me with*, to associate myself with, V 312; *intr.* agree, XI b 128, XII b 145, XIII b 52. [OFr. *acorder*.] See *Corden*.
- Aaountes**, *n. pl.* settlement of accounts, VIII a 83. [OFr. *acont*, *acunt*.]
- Aaosedo**. See *Axe(n)*.
- Actif**, *Actyf*, *adj.* active, VIII a 245, XI b 74, 102. [OFr. *actif*.]
- Aday**, *adv.* in *dyne aday*, eat at (mid-day) meal, VIII a 303. [OE. *on dæge*, by day.]
- Ademand**, *n.* loadstone (magnetic iron ore), IX 123, 125, &c. [OFr. *adema(u)nt*, L. *adamantem* (acc.), properly 'diamond'. The application to 'loadstone' was due to false association with L. *ad-amāre*. The mediaeval 'adamant' in consequence often combined the properties of diamond and loadstone.] See *Dyamand*.
- Admytte**, *v.* to admit XVII 551. [L. *admittere*.]
- Adoun**, *Adown*, *adv.* down, II 223, 435, VIII a 31, &c. [OE. *of-dūne*, *adūne*.] See *Doun(e)*.
- Adrad**, *pp.* afraid, XII b 133; **Adred**, XVII 201. [OE. *of-drædd*, *ofdrædd*, *pp.*] See *Drede(n)*.
- Adreynt**, *pp.* drowned, II 397. [OE. *ā-drencan*, *pp.* *ā-drenct*.]
- Adresed**, *pp.*; *therupon him hath adresed*, has fastened himself to it, XII b 85. See *Dresse*. [OFr. *adresser*.]
- Aduersouris**, *n. pl.* adversaries, X 144. [OFr. *adversier* with alteration of suffix.]
- Afelde**, *adv.* to the fields, VIII a 136, 283. [OE. *on felda*.] See *Feld(e)*.
- Aferd(e)**, *adj.* afraid, I 4, 67, 262, VIII a 115, XVII 316, &c. [OE. *ā-færed*.] See *Ferde*.
- Affaite**, *v.* train, tame, VIII a 32 (note). [OFr. *afait(e)er*.]
- Affecoyon**, *n.* affection, (worldly) desire, IV b 52, 71. [L. *affection-em* through OFr.]
- Af(t)erme**, *v.* affirm, IX 77, XI a 50; confirm, IX 305. [OFr. *afermer*.]
- Affie**, *v.* to have (faith in), XVI 29. [OFr. *afier*.]
- Afforcees (thame)**, *pres. pl. (refl.)* endeavour, IV b 20. [OFr. *s'afforcer*.]
- Affray**, *n.* fear, XII a 142. [OFr. *e(s)frai*.]
- Afine**, *adv.* to the end, II 277. [OFr. *a fin*.]
- Afore**, *adv.* beforehand, XVII 164. [OE. *æt-foran*.]
- Aforth**, *v.* to afford, VIII a 192. [OE. (late) *ge-forðian*, to manage.]
- Afright**, *pp.* *Not afright*, undeterred, XVII 541. [OE. *ā-fyrht*.]
- After** (-ir, -yr, -ur), *adv.* after, behind, II 378, VII 24, XVI 376, &c.; afterwards, then, VII 46, VIII a 5, &c.; *be the whiche . . . after*, in accordance with which (mixed Fr. and E. constr.), IX 302; *prep.* after, next to, I 215, XI b 27, &c.; according to, IX 220, 291, XI b 189, &c.; for (after *desire*, *ask*, &c.), VII 20, VIII a 291, XV b 5, XVI 242, &c.; *conj.* after, XVII 148. *After þan*, afterwards, II 597. [OE. *æfter*; *æfter þām*.]
- Afterward**, *Afterward(e)*, &c., *adv.* afterwards, II 164, IV b 59, XI b 147, &c.; *Afterward*, III 16, 35, 38, 48. [OE. *afterward* (Kt. *after*-).]
- Agayn(e)**, *Agane*, *adv.* back, again, IV b 83, XVI 11, XVII 180, 479, &c. See *Agayn*.
- Agaynes**, *prep.* against, IV b 18, 19. [Prec. + *adv.* -es.] See *Azeinea*.

# GLOSSARY

**Agaynste**, *prep.* against, XVI 280; *to luke a.*, to gaze on, XVI 92. [Extended from *prec.*]

**Agast**, *pp.* afraid, XIV c 51, XVII 184, 297; astonished, XVII 449. [*a-* + OE. *gæsted*, afflicted.] *See* Gastli.

**Age**, *n.* age, time of life, VI 52, XII *introd.*; mature age, IX 22; old age, VII 6, XIV c 106, &c. [OFr. *age*.]

**Agō**, *pp.* gone by, XII a 34. [OE. *ā-gān*.]

**Agrete**, *adv.* collectively, as a body, VI 200. [OE. *on* + *grēat*.]

**Agreued** (*for*), *pp.* weighed down (with), V 302; annoyed (by), I 88. [OFr. *agreuer*.]

**Ajayn**, *adv.* again, back, V 53, 257, 332; **Aje**, XIII a 8; **Ajein**, **Ajeyn**, I 230, VIII a 44, XII a 28, &c.; **Ajen**, IX 132; **Ojain**, II 141, 162. [OE. *ongēn*, *ongegn*.]

**Ajayn**, **Ajen**, **Ajein**, **Aye**, **Ojain**, *prep.* against, III 58, V 48, IX 19; towards (of time), II 497, XII b 18. [As *prec.*] *See* Agayn.

**Ajeines**, *prep.* against, contrary to, VIII a 309, 311, 315; **Ajenes**, XIII b 17; **Ajens**, I 261, 264, VIII b 78; **Ajenus**, XI a 29. [*Prec.* + *adv.* -es.] *See* Agaynes.

**Ajenst**, *prep.* against, IX 92, 315, XI b 43, 46, 97. [Extended from *prec.*] *See* Agaynste.

**Ajle3**, *adj.* without fear, V 267. [ON. *agi* + OE. -*lās*.] *See* Awe.

**A-hungrye**, *adj.* hungry, XVII 499. [*a-* + OE. *hungrig*.]

**Ai**, **Ay**, *adv.* always, ever, IV a 1, 14, VII 18, X 61, XV a 10, 17, &c.; *for ay*, for ever, XVII 26. [ON. *ei*.]

**Ay**, *n.* fear, in *for loue or ay*, in any event, II 571. [OE. *ege*.]

**Aye**. *See* Ajayn.

**Ayenbyte**, *n.* remorse. *See* III *introd.* [OE. *ongēn* + *bite*.]

**Ayere**, **Aire**, *n.* air, IV b 5, VII 107, 110. [OFr. *air*.]

**Aire**, *n.* heir, VIII b 62. [OFr. (*h*)*air*.]

**Ays**. *See* Esc.

**Aither**, **Ayper**, **Athir**, **Eyper**, *adj.* and *pron.* both, VII 65; either, V 112; *eyper oþer*, each other, XIII b 57; *athir oþir in*, one in the other, X 22. [OE. *ægher*, both; *ā(w)þer*, either.] *See* Euper.

**Ayther**, **Aper**, *conj.* or, VI 131; *ayther . . or*, either . . or, XVII 477. [As *prec.*] *See* Or<sup>2</sup>; Oþer, *conj.*

**Aywhere**, *adv.* on all sides, V 113. [OE. *æghwær*.]

**Aketh**, *pres. pl.* ache, VIII a 253 (*see* Wombe). [OE. *acan*.]

**Akyng**, *n.* aching, XI b 136.

**Al**, *adj.* all, I 120, II 114, III 6, &c.; **Alle**, I 19, &c.; *pl.* III 55, &c.; *al(l) a(n)*, a whole, VII 183, VIII a 253, XIII a 32, 44, XIV c 4; *al(le) maner(e)*, all kinds of, II 589, XI a 12 (*cf.* *Alkyn*); *al(le) þing(e)*, *see* *þing*; *all way*, *weys*, *see* *Alway*, *Way*; *all it* (*þei*, *we*), all of it (them, us), XV g 16, IX 104, XVII 456, &c.; *here names of alle*, the names of them all, I 37; *of al and sum*, in general and particular, in full, VI 224; *as sb.* all, XVI 303, &c.; every one (with *sg.* verb), VI 87. [OE. *al(l)*.] *See* *Algate*, *Alkyn*, *Alsaume*, &c.

**Al**, **Al(e)**, *adv.* entirely, quite, very, I 108, II 76, V 304, VIII a 138, &c.; in comb. with *To*- II 81, 106, 262, IV a 78, VII 147; with *For*-, II 398, XV c 29. *Al away*, quite away, IV a 75; *al one*, alone, V 87, XII a 131, b 15; *al oon*, all one (and the same thing), XI a 41; *al to*, up to (the number of), III 56; *all be (were)* *it þat*, although, IX 50, 171, 302, 312; *all if*, although, XVII 231. [OE. *al(l)*.]

**Al**, **Al(e)**, *n.* all, everything, III 43, 51, &c.; *about al*, in all directions, II 387; *ouer al*, everywhere, II 208 (OE. *ofer ald*). [OE. *al(l)*.]

**Aldai**, **Al day**, *adv.* all day, V

# GLOSSARY

- 166, XII *introd.* [OE. *alne dæg.*]  
**Alde.** See Olde.  
**Alepy, adj.** (a) single, I 159. [OE. *ānleþig.*]  
**Algate, adv.** by all means, at any rate, I 107, II 231. [Cf. ON. *alla götu*, all along, always.] See Gate, *n*.<sup>2</sup>  
**Algatis, adv.** continually, XI a 38. [Prec. + adv. -es.]  
**Aliens, n. pl.** foreigners, XIII b 61. [OFr. *alien.*]  
**Aliht, Alihte, v.** to alight, II 377, XII a 76. [OE. *ā-httan.*] See Liht, *v*.<sup>2</sup>  
**Aliri, adv.** † across one another (of legs), VIII a 116. [† Related to Lyre, *n*.<sup>2</sup>]  
**Alia, v.** See Eyleþ.  
**Alyue, adj.** living, VI 85. [OE. *on life.*]  
**Alkyn, adj.** of all kinds, VIII a 70. [OE. *\*alra cynna.*] See Kyn.  
**Allas, interj.** alas! II 107, &c. [OFr. *alas.*]  
**Alleg(g)e(n), v.** to cite (in support of a contention), XI b 56, XVI 277; to contend, XI b 79. [OFr. *estigier, aligier*, associated with unrelated L. *allēgāre.*]  
**Allowe, v.** approve, receive with approval, XVI 330; Alod, *pp.* XVII 56 (note). [OFr. *alouer*, from L. *allaudāre.*]  
**Allpough, Althogh, conj.** (even) though, IX 110, XII b 196, &c. [Al, *adv.* + þogh, *q.v.*]  
**Allweldand, adj.** almighty, XVII 494. [Cf. OE. *alwuldende.*]  
**Almes(se), n. sg.** an act, or works, of charity, charitable gift or offering, VIII a 121, 140, XI b 2, 163, 270, &c.; Elmesses *pl.* (OKt. *elmessan*), III 17. [OE. *almesse.*]  
**Almyht, adj.** almighty, VI 138. [OE. *al-miht.*]  
**Almyty, -myghty, adj.** almighty, VIII b 105, XV i 12. [OE. *al-mihtig.*]  
**Alofte, adv.** in the air, aloft, v 220, XII a 94, &c. [ON. *á loft.*] See Lofte.  
**Alod, pp.** See Allowe.  
**Alone, adj.** alone, XVII 489; see Al, *adv.*  
**Als, adv.** also, as well, v 292, VIII a 148, x 8, 11, XVII 126, 127. [Reduced form of Also, *q.v.*]  
**Als, Alas, conj.** as (*esp.* in *als . . as*, as . . as), like, IV a 2, 63, 84, b 86, VIII a 37, &c.; as for instance, like, XVI 306, 308, 311; as, while, IV b 43, XV a 4; *als . . þat*, so . . that, IX 151; *als b(i)liue*, as quickly (as possible), straightway, II 531, 584. [As prec.] See As.  
**Alsaume, adv.** (all) together, I 98. [Cf. ON. *allir saman.*] See Sam(e), *adv.*  
**Also, Alsua (x), adv.** also, as well, I 35, II 144, x 33, &c.; *conj.* like, II 508; *also bliue, also spac, also swiþe*, as quickly (as possible), straightway, II 142, 343, 574. [OE. *al-swā.*] See Als, As.  
**Al(l)way, -wey, adv.** always, (for) ever, continually, XIII a 3, b 63, XVI 150, 168, &c.; in any case, certainly, XVI 164. [OE. *alne weg.*] See Algate(s).  
**Am, I sg. pres. ind.** am, v 90, &c.; coalescing with prec. pron. in Icham, Ycham (*q.v.*). [OE. *am.*] See Ar, Art, Is, &c.  
**Amaistrien, v.** to master, control, VIII a 205. [OFr. *amaistrier.*]  
**Amang, adv.** in the meanwhile, XVII 247; Emang, at times, from time to time, XVI 262, 301. [OE. *on-(ge)māng.*] See Amonge.  
**Ame, v.** to guess; as *y kan ame*, I guess, I 45. [OFr. *aesmor, amer.*]  
**Amend(e), v.** to make better, reform, set right, VIII a 268, IX 338, XI a 48, XVII 256. [OFr. *amender.*] See Mend(e).  
**Amendement, n.** improvement, cure, I 238, II 200, VIII a 132. [OFr. *amendement.*]

# GLOSSARY

- Amercy**, *v.* to fine, VIII *a* 40. [OFr. *amercier*.]  
**Amidde**, *prep.* in the middle of, II 355. [OE. *on-middan*.]  
**Amiddeð**, *adv.* in the midst, XII *a* 170; *prep.* (from) among, II 191. [Prec. + *adv.* -es.]  
**Amys**, *adv.* amiss, VIII *a* 322. [ON. *á miss*.] See Mysse.  
**Amoner**, *n.* almoner, alms-giver, III 16. [OFr. *aumoner*.]  
**Among(e)**, *prep.* among, II 220, VIII *a* 89, &c.; Elmang, Elmong, XVII 112; (follows noun) XVII 400. [OE. *on-(ge)mdng*.] See Amang, Mong.  
**Amonges**, *prep.* amongst, II 306, VII 37, &c. [Prec. + *adv.* -es.]  
**Amorwe**, *adv.* on the next day, II 181, 497. [OE. *on morgene*.]  
**An**, **And**, **Ant**, *conj.* and, I 254, VIII *a* 205, XI *a* 1, XV *b* 11, *d* 2, *e* 6, *g* 25, 26, *i* 5, &c.; *an te*, and the, XV *e* 19; if, II 43, VI 200, 238, VIII *a* 250, XIII *a* 44, *b* 39, XIV *c* 14, 103, XVI 208 (even if), XVII 297, 502. On postponement of *and* in Gower see note to XII *a* 26. [OE. *and*.]  
**Anores**, *n. pl.* anchorites, religious recluses, VIII *a* 139. [OE. *āncra*.]  
**Andzuerede**. See Ansuere.  
**Ane**, *indef. art.* a, X 5, 16, 31, &c.; representing older inflected forms, III 11 (first), 13, 49; *adj.* one, a single, IV *a* 58, X 157; (predicatively) one, united, IV *a* 56; *prom.* one, IV *b* 1, 43; a certain person, IV *a* 69, X 169. See A(n), On(e).  
**Ane**, *prep.* on; *ane his thordes haf*, on his master's behalf, III 11. [From OE. *on*, *an*, on anal. of *in*, *inne*.]  
**Anely**, *adv.* only, IV *b* 81. [OE. *ānlic*, *adj.*] See Onely.  
**Anewe**, *adv.* once more, XV *a* 22. [*a* + OE. *nēowe*.] See Angel.  
**Angelia**. See Angel.  
**Anger**, *n.* grief, V 276. [ON. *angr*, grief.]  
**Angré**, *adj.* angry, XVII 187. [From prec.]  
**Angwys**, *n.* grief, IV *b* 28. [OFr. *anguisse*.]  
**Ani**, **Any**, *adj.* any, I 2, 18, II 528, &c. [OE. *ænig*.] See Eny, Ony.  
**Animal**, *n.* II 364, a misreading for aumal *q.v.*  
**Anodir**. See Anopire.  
**Anoynt**, *v.* to smear, XVII 127. [Formed on OFr. *enoint* pp. of *enoindre*.]  
**Anon(e)**, *adv.* at once, straightway, next, II 385, 499, VI 224, XVII 490, 526, &c.; Onone, VII 149, XVII 275. [OE. *on ān*.]  
**Anothire**, **Anoper**, *adj.* and *prom* another, IV *b* 3, 34, IX 37, &c.; Anopur, XIV *c* 27; Anouper, I 140; Anodir, XVI 87. [OE. *ān + ōper*.]  
**Anouȝ**. See Ynoȝ.  
**\*Anowrned**, *pp.* adorned, II 363 (MS. *anowed*). [OFr. *aourner*; *ā* to *an*- on anal. of E. alternation *a*-, *an*-.]  
**Ansuer(e)**, **Answer**, *v.* to answer, III 5, 25, IX 178, XII *b* 76; Andzuerede, *pa. t.* III 33. [OE. *an(d)swerian*.]  
**Answer**, *n.* answer, VI 158. [OE. *an(d)swaru*.]  
**Ant**. See An, *conj.*  
**Antifeners**, *n. pl.* antiphonaries, XI *b* 229 (note). [OFr. *antiphonier*.]  
**Apayed**, *pp.* pleased, satisfied, VIII *a* 102, 189. [OFr. *apaier*.] See Paie.  
**Apassed**, *pp.* as *prep.* past, VI 180. [OFr. *apasser*.]  
**Ap(p)ere**, **Appiere**, *v.* to appear, VI 45, XII *a* 132, XVI 368, XVII 173. [OFr. *aper*-; *apareir*.]  
**Ap(p)eyre**, *v.* to do harm to, injure, impair, VIII *a* 126, 164, 212, XIII *b* 14; Apeyrng, *n.* impairing, XIII *b* 15. [OFr. *empeirer*.] See Empeyre.  
**Apert**, *adj.* plain, V 324; *adv.* openly, plainly, I 200, VI 229; for all to see, II 586. [OFr. *apert*.]  
**Apon**. See Vpon.

# GLOSSARY

**Aposede**, *pa. t.* put a (hard) question to, VIII *b* 10. [OFr. *oposer*, *aposer*.]

**Apostel**, *n.* apostle, XI *a* 12, *b* 15, 99, 273, &c. [OE. *apostol*.] See Posteles.

**Apparaille**, *v.* to dress, VIII *a* 59. [OFr. *aparailier*.]

**Apparale**, *n.* preparations, apparatus, gear, X 3, 14, 44, 119. [OFr. *aparail*.]

**Apparence**, *n.* appearance, XII *a* 127. [OFr. *ap(p)arence*.]

**Appetit** (*to*), *n.* desire, appetite (for), VIII *a* 261, IX 15, XII *a* 87. [OFr. *apetit*.]

**Appiereth**. See Ap(p)ere.

**Appropriid**, *pp.* assigned as personal property, XI *b* 97. [OFr. *aproprier*.]

**Aquit**, *pp.* requited, XII *b* 138, 197. [OFr. *aquiter*.]

**Ar**, *conj.* before (usually with *subj.*), VIII *a* 93, 196, 258, 261, 269, XV *g* 33, &c. [OE. *ær*, and with weak stress *ær*(*!*).] See Are; Er(e), *adv.*; Or.

**Ar(e)**, *pres. ind. pl.* are, IV *b* 18, V 9, 27, &c.; Aren, VIII *a* 268, 270, &c.; Arn(e), II 13, VI 24, 42, &c. [OE. (Nth.) *aron*.] See Art, Er(e), Ben, &c.

**Aray**, *n.* array, X 68; rank, estate, VI 131; *of* aray, stately, XVII 539 (or *grate of aray*, great in magnificence). [OFr. *arei*.]

**Arayed**, *pp.* arranged, XIII *a* 1. [OFr. *areyer*.]

**Aratede**, *pa. t.* rebuked, VIII *b* 11. [Unknown.]

**Archidekenes**, *n. pl.* archdeacons, VIII *b* 75. [OE. *ærce-diacon*, OFr. *archedekne*.] See Dyacne.

**Are**, *adv.* before, I 93, XVI 38, 98, 345. [ON. *dr* (late Nth. *ar*); but see Ar, *conj.*]

**Arered**, *pp.* raised, set up, XIII *a* 11, 13, &c. [OE. *ā-ræran*.]

**Arze** (*wyth*), *v.* to be terrified, quail (at), V 203, 209, 233. [OE. *eargian*.]

**Aryzt**, *adv.* rightly, right well, XIII *b* 46; Ariht, XII *a* 67,

XIV *c* 61. [OE. *on-riht*, *ariht*.]

**Arise**, *Aryse*, *v.* to arise, rise, get up, come to pass, II 311, VIII *a* 112, 261, 319, *b* 15; Aros, *pa. t.* sg. II 318, XV *g* 1 (note). [OE. *ā-risan*.]

**Arm(e)**, *n.* arm, I 112, VII 162, &c.; embrace, XII *a* 161. [OE. *earm*.]

**Armes**, *n. pl.* arms, weapons, (knightly) warfare, II 182, IX 109, &c. [OFr. *armes*.]

**Armyt**, **Armed**, *pp.* armed, II 395, X 7, 37, &c.; Y-armed, II 136, 184, 292. [OFr. *armer*.]

**Arn(e)**. See Ar(e), *v.*

**Arryuen**, *Aryue*, *v.* to come to land, IX 184; to come (to a destination), VI 87. [OFr. *arriver*.]

**Art**, 2 *sg. pres. ind.* art, I 202, 204, II 422, &c.; Artow, art thou, II 421 (see Pou); Ert, VIII *b* 34. [OE. *eart*.]

**Artetykes**, *adj. pl.* arthritic, accompanied with inflammation of the joints, IX 314. See Gowtes. [OFr. *artetique*, corruptly from L. *arthriticus*.]

**Arwes**, *n. pl.* arrows, IX 258. [OE. *earh*.]

**As(e)**, *conj.* as, I 24, II 290, III 48, &c.; *as*...*as* (foll. by accus.), XVII 19; *as that*, as, XVII 182; *as hys desserte*, according to his deserts, VI 235; even as, seeing that, XVII 427, 552; *as euer*, as sure as ever, XVII 237, 395; so (in oaths, &c.), V 55, &c.; as if (usually with *subj.*) I 31, 121, 195, II 108, 402, V 106, 133, 134, 189, 194, 221, 326, VII 45; as relative particle, I *introd.*, XVII 325; *as swyþe*, *lyte*, straightway, I 111, XVII 219. [Further reduced from Als, *q.v.*]

**Asalis**. See Assayle.

**Askes**, *n. pl.* ashes, XIII *a* 4. [OE. *axe*.]

**Aske(n)**, **Ask** (II), *v.* to ask for, demand, I 131, II 450, 467, VI 220, &c.; require, VIII *b* 71;

# GLOSSARY

- inquire, I 132, IX 176. [OE. *āxian*.] See *Axe*(n).
- Aspien**, *Asspye*, *v.* to detect, observe, VIII *a* 123, 217, XI *a* 60; *Aspide*, *pa. t.* III 42. [OFr. *espier*.] See *Spie*.
- Assai**, *Assay*, *n.* test, trial; *at assai*, when put to the test, XIV *c* 5; *set in, till, hard(e) assay*, place in sore straits, X 62, 170, 188. [OFr. *essai, assai*.]
- Assaie**, *Assay(e)*, *Assay*, *v.* to test, prove, make trial, II 452, 568, V 294, IX 61, 102, 121, XIV *c* 66, XVII 219, 249, 433; to endeavour, VIII *a* 24, XII *b* 81. [OFr. *essayer*.] See *Saye*.
- Assaylle**, *As(s)ale*, *Assa(i)lþe* (X), *v.* to assail, attack, IX 88, X 4, 12, 43, 114, 132, 144, XVII 295, &c.; *Assaling*, *n.* assault, X 41, 60. [OFr. *as(s)ailir*.]
- Asse**, *n.* ass, XV *f* 5, &c. [OE. *assa*.]
- Assemblid** (*to*), *pa. t.* assembled (at), VII 85. [OFr. *assembler*.]
- Assembly**, *n.* joining of battle, VII 57. [OFr. *assemblee*.]
- Assende**, *v.* to ascend, XVI 32. [OFr. *ascendre*.]
- Assent**, *pp.* sent for, XII *b* 208. See *Of-sende*.
- As(s)ente**, *n.* agreement; compliance, VI 31; *of þare assente*, of like mind with them, XVI 310. [OFr. *asente*.]
- Assent(e)**, *v.* to agree, VIII *a* 39, 57; *pp.* XVI 170. [OFr. *asentir*.]
- Assoylled**, *pp.* absolved, IX 286. [OFr. *assoillir*.]
- Asspye**. See *Aspien*.
- As(s)ate**, *n.* estate, (high) rank, VI 33, 130, VII 21. [OFr. *estat*.] See *State*.
- Astrangled**, *pp.* choked, II 396. [OFr. *estrangler*.]
- Asunder**, -yr, *adv.* apart, I 224; *pleon. with parte*, I 103. [OE. *on-sundran*.] See *Sonder*.
- Aswon(e)**, *adj.* in a swoon, I 195 (note), II 549. [OE. *geswōgen*.] See *Falle(n)*; *Swone*.
- At**, *prep.* at, I 13, 74, &c.; in, VII 66, VIII *a* 63; IX 253; *at wordes*, in words, II 139; (of time) V 23, 100, IX 284, XI *a* 12; to, V 108, VII 13; with infin. (*at do*), see *Do*; according to, I 82, II 271, XIV *b* 56, XVI 258, XVII 4, 322; at the value of, VIII *a* 162, *b* 101, XVII 364; at the hands of, from, I 239, 240, 245, II 179, III 4, 31 (see *Atte*). *At on*, at one, in accord, VI 18; *at þe full*, completely XI *b* 198; *haue at þe*, see *Habbe(n)*. [OE. *et*.] See *Atte*; *Þare*.
- At**, *rel. particle*; *þat at*, that which, what, VI 176 (note); *quhar at*, see *Whar*. [ON. *at*; *þat at* is possibly for *þat tat* (cf. *Atte*, *pou*, &c.).]
- Ate**. See *Atte*.
- Atempre**, *adj.* temperate, IX 29. [OFr. *atempred*.]
- Aþer**, *Athir*. See *Aither*, *Ayther*.
- At-hold**, *v.* to restrain, II 88. [OE. *et- + haldan*.]
- Atire**, *n.* apparel, II 299. [From next.]
- Atire**, *v.*; *Atird*, *pp.* equipped, II 158. [OFr. *atir(er)*.] See *Tired*.
- Atled**, *pa. t.* intended, V 195. [ON. *ætla*.]
- Ato**, *adv.* in two, apart, II 125, IX 140; *Atwo*, VIII *a* 97. [OE. *on twā*.] See *A(n) prep.*; *Tuo*.
- Atour**, *n.* apparatus, equipment, X 125. [OFr. *atour(n)*.]
- Atourned**, *pp.* equipped, II 291. [OFr. *atourner*.]
- Atrete**, *adv.* straight out, plainly, XIV *c* 78. [OFr. *a trait*.]
- Atslyke**, *v.* to slip away; *atslyke*, is spent, VI 215. [OE. *at- + slīcan*.]
- Atte**, *Ate*, *at*, the, II 232, 379, III 4, VIII *a* 96, *b* 29; of the, III 31; in fixed expressions where Mn. E. has 'at', as: *atte chirche*, VIII *a* 50; *at(þe) firste, last(e), mete*, see *Furste*, *Laste*, *Mete*; *atte nale* - *atten*

# GLOSSARY

- (OE. *æt þam*) *ale*, over the ale, VIII *a* 109. See *At*.
- Atteynte**, *v.* to convict, prove guilty, XVI 278. [From *ateint*, convicted, pp. of OFr. *ateindre*.]
- Atteny**, *v.* to reach, VI 188. [OFr. *ateign-*, stem of *ateindre*.]
- Atwynne**, *adv.* in two, I 189, 191. [OE. *on + twinn*.]
- Atwo**, **Avay**. See *Ato*, *Awai*.
- Avayll**, **Avale**, *v.* to be of use to, XVII 154; *it avalis you*, (it) is your best course, XVII 296. [*a* + OFr. *vail*, *valeir*.]
- Avale**, **Avail** (*x*), *v. intr.* to descend, IX 195; *trans.* to let down, *x* 28. [OFr. *avaler*.]
- Avauntage**, *n.* advantage, XIII *b* 35, 36. [OFr. *avantage*.]
- Autorit  **, *n.* authority, XI *b* 61. [OFr. *au(c)torit  *.]
- Auctour**, *n.* original authority, author, IX 304; **Autours**, *pl.* XI *a* 23. [OFr. *autour*, and (from 14th c.) *auctour*, &c.]
- Audience**, *n.* formal hearing, audience, XII *b* 209. [OFr.]
- Aue Maria**, an Ave, Hail Mary, IX 323. [First two words of Latin prayer.]
- Auentur(e)**, **Auentour**, *n.* chance, (notable) occurrence, feat, II 15, 18, 32, &c.; risk, *x* 118; *an aventure*, (as *conj.*) in case, VIII *a* 43; *at auentur*, as chance directed, recklessly, XIV *c* 34. [OFr. *aventure*.] See *Aunter*.
- Aueril**, *n.* April, XV *c* 1. [OFr. *avril*.]
- Auzt**. See *Owe*, *v.*
- Avys**, *n.* deliberation, IX 295, 297. [OFr. *avis*.]
- Avised**, *pp.*; *wel avised*, judicious, XII *b* 217. [OFr. *aviser*.]
- Aumal**, *n.* enamel, II 364. [OFr. *aumail*.]
- Aungel**(1), *n.* angel, IV *a* 46, XI *b* 23, XVI 339, 389; **Angel**, XI *b* 152, &c. [OFr. *a(u)ngel*.]
- Aunsetris**, *n. pl.* ancestors, men of former days, VII 5. [OFr. *ancestre*, nom. sg.]
- Aunter**, *n.* chance, event, VII 5, 67, 155. [As *Auentur*; but due to older and more popular borrowing.]
- Auter(e)**, *n.* altar, I 74, 76. [OFr. *auter*.]
- Autours**. See *Auctour*.
- Auger**. See *Oper*, *adv.* and *conj.*
- Awai**, **Away(e)**, **Awei(e)**, **Awey(e)**, *adv.* away, VIII *a* 184, XII *b* 132, &c.; **Avay**, *x* 58, 187; **Oway**, II 192, 261, 329; **Owy** (in rime), II 96, 491, 561; *don awei*, abolished, XI *b* 206; *wanne awaye*, rescued, XVI 171; *predic.*, gone, over, II 59 (*oway*), XVII 537. [OE. *on-weg*, *aweg*; † with *owy*, cf. rare OE. *wig*.]
- Awake**, *v. intr.* to be aroused, wake up, II 77, VIII *a* 318, *b* 1, &c.; *trans.* to wake, II 73; **Awake**, *pp.* wakened, XV *g* 14. [OE. *  -w  cnan*, str.; *  -wacian*, wk.; both intr.] See *Forwake*, *Wackenet*, *Wake*.
- Awangelys**, *n. pl.* gospels, XV *i* 6. [L. *Evangelium*.] See *Euaungelistis*.
- Awe**. See *Owe*, *v.*
- Awe**, *n.* fear; for *Crystys awe*, for fear of Christ, I 83. [ON. *agi*.] See *A3le3*.
- Awede**, *v.* go mad, II 87; **Awedde**, *pp.* (gone) mad, II 400. [OE. *  -w  dan*.] See *Wode*, *adj.*
- Awayward**, *adv.* (turned) in the opposite direction, XIII *a* 35. [OE. *onweg* + *adv. -ward*.]
- Awen**, **Awne**. See *Owen*, *adj.*
- Awenden**, *pa. t. pl.* thought, XV *g* 17. [*a* + OE. *w  nan*.] See *Wene(n)*.
- Awharf**, *pa. t. sg.* turned aside, V 152. [OE. *  -hw  rfan*.]
-   worth  **. See *Yworth*.
- Awreke** (*of*), *v.* to avenge (on), VIII *a* 166; **Awroke**, *pp.* VIII *a* 195. [OE. *  -wrekan*.] See *Wreke*.
- Ax**, *n.* axe, V 155, XIV *e* 1, &c. [OE. *  x*.]



# GLOSSARY

**Axe(n)**, *v.* to ask, demand, inquire (of), VIII *a* 291, XI *b* 207, XII *a* 145, &c.; *Acsede*, *pa. t.* III 4, 25, 31. [OE. *āxian*.] See *Aske(n)*.

**Babelynge**, *n.* babbling, XI *b* 84. [Echoic; cf. *Blabre*.]

**Bad(de)**. See *Bidde*.

**Bagge**, *n.* wallet (for food), VIII *b* 54. [ON. *baggi*.]

**Bayarde**, *n.* bay horse (as typical horse name); *pat was bake for B.* = coarse horse-bread, VIII *a* 187. [OFr. *baiard*.] See *Bred*.

**Bayle**, *Bayll*. See *Bale*.

**Bayly**, *n.* dominion, VI 82. [OFr. *baillie*.]

**Baillyes**, *n. pl.* bailiffs, managers of estates, XI *b* 288. [OFr. *baillif*.]

**Baill**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> wall (of the outer court in a feudal castle), XVI 195; **Bale**, prison, custody, XVI 161 (but this may belong to *Bale*, *q.v.*). [OFr. *bail*.]

**Baill**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> bundle, X 27. [OFr. *bale*.]

**Bayn**, *adj.* obedient, V 90, XVII 308. [ON. *bein* - *n.*, direct.]

**Bair**. See *Bare*.

**Bak**, **Bac** (II), **Backe**, *n.* back, II 344, VII 126, XVII 264, &c.; *bak and bone*, all over the body, XVII 407. [OE. *bæc*.]

**Bake(n)**, *pp.* baked, VIII *a* 187, 288, 305; **Ybake(n)**, VIII *a* 175, 278. [OE. *bacan*.]

**Bakoun**, **Bacoun**, *n.* bacon, VIII *a* 279, 304. [OFr. *bacun*.]

**Balde**. See *Bold*.

**Bale**; **Bayle**, **Bayll** (XVII); *n.* torment, misery, sorrow, IV *a* 77, V 351, VI 13, XIV *a* 28, XVI 275, XVII 26, 311, 552, &c.; at XVI 161 'torment' is possible, but see *Bail*, *n.*<sup>1</sup> [OE. *balu*.]

**Balz**, *adj.* rounded, or † with level surface, V 104 (cf. *Sir Gaw.* 2032, and *Prompt. Parv. balwe*, *planus*).

**Balkes**, *n. pl.* (unploughed) ridges

in a field, VIII *a* 101. [OE. *balc(a)*.]

**Ban**, *v.* to curse, XIV *b* 94, XVII 94; **Banned** (*MS.*) I 188, † read *Bende* (*q.v.*). [OE. *bannan*, proclaim; ON. *banna*, forbid, curse.]

**Bandis**. See *Bond*.

**Bane**. See *Bon*.

**Baner**, *n.* banner, II 294, XIV *a* 8. [OFr. *banere*.]

**Bank(k)es**. See *Bonk(e)*.

**Baptiste**, *pa. t.* baptized, XVI 75. [OFr. *baptiser*.]

**Barbe**, *n.* cutting edge, V 242. [OFr. *barbe*, beard, barb (of arrow, spear, &c.).]

**Bard**, *pp.* penned, XVII 328. [OFr. *barrer*.] See *Barres*, *Vnbarred*.

**Bare**, **Bair** (x), *adj.* bare, naked, V 9, 188, VII 164, X 190, &c.; *on bonkes bare*, XIV *b* 20; despoiled, XIV *a* 20; bald (in style), VII 74; mere, V 284, X 113. [OE. *bær*.]

**Bar(e)**, **Bare(n)**. See *Bore*, *n.*; *Bere*, *v.*

**Barely**, *adv.* openly, XIV *b* 94; summarily, VII 68. [OE. *bærlice*.]

**Baret**, *n.* strife, V 47 (see *Bend*). [OFr. *barat*.]

**Barfot**, *adj.* barefoot, II 232. [OE. *bær-fōt*.]

**Barga(y)n**, *n.* bargain, VIII *b* 100, XVII 94. [OFr. *bargaine*.]

**Barge**, *n.* a smaller sea-going ship belonging to a larger vessel, XIV *c* 53, 65; ship, VII 90. [OFr. *barge*.]

**Barly**, *n.* (as *adj.*) barley, VIII *a* 129. [OE. *bærlic*.]

**Barm**, *n.* lap, XV *g* 13. [OE. *bearm*.]

**Barm-fellys**, *n. pl.* leather aprons, XV *h* 11. [OE. *bearm* + *fell*; cf. *bearm-clāþ*, &c.]

**Barne**, *n.* child, VI 66, XVII 308, 419; *barnes bastards*, bastards, VIII *b* 75. [OE. *bearn*.]

**Barouns**, *n. pl.* barons, II 201, 503, 550. [OFr. *barun*.]

**Barras**, *n.* defensive outwork, X 164. [OFr. *barras*.]

# GLOSSARY

**Barres**, *n. pl.* bars, XVI 190. [OFr. *barre*.]

**Barste**. See **Brest(e)**.

**Bastard**, *n. pl.* bastards; as *adj.*, VIII b 75. [OFr. *bastard*.]

**Baston**, *n.* stave, stanza, Introduction xv. [OFr. *baston*.]

**Batail(e)**, **Bataill**, **Batayl**, **Batel(l)**, *n.* embattled host, XIV b 52; battle, VII 56, 91, \*XI b 154, XIV b 31, XVI 131, &c. [OFr. *bataille*.]

**Batailld**, *adj.* embattled, with battlements, II 360. [Modelled on OFr. *batailld*.]

**Bath**. See **Rope**.

**Batis**, *n. pl.* boats X 123. [OE. *bāt*.]

**Bape**, *v.* to bathe (*trans.* and *intr.*), II 585, XIII a 25. [OE. *bapian*.]

**Baundoun**, *n.* control; *in hire baundoun*, at her disposal, XV c 8. [OFr. *bandun*.]

**Be**, *conj.* by the time (that), X 157. Cf. *bi pat*. See next.

**Be**, **Beo** (XIV c 44), *prep.* by (way of), IX 179, 192, 198; through, IX 112, 136, 137; (of time) by, at, in, VI 163, IX 204, 339, XII a 117, 131, XV i 15, 20; by (means of), through, III 22, VII 23, IX 67, 130, XII a 23, b 199, XVI 355, &c.; by (of agent), III 30, IX 112 (first), 298, 305, XII b 217, &c.; by (in oaths, &c.), XII b 45, 164. *Counted... beo*, set value on, XIV c 44; for idiomatic expressions see the nouns. [OE. *be*.] See **Bi**.

**Be-**. See also **Bi-**, **By-**.

**Becam**, **Becomen**. See **Bicome**.

**Beolipte**, *pa. t.* embraced, XII a 178; **Byolyped**, *pp.* encircled, XIII a 21. [OE. *be-clyppan*.]

**Bede**, *v.* to bid, offer, V 254, XIV a 9; **Bede**, *pa. t. sg.* (bade), V 22; offered, 180, 284. [OE. *bedan*, early confused with *biddan*.] See **Bidde**, **Forbede**.

**Bed(e)**. See **Bidde**.

**Bedd(e)**, **Bede** (IV), *n.* bed, II

93, 242, XII a 99, &c.; *dat. sg.* in *to bedde*, to bed, VIII a 93, XII b 105; *þe bede of blysse*, ? the joyful bridal bed (of Christ and the soul), IV a 11. [OE. *bedd*.] See **Abedde**.

**Bedes**, *n. pl.* prayers, I 16. [OE. *ge-bed*.]

**Bedeyn**. See **Bidene**.

**Bedele**, *n.* herald, one who delivers the message of an authority, XI b 48. [OE. *bydel*; OFr. *bedel*.]

**Bedreden**, *n. pl.* the bedridden, VIII a 185, b 21. [OE. *bedd-reda*.]

**Bee**, **Bees**. See **Ben**.

**Beest**. See **Best(e)**, *n.*

**Befalle**, *v.* to happen, chance, IX 129, &c.; to befall, XVII 514; *pa. t. sg.* **Befell(e)**, VII 67, 155; **Bevil**, **Bifel**, it chanced, II 57, III 41; **Befalle(n)**, *pp.* II 21, IX 194. [OE. *be-fallan*.] See **Falle(n)**.

**Begge**, to beg, VIII a 186, 233, b 29, &c. [1 OE. *bedecian*; see *N.E.D.*]

**Begger(e)**, *n.* beggar, II 483, 499, VIII a 188, 197, &c. [See *N.E.D.*]

**Begyn(ne)**, **Bigin(ne)**, **Bygyn(ne)**, &c., *v.* to begin, act, do, come about, I 69, IV b 57, VI 187, VIII a 160, XIV b 25, c 83, XVI 268, 280, XVII 267, &c.; *begyn of*, b. with, XVII 253; **Be-**, **Bi-**, **Bygan**, *pa. t. sg.* began, I 154, &c.; did, XV a 7; came to pass, II 598; made (it) in the beginning, XVII 29; **Bygan**, *pa. t. pl.* I 72; **Bygonne**, VI 189; **Begouth**, X 94; **Begonne**, *pp.* IX 171; **Be-**, **Bygynnyng(e)**, *n.* IV b 58, IX 334, XIII b 9. [OE. *beginnan*; *begouth* is due to confusion of *gan* with *can* (*coupe*); See **Gan**; **Can**, *auxil.*]

**Begynnar**, **Bygynner**, *n.* beginner, causer, VI 76, XVII 406. [From *prec.*]

**Begon**, *pp.* adorned, XII a 54. [OE. *be-gan*.]

# GLOSSARY

**Begonne, Begouth.** See *Begynne*.

**Bezonde, adv.** beyond, further on, IX 263, 280. [OE. *be-guōndan*.]

**Bezonde, Bezounde** (I), **Bi-  
zonde** (V), *prep.* across, beyond,  
I 252, V 132, IX 8, 76, 135, &c.;  
see *See*. [As *prec.*]

**Behald(e).** See *Bihold*.

**Behalue, n.** behalf; *on Goddes b.*,  
in God's name, I 78. [Originally  
*be* *prep.* and *halfe* *dat.* sg.; cf.  
Half.]

**Beheste, n.** promise, XII b 196.  
[OE. (late) *be-hæst*.] See *Heste*.

**Behete.** See *Bihote*.

**Behevin, pp.** hewn down, X 163.  
[OE. *be-hēawan*.]

**Behielde, -helde.** See *Bihold*.

**Behihtest.** See *Bihote*.

**Behynd, prep.** behind, X 85; as  
*sb.*, XVII 331. [OE. *be-hindan*.]

**Behuft.** See *Bihoue*.

**Beie.** See *Bigge, v.*

**Beyn, Beyng.** See *Be(n)*.

**Beytter, n.** healer, XVII 311.  
[From *Bete, v.*]

**Belamy, Bellamy, n.** good friend  
(ironically), XVI 213, 338. [OFr.  
*bel ami*.]

**Beleeve, n.** belief, IX 289. [OE.  
*ge-leafa*, with change of prefix.]

**Beleue, Bileue, v.** to believe,  
I 89, VIII a 82, IX 120, XV g 9.  
[OE. *ge-lēfan*, (late) *be-lēfan*.]  
See *Leue, v.*; *Ylefde*.

**Belyue, adv.** quickly, at once,  
straightway, VII 161, XVI 211;

**Belife**, XVII 192; **Bilyue**, V 3;

**Blyue**, IX 18; **Blīue**, in *also*  
*blīue*, II 142, *als blīue*, II 531,  
584, as quickly as possible,  
immediately. [OE. *\*be lifē*.]

**Bellewys, n. pl.** bellows, XV h 6.  
[OE. *belgas*, pl.]

**Ben, v.** to be, II 207, VIII a 96,  
&c.; **Be(e)**, I 4, XVI 7, &c.;  
**Buen**, XV c 18; *future*, 2 sg.  
**Best**, II 173; 3 sg. **Bees**, IV a  
35, XVII 373, **Bet3**, VI 251;  
*pl.* **Be**, V 43, XVI 331; *pres. pl.*

**Be(n)**, are, II 3, 4, 12, &c.;

**Beo**, XIV c 5; **Beop**, XIV c 103;

**Beth**, **Beþ**, II 59, 110, 273, 582,

VIII a 199, XV f 5; **Buþ**, XIII a  
1, 6, 10, 13, &c.; **Be(e)**, **Beo**,  
*pres. subj.*, II 165, 433, XIV c 98,  
d 3, &c.; **Ben**, XI b 73, 218, &c.;  
**Be(o)**, *imper.* 2 sg. XV g 10, f 7,  
&c.; 3 sg. IV a 55; *pl.* VIII a  
118, XIV d 11 (first); **Be**, *pp.* I  
195, VIII b 74, XI a 44, XII a 20,  
XVII 192, &c.; **Ben**, II 103,  
V 196, &c.; **Bene**, V 275, XVI  
40; **Beyn**, XVII 445, 532; **Ybe**,  
XIII a 16; **Beyng**, *pres. p.* in  
*in hytself beyng*, inlierent, VI 86.  
**Ben** (*drepiþ*, &c.), have been  
(smitten, &c.), VII 9, 11; **be(e)**  
*war*, see *War(e)*; *lete ben*, &c.,  
cease from, II 114, XVI 234.  
[OE. *bēon*.] See *Ar(e)*, *Es*, *Was*,  
&c.

**Bend, v.** X 90, 98, XVII 253;

**Bende, pa. t.** XII a 58, \*I

188 (MS. banned); **Bende, pp.**

V 47, 156; **Bendit**, X 80. The

divergent senses are all derived

from the original one of string-

ing, bending, a bow: †to bind,

\*I 188 (note); to set ready for

discharging, X 80, 90, 98; to

make curve, **bend**, V 156, XII a

58, XVII 253; †to make bow,

bring low, beat down, in *hat3*...

*on bent much baret bende*, †has

upon the field overcome much

strife (many opponents), V 47.

[OE. *bendan*.]

**Bene, adv.** pleasantly, V 334.

[Not known.]

**Bene, n.** bean, VIII a 175, 188,

209, 278, 288, 298, IX 54; as

something of no value (cf. *pees*),

XIV c 43. [OE. *bēan*.]

**Benedicite** (L. *imper. pl.*) bless

(me, us); as exclamation of

amazement, XVII 163.

**Benethe(n), Beneyth** (XVII),

*adv.* underneath, IX 56, XVII

137; in the lower part, IX 247.

[OE. *benēopan*.]

**Benome.** See *Binam*.

**Bent, n.** grass-slope, field, V 165;

esp. in the allit. tag *on bent*, on

the field (of battle), or (as

variant of *upon grounde*, &c.)

# GLOSSARY

- on earth, v 47, 80, VII 91; *on his bent*, here, v 270. [Perhaps a special use of *bent*, bent-grass, OE. *beonet*.]
- Beo**, **Beop**. See **Ben**; **Beo**, *prep.*
- Berd(e)**, *n.* beard, II 265, 507, 585, v 160. [OE. *bēard*.]
- Ber(e)**, *v.* to bear, carry, wear, lift, take; to hold, possess, keep; to give birth to, produce; v 83, VIII a 136, IX 69, 109, XII a 197, XIII a 51, XVII 318, &c.; 2 *sg. subj.* VI 106; **Berth**, 3 *sg. pres. ind.* XII a 81; **Bar(e)**, *pa. t. sg.* I 146, VIII a 93, XIV c 23, 59, XV i 3; **Ber**, v 193, VI 66; **Baren**, *pl.* IX 148; **Bere**, II 307; **Bore**, *pp.* I 85, II 210; **Born(e)**, II 41, v 252, 326, XIV b 12, &c.; **Ybore**, II 546; **Yborn**, II 174. *Bar þe flour*, see **Flour**; *b. þe felazschip*, keep thee company, v 83; *the depnes . . . we bere*, the depth (of water) we draw, XVII 434, 460; *born open*, laid open, v 2 (cf. OE. *beran* *ūp*). [OE. *beran*.] See **Forbere**.
- Bere**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> clamour, outcry, I 75, II 78, XVI 214. [OE. *ge-bære*.]
- Bere**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> byre, cattle-stall, XV f 4. [OE. *býre*.]
- Bere-bag**, *n.* bag-carrier, a contemptuous nickname for Scots, XIV a 20 (note). [Stem of **Bere** v. + ON. *baggi*.] See **Bagge**.
- Ber3(e)**, *n.* mound, v 104, 110. [OE. *be(o)rg*.]
- Berge**, *v.* to protect, III *introd.* [OE. *be(o)rgan*.]
- Berlen**, *n. pl.* berries, II 258 (note). [OE. *beri(g)e*.]
- Beringe**, *n.* birth, III *introd.* [From **Bere**, v.]
- Berking**, *pres. p.* barking, II 286. [OE. *be(o)rcan*.]
- Bernakes**, *n. pl.* barnacle-geese IX 147 (note). [Anglo-L. *bernaca*, OFr. *bernaque*.]
- Bernes**, *n. pl.* barns, VIII a 177. [OE. *ber(e)n*.]
- Berth**. See **Bere**, v.
- Beselé**, *adv.* earnestly, XVII 240. [OE. *bisig* + *-lice*.] See **Bysy**.
- Besy(nes)**. See **Bysy(nes)**.
- Besyde**. See **Bisyde**.
- Beso(u)ghte**. See **Biseche**.
- Best(e)**, *adj. superl.* best, IV a 84, VIII a 197, IX 42, &c.; as *sb.*, best (food), VIII a 295; *do þi (dop þour) best*, see **Don**; *wyth þe beste*, among the best (people), with the saints, IV a 4; *adv.* best, most readily, most, VIII a 81, 107, XVII 472, &c.; *þe best*, VIII a 22. [OE. *betst*.]
- Best**, *v.* See **Ben**.
- Best(e)**, *n.* animal, creature, II 214, 280, VIII a 134, IX 88, XII a 78, &c.; **Beest**, XVII 3, 135, &c. [OFr. *beste*.]
- Beswyke**, **Byswyke**, *v.* to cheat, IV a 13, VI 208. [OE. *be-swican*.]
- Bet**, *adv. compar.*; *predic.* in *he was þe bet*, he was better off on that account, VIII b 100. [OE. *bet*.] See **Best(e)**, **Betre**.
- Bete**, *v.*<sup>1</sup> to beat, I 6, VIII a 73, XVII 407; *betes the stretes*, frequents the streets, XIV a 25; **Bette**, *pa. t. sg.* VIII a 171; **Byete**, *pa. t. subj. sg.* III 40 (OE. *bēote*); **Bet**, *pp.* XVII 413; **Betin**, **Betyn**, XIV a 8, XVII 381. [OE. *bēatan*.] See **Forbette**.
- Bete**, *v.*<sup>2</sup> to assuage, remedy, IV a 77, VIII a 233, XIV a 28, 29. [OE. *bētan*.] See **Beytter**.
- Bet3**, **Betidde**. See **Ben**, **Bitide**.
- Betraid**, *pp.* betrayed, XVI 331. [*be*- + OFr. *traîr*.]
- Bet(e)re**, **Better(e)**, **Bettre**, *adj. compar.* better, II 40, XI b 37, XIII a 60, XV c 33, &c.; *him were betre*, it would be b. for him, XII b 101; *þat war better*, for whom it would be b., XIV a 32; *adv.* better, XI b 275, XIV d 14, &c.; rather, XI b 288; *þe better*, all the better (for it), v 28, XVII 353; as *conj.*, so that . . . (the) better, VIII a 46, XVII 175 [OE. *betera*, *bet(t)ra*, *adj.*]
- Bette**. See **Bete**, *v.*<sup>1</sup>
- Betweene**, *v. f* to commit (to protection of God), XV i 18. Only

# GLOSSARY

- in this passage; perhaps an error for *becwetthe* (bequeath, commit), or *beteche* (see *Bitaste*).
- Betwen(e), Bytuene** (xv), *Bytwene* *prep.* between, among, IX 162, 166, XII a 68, b 89, xv c 1, &c.; (follows case), V 174, VII 91. [OE. *betwōn(an)*.]
- Betwix, Bitwixe**, *prep.* between, XI a 32, XVII 185. [OE. *be-twix*.]
- Bep, Beth**. See *Ben*.
- Bevil**. See *Befalle*.
- Beuore**. See *Bifor*.
- Beweile**, *v. refl.* to lament, XII a 32. [*be-* + ON. *\*veila*; cf. *veilan*, lamentation.]
- Bewyche**, *v.* to bewitch, IX 86. [OE. *be + wiccian*.]
- Bewounde**, *pp.*; *it hath b.*, wound (itself) about it, XII b 72. [OE. *be-windan*.]
- Bewty**, *n.* beauty, XVII 20. [OFr. *beauté*.]
- By**, *adv.* at the side, by; alongside (without coming on board), XVII 373; *pat . . . by*, by which, IX 300. [OE. *bī*.] See *þer(e)*.
- Bi, By**, *prep.* (i) On, at, by, II 156, 470, VIII a 167, xv g 16, XVII 75, &c.; *bi . . . side*, beside, II 66, V 76; by (way of), over, through, I 62, V 10, 16, 52, 93, X 11, XVII 477; along (with), beside, II 280, 308, V 9, VIII a 4, &c.; (following its case) II 301, V 21, XVII 18; against, touching, V 242; past, II 252, 290, V 36, 39. (ii) In, on, for (of time), II 8, 15, VIII a 95, 274, XV a 24, &c.; see *Dai*, *While*. (iii) Measured by, compared with, according to, &c., V 28, 158, 296, 297, VIII a 35, 58, 159, 248, b 57, XI b 5, &c. (iv) By (means of), through, &c., II 408, VII 6, &c.; by virtue of, XI b 20; *lyue by*, &c., live on, II 257, VIII a 284, b 26; by (of agent), XI a 59, &c. (v) By (in oaths, &c.), II 316, V 54, &c. *Bi al þing*, by every token, II 321, 375; *by so*, provided that, VIII b 40; *bi þan*, thereby, or thereupon (cf. *after þan*), II 553; *bi þat*, thereupon, V 84; by that time, VIII a 285; as *conj.*, by the time that, VIII a 294. [OE. *bī*.] See *Be*.
- By**. See *Bigge*.
- Bi-, By-**. See *Be-*.
- Bible**, *n.* bible, VIII a 227, XI b 230, &c. [OFr. *bible*.]
- Bycause (of)**, *prep.* because (of), XIII b 16; *bycause, because þat*, (conj.) because, XIII b 61, 62, IX 114, 226. [*Be, Bi + Cause, q.v.*]
- Biche**, *n.* bitch, XIV b 78. [OE. *bicca*.]
- Byolpypped**. See *Beclipte*.
- Bicome, Become**, *v.* to arrive; become; befit; *hyt bycomeþ for*, it befits, VIII b 65; *Becam, pa. t. sg.* XII b 13; *Becomen, pl.* IX 148; *Bicome*, II 288; *Bicome, pp.* II 194; *wher sche was bicome, whider þai bicome, wher he became*, what had become (became) of her (them, him), II 194, 288, XII b 13. [OE. *be-cuman*.]
- Bidde, Bydde, Bid**, *v.* to pray, beg, VIII a 233; to bid, I 265, VI 160, VIII a 210, XI b 79, XII a 48, XIV d 3, XVI 118, XVII 418, &c.; *Bad(de)*, *pa. t. sg.* bade, XII a 46, XV i 16, XVI 201, XVII 309, &c.; *bad to*, bade, XII b 87; *Bed*, prayed to, III 46 (OKt. *bed*); *Bad, pl.* II 88, 137; *Bede*, *pp.* XII a 42 (prayed), 101 (commanded). [OE. *biðdan*; the confusion with *þeodan* began in OE.] See *Bede*.
- Bidderes**, *n. pl.* beggars, mendicants, VIII a 197. [OE. *bid-dere*.]
- Byd(d)ying, Bidding**, *n.* bidding, commands, I 86, XVI 257, XVII 76, 121, 375. [From *Bidde*.]
- Bide, Byde**, *v.* to abide (*intr.* remain, *trans.* await, face, endure), V 224, VI 39, XIV c 21, 47, XVI 23, 207, &c. [OE. *biðan*.] See *Abide*.
- Bidene, Bydene, Bedeyn** (xvii), *adv.* forthwith, withal (often meaningless), VII 79, 127, XIV b

# GLOSSARY

- 74, XVII 442; *al bidene*, XIV b 11. [See *N.E.D.*]
- Bye, Byete.** See Bigge, Bete, v.<sup>1</sup>
- Bifel.** See Befalle.
- Bifor(e), Byforn, Befor(e), Beuore, &c., adv.** before (hand), II 147, VII 121, &c.; *cir befor*, X 140; as *sb.*, XVII 331; *prep.* before, in presence of, &c., II 42, III 58, V 4, IX 126, &c.; (of time) VI 238, XI b 48, &c.; *bifore þat*, before (*conj.*), XI b 195; *Byfore, conj.* (with *subj.*), before, VI 170. [OE. *be-foran.*]
- Big, Bigge, v.** to take up one's abode; to *big his boure*, to establish his dwelling, XIV b 26; *bigges him*, settles himself, XIV b 24. [ON. *byggja.*] See Biging.
- Bigan, Began, &c.** See Begynne.
- Bigge, Bygge, adj.** strong, lusty, big, IV a 51, V 33, VI 14, VII 139, VIII a 207. [See *N.E.D.*]
- Bigge, v.** to buy, purchase, pay for, redeem, VIII a 275; Beie, XII b 24; By(e), IV a 65, IX 113; Bye, VI 118; Bugge, XV g 3; *pa. t.* Boght, IV a 38; Bouzte, VIII a 201; Bouhte, XII b 100; Boght, *pp.* IV a 80, XII b 153, XVII 373; Bought(e), XVI 8, 275; Iboust, XV g 26 (see App. p. 278); *it bees boght full dere*, you will pay for it dearly, XVII 373. [OE. *bycgan*, (Kt.) *becgan.*] See Abugge.
- Byggynge, n.** buying, IX 90. [From prec.] See Bying.
- Bigile, Bygyle, v.** to deceive, V 345, 348, 359, XIV b 44. [OE. *be-* + OFr. *guiler.*] See Gile.
- Biging, n.** dwelling, XIV a 20. [From Big, v.]
- Bygonne, &c.** See Begynne.
- Bigrucoceth, 3 sg. pres.** grumbles at, VIII a 69. [OE. *be-* + OFr. *groucher.*] See Grucche.
- By3e, n.** ring, VI 106. [OE. *bȝe.*]
- Bihold, Behald(e), v.** to behold, look, II 387, 502, IV a 81, XVII 509, 534, &c.; *bihold on, behold so*, look at, II 367, XVII 343; Beholdes, *imper. pl.*, XVI 195; Behelde, *pa. t. sg.* VII 64; Biheld, II 101, 320, 323, 530; Behielde, *pl.* XII a 164; Bihold, -hold(e)(n), *pp.* II 409, 417, XII b 116. [OE. *be-hāldan.*] See Holde(n).
- Bihote, Byhote, v.** to promise, vow, VIII a 227; *byhote God*, I vow to God, VIII a 273; Behihtest, 2 *sg. pa. t.* XII b 43; Behete, *pp.* XVII 430; Bihot, XV a 20. [OE. *be-hātan.*] See Hote.
- Bihoue, v.** to need; *impers.* in *me bihoues*, I must, it is time for me to, V 228; *pers.* in Bus, 2 *sg. pres.*; *þou bus be*, you ought to be, XVI 338; Behuift, *pa. t.* had need (to), X 156. [OE. *be-hōfian*; with the reduced form *bus cf. has, hast*, &c.]
- Bye.** See Bigge.
- Bying, n.** redemption, XVI 12. [From By, to buy. See Bigge, v.; Byggynge.]
- Bils, n.** fine linen, II 242. [OFr. *bysse.*]
- Biknowe, Byknowe, v.** to confess, V 317 (*I b. yow*, I confess to you), VIII b 96; Beknownen, *pp.* *ic þou art b. of*, you have confessed, V 323. [OE. *be-cnāwan*, only recorded in sense 'know'.]
- Bile, Bill (XVII), n.** beak, XII a 182, XVII 508. [OE. *bile.*]
- Byled, pa. t.** boiled, bubbled, V 14; Boyled, *pp.* V 106. [OFr. *boillir*; for similar development of vowel in v, see Nyc, Disstrye.]
- Bylyue, n.** food, VIII b 21, 29. [OE. *bi-leofa.*]
- Bylongeth, v. impers.** it belongs to, befits, VIII b 70. [Be- + Longe, v.<sup>2</sup>]
- Bilow, v.** to humble, VIII a 223. [Formed on Lowe *adj.*]
- Bilt, n.** dwelling, \*II 483 (MS. *ybilt*, but required sense 'lodged' is unexampled). [Obscurely rel. to ME. *bilden*, build; see *N.E.D.*]
- Binam, pa. t. sg.** in b. [*hym*] his

# GLOSSARY

- mmam*, deprived him of his talent, VIII *a* 237; Benome, *pp.* in *b. þe poure ane penny*, deprived the poor of a penny, III 13. [OE. *be-niman*.] See Nyme.
- Bynde, *v.* to bind, unite, IV *a* 54, XVI 97; Bond, *pa. t. sg.* XII *b* 120 (but *sb.* = *trousse* is possible; see Bonde, *n.*); Ybounde, *pp.* II 394. [OE. *bindan*.] See Vnbynde.
- Biquete, *n.* (bequest), will, VIII *a* 79. [OE. \**be-cwiss*, related to *be-cweþan*, bequeath; cf. Heste.]
- Bir, Byr, Bur (*v.*), *n.* a following wind, VII 126; speed (in *with a byr*, speedily) XVII 371; violence, V 254; strength, V 193. [ON. *byr-r*.]
- Byrd. See Brid(*d*).
- Birne, *v.* to deprive; *I wil it hym b.*, I will deprive him of it, VIII *a* 242. [OE. *be-rēafian*, *be-rēfan*.]
- Byrre, *v.* to bury, I 137, 140, 142, 144. [OE. *byrgan*.]
- Byrne, Burne, *v. trans.* and *intr.* to burn, X 21 (rime with *in* requires Brin, *q. v.*), X 181, &c.; Byrnand, *pres. p.* IV *a* 26, X 27, 30. [OE. *birnan*, *byrnan*, &c., *intr.*] See Bren, Brin.
- Byrthen, *n.* burden, IV *a* 49. [OE. *byrþen*.]
- Biseche, Bysech, Beseche, *v.* to implore, II 113, 453, VI 30, IX 269, 328, XII *a* 38; Besoghto, *pa. t.* XII *a* 26; Besoughte, IX 294. [OE. *be + sēan*.] See Seche.
- Bisemþ, *v. impers.* it suits, V 123. [Be- + Seme, *q. v.*]
- Bisyde, Besyde, *adv.* at the side, at one's side, hard by, I 209, V 20, 162, XII *b* 125. [OE. *be sīdan*, at the side.]
- Biside(n), Be-, Bysyde, *prep.* beside, XI *b* 57; (following its case) I 243, II 303, V 197, XIV *b* 28, &c. See prec.
- Bisides, Bisydeþ, *adv.* at the side(s), round about, II 401, V 96. [Prec. + *adv. -es*.]
- Bisides, Bysydes, *prep.* beside, near, XIII *a* 10; (following pron.) II 281. [As prec.]
- Bysy(e), Bysie, Besy (*aboute*), *adj.* busy, occupied (with, in), XI *b* 252, 287, 289, 293, 297. [OE. *bisig*.]
- Bysynes(se), Besynes (*iv*), *n.* restlessness, IV *b* 28; industry, XIII *b* 24; worldly *b.* attention to worldly affairs, XI *b* 2, 309; *b. of worldly occupation*, pre-occupation with w. affairs, XI *b* 251. [OE. *bisig + -nes*.]
- Bis(s)hop, Bysshop(p)e, Bis-soppe, *n.* bishop, I 246, III 58 (*dat. sg.*), VIII *a* 143, *b* 74, XI *a* 66, &c. [OE. *biscop*.]
- Byswykeþ. See Beswyke.
- Biswynke, *v.* to earn with toil, VIII *a* 207. [OE. *be-swincan*.]
- Bitaste (= bitaihte), *pa. t.* entrusted, XV *g* 21. [OE. *betācan*, *pa. t.* *betāhte*; on spelling see App. p. 278.]
- Byte, *v.* to bite, XVII 229; *apon the bone shal it byte*, it shall cut to the bone, XVII 220. [OE. *bitan*.]
- Bitide, Bytyde, &c., *v.* to happen; to happen to, befall, VI 37; *pres. subj.* V 127, 315, 341, XIV *a* 12; Betidde, *pp.* XVI 100; *tide wat bitide*, come what may, II 339. [OE. *be + tīdan*] See Tide.
- Bityme, *adv.* in all *bityme*, in good time, XIV *b* 27. [From *bi tyme*, in time; cf. OE. *tō tīman*.] See Tyme.
- Bitte, Bytte, *n.* cutting edge, V 242; blade V 156. [ON. *bit*, cutting edge; OE. *bite*, a cut.]
- Bittir, Byttor, *adj.* bitter, IV *b* 27; salt (of water), IX 244; grievous, XIV *c* 68, XVI 207, &c. [OE. *bitter*.]
- Bytuene. See Betwene.
- Bytwyste, *prep.* between (following its noun), VI 104. [A form of ME. *be-twixt(e)*, extended from Betwix, *q. v.*]
- Biwyled, *pp.* deluded, V 357. [OE. *be + wiglian*; cf. *be-*

# GLOSSARY

- wizelien*, Layamon 969.] See Wiles.
- Blabre**, *v.* to babble, XI *b* 248. [Echoic; cf. Babelynge, Blubre.]
- Blac**, **Blak**, *adj.* black, II 265, IX 23, XII *a* 99; *rowe and blac*, with shaggy black hair, II 459; **Blake**, *oblique* and *pl.* IX 4, XII *a* 137, XV *c* 14. [OE. *blæc*.]
- Blame**, *n.* blame; scolding, XVII 299; *v.* to blame, V 300, IX 274 (mistranslation; see note), &c.; *to blame*, in the wrong, XIV *b* 85. [OFr. *bla(s)me*; *bla(s)mer*.]
- Blan**. See Blynne.
- Blasphemye** (*to*), *n.* blasphemy (against), XI *b* 110. [OFr. *blas-femie*.]
- Blawene**. See Blowe.
- Ble**, **Bleo** (XV), *n.* hue, complexion, in *bryt on ble*, fair of face, II 455; radiance, XV *b* 16. [OE. *blēo*.]
- Blede**, *v.* to bleed, XIV *c* 13; **Bled**(*de*), *pa. t.* I 119, II 80. [OE. *blēdan*.]
- Blefte**. See Bleue.
- Blende**, *pa. t.* mingled, in *blende in his face*, rose to his cheeks, V 303; **Blent**, *pp.* in *blent . . . in blysse*, set amidst joy, VI 25. [ME. *blenden* obscurely related to OE. *blāndan*, or ON. *blanda*.] See Vnblendyde.
- Blended**, *pp.* deluded, V 351. [OE. *blēndan*.] See Blyndip.
- Blenk**, *v.* to gleam, V 247. [OE. \**blencan*, possibly identical with recorded *blencan*, to cheat; for ME. *blenchen*, *blenken*, &c. = to gleam, look at, glance aside, blench, cheat. Compare Glent, Glyfte.]
- Blent**, **Bleo**. See Blende, Ble.
- Blepeliche**, *adv.* gladly, III 53. [Obscure alteration of OE. *blīpelice*.]
- Blue**, *v.* to remain; *pres. subj.* III *introd.*; **Blefte**, *pa. t.* III 18. [OE. *blēwfan*.] See Leue, *v.*<sup>1</sup>
- Bleu3**, **Blew**. See Blowe.
- Blew**, *n.* blue (stuff), XVII 200 (note); *cled in Stafford blew*, beaten black and blue; cf. *clothe here well yn Stafford blew*, Rel. Ant., I, p. 29. [OFr. *bleu*.] See Blwe.
- Blynde**, *adj. pl.* blind, deluded, XI *b* 79; as *sb.*, the blind, VIII *a* 115, 185. [OE. *blind*.]
- Blyndip**, 3 *sg. pres.* (blinds), deludes, XI *b* 7, 107. [OE. *blēndan* infl. by *blind*, *adj.*] See Blended.
- Blyndnesse**, *n.* blindness, XI *b* 221. [OE. *blindnes*.]
- Blyn**(*ne*) (*of*), *v.* to cease (from), IV *a* 39, V 254, XVI 16, 236, XVII 110 (or *I blyn* = without stopping); **Blan**, *pa. t. pl.* I 73. [OE. *blinnan*.]
- Blis**(*se*), **Blys**(*se*), *n.* happiness, joy, IV *a* 11, 40, VI 12, XIV *b* 19, XV *b* 3, &c.; as *haue I blys*, so may I have (eternal) joy, XVII 402. [OE. *bliss*.]
- Bliss**(*e*), **Blesse**, *v.* to bless, I *introd.*, VI 76, XVI 400, 404, XVII 174, 256, 300, 467; bless with sign of the cross, V 3, XII *b* 86; **Blist**, *pp.* XVII 514. [OE. *blētsian*, already infl. by *blētsian*, *blissian*, to gladden.]
- Blisseful**, **Blysful**, *adj.* joyous, II 412, 438, VI 49; as *sb.*, blissful one, VI 61; \***Blissefulest** (MS. blifulest), *superl.* II 527. [OE. *bliss + ful*.]
- Blissing**, -*ying*, *n.* blessing, XVI 401, XVII 178. [OE. *blētsing*.] See Blis(*se*).
- Blipe**, **Blype**, **Blith** (XIV *b*), *adj.* happy, glad, V 253, XIV *b* 49; *blipe of*, glad at, II 573; *patow be blipe of hir*, that you may have joy of her, II 471. [OE. *blīpe*.]
- Blypely**, happily, VI 25. [OE. *blīpelice*.] See Blepeliche.
- Blue**, **Blyue**. See Belyue.
- Blo**, *adj.* black and blue, XVII 413. [ON. *blá-r*.]
- Blod**(*e*), **Bloode**, *n.* blood, I 119, V 246, IX 141, XV *g* 16, XVI 12, &c.; creature, XII *b* 220; *byndes blode and bane*, keeps the



# GLOSSARY

- body together**, IV *a* 54. [OE.]
- Blodi, Blody**, *adj.* bloody, II 110, IV *a* 80, 86, &c.; *blody bretheren*, brothers in blood, fellow men, VIII *a* 201. [OE. *blōdig*.]
- Blom**, *n.* flower, perfection, VI 218. [ON. *blóm*, *blómi*.]
- Blosme(n)**, *n. pl.* flowers, blossoms, II 61, XV *b* 2. [OE. *blōsma*.]
- Blowe(n)**, *v.* to blow, VII 106, XIII *a* 7, XV *h* 6, &c.; to brag, XIV *c* 101; **Bleu3**, *pa. t. sg.* XIV *c* 77; **Blew**, VII 130, (sounded the trumpet) X 43; **Blawene**, *pp.* IV *b* 13. [OE. *blāwan*.]
- Bloweing**, *n.* blowing (of horns), II 285. [OE. *blāwung*.]
- Blubred**, *pa. t.* bubbled, V 106. [Echoic; cf. *labre*.]
- Blunder**, *n.* trouble, confusion, XVII 406. [Not known.]
- Blwe**, *adj.* blue, VI 63. [OFr. *bleu*.] See **Blew**.
- Bo**, *adv.* as well, too, II 27. [OE. *bā*, *adj. neut.*] See **Boþe**.
- Boc-house**, *n. dat. sg.* library, III *introd.* [OE. *bōc-hūs*.] See **Bok(e)**.
- Bodeþ**, 3 *sg. pres.* predicts, portends, XIII *a* 62. [OE. *bodian*.]
- Bodi(e)**, **Body**, *n.* body, I 113, II 105, XVI 23, &c.; *gon on bodi and bones*, be in the flesh, live, II 54. [OE. *bodig*.]
- Bodyly**, **Bodely**, *adj.* of (the) body, bodily (opposed to 'spiritual'), VI 118, XI *b* 147, 158, &c.; *bodely almes*, (giving of) charitable gifts for the needs of the body, XI *b* 2, 270, 301, 303. [From prec.]
- Boffet**, *n.* buffet, V 275. [OFr. *buffet*.]
- Bogh**, **Boʒe3** (*pl. v.*), **Bou3** (II), *n.* bough, branch, II 61, V 9, XV *a* 14, XVII 535. [OE. *bōg*.]
- Boght**. See **Bigge**, *v.*
- Boʒe**, *v.* to bend, bow; turn, go, V 110; **Boʒen**, *pa. t. pl.* turned, went their way, V 9; **Bowand**, *pres. p.* (bowing), obedient, XVII 76 (cf. *Buxome*, and *Lowte*). [OE. *būgan*.]
- Boyes**, *n. pl.* fellows, knaves, XVI 97, 145. [Obscure.]
- Boyled**. See **Byled**.
- Bok(e)**, **Boc**, *n.* book, III *introd.*, VII 14, 65, IX 294, XI *b* 229, &c.; Bible, VIII *a* 248, *b* 39; Bible, or other book (as a book of the Gospels, a psalter, &c.) on which an oath could be taken, XII *b* 165. [OE. *bōc*.]
- Bold(e)**, **Balde**, *adj.* bold, II 139, IV *a* 51, 83, &c.; and that be ye bold, and be sure of that, XVII 524; **Boldely**, *adv.* XVI 178. [OE. *bāld*.]
- Boldyng**, *n.* encouragement, VII 14. [From prec.; cf. OE. *bāldian*, *intr.*]
- Bole**, *n.* bull; in *bole-hyde*, bull's hide, XV *h* 11. [ON. *boli*.]
- Bollyng**, *n.* swelling; for *b.* of her wombe, to prevent the swelling of their bellies, VIII *a* 209. [ME. *bolle-n*, *bolne-n*, ON. *bolgna*.]
- Bolted**, *pp.* bolted, shackled, VIII *a* 130. [From OE. *bolt*, *n.*]
- Bon(e)**, **Bane**, *n.* bone, II 54, IV *a* 54, VIII *a* 85, IX 141, XVII 220, 253, &c.; see **Bak**, **Blod(e)**, **Bodi**, **Flesch**. [OE. *bān*.]
- Bond**. See **Bynde**.
- Bond(e)**, *n.* bond; bond to sheaves, the straw binding for sheaves, VIII *b* 14; her *bonde*, the bondage they imposed, XIV *c* 47; **Bandis**, *pl.* bonds, XVI 190, 196; Our Lady's bonds, pregnancy, XVII 209 (see *N.E.D.*, s.v. *Band*, *Bond*). [ON. *band*.]
- Bond(e)men**, *n. pl.* bondmen, serfs, VIII *a* 46, *b* 69; **Bondemenne**, *gen. pl.* VIII *b* 74. [OE. *bōnda* (from ON. *bōndr*) + *mann*, influenced in sense by prec. (etymol. unconnected).]
- Bone**, *n.* boon, request. I 131. [ON. *bōn*.]
- Bonk(e)**, **Bonkke**, **Bank(k)e**, *n.* bank, XIII *a* 40; shore, VII 126; hill-side, V 9, 14, 94, 97,

# GLOSSARY

- 104, 132, 149, XIV *b* 20. [ON. *bakki*, older \**banke*.]
- Bood-woorde**, *n.* tidings, XVI 366. [Stem of OE. *bodian* + *word*; cf. ON. *boð-orð*, command.]
- Booste**. See *Boste*.
- Bord(e)**, *n.* board, XII *a* 92, XVII 119, 279; table, II 578, VIII *a* 262. [OE. *bórd*.]
- Bore**, Bare (XIV), *n.* boar, VIII *a* 31, XIV *b* 19, 25, 49, 87. [OE. *bār*.]
- Bore**; **Born(e)**. See *Bere*, *v.*
- Borelych**, *adj.* stout, V 80; mas-sive, V 156. [Obscure.]
- Borgh**, **Borough**, *n.* town, VIII *a* 301; *in borough*, among town-folk, XIV *d* 4. [OE. *burg*, *buruh*.]
- Borne**, **Burn**, *n.* stream, V 106, XIV *a* 2; Buerne, flood, sea (an allit. use), VII 159. [OE. *burne*.]
- Borow**, *n.* surety; *I dar be thi b.*, I'll go bail (for you), XVII 204. [OE. *borg*.]
- Borwed**, *pa. t.* borrowed, II 499, VIII *a* 93. [OE. *borgian*.]
- Boste**, **Booste** (XVI), *n.* boasting, XIV *a* 20; pride, XIV *a* 8; arro-gance, XIV *b* 85, XVI 214. [Obscure.]
- Boste**, *v.* to boast, XIV *c* 101; Boasting, *n.* boasting, XIV *a* 9. [Obscure.]
- Bot(e)**, **But**, *adv.* only, but, II 228, IV *a* 32, V 97, VI 22, VIII *a* 276, IX 17, X 159, XIII *a* 38, &c. [OE. *būtan*.] See next, and *Boute*.
- Bot(e)**, **But**, *conj.* (i) Except, but, VI 136, VIII *b* 9, IX 198, &c.; *ne . . bote*, only, III 6, 22, &c. (cf. *Bote*, *adv.*); *noȝt deop bote to þe kneo*, only knee deep, XIII *a* 39; *bote ȝef*, except that, XIII *b* 5. (ii) Unless (with *subj.*), VI 68, VIII *a* 1, 39, 112, 143, *b* 95, X 73, XV *c* 17, *g* 21, XVII 44, 386, 550; *bot(e) ef*, &c., un-less, VIII *a* 17, 53, X 78, XVII 247, &c.; *bot þat*, unless, II 428. (iii) But, however, yet, I 21, II 74, IV *a* 57, V 61, VI 14, &c.; (misplaced) XII *a* 79 (note), 105; *bot ȝif* (*ȝeiȝ*), and yet, X 95, XVII 35, 64, 213. [OE. *būtan*, *būte*.]
- Bot(e)**, *n.* cure, redress, salva-tion, IV *a* 7, VIII *a* 187, XIV *c* 84; *bote of*, cure for, II 552. [OE. *bōt*.]
- Botel**, *n.* bottle, VIII *b* 54. [OFr. *botel*.]
- Botened**, *pp.* cured, I 241, VIII *a* 185. [Formed on *Bot(e)*, *n.*]
- Boþ(e)**, **Both**, **Bath** (IV, X), *adj.* and *pron.* both, IV *a* 56, V 315, VI 13; *in hem boþe* (after nega-tive), in either of them, XI *b* 27; *vs both*, us two, XVII 185; *on bath halfis*, on both sides, X 198; *vpon boþe halus*, on either side, V 2, 97; as *adv.* (originally *pron.* in apposition), as well, too, V 306, VIII *a* 119, 162, 252, 274, *b* 46; *boþ(e) . . and*, *bath . . and*, both . . and, I 52, II 86, IV *a* 66, &c. [ON. *bōði-r*.] See *Bo*.
- Bopem**, *n.* bottom, V 77. [OE. *botm*, \**bōpm* (still NWM.); cf. *bytme*, *byþme*.]
- Bouȝ**. See *Bugh*.
- Bouȝte**, **Bouhte**, &c. See *Bigge*, *v.*
- Boun(e)**, **Bowne**, *adj.* ready, IV *a* 81, XIV *a* 9, XVI 201; prompt, XVI 257; *make youe b.*, prepare yourselves, arm, XVI 178; *make þe b.*, hasten, XVI 339; *waȝ nowhere b.*, was not to be found anywhere, VI 174. [ON. *būin-n*, *būn-*.] See *Busk*.
- Bounté**, excellence, XV *c* 26. [OFr. *bonité*.]
- Bour(e)**, **Bower**, *n.* abode, XIV *b* 26, XV *e* 17, 18; *pl.* bowers, chambers, XVII 348. [OE. *būr*.]
- Bourde**, *n.* entertainment, II 445; **Bourdys**, *pl.* jests, II 9. [OFr. *bourde*.]
- Boute**, *prep.* without, V 285. [OE. *būtan*.] See *Bot(e)*.
- Bowand**. See *Boȝe*.
- Bowe**, *n.* bow, IX 258, XII *a* 57. [OE. *boga*.]
- Bowers**. See *Bour(e)*.
- Braggere**, *n.* braggart, VIII *a* 148.

# GLOSSARY

- [From ME. *braggen*, of unknown origin.]
- Braid.** See Brode.
- Braide, Brayd, Brade, n.** a sudden movement; *in a brade*, in a trice, XVII 21; *bittir braide*, grievous onslaught, XIV c 68, XVI 207. [OE. *brægd*.]
- Brayde, v.** to move quickly; draw, V 251; *Brayde, pa. t.* threw, V 309; *Brayde, pp.* in *brayde down*, lowered, V 1. [OE. *bregdan*.]
- Brayn, n.** brain, XV h 6 (*distrib. sg.*; see Hert). [OE. *brægn*.]
- Brak.** See Breke(n).
- Brandis, n. pl.** pieces of burnt wood, X 113. [OE. *brānd*.]
- Bras, n.** brass, XVI 196. [OE. *bræs*.]
- Brast.** See Brest(e).
- Braunche, Branch, n.** branch, I 121, V 109, XVII 511. [OFr. *branche*.]
- Bre, n.** foaming sea, VII 152. [App. a curious allit. use of OE. *brīu*, \**brēo*, broth.]
- Bred(e), n.** bread, VIII a 18, 129, 131, 207, 298; *as euer etc I brede* = so may I live, on my life, XVII 395; *hors bred, houndes bred*, bread of beans, bran, &c., for the food of horses and dogs, VIII a 208. [OE. *brēad*.]
- Bred-corne, n.** grain for bread, VIII a 64. [Prec. + OE. *corn*.]
- Brede, Breed, n.** breadth, XVII 126; *of breed*, in breadth, XVII 259. [OE. *brēdu*.]
- Brede, v. intr.** (to expand), grow, VI 55. [OE. *brēdan*.]
- Bredeȝ, n. pl.** planks, V 3. [OE. *brēd*.]
- Breff, adj.** brief, meagre, VII 74. [OFr. *bref*.]
- Breke(n), v.** to break, violate, VIII a 31, IX 46, XI b 187, XVI 257, XVII 387, &c.; *intr.* II 338, IX 118; *Brak, pa. t. sg.* X 106; *Breke, pa. t. pl.* V 14; *Broke, pp.* injured, VIII b 34 (see *Broke-legged*, VIII a 130); *Brokynne*, broken, XVI 195. [OE. *brecan*.]
- Brekyng, n.** breaking; *smale b.*, breaking a long note into a number of short ones, fine trilling, XI b 138. [OE. *brecung*.]
- Brem(e), adj.** fierce, violent, V 132, VII 139, 152, &c.; threatening, wild, V 77; passionate, VII 104; glorious, II 61; *adv.* gloriously, XV b 27. [OE. *brēme*, adj. and adv.]
- Brem(e)ly, adv.** fiercely, violently, V 251, VII 106; exceedingly, V 165. [From prec.]
- Bren, Bran, n.** bran, VIII a 175, 278. [OFr. *brēm*.]
- Bren, v.** to burn; *Brent, pp.* VII 152, 159; *Brennyng, pres. p.* fervent, XI b 67; *Brennyng, n.* burning, IX 10. [ON. *brenna*.] See *Byrne*, *Brin*.
- Brent, adj.** steep, V 97. [Cf. OE. *brant*.]
- Bren-waterys, n. pl.** XV h 22, 'water-burners', i. e. blacksmiths (from the hiss of the hot iron when plunged in water). Compare *burn-the-wind*, a nickname for blacksmiths. [Bren, v. + Watter.]
- Brere, n.** briar, II 276. [OE. *brær*, *brēr*.]
- Brest, n.** breast, V 303. [OE. *brēost*.]
- Brest(e), Brast (XVII), v. trans.** and *intr.* to burst, IV a 81, XV h 6, XVII 264; *Barste, pa. t. sg.* VIII a 171; *Brosten, pp.* XVI 196. [OE. *berstan*; ON. *bresta*.]
- Bretfull, adj.** full to the brim, VII 164. [OE., ME. *brerd*, full, prob. with substitution of ON. cognate form \**bredd*-; cf. Swed. *braddfull*.]
- Brether(en).** See Broȝer.
- Breue, v.** to set down in writing; *Breuyt, pa. t. sg.* VII 65; *pp.* VII 14. [Med. L. *breuiare*, OE. *brēfan*.]
- Brid(d), Byrd (XVII), n.** young bird, XII a 196; (small) bird, II 305, VII 104, XII a 169, 172, XVII 514, &c. [OE. *bridd*, young bird (late Nth. pl. *bridas*).]

# GLOSSARY

- Brydel**, *n.* bridle, v 84. [OE. *bridel*.]
- Brygge**, *n.* (draw)bridge, v 1. [OE. *brycg*.] See Draw-brig.
- Bryght(e)**, **Bryht**, **Bryht**, **Briht** (XII), **Bryht** (XV), &c., *adj.* and *adv.* bright, II 152, 269, 455, IV a 72, b 6, V 158, XII b 130, XV b 26, XVII 9, &c. [OE. *berht*, *byrht*.]
- Brightnes**, *n.* splendour, XVII 15, 20. [OE. *berht-nes*.]
- Brimme**, **Brymme**, *n.* water's edge, v 104; brink, XII b 32. [OE. *brymme*.]
- Brin**, **Bryn**, *v. trans.* to burn, x 21 (implied by rime); **Brynt**, **Brint**, *pa. t.* x 113; *pp.* x 32, 165. [ON. *brinna*.] See **Bren**, **Byrne**.
- Bring(e)**, **Bryng(e)**, *v.* to bring, take, escort; cause to be; IV a 7, b 46, VIII a 64, IX 60, x 17, XI a 3 (adduce), XII a 193, XIV b 68, &c.; **Brought(e)**, **Brouht(e)**, **Brought**, **Brouht**, **Brouht(e)**, *pa. t.* I 123, II 93, III 11, VIII a 288, XII a 25, b 47 (*subj.*), XVI 161, &c.; *pp.* v 77, VII 90, XIV b 72, &c.; **Ybrouht**, II 389, 563; *bryng it to an ende*, accomplish it, IX 169; *bringen forth*, bring forth, produce, IX 60, XII a 193; *to thay bryng*, until they bring (something), XVII 499; *broughte oute of*, rescued from, XVI 161; *brought it so breff*, made it so meagre, VII 74; *brought dede*, brought to death, I 213. [OE. *bringan*.]
- Brynstane**, *n.* sulphur, x 20. [OE. *bryn-stān*.]
- Brytouns**, *n. pl.* men of Brittany, II 16. [OFr. *Breton*; L. *Brit(t)ānem*, Briton.]
- Britoner**, **Brytonere**, *n.* a man of Brittany, VIII a 148, 169. [From prec.]
- Brockes**, *n. pl.* badgers, VIII a 31. [OE. *brocc*.]
- Brode**, *adj.* broad, v 1, 165, VII 106, XV g 5; **Brood**, XIII a 39; **Braid**, x 24. [OE. *brād*.]
- Brought(e)**, **Brouht(e)**. See **Bring(e)**.
- Broke**, *n.* brook, stream, v 14, 132, VIII a 129. [OE. *brōc*.]
- Broke**, **Brokynne**. See **Breke(n)**.
- Broke-legged**, *adj.* broken-legged, crippled, VIII a 130. See **Breke(n)**, **Legges**.
- Brood**. See **Brode**.
- Brosten**. See **Brest(e)**.
- Brope**, *adj.* fierce, v 165. [ON. *brōð-r*.]
- Bropey**, *adv.* fiercely, v 309. [ON. *brōð-liga*.]
- Broper**, *n.* brother, I 210, XII a 6; **Brother**, *gen. sg.* XII a 18; **Brether**, *pl.* XVII 318, 320 (*see note*); **Brøperen**, brethren, VIII a 201, XI b 243, &c. [OE. *brōþor*; ON. *brōðr*, *pl.*]
- Brouch**, *n.* trinket, XIII b 23 (translates L. *crepundia*). [OFr. *broche*.]
- Brouht(e)**, &c. See **Bring(e)**.
- Broun(e)**, **Browne**, *adj.* brown, VIII a 301, XV c 14; dull-hued, IX 38, 98; dark, VI 177. [OE. *brūn*.]
- Browe**, *n. pl.* eyebrows, XV c 14; forehead, v 238. [OE. *brū*.]
- Buen**. See **Ben**.
- Buerno(s)**. See **Borne**, **Burne**.
- Bugge**. See **Bugge**, *v.*
- Bugles**, *n. pl.* bullocks, IX 256. [OFr. *bugle*.]
- Bur**. See **Bir**.
- Burde**, *pa. t. subj. impers.* (it would befit) in *me burde*, I had better, ought to, v 210, 360. [OE. *ge-byrian*.]
- Burgase**, **Buriays**, *n. pl.* burgesses, citizens, II 504, XIV b 65. [OFr. *burgeis*, *sg.* and *pl.*]
- Buriel**, **Buryel**, *n.* tomb, XIII a 46. [OE. *byrgels*.]
- Burne**. See **Byrne**.
- Burne**, *n.* warrior, knight, man, v 3, 21, 210, 247, 252, 270, 309, VI 37; *voc.* sir (knight), v 216, 254; **Buernes**, *pl.* VII 90, 91. [OE. *beorn*.]
- Burnist**, *pp.* polished, II 368. [OFr. *burnir*, *burniss*.]
- Burp-tonge**, *n.* native speech,

# GLOSSARY

- XIII *b* 16, 43. [OE. *byrþ* + *tänge*.]  
**Bus.** See *Bihoue*.  
**Busk**, *v.* (to prepare oneself); make haste, V 216; *refl.* in *busk þe*, hasten, XIV *a* 22; *trans.* (prepare), make, V 180. [ON. *bula-sk*, *refl.*] See *Boune*.  
**Busshol**, *n.* bushel (a measure of volume varying very greatly at different times and places), VIII *a* 64. [OFr. *buisiel*.]  
**But.** See *Bot(e)*.  
**Butras**, *n.* (1 *pl.*) buttress, II 361. [! OFr. *bouteres*, nom. sg., or pl., of *bouteret*.]  
**Bup.** See *Ben*.  
**Buxome**, *adj.* obedient, willing, VIII *a* 188. [Stem of OE. *būgan* + *-sum*.] See *Boze*.  
**Caas.** See *Cas(e)*.  
**Cagge(n)**, *v.* to tie up, VI 152. [Not known; only allit.]  
**Cayre**, *v.* to ride, V 52. [ON. *keyra*.]  
**Calabre**, *n.* calaber (a squirrel fur), VIII *a* 265. [OFr. *Calabre*, Calabria.]  
**Calde.** See *Colde*.  
**Call(e)**, *v.* to call (cry, summon, name), I 32, IV *b* 47, VI 182, X 70, XVI 126, XVII 432, &c.; *subj. sg.* XVI 141; *Cald*, *pp.* named, VII 70, XVII 513. [OE. (late) *ceallian*, from ON. *kalla*.]  
**Cam.** See *Com*.  
**Cammede**, *adj.* XV *k* 5; ! snub-nosed (cf. *Reeve's Tale*, 14); ! crooked (fits context better, but see etym.). [Cf. OFr., ME. *camus*, snub-nosed; *cammed*, bent (from Welsh *cam*), is not else recorded till later.]  
**Can**, *v.*<sup>1</sup> I know, know how to, can. *Pres. ind.* 1, 3 *sg.* Can, II 22, 437, XIII *b* 38 (knows), &c.; *Con*, V 70, 215, XV *c* 26; *Kan(ne)*, I 45, IV *a* 11, 90, XVI 74; 2 *sg.* Can(ne), XVI 100, XVII 229; *Canstow* (see *pou*), VIII *b* 12; *pl.* Can, IX 208; *Con*, VI 21; *Conen*, know, IX 185, 208; *Conne*, VI 161; *Connep*, VIII *a* 116, XIII *a* 17, *b* 22, 38 (know); *Cunne*, XIV *c* 101; *Kan(e)*, IV *b* 21, 41, 44, 86; *Konne*, VIII *a* 70; *Kunnen*, XI *b* 153 (know), 275; *pres. subj.* *Conne*, VIII *a* 143; *Kun(ne)*, XIV *b* 90, VIII *a* 250; *pa. t.* *Coupe*, *Cowpe*, I *introd.*, V 115, 205, XII *introd.*, *b* 200, &c.; *cowpe?* (2 *sg.*) with double constr., VI 124 (note); *pa. t. subj.* could, might (have), *Coude*, XI *b* 271, XVII 286; *Coupe*, V 276, 353; *Cowth*, XVII 473. *Can no other red*, XII *b* 102, see *Red*; *how I can of*, what I can do in the way of, XVII 250. It is sometimes difficult to distinguish this verb from the next (*e.g.* at V 205, VI 139, XVII 468). [OE. *can*, *con*; *cūpe*.]  
**Can**, *Con*, *v.*<sup>2</sup> *auxil.* used with infin. as equivalent of simple *pa. t.* (*con calle* = called, V 144), and also, by confusion with *prec.*, of a present (*con dresse* = brings about, VI 135); 1, 3 *sg.* *Con*, V 167, 227, VI 51, 77, 93, 181, 221, 223, &c.; 2 *sg.* *Cone?*, VI 122; *pl.* *Can*, X 50, 66, 108, 112; *Con*, VI 149, 191; *pa. t.* did, ? V 205 (see *prec.*). [Due to confusion in form, and partly also in sense, between *Gan* (*g.v.*) and *prec.*; cf. *begouth* (*s.v.* *Begynne*).]  
**Canell**, *n.* cinnamon, IX 158. [OFr. *canelle*.]  
**Caple**, *n.* horse, V 107. [Cf. ON. *kapall*; see *N.E.D.*]  
**Cardinales**, *n. pl.* cardinals, XIV *b* 40, 41. [OFr. *cardinal*.]  
**Care**, *Kare*, *n.* woe, misery, IV *a* 18, 44, 60, V 316, VI 11, &c.; *care* (*of*), anxiety (concerning), V 311. [OE. *caru*.]  
**Care**, *v.* to have sorrow, XIV *b* 1. [OE. *carian*.]  
**Carie**, *v.* to carry, XII *b* 27. [ONFr. *carier*.]  
**Caroigne**, *Caryon*, *n.* dead body, carion, VIII *a* 85, XVII 502.

# GLOSSARY

- [ONFr. *cavigne*; the phonology of the second form is obscure.]
- Carp**, *v.* to converse, VI 21; prate, XVII 360. [ON. *karpa*, brag.]
- Carpyng**, *n.* narration, X *introd.* [From prec.]
- Cart**, *n.* cart, VIII *b* 13, XVII 534; *v.* to cart, VIII *b* 66; *Cartere*, *n.* carter (as a name), XIV *d* 3; **Cart-mare**, *n.* draught-mare, VIII *a* 282. [ON. *kart-r*, OE. *cræst*.]
- Cas**, **Case**, *n.* chance, general run of events, circumstances, plight, II 175, III 20, VII 25, 73, XII *a* 49, *b* 194, &c.; *Caas*, *pl.* XIII *b* 40; *in cas*, it may be, XI 101, 105, 216; *per cas*, by chance, XII *a* 7, *b* 4. [OFr. *cas*.]
- Cast(e)**, *v.*; **Cast(e)**, *pa. t.* *v* 249, XII *b* 70, &c.; *Caas*, *v* 207; **Casten**, *pp.* IV *a* 60; *Icast*, XIV *c* 79; *Kast*, I 143; *Kest*, V 174; to cast, throw, put, I 143, IV *b* 3, VIII *a* 61, X 33, XII *b* 103, &c.; (in charity), VIII *a* 16; to cast off, XVII 262; *icast out*, abandoned, XIV *c* 79; to offer, propose, V 174, 207; to scheme, XI *b* 306. [ON. *kasta*; for *e* forms before *st* cf. Morsbach, *ME. Gram.* § 87, n. 2.] *See* *Kest*, *n.*; *Vpcaste*.
- Castel(1)**, *n.* castle, II 159, X 173, XVII 349, 538; a tower or raised structure on the deck of a ship (*see* *Topcastell*), XVII 272. [OE. (late) *castel* from ONFr. *castel*.]
- Catel**, **Catayll**, **Catall**, *n. sg. collect.*, goods, property, VIII *a* 86, 141, 214, XIV *c* 75, XVI 242, XVII 156 (cattle), 326. [ONFr. *catel*.]
- Cateractes**, *n. pl.* flood-gates, XVII 343, 451 (*see* Genesis, vii. 11, viii. 2; Vulgate *cataractæ*, sluices).
- Cave**, *n.* cave, V 114, XII *a* 65. [OFr. *cave*.]
- Cause (of)**, *n.* cause, reason (of), XI *a* 17, 54, XIII *b* 66, XIV *c* 9; *cause þerto*, cause for it, XVII 102; cause, side in a quarrel, &c., IX 82, XI *a* 50. [OFr. *cause*.]
- Cawht**. *See* *Kache*.
- Cerched**. *See* *Serche*.
- Certayn(e)**, **Certeyn(e)**, **Sarteyn(e)** (XVI), *adj.* certain, sure; fixed, definite, XI *b* 113, XVI 225; some particular, IX 268; *come to no certeyn*, came to nothing, I 179; *nouȝt of certeyne*, no definite rule, VIII *a* 145; *adv.* assuredly, indeed, I 231, XVI 94, XVII 176, &c. [OFr. *certain*.]
- Certes**, **Certis**, *adv.* certainly, truly, VIII *b* 22, X 134, XI *b* 42, 293. [OFr. *certes*.]
- Cesse**, **Sesse**, *v.* to cease, leave off, come to an end, VIII *a* 172, XI *b* 205, XVI 44, 294; *Cest*, *pp.* XVII 451; **Cessynge**, *n.* ceasing, XI *b* 85. [OFr. *cesser*.]
- Chace**, *n.* quarry (in hunting), XII *b* 7. [OFr. *chace*.]
- Chace(n)**, to pursue, drive, IX 167, 229; *chace of*, drive, oust from, VI 83. [OFr. *chacier*.]
- Chaffare**, *v.* to engage in trade, VIII *a* 235, *b* 98. [From ME. *chapfare*, *chaffare*, *n.*; *see* *Chapware*.]
- Chayngede**. *See* *Chaunge*.
- Chambre(s)**. *See* *Chamber*.
- Chanel**, *n.* channel, river-bed, XIII *a* 57. [OFr. *chanel*.] *Cf.* *Kanel*.
- Chapel(le)**, *n.* chapel, private oratory (attached to a castle, &c.), V 35, 118, &c.; *Schapellis*, *pl.* XI *b* 234. [OFr. *chapelle*.]
- Chappelleyn**, **Chaplayn**, *n.* chaplain (a priest serving a 'chapel'; *see* prec.), VIII *a* 12, V 39. [OFr. *chapelain*.]
- Chapman**, *n.* merchant, XII *b* 179. [OE. *cēap-man*.]
- Chapware**, *n.* trading, bargain, III 60. [OE. *cēap + faru*; cf. ON. *kaupfōr*.] *See* *Chaffare*, *v.*
- Charde**, *pa. t. sg.* turned back, ceased to flow, VI 248. [OE. *cerran*.]
- Charge**, *n.* burden; weight, IV *b* 48; a *þing of charge*, a weighty,

# GLOSSARY

- important matter, XIV c 52. [OFr. *charge*.] See next.
- Charge(n), v.** to burden, IV b 51; *charge(n) with*, to burden with, to impose as an obligation, XI b 150, 198, 199, &c.; to enjoin, order (a person), XI b 15, 31, 71, 120, 193; to attach weight, importance, to, XI b 104, 106, 184, 188, 225. [OFr. *charger*.]
- Charious, adj.** burdensome, XI b 204. [OFr. *chargeous*, *charjous*.]
- Charité, Charyté, n.** charity, christian love (for God or one's fellows), IV b 15, VI 110, XI b 25, &c.; *out of ch.*, not in a state of ch., XI b 26, 89; *I will kepe ch.*, I will not lose my temper, XVII 235; *par charité, for ch., for of saynte ch.*, (formule used in prayers, or requests), in the name of (holy) charity, VIII a 250, XV d 5, XVII 165, 174; *amen for ch.*, a formula of conclusion, XVII 558. [OFr. *charité*; (*de*) *par (sainte) charité*.]
- Charke, v.** to creak, XII a 70. [OE. *cearcian*.]
- Charnel, n.** cemetery, VIII a 50. [OFr. *charnel*.]
- Chaste, v.** to rebuke, punish, VIII a 53, 318. [OFr. *chastier*.]
- Chastice, Chastis(e), Chastyse, v.** to punish, chastise, curb, XIV c 70, d 5, XVII 398, 403. [OFr. (rare) *chastiser*.]
- Chaud(e), adj.** hot, VIII a 306; (Fr. word indicating affectation of manners above labourers' station.)
- Chamber, Chambre (XVII), n.** room (usually a smaller private room or bedroom), II 100, 196, 584, XVII 129, 281 (see *Ches*, and note), &c. [OFr. *chambre*.]
- Chaunce, Chance, n.** chance, fortune, adventure, event, I 22, 25, 28, 135, 221, v 331, VII 16; *for ch. þat may falle*, whatever may happen, v 64; *he cheuez þat chaunce*, he contrives that event, brings it to pass, v 35; *per chance*, XII b 18, 57. [OFr. *ch(e)ance*.]
- Chaunge, Change, v.** to alter, change, *trans.* and *intr.*, IV a 2, 42, XII a 125, XIII a 4, 56, XV a 22, &c.; *Chayngede, pa. t.* XIII b 28; *Ychaunged, pp.* VIII b 85, XIII b 27. *Chaunged his cher*, v 101, see *Chere*. [OFr. *changier*; *chaingier*.]
- Chaungyng, n.** vicissitudes, VII 16; *ch. of wit*, alteration of sense, mistranslation, XI a 47.
- Ches. See Chese, v.**
- Cheyne, n.** chain, x 31. [OFr. *chaine*.]
- Chokes, n. pl.** cheeks, VIII a 169; *maugré Medes (thi) chokes*, in Meed's (thy) despite, VIII a 41, 151; see *Maugré*. [OE. *cēace*, *cēce*.]
- Chekke, n.** ill-luck, v 127. [OFr. *eschec*, checkmate.]
- Chelde, adj.** cold, XV e 16. [OE. (WS.) *cēald*.] See *Colde*.
- Chenes, n. pl.** fissures, XIII a 8. [OE. *cine*, *cion-*.]
- Chepyng, n.** market, VIII a 294. [OE. *cēping*.]
- Cher(e), Chiere (XII), n.** face, XV c 15; looks, XII a 120; demeanour, VI 47; *mery chere*, gladness, XVII 463. *Chaunged his cher*, v 101; *!altered the direction in which he faced, turned this way and that* (cf. *Sir Gaw.*, 711); but the phrase elsewhere always refers to colour or expression of face. [OFr. *chiere*, *chere*.]
- Cherohe, Chircho, Churohe, n.** church, Church, I 3, 21, VIII a 12, 50, b 12, 63 (note), XI a 62, b 178, &c. [OE. *cirice*, *circe*.] See *Kirke*.
- Cherchewerd, n.** churchyard, I 3, 66, 263; *Cherche porche*, church porch, I 77. [Prec. + OE. *geard*; OFr. *porche*.]
- Charles. See Chorle.**
- Cheruelles, n. pl.** chervils (a garden pot-herb), VIII a 289. [OE. *cerfille*.]

# GLOSSARY

- Ches, Chese** (MS. *chefe*), *n.* in *thre ches(e)*, three tiers or rows of, XVII 129, 281 (followed by sg. noun). [Perhaps a use of ME. *ches*, chess, as 'rows of squares' (OFr. *eschex*, pl. of *eschec*, see *Chekke*).]
- Chese, v.** to choose; *chese þou*, choose (for) yourselves, II 217; **Chees, Ches, pa. t. sg.** XI b 56, XII a 110; for past pple. see *Ycore*. [OE. *cōsan*.]
- Cheses, n. pl.** cheeses, VIII a 276. [OE. *cēse*.]
- Chesible, n.** chasuble (the outer vestment of a priest when celebrating Mass), VIII a 12. [OFr. *chesible*.]
- Chesouns, n. pl.** reasons, XI a 50. [Shortened from OFr. *ache(s)son*; see *Enchesone*.]
- Cheualrous, adj.** chivalrous, v 331. [OFr. *chevalerous*.] See *Chinualrye*.
- Cheue, v.** (to acquire), control, bring about; *cheueþ þat chaunce*, brings that event to pass, v 35; **Cheuyt, pp.** brought about, VII 16. [OFr. *cheuir* and *achever*.] See *Acheue*.
- Cheuentayn, n.** chieftain, Lord, VI 245. [OFr. *chevetaine*.]
- Chibolles, n. pl.** chibols, a variety of small onion, VIII a 289. [OFr. *\*chiboule*, OFr. *ciboule*.]
- Chyche, n.** niggard, VI 245. [OFr. *chiche*, adj.]
- Chyde, v. intr.** to complain, find fault, VI 43, VIII a 307, 314. [OE. *cīdan*.]
- Chiere.** See *Cher(e)*.
- Child, Chylde, n.** child, III 39, IV a 73, &c., *child hys*, child's, XIII b 23; *Childer*, *Chylder*, pl. XVII 327, 527; *Childern*, *Chyldern*, XIII b 16, 33, 37, &c.; *Children*, VIII a 91, &c. [OE. *clīd*; *cildru*, pl.]
- Child-bedde, n.**; *on child-bedde*, in travail, II 399. [OE. *clīd + bedd*.]
- Chillyng, n.** becoming cold, in *for chillyng of here mawe*, to prevent their stomachs getting cold, VIII a 306. [OE. *cilian*; but see *N.E.D.*]
- Chirche.** See *Cherche*.
- Chirles, n. pl.** cherries, VIII a 289. [OFr. *cherise*, sg.; cf. OE. *cīros-bēam*.]
- Chyteryng, n.** chattering, XIII b 14. [Echoic.]
- Chinualrye, n.** knighthood, the knights as a body, XIV c 42. [OFr. *cheu-, chivalerie*.] See *Cheualrous*.
- Chorle, n.** common man, v 39; **Charles, pl.** VIII a 50. [OE. *clorl*.]
- Cité, Cyté, Cytee, Citie, Sité, n.** city, II 48, 479, VII 66, 85, VIII b 94, IX 23, XIII b 67, &c. [OFr. *citē*.]
- Cytryne, adj.** lemon-yellow, IX, 115. [OFr. *citrin*.]
- Clanly, adv.** elegantly, VII 53. [OE. *clān-līce*.] See *Clene*.
- Clatere, v.** to clatter, resound, v 133, VII 137. [OE. *clatrian*.]
- Clateryng, n.** clattering, XV h 4. [OE. *clatruŋg*.]
- Clause, n.** clause (in grammar), XIV c 11 (see *Construwe*). [Med.L. *clausa*, OFr. *clause*.]
- Cled, pp.** clad; *cled in Stafford blew*, beaten black and blue, XVII 200; see *Blew*. [OE. *clēpan* (rare).]
- Cleket, n.** trigger, x 82. [OFr. *cliquet*.]
- Clene, adj.** clean, IV b 6, v 323, 325; unmixed, VIII a 299; pure, VII 179, XI b 295, XV i 7; elegant, VII 77; splendid, VII 150 (or *adv.*). [OE. *clēne*.] See *Clanly*, *Clense*.
- Clen(e), Cleane, adv.** entirely, VII 150 (or *adj.*), XIV b 77, c 56, 80. [OE. *clēne*.]
- Clengeþ, 3 sg. pres.** clings, v 10. [OE. *\*clengan*.] See *Clinge*.
- Clense, v.** to cleanse, clear out, IV a 7, VIII a 98. [OE. *clēnsian*.]
- Clepe(n), Clepyn, v.** to call (cry, summon, name), I *intred.*, II



# GLOSSARY

- 201, III 12, 24, IX 27, XII a 76, b 16; Cleped, Clept, *pp.* II 49, IX 3, XII a 6, &c.; Ycleped, II 52, III 17, 32. [OE. *cleopian*.]
- Clere**, *adj.* clear, bright, glorious, fair, II 269, 358, V 283, VII 107, 123, XVI 128, 389; free (from guilt), \*XVI 356 (MS. *clene*); *adv.* clearly, VII 77; Clerlych, *adv.* clearly, XIII a 12. [OFr. *cler*.]
- Clere matyn**, *n.* (! *lit.* 'fine morning') appar. name of a fine flour, or bread made from it, VIII a 299. [! OFr. *cler matin*.]
- Clerk(e)**, *n.* one in holy orders, ecclesiastic (opp. to 'lay'), scholar, writer, II 2, VII 53, VIII b 56, 58, XI a 36, 59, b 55, 177, XVI 283, &c.; Clerkus, *pl.* VIII b 65. [OE. *clerc*(*e*); OFr. *clerc*.]
- Clete**, *n.* cleat, small (wedge-shaped) piece of wood; *yaf nouȝt a cl. of* = cared not a rap for, XIV c 54. [OE. \**cleat*; cl. OHG. *chlōz*, MDu. *cloot*.]
- Cleu**, *v.* to split, V 133. [OE. *clēofan*.]
- Clyff**, *n.* cliff, rock, V 10, 133. [OE. *clif*.]
- Clingge**, *v.* XV a 8; *the clot him clingge*, may the earth of the grave cling to him (or waste him; cf. *alpaȝ oure corse in clotteȝ clynge*, Pearl 857); Yclongen, *pp.* withered, II 508. [OE. *clingan*, shrivel, shrink.] See Clengeȝ.
- Clipte**, *pa. t. sg.* clasped, XII b 62. [OE. *clippan*.]
- Cloise**. See Clos.
- Cloistre**, *n.* monastery, III *introd.*, VIII a 141. [OFr. *cloistre*.]
- Cloke**, *n.* cloak, VIII a 265. [OFr. *cloque*.]
- Clomben**, *pa. t. pl.* climbed, V 10. [OE. *climban*; *pa. t. pl.* *climbon*.]
- Cloos**, *n.* enclosure; *in cloos*, enclosed, IX 191. [OFr. *clos*.]
- Clos**, Cloise (oi = *ō*, cf. Coyll), *adj.* closed: secluded, forbidden, VII 179; close, VI 152 (*man hit cl.*, make it secure); *adv.* (or *predic. adj.*) close, near, VII 137. [OFr. *clos*.]
- Close**, *v.* to close, enclose, IX 172, XI b 39; Yclosed, *pp.* XIII a 24, 40. [From *prec.*] See Enclose.
- Clot**, *n.* clod, XV a 8 (see Clingge); Clottes, *pl.* lumps, XIII a 5. [OE. *clott*.]
- Clop**, *n.* a cloth, xv f 8; cloth, VIII a 14; Clopes, &c., *pl.* clothes, I 165, 236, II 408, VII 175, VIII b 18, XI b 257, XIII a 9, &c. [OE. *clāp*.]
- Cloped**, *pp.* clothed, VIII b 2. [OE. (late) *clāpian*.]
- Clope-merys**, *n. pl.* ! mare-clothers (! contemptuous reference to blacksmiths as fashioning pieces of horse-armour; for similar compound see Brenwaterys), XV h 21. [Prec. + OE. *mēre*.]
- Cloude**, *n.* <sup>1</sup> clod of earth; *under cloude*, in the ground, XV b 31. [OE. *clūd*, mass of earth, or rock.]
- Cloud(e)**, Clowde, *n.* <sup>2</sup> cloud, VII 107, 137, XII a 137. [Prob. same as *prec.*]
- Clout**, *n.* piece of cloth, xv f 8, 11. [OE. *clūt*.]
- Cloute**, *v.* to patch; *cloute more to*, stick more on to it, XI b 200; *go cloute thi shone*, go and cobble your shoes, 'run away and play', XVII 353; Yclouted, *pp.* patched, VIII a 61. [OE. *clūtan*.]
- Clowe**; *clowe gylofres*, cloves, IX 157. [OFr. *clou* (nail) *de girofle* (*gylofre*).]
- Clustre**, *n.* bunch, IX 153, 160. [OE. *cluster*.]
- Cnistes**. See Knyght(e).
- Cnowe**. See Knowe.
- Coc**, Cok, *n.* cock, XII a 77, XV g 33. [OE. *cocc*.]
- Coffes**, *n. pl.* mittens, gloves, VIII a 62. [Unknown; cf. Prompt. Parv., 'cuffe, glove or meteyne'.]
- Coyll**, *n. lit.* cabbage; pottage, cabbage or vegetable soup, XVII 389. [OE. *cāl*; *oy* = *ō* (see the rimes).] See Koleplantes.

# GLOSSARY

- Coke**, *v.* to put hay into cocks, VIII b 13. [From (obscure) ME. *cocke*, hay-cock; see *N.E.D.*]
- Coker**, *n.* a labourer (at hay-making or harvest), VIII b 13. [From prec.; cf. Cath. Angl., 'coker, autumnarius'.]
- Cokeres**, *n. pl.* leggings, VIII a 62. [OE. *cacor*, quiver; cf. Prompt. Parv., 'cocur, cothurnus'.]
- Coket**, *n.* very fine flour next in grade to the finest (*wastell*), VIII a 299. [*Panis de coket* occurs in 14th c. legal Latin; connexion between this and AFr. *cokkette*, Anglo-L. *coketa*, cocket, seal of King's Custom-house, has been suggested, but not proved.]
- Cold(e)**, *adj.* cold, I 119, VII 115, &c.; Calde, IV a 82. [OE. *cald*.] See Chelde.
- Cold(e)**, *n.* cold, I 163, IX 31, XV f 13; for *colde of*, to keep the cold from (see For, prep.), VIII a 62. [OE. *cald*.]
- Col(e)**, *n.* live coal, IV a 13; coal, XV h 5. [OE. *col*, live coal.]
- Coloppes**, *n. pl.* 'collops', eggs fried on bacon, VIII a 280. [See *N.E.D.*, s.v. *Collop*, and *Cockey*.]
- Colour**, *n.* colour, IX 34, XII a 55, &c.; outward appearance, XI b 217. [OFr. *colour*.]
- Com**, **Come(n)**, **Cum** (x), *v.* to come, I 80, 176, II 137, V 43, X 45, 173, XVII 241, &c.; **Comest**, 2 sg. wilt come, XV g 5; **Commys**, 3 sg. XVII 507; **Cam**, *pa. t.* I 77, II 153, VIII a 294, &c.; **Com(e)**, I 32, II 91, III 3, V 107, VI 222, VII 83, &c.; *pa. t. subj.* (should come, &c.), VI 214, 238, VIII a 108, X 29, XV g 30; **Come(n)**, *pp.* I 161, II 29, 181, IX 314, &c.; **Comyn**, VII 40, 102; **Comne**, IV a 23; **Cumen**, XIV b 8, 87; **Ycome(n)**, II 203, 319, 404, 422, 478, 592. With *dat. rel.* *prom.* in: *foret hym com*, forth came, XV g 18; *in him com . . gon*, came (walking) in (cf. OE. *cōn inn gān*), XV g 24; *him com*, III 19. *Comen of*, descended from, II 29. [OE. *cuman*, *cōm*, *cumen*.]
- Coma(n)de**, **Comawnde**, **Commaund**, *v.* to command, I 105, VIII a 16, XI b 66, XV i 1, XVI 341, XVII 118, &c.; with *to*, XI b 40; to commend, V 343; to entrust, give, XI b 222. [OFr. *comander*.]
- Com(m)aundement**, &c., *n.* commandment, IV b 15, XI b 63, 86, 226; *gaf in comm.*, commanded, XVII 32. [OFr. *comandement*.] See Maundement.
- Comenoi** (II), **Comse** (VIII), *v.* to begin, VIII a 34, 309; *pres. subj.* II 247 (note to l. 57). [OFr. *comencer*.] See Comensing.
- Comendacon**, *n.* 'Commendation of Souls', an office for the dead (made a part of daily office) which originally ended with the prayer *Tibi, Domine, commendamus*, XI b 132.
- Comessing**, *n.* beginning, II 57. See Comenci.
- Comford**, &c. See Conforte, *v.*
- Comyng(e)**, *n.* coming, advent, XII a 35, XVI 315, 363, &c.; *hom comyng*, homecoming, IX 285. See Com.
- Comyn(s)**. See Com, Comun.
- Comly(gh)**, *adj.* fair, beautiful, V 343, XVII 71. [OE. *cȳmlīc*, influ. in ME. by assoc. with *becomen*.]
- Comlyng**, *n.* stranger, foreigner, XIII b 45. [OE. *cuma* + *-ling*.]
- Commys**. See Com.
- Commyxstion**, *n.* intermingling, XIII b 12. [L. *commixtiōnem*.]
- Comne**. See Com.
- Comounly**, *adv.* usually, IX 51; in common, IX 60. See Comun.
- Compayni**, *n.* company, II 462; **Company(e)**, VII 150, IX 312, &c.; **Cumpany(e)**, X 147, &c.; *in cumpanye*, in the society of

# GLOSSARY

- men, I *introd.*, IX 288. [OFr. *compai(g)nie.*]
- Comparison, *n.* comparison; *wipoute comparison*, XI b 237. [OFr. *comparaison, -eson.*]
- Compelle, *v.* to compel, XI b 51, XIII b 18. [OFr. *compeller.*]
- Compilet, *pp.* compiled, put together, VII 53. [OFr. *compiler.*]
- Comprehended, *pa. t. sg.* comprised, embraced, IX 300. [L. *comprehendere.*]
- Compunccio, *n.* repentance, XI b 180. [OFr. *compunction.*]
- Comse. See Comenci.
- Comun(e), *adj.* common (people), XIV b 67; as *sb.*, the community, VIII b 20, 79; Comunes, Comyns, *pl.* the common people; the Commons (as an estate of the realm), XIV b 67, c 73; lay men, XI a 39, 59. [OFr. *comun*; and direct from L. *communis.*]
- Con(on), Coneȝ. See Can, *v.*<sup>1</sup> and *v.*<sup>2</sup>
- Concyens, Conscience, *n.* conscience, IV b 15, VIII b 87, &c.; (personified) VIII b 6, &c. [OFr. *conscience.*]
- Condicoun, *n.* nature, quality, XII a 120. [OFr. *condicion.*]
- Confederat, *adj.* allied, XIII b 5. [L. *con-federātus.*]
- Confesse, *v.* to confess, XI b 143; *confessed clene*, made clean by confession, V 323. [OFr. *confesser.*]
- Conforme, *v. (refl.)*, to suit (oneself), make (oneself) suitable, XII a 184. [OFr. *conformer.*]
- Confort, Coumforde, *n.* support, comfort, consolation, VI 9, VIII b 79, XIII a 151. [OFr. *con-, cunfort.*]
- Conforte, Com-, *v.* to comfort, succour, support, IV a 15, VIII a 214; Comford, *pa. t. pl.* VII 173. [OFr. *conforter.*]
- Confusyun, *n.* putting to shame, I 203. [OFr. *confusion.*]
- Congele, *v.* to congeal, IX 64. [OFr. *congeler.*]
- Conig, *n.* rabbit, XIV b 75. [OFr. *conin, coning.*]
- Conne, Connep, &c. See Can, *v.*<sup>1</sup>
- Connynge, *n.* intelligence, IV b 56, 79. [From *cunn-*, old infin. stem of Can, *v.*<sup>1</sup>]
- Conquerour, *n.* conqueror, XIV c 92. [OFr. *conquerour.*]
- Conquest, *n.* the (Norman) Conquest, XIII b 32. [OFr. *conqueste.*]
- Consaile (-sale, -sey1, -seille), Counsaill(1e), (-sayle, -sayll), *n.* counsel, deliberation, advice, II 179, VIII a 309, X 15, XIV b 40, 43, XVI 114, 163, XVII 157; prudence, IV b 56, 57, 61; council, VIII a 312, IX 296, 298. [OFr. *conseil, c(o)unseil*, counsel, council.]
- Conseille, to advise, VIII a 14; Counsell, *imper. sg.* XVII 472. [OFr. *conseillier.*]
- Consente, *v.* to agree; *consented to o wyl*, was agreed, I 49. [OFr. *consentir.*]
- Consider, *v.* to reflect, XVII 291. [OFr. *considerer.*]
- Constreyn, *v.* to force, VIII b 56, XI b 248. [OFr. *constreign-*, stem of *constreindre.*]
- Construccio, *n.* construing, XIII b 28. [L. *constructionem*; see next.]
- Constru(w)e, *v.* to construe, interpret, XIII b 18, 34; *pres. subj. pl.* in *ȝif ȝe c. wel þis clause*, if you see the point of what I say, XIV c 11. [L. *construere.*]
- Conteyne, *v.* to contain, IX 337, XIII a 20. [OFr. *contenir, conteign-*, stem of subj.]
- Contemplacio(u)n, Contemplacyone, *n.* contemplation (of God), IV b 51, XI b 11, 308. [OFr. *contemplacion.*]
- Contemplatyf, -if, *adj.* contemplative, devoted to prayer and contemplation of God, VIII a 245, XI b 1, 8, &c. [OFr. *contemplatif.*]

# GLOSSARY

**Continue**, *v.* to persevere, VIII *b* 40, 110. [OFr. *continuer*.]

**Contynuell**, *adj.* continual, IX 32. [OFr. *continuel*.]

**Contray** (XIII), **Contré**, -ee, -ey, (IX), **Countré** (XVII), **Cuntray** (II), **Cuntré** (I), **Cuntrey** (XI), *n.* country, land, region, I 253, II 351, IX 4, 9, 26, 134, 138, XI *a* 35, XIII *a* 41, *b* 63, XVII 487 (see *Sere*), &c., as *adj.* in *contray langage*, language of the land, XIII *b* 13. [OFr. *contrée*, *c(o)untrée*.]

**Contrarie** (*to*), *adj.* opposed (*to*), XI *b* 54. [OFr. *contrarie*.]

**Contrefetes**, *n. pl.* imitations, IX 117. [OFr. *contrefet*, *pp.*, made like.] See *Counterfite*, *v.*

**Cop**, *n.* top, XIII *a* 45. [OE. *copp*.]

**Cope**, *n.* long cloak, XII *a* 53; *esp.* the out-door cloak of an ecclesiastic, VIII *a* 182. [OE. \**cāpe*, from Med.L. *cāpa*.]

**Cope**, *v.* to provide with 'copes', VIII *a* 141. [From *prec*.]

**Copuls**, 3 *sg. pres.* links, IV *a* 12; **Coppled**, *pp.* linked (in rime), Introduction xv; see *Kowe*. [OFr. *copler*.] See *Couple*, *n.*

**Corage**, *n.* heart, XII *a* 11; gallantry, XIV *c* 108. [OFr. *corage*.]

**Corde**, *n.* cord, XII *b* 53, 60, &c. [OFr. *corde*.]

**Corde(n)**, *v.*; *corden into on*, agree together, xv *i* 6. [Shortened from *Acorde*, *g.v.*]

**Cormerant**, *n.* cormorant, II 310. [OFr. *cormoran*.]

**Coround(e)**, *pa. t.* crowned, VI 55; *pp.* II 593, VI 120. [OFr. *corouner*.] See *Crowned(e)*.

**Coroune3**, *n. pl.* crowns, VI 91. [OFr. *coroune*.] See *Crown(e)*.

**Corse(d)est**. See *Curse*.

**Corseynt**, *n.* shrine of a saint, I 239. [OFr. *cors saint*, holy body.]

**Cortays(e)**, **Curteys** (II), *adj.* gracious, II 28, VI 73; as *sb.*, gracious lady, v 343. [OFr. *cortais*, *curteis*.] See *Kort*.

**Cortaysye**, **Cortaysé**, **Courtaysye**, *n.* courtesy, grace, VI 72, 84, 96, 109, 121 (of *cortaysye* prob. only equivalent to *cortaysse*, *adj.*); of *courtaysye*, by *cortaysye*, &c. by especial favour, VI 97, 108, 120. [OFr. *cortaisse*, *curteisie*.]

**Cortaysly**, **Curteisly**, -lich, *adv.* courteously, VI 21, VIII *a* 34, 157. See *Cortays*.

**Cossez**, **Cosses**, *n. pl.* kisses, v 283, 292. [OE. *cosse*.] See *Kysse*.

**Cost**, *n.* border, IX 192; **Costes**, *pl.* coasts, regions, VII 83, 146. [OFr. *coste*.]

**Cost**, *n.* expenditure, cost, XI *b* 169; ? means (to meet expense), XI *b* 141. [OFr. *cost*.]

**Costen** (*in*), *v.* to expend (*on*), XI *b* 234. [OFr. *costier*.]

**Costes**, *n. pl.* manners, disposition, v 292. [OE. (Nth.) *cost* from ON. *kost-r*.]

**Costy**, *adj.* costly, XI *b* 228, 234. [From *Cost*, *n.*]

**Cote**, *n.* cot, mean dwelling, II 489, VIII *b* 2. [OE. *cot*.]

**Cote**, *n.* coat; here a tunic (cf. 'waistcoat') worn beneath the outer gown, XVII 262. [OFr. *cote*.]

**Coth**, *n.* pestilence, XVII 417. [OE. *cōpu*.]

**Cou**, **Cow**, *n.* cow, III 49, 52, 54, VIII *a* 282; *pl.* **Ken**, III 56; **Ky3n**, IX 256; **Kyn(e)**, VIII *a* 134, *b* 18. [OE. *cū*; *pl. cȳ* (Kt. \**cē*).]

**Couaytyng**, **Coueytynge**, *n.* coveting, IX 90; object of coveting (cf. *louyng*, &c.), IV *a* 23. [From OFr. *coveit(i)er*.]

**Couaytise** (III), **Couaitise** (XI), **Couetyse** (v), **Coueteis** (XVII), *n.* covetousness, avarice, III 22, v 306, 312, XI *b* 55, 256, XVII 52. [OFr. *coveitise*.]

**Couche**, *n.* bed, XII *a* 89. [OFr. *couche*.]

**Coude**. See *Can*, *v.*

**Coueyne**, *n.* band (of conspirators), I 41. [OFr. *cov(a)ine*.]

# GLOSSARY

- Coneitous**, *adj.* covetous, XI b 196. [OFr. *coveitous*.]
- Couenable**, *adj.* suitable, XIII a 20. [OFr. *covenable*.]
- Covenant**, **Couenaunde**, -aunt, *n.* covenant, agreement, v 260, 272, VI 202, 203, VIII a 153, XII b 41, 96, 199; *pl.* terms of the agreement, v 174; *in c. pat.*, on condition that, VIII a 28. [OFr. *covenant*.]
- Coueryng**, *n.* covering, I 177, 184. [From OFr. *co(u)vrir*.]
- Coumforde**; **Counsail(le)**, &c. *See* Confort; **Consaille** (-seille).
- Counted**, *pa. t.* reckoned on (*or* heeded), VII 115; *counted nouȝt a bene beo*, gave not a bean for, XIV c 43. [OFr. *countier*.]
- Counterfete**, *v.* to imitate (fraudulently), IX 114; to resemble, VI 196 (bad connotation often absent in this use, but possibly here present—'make them unjustly resemble us'). [Formed from ME. *counterfete*, imitated, OFr. *contresfet*.] *See* Contrefetes.
- Countes**, *n.* countess, VI 129. [OFr. *cuntesse*.]
- Countré**. *See* Contray.
- Countre note**, *n.* counterpoint, a melody added as an accompaniment to another, XI b 137 (note). [OFr. *countre + note*.]
- Couple**, *n.* match, pair, II 458 (note); **Copple**, **couplet** (*in verse*), Introduction xxxiii. [OFr. *couple*.]
- Cours(e)**, *n.* course, VII 102, XIII a 61, &c.; *cours...* about, circuit, x 157; flow, VII 123; force, rushing, VII 115; *by course*, in due order, VII 73. [OFr. *cours*.]
- Court(aysye)**. *See* Cortaysye, Kort.
- Courtpies**, *n. pl.* short jackets, VIII a 182. [Current in 14th and 15th centuries; cf. MDu. *korte pie*, short coat of coarse woollen stuff.]
- Coupe**, **Couthé**. *See* Can, *v.*
- Couwee**, *adj.* tailed, *in (ryme)* *couwee*, rime in pairs followed by a shorter line, or 'tail', tail-rime, Introduction xv. [OFr. *rime coule*.] *See* Kowe.
- Cowardise**, **Coward(d)yse**, *n.* cowardice, v 205, 306, 311. [OFr. *cowardise*.] *See* Kowarde.
- Cowth**, **Cowpe(3)**. *See* Can, *v.*
- Crache**, *v.* to scratch, II 80. [Obscure; cf. MDu., MLG. *kratsen*.]
- Cradel**, *n.* cradle, XIII b 22, XV f 4. [OE. *cradol*.]
- Craft(e)**, *n.* craft; industry, VIII b 20; knowledge, *in to ken all the cr.*, to know the whole story, VII 25. [OE. *cræft*.]
- Crafty**, *adj.* skilled in a craft, VIII a 70. [OE. *cræftig*.]
- Cragge**, *n.* crag, v 115, 153. [Obscure.]
- Crak**, *v.* to crack, XIV a 10; **Cracked**, *pp.* XIV a 11. [OE. *cracian*, to crack (sound).]
- Craue**, **Crafe** (XVII), *v.* to demand, VIII a 86; to plead for, XVII 174; *craue aftir*, ask for, XVI 242. [OE. *crasian*, demand.]
- Creatouro**, **Creatur**, *n.* creature, XV i 4, XVII 78. [OFr. *creature*.]
- Crede**, *n.* the Creed, VI 125; *sall ken þow þowre crede* = will teach you what you ought to know, a lesson, XIV b 4. [OE. *crēda*, from L. *crēdo*, I believe (cf. VIII a 83).]
- Credence**, *n.* credence, IX 303. [OFr. *credence*.]
- Creem**, *n.* cream, VIII a 277. [OFr. *crema*.]
- Cren**, *n.* crane (machine), x 16, 28. [OE. *cran* (bird); the above are the earliest recorded instances of the transferred sense.]
- Crepe**, *v.* to creep, XII b 173. [OE. *crēopan*.]
- Creuisse**, *n.* fissure, v 115. [OFr. *crevasse*.]
- Cri(e)**, **Cry**, *n.* lamentation, II 114, 220; *held in o cri*, lamented in the same strain, II 95; shouting, clamour, II 285, XV h 4; a cry, appeal, II 511 (*see* Sette) [OFr. *cri*.]

# GLOSSARY

**Crie(n), Crye(n), Cry**, to cry out (shout, call, lament), proclaim, XI *b* 48, XII *a* 76, 140, XVI 186, 363, XVII 384, &c.; *pres. subj.* XVI 141; *Orid(e), pa. t.* II 78, XII *b* 31, 69; *Cryit*, x 86; *Criand, -ende, pres. p.* XVI 73, XII *b* 16. *Cryen after*, shout for, xv *h* 5; *crie on*, appeal to XVI 107; *cry me mercy*, cry to me for mercy, XVII 384 (the earliest recorded sense in E.). [OFr. *crier*.]  
**Oriore, n.** crier, herald, XI *b* 48. [OFr. *crier*.]  
**Criing, Crying(e), n.** (loud) shouting, XI *b* 133, 249; *at o criing*, with one voice, II 581 (cf. *at one cri*, Havelok 2773); lamentation, II 195. [From Crie(n).]  
**Cristal(l), n.** crystal, II 358, IX 32, 103, &c. [OFr. *crystal*.]  
**Crystemesse, n.** Christmas, I 29. [OE. *crīstmesse*.]  
**Cristen(e), Crystene, Crystyn (1), Krysten (VI), adj.** Christian, I *introd.*, 82, VI 101, IX 211, XI *a* 37, &c.; as *sb. pl.* VIII *a* 89. [OE. *crīsten*.]  
**Crístendom, -dam, n.** Christian lands, IX 214, XIV *c* 19. [OE. *crīsten-dōm*, Christianity.]  
**Croft, n.** small field, VIII *a* 33, 285, *b* 17. [OE. *croft*.]  
**Croppeth, 3 pl. pres.** nibble, VIII *a* 33. [ON. *kroppa*.]  
**Crouders, n. pl.** fiddlers, II 522. [From ME. *croud, croup* (Welsh *crwth*), fiddle.]  
**Croun(e), Crowne, n.** crown, II 235, 415, VI 67, &c.; crown of the head, XIV *a* 10, 11. [OFr. *coroune*; cf. ON. *krúna*. In the sense 'crown of head' only the *cr-* forms appear.] See *Coroune*.  
**Crowned(e), pp.** tonsured, admitted to holy orders, VIII *b* 58, 62, 67. [OFr. *corouner*.] See *prec.* (which also in ME. had sense 'tonsure'), and *Corounde, Vncrowned*.  
**Crowe, n.** a crow, XII *a* 75. [OE. *crāwe*.]

**Crowe, v.** to crow, xv *g* 33 (with pleonastic reflex. pron.); to announce by crowing, XII *a* 77. [OE. *crāwan*.]  
**Cruddes, n. pl.** curds, VIII *a* 277. [Obscure.]  
**Cruell, adj.** cruel, IX 237. [OFr. *cruel*.]  
**Cubite, (Cubettis, pl.), n.** cubit (Biblical length measure = ell), XVII 124, 136, 258, 261, 443. [OE. *cubit*, L. *cubitus*.]  
**Cultur, n.** coulter, iron blade fixed in front of the share in a plough, VIII *a* 98. [OE. (from L.) *cultus*.]  
**Cum, Cumen.** See *Com*.  
**Cumbrit, pp.** hampered, VII 183. [OFr. (*en*) *combrer*.]  
**Cunesmen, n. pl.** kinsfolk, xv *g* 6. [OE. *cynnes*, gen. + *mann*.]  
**Cunne(s).** See *Can, Kyn*.  
**Cuntek, n.** contest; *yn cuntek*, vying with one another, I 31. [OFr. (only AFr.) *contek*, of unknown origin.]  
**Cuntenaunce, n.** bearing, II 293. [OFr. *cuntenance*.]  
**Cuntray, -e, -ey.** See *Contray*.  
**Cuppes, n.** cups, IX 256. [OE. *cuppe*.]  
**Curse, v.** to curse, I 98, 130, &c.; *Corsted, Cursed, pp.* and *adj.* v 128, 306, IX 85, &c.; *cursed shrewe*, VII 183, VIII *a* 153. [OE. (late) *cūrsian*, from Olr. *cūrsagim*.]  
**Cursyng, n.** cursing, I 128, 154, 261. [OE. (late) *cūrsung*.]  
**Curteis, -eys.** See *Cortays*.  
**Custom, n.** custom, IX 292, XI *b* 204, 206. [OFr. *custume*.]  
**Dai, Day(e), n.** day, I 138, VI 56, XII *a* 68, &c.; dawn, XII *a* 77; life-time, II 572, &c. (also *pl.* VI 56, VII 39); *daies olde*, old age, XII *introd.*; time, in *withinne tuo monthe day*, in two months' time, XII *a* 29; *pise dayes* (gen. sg.) *longe*, all (this) day long, VI 173 (see *Longe*); *by dayes*, once upon a time, II 15; *bi*

# GLOSSARY

- this dai*, (for) this day, VIII a 274; but an oath at XV a 24, XVII 386; *on a day*, one day, II 303; *his othir daye*, the other day, XVI 148; *his endre dai*, a day or two ago (see *Endre*), XV a 4. [OE. *dæg*.]
- Dayeseȝes**, *n. pl.* daisies, XV b 4. [OE. *dæges ȝæge*.]
- Dalf**; **Dalt**. See *Deluen*; *Delen*.
- Dam(e)**, *n.* dame, lady, queen, II 63, 113, 322, VIII a 72, XVII 298, &c.; mother, VIII a 73, XVII 324. [Ofr. *dame*.]
- Damisel**, **Damysel(le)**, *n.* damsel (*esp.* young lady-in-waiting), II 90, 144, VI 1, 129. [Ofr. *damisele*.]
- Dampne**, *v.* to damn, condemn, XI b 197, 306; *Dampnet*, *pa. t. pl.* VII 50; *Dampned*, *pp.* XVI 272; as *sb.* XVI 377. [Ofr. *dam(p)ner*.]
- Dan(e)**, **Dan<sub>3</sub>**, Master, Dom, an honourable title *esp.* prefixed to names of members of religious orders, I *introd.*, III *introd.* [Ofr. *Dan* (nom. *Danz*, *Dans*); L. *Dom(i)nus*.]
- Danes**, *n. pl.* Danes, XIII b 13. [Med. L. *Dani*. (cf. ON. *Danir*).]
- Dang**. See *Dynge(n)*.
- Dar**, *v.* dare, I *sg. pres.* II 336, VIII a 263, &c.; 3 *sg.* IX 88, &c.; *Dare*, *pres. pl.* XVI 145; *Dore(n)*, XI b 36, 199; *Dorst(e)*, *pa. t. sg.* dared, XII b 109, XIV c 21; *Durst*, II 140, 427, 482; *pl.* II 73, 84, X 130; *Durat*, *pa. t. subj.* (would) dare, XVII 479. [OE. *dearr*, *durron*; *dorste*.]
- Dare**, *v.* to cower, V 190; † *Dard*, *pa. t. sg.* VI 249 (see note). [OE. *darian*.]
- Dase**, *v.* to be dumbfounded, XVII 314. [OE. \**dasian*; cf. *darian*, and ON. *dasa-sk*.]
- Dastard**, *n.* wretch, vile fellow, XVI 180, 203. [Perhaps formed with Fr. suffix *-ard* from *dased*, *dast*, *pp.* of *prec.*]
- Date**, *n.* date, used in VI in various senses, some strained; point of time, hour, VI 169, 181; season, 144 (see *Dere*), 145; limit (beginning or end), 133, 156, 157, 168, 180; *to dere a date*, † too soon, 132 (cf. 126). [Ofr. *date*.]
- Daunce**, **Dance**, *n.* dance, I 134, 227; *fig.* plight, XIV b 72. [Ofr. *dance*, *daunce*.]
- Daunce**, **Daunse**, *v.* to dance, I 21, 72, 87, II 298, XV d 6; **Daunsynge**, *n.* dancing, XI b 139. [Ofr. *dancer*.]
- Daw**, *n.* (jackdaw), fool, XVII 247. [OE. \**dawe*.]
- Dawing**, **Dawyng**, *n.* daybreak, first signs of dawn, IV a 94, X 42. [OE. *dagung*.]
- Dē**. See *Deye*.
- Deaw**, **Dew**, *n. pl.* dew, IX 59, XV b 28, &c.; *May dew*, dew gathered in May (believed to have medicinal and magical properties), IX 63. [OE. *dēaw*.]
- Debate**, *n.* parleying, wrangling, V 180, XVI 142; *wythouten debate*, putting aside contention, VI 30. [Ofr. *debat*.]
- Debate**, *v.* to contend, XII b 225; **Debatande**, *pres. p.* debating, V 111. [Ofr. *debat-re*.]
- Declare**, *v.* to set out, declare, VII 77, XII b 210. [Ofr. *declarer*.]
- Declyne**, *v.* (to decline), fall; *con d. into acorde*, came to an agreement (cf. ME. *fall at* (or of) *acorde*), VI 149. [Ofr. *decliner*.]
- Ded(e)**, *adj.* dead, I 195, 209, II 108, &c.; used as *pp.* of 'slay', VII 92, XVI 148; *was brought dede*, was brought to death, died, I 213. [OE. *dead*.] See next, and *Dep*.
- Ded(e)**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> death, I 212, IV a 48, b 71, X 51, 77, 118, XVI 317, XVII 193, 543. [A variant, usually Northern, of *Dep*, *q.v.*]
- Ded(e)**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> deed, act, feat, event, III 45, VII 38, 88, IX 312, XI b

# GLOSSARY

- 255, XVI 24, &c.; as obj. to *do*, I 79, VIII b 9, XII a 111; behaviour, way of acting, IV a 62, XI b 62; *Dedis of Apostlis*, Acts of the Apostles, XI b 285; *in dede*, in the actual performance, VII 23, XVI 72; *to fre of dede*, too lavish in its action, VI 121; *in dede and poȝte*, in performance and intention, VI 164. [OE. *dēd*.]
- Ded-day**, *n.* death-day, VIII *introd.* [OE. *dēap-dæg*; see *Dede* (death), but here assimilation of *þd* to *dd* is possible.]
- Ded(e)**, **Deden**, *v.* See *Don*.
- Deidr**, *v.* to tremble, XVII 314. [Cf. MnE. *dither*.]
- Dedly**, *adj.* mortal, XI b 208, 209, 211. [OE. *dēadlic*.]
- Defaced**, *pp.* effaced, erased, III 36. [OFr. *de(s)facier*, *defacer*.]
- Defaute**, *n.* defect, XI a 43, 44, 57; lack, in *for defaute of*, for lack of, VIII a 200, XI b 250. [OFr. *defaute*.]
- Defence**, **Defens** (*of*), *n.* defence (against), IX 332, X 64, 135; *of noble defens*, nobly fortified, II 48. [OFr. *defense*.]
- Defend(e)**, *v.* to defend, v 49, VIII a 82, X 52, &c.; to make defence, X 61, 191; make defence against, ward off, VII 85; **Defending**, *n.* defence, X 194. [OFr. *defend-re*.]
- Defensouris**, *n. pl.* defenders, X 153. [OFr. *defensour*.]
- Defie**, *v.* to defy, XVI 158. [OFr. *de(s)fier*.]
- Degiselich**, *adj.* strange, wonderful, II 360. [From OFr. *de(s)-guiss(i)l*.] See *Gisely*.
- Degrade** (rime-form of), *pa. t. sg.* degraded, XVII 20. [OFr. *degrader*.]
- Degré**, **Degree**, *n.* position, rank, VIII b 71, XVII 21, 489; state (of preparedness), X 40. [OFr. *degré*.]
- Deye** (VIII), **De** (X), **Dye**(n), *v.* to die, II 189, VIII a 269, 325, IX 150, X 73, &c.; **Deye**, *pres. subj.* VIII a 92, 114; **Deyd**, *pa. t. sg.* I 215; **Dyȝede**, XIV c 106; **Deyden**, *pa. t. pl.* VIII b 41; *do . . deye, garre . . dye*, kill, VIII a 269, XVI 164. [ON. *deyja*.]
- Deill**, **Deyll**. See *Dele*, *n.*
- Deyned**, *pa. t. pl.* deigned, VIII a 303. [OFr. *deigner*.]
- Deynté**, *n.* delicacy, II 254. [OFr. *deinté*.]
- Delaiement**, *n.* delay, XII b 152. [OFr. *delaiement*.]
- Dele**, **Deill**, **Deyll**, *n.* part, quantity, in *a grete dele*, a great deal, XVII 450; *ich a deyll*, all, XVII 299; *ylk a dele*, ilke deill, altogether, IV a 27, X 75. [OE. *dēl*.] See *Euerydel*, *Halvendel*, *Somdel*, &c.
- Dele(n)**, *v.* to divide, distribute, deal, mete out, perform, v 124, 217, VI 246, VIII a 91, XI b 270, 272; **Dalt**, *pa. t. sg.* v 350; **Deled**, *pp.* XIII b 49; *dele with*, have to do with, XVI 63; with cognate obj. *dele penny doyll*, XVII 390 (see *Doyll*); *delen ato*, part (*intr.*), II 125. [OE. *dēlan*.]
- Dele**. See *Deuel*.
- Delit(e)**, **Delyte**, *n.* delight, IV b 39, XII a 88, XVI 63; *delytes of*, delight in, IV b 62. [OFr. *delit*.]
- Delitabill**, *adj.* delightful, X *introd.* [OFr. *delitable*.]
- Delytte**, *v.* in *delyttes paym (in)*, 3 *pl. refl.*, take delight (in), IV b 42. [OFr. *delit(i)er*.]
- Deliuier**, *adj.* nimble, v 275; **Deliuierly**, *adv.* nimbly, quickly, x 58, 89. [OFr. *de(s)liuier*.]
- Deliverance**, *n.* deliverance, XII b 17. [OFr. *delivrance*.]
- Deluen**, *v.* to dig; to bury; VIII a 135; **Dalt**, *pa. t. sg.* XIV *introd.*; **Doluen**, *pa. t. pl.* VIII a 184; **Doluen**, *pp.* (dead and) buried, VIII a 173. [OE. *delfan*.]
- Delueres**, *n. pl.* diggers, VIII a 101. [OE. *delfers*.]
- Deluyng**, *n.* digging, VIII a 244. [OE. *delfing*.]
- Deme**, **Dieme**, *v.* to judge, sentence, XII b 216, XVI 34; criti-



# GLOSSARY

- clze**, VIII *a* 75; consider, deem, XI *b* 190, 209, 211; *ne deme show non other*, imagine nothing different, VIII *a* 173; speak, say, V 115 (note), VI 1; with cognate obj. *domes for te deme*, to tell their tales, XV *b* 30. [OE. *dēman*.]
- Den**, *n.* cave, XIII *a* 41, 42, 43. [OE. *denn*.]
- Den**. See *Dynne*.
- Denez**, *adj.* Danish; *Denezax*, an axe with a long blade and usually without a spike at the back, V 155 (note). [OE. *denisc*; OFr. *daneis*.]
- Deop**. See *Dep*.
- Deores**, *n. pl.* wild animals, XV *b* 29. [OE. *dēor*.]
- Departed(e)**, *Depertid*, *pa. t.* separated, VI 18 (*intr.*), VII 145 (*trans.*); departed, IX 308, 320; *pp.* divided, IX 1. [OFr. *de(s)partir*.]
- Dep(e)**, *Deop* (XIII), *adj.* deep, XII *b* 11, XIII *a* 39, XVI 377; as *sō*, the deep (sea), VII 154, XII *a* 160; *adv.* deeply, VI 46. [OE. *dēop*; *adv.* *dēope*.]
- Depely**, *adv.* deeply, greatly, VII 114. [OE. *dēop-līce*.]
- Depertid**. See *Departed*.
- Depnes**, *n.* depth, XVII 434, 460, 520. [OE. *dēop-nēs*.]
- Depriue**, *-pryue*, *v.* to deprive, VI 89, XVI 175. [OFr. *depriver*.]
- Dere**, *adj.* dear; prized, I 258; beloved, I 125, VI 8, VIII *a* 91, XIV *c* 1, XV *f* 1, XVII 172, 190, 419, 527; *my dere*, my friend, VIII *a* 251; pleasing, VI 40; good, &c. (vaguely applied in allit. poems), VI 132, 144, VII 61; *Derrist*, *superl.* best, VII 39. [OE. *dēore*; *dēorra*, compar. (whence also stem of ME. *superl.*).]
- Dere**, *n.* harm, I 166, XVII 317; *maken þe worlde dere*, do injury to mankind (for 'make the world dear to live in'; but cf. 166), VIII *a* 154. [OE. *daru*, influenced by *derian*.]
- Dere**, *v.* to afflict, XIV *b* 10. [OE. *derian*.] See *prec.*
- Dere**, *adv.* dearly, at great cost, IV *a* 80, VIII *a* 75, XVII 373; *as me dere liketh*, to my liking, VIII *a* 286. [OE. *dēore*.]
- Derffe**, *adj.* doughty, VII 84. [ON. *djarf-r*, older, \**dearf-*.] See *Deruely*.
- Derke**, *n.* darkness, VII 167. [OE. *de(o)rc*, *adj.*] See *Perk*.
- Derlyng**, *n.* darling, IV *a* 54. [OE. *dēor-ling*.]
- Derne**, *adj.* secret, XV *b* 29 (note). [OE. *derne*.]
- Derrist**. See *Dere*, *adj.*
- Derthe**, *n.* dearth, famine (personified), VIII *a* 324. [OE. *dēorþu*.] See *Dere*, *adj.*
- Deruely**, *adv.* boldly, V 266. [ON. *djarf-liga*.] See *Derffe*.
- Des**, *n.* seat, throne, XVII 17. [OFr. *deis*; see *N.E.D.*, s.v. *Dais*.]
- Des-**, *Dis-avauntage*, *n.* disadvantage, XIII *b* 35, 37. [OFr. *desavantage*.]
- Deschaunt**, *n.* descant, XI *b* 137 (note). [OFr. *deschant*.]
- Desert**, *adj.* uncultivated and desolate, IX 200; *n.* desert, uninhabited land, IX 179, XI *b* 24. [OFr. *desert*.]
- Deserue(n)**, *v.* to deserve, VIII *a* 43, *b* 32; to earn, VIII *a* 211, *b* 43, 47. [OFr. *deservir*.] See *Serue(n)*.
- Desyre**, *n.* desire, IV *a* 5, XI *b* 295. [OFr. *desir*.] See *Dissiret*.
- Desplaid**, *pp.* unfurled, II 294. [OFr. *despleier*.]
- Desport**, *n.* amusement, IX 276; *do desport*, play, make merry, XII *a* 174. [OFr. *desport*.]
- Desserte**, *n.* deserts, merit, VI 235. [OFr. *desserte*.]
- Desspendoure**, *n.* steward, almoner, III 21. [OFr. *despendour*.] See *Spendere*.
- Destiné**, *n.* fate, V 217, Fate, VIII *a* 269. [OFr. *destinée*.]
- Destresse**, *n.* distress, II 514. [OFr. *destresse*.]

# GLOSSARY

**Det**, *n.* debt, XVII 222; **Dettes**, *pl.* VIII a 92. [OFr. *dette*.]  
**Determinable**, *adj.* decisive, authoritative, VI 234. [OFr. *determinable*.]  
**Determinacion**, *n.* authoritative decision, XI b 263. [OFr. *determination*.]  
**Dep**, *v.* See **Don**.  
**Dep(e)**, **Deth**, *n.* death, II 332, V 37, VII 9, VIII a 324 (the Plague), &c. [OE. *dēap*.] See **Ded(e)**, *adj.* and *n.*  
**Deuel(l)**, **Deuelle**, **Deuyl(l)**, **Dele** (*v.*), *n.* devil, Devil, IV b 20, 26, V 120, VIII a 56, 114, XI b 105, XV h 16, XVI 341, 399, &c.; *what deuel*, what the devil, XVI 223. [OE. *dēofol*.]  
**Deuelway**; *in þe d.*, in the Devil's name, XVI 133. [See *N.E.D.*, s.v. *Devil* 19.]  
**Deuere**, *n.* duty, XVII 319. [OFr. *deveir*.]  
**Devyded** (*in*), *pp.* divided (into), IX 28. [L. *dividere*.]  
**Deuise**, -yse, **Devise**, *v.* to describe, II 312; to describe, relate, IX 267, 268, 271. [OFr. *deviser*; see *N.E.D.*, s.v. *Devise*.]  
**Deuocio(un)**, **Deuocyun**, *n.* devotion, devoutness, pious practice, I 18, V 124, XI b 110, 120, XII a 14, &c. [OFr. *devocion*.]  
**Deuote**, **Deout**, *adj.* devout, VI 46, XI b 58, &c. [OFr. *devot*.]  
**Deoutnes**, *n.* devoutness, XIV c 79. [From prec.]  
**Dew**, **Dewly**, See **Du**, **Duly**.  
**Dyaone**, *n.* deacon, III 9, 12; **Diaknen**, *dat. pl.*, III 5. [OE. *diacon*, OFr. *diacne*.] See **Archidekenes**.  
**Dyamand**, **Dyamaund**, *n.* diamond, IX 33, 36, &c. [OFr. *diamant*, altered form of *ademant*; see *Ademand*.]  
**Diche**, **Dyche**, *n.* moat, dike, II 361, VI 247; notion in VI appar. releasing of water pent up by a dam. [OE. *dīc*.]  
**Dyd**, **Dide(n)**. See **Do(n)**.

**Dye(n)**. See **Deye**.  
**Diemed**. See **Deme**.  
**Diete**, *v. refl.* to diet (oneself), VIII a 263. [From OFr. *diète*, *n.*]  
**Diffynen**, *pres. pl.* determine, fix, IX 315. [OFr. *definier*.]  
**Digge**, **Dyggen**, *v.* to dig, II 255, IX 231; **Digged**, *pa. t. pl.* VIII a 101. [OFr. *diguer*; see *N.E.D.*]  
**Dyggynge**, *n.* digging, IX 201.  
**Dignyté**, *n.* dignity; of *dignyte*, worshipful, XVII 166. [OFr. *digneté*.]  
**Dy3ede**. See **Deye**.  
**Dizte**, **Dighte**, **Dy3te**, **Dyghte**, *v.* to arrange, prepare, make, I 30, V 155, VIII a 286; *dizte*, arrayed for battle, XIV b 34; *dyght to dede*, put to death, XVII 543. [OE. *dihhtan*.]  
**Diken**, **Dyken**, *v.* to dig, VIII a 135, 184. [OE. *dician*.]  
**Diker(e)**, **Dyker**, *n.* digger, ditcher, VIII a 101, 325. [OE. *dicere*.]  
**Dykyngge**, digging, ditching, VIII a 244. [OE. *dicung*.]  
**Diligently**, *adv.* watchfully, IX 191. [From OFr. *diligent*.]  
**Dim**, *adj.* faint, II 285; **Dimme**, *adv.* faintly, XII b 31. [OE. *dim*.]  
**Dymes**, *n. pl.* tithes, XI b 300. [OFr. *di(s)me*, from L. *decima*.]  
**Dimuir**, *adj.* calm, XIV c 37. [OFr. *\*demeur*, in *demeurement*, soberly.]  
**Dyne**, *v. trans.* to eat (at dinner), VIII a 303; 2 *sg. pres. subj.* VIII a 257; **Dyned**, *pp. intr.* had dinner, VIII a 274. [OFr. *di(s)ner*.]  
**Dyner**, *n.* dinner, VIII a 286. [OFr. *di(s)ner*.]  
**Dynge(n)**, *v.* to strike, smite, beat, V 37 (MS. *dynne*), VIII a 135, XVI 180, 203; **Dang**, *pa. t. pl.* x 54. [OE. *\*dingan*; cf. *dengnan*, ON. *dengja*.]  
**Dynne**, *n.* noise, XVI 234, 284;  
**Den**, XV h 2. [OE. *dyne*.]  
**Dynt**, *n.* stroke, blow, V 48, 155,

# GLOSSARY

- 106, XV h 2; *dynt of honde*, a blow (with a weapon), V 37, VII 92. [OE. *dynt*.]
- Diol**. See **Dole**.
- Dirige**, *n.* (dirige), matins in the office for the dead, VIII b 48, XI b 132 (note). [L. *dirige*.]
- Disceit**, *n.* deception, wilc, XI b 171, 311. [OFr. *deceite*.]
- Disceyue(n)**, *v.* to deceive, IX 112, XI b 92. [OFr. *deceiv-re*, *deceiv-cir*.]
- Disceudo**, *pa. t.* descended, XVI 77. [OFr. *descend-re*.]
- Disoiple**, *n.* disciple, XI b 15, XII introd. [OFr. *disciple*.]
- Discord**, *n.* discord; *without discord*, in peace (or incontestably; cf. *Distance*), XVII 31. [OFr. *discord*.]
- Discrecyone (of)**, *n.* ? separation (from), IV b 69. [OFr. *discrecion*.]
- Discre(e)t**, *adj.* judicious, discerning, VIII b 88, IX 295. [OFr. *discret*.]
- Disour(e)s**, *n. pl.* professional story-tellers, jesters, I introd., VIII a 56. [OFr. *disour*.]
- Dispisen**, *v.* to despise, XI b 93, 179. [OFr. *despire*, *despis*.]
- Dysplese3**, *Displeases*, *v.* 3 *sg. pres.* displeases, VI 95, XVII 85; *imper. pl. (intr.)* be displeased, VI 62. [OFr. *desplaisir*.]
- Dysseuer**, *v.* depart, XVII 27. [OFr. *desseuerer*.]
- Dissiret**, *pa. t.* desired, VII 114. [OFr. *desirer*.] See **Desyre**.
- Disstrye3**. See **Distroie**.
- Distance**, *n.* quarrelling; *without distance*, indisputably, XVII 57. [OFr. *distance*.]
- Distreynen**, *v.* to afflict, IX 315. [OFr. *destreindre*, *destreign*.]
- Distroie**, -oy(e), **Destroye**, *v.* to destroy, VII 28, IX 215, XI b 215, XVII 93; **Disstrye3**, *pres. pl.* V 307. [OFr. *destrui-re*; with *disstrye3* cf. *Byled*, *Nye*.]
- Distroiynge**, *n.* destruction, XI b 100. [From *prec.*]
- Dysturble**, *v.* to disturb, I 16. [OFr. *destourbler*.]
- Ditees**, *n. pl.* poems, XII introd. [OFr. *ditte*.]
- Diuers(e)**, **Dyuers(e)**, *adj.* varying, divergent, XIII b 44; different, various, IX 16, 287, 289, XII a 55, &c.; *dyuers maner(e)*, different kinds of, XIII b 47, 48; *ich maner diuers animal*, every kind of different animal, II 364. [OFr. *divers*.]
- Dyuersitees**, -ee3, *n. pl.* (strange) varieties, IX 266, 280. [OFr. *diversité*.]
- Do(n)**, **Doo**, *v.* I 219, IV b 65, IX 169, &c. to do; *to done* (OE. *tō donne*), VIII a 104, 197, IX 160; 2 *sg.* **Dos**, XVII 196; **Doste**, VIII a 75; **Dot3**, VI 196; 3 *sg.* **Dep** (OE. *dēþ*), III 60; **Dose**, IV a 57, &c.; **Dot3**, V 143; **Dop**, II 112, &c.; *pl.* **Don(e)**, II 2, VIII a 220, &c.; **Dos**, I 157; **Dop** (MS. *doh*), \*XV b 22; *imper. pl.* **Dot3**, VI 161, 176; **Dop**, I 82, II 218; *1<sup>a</sup> t. sg.* **Ded(e)**, I 176, II 232, III 17, &c.; **Dyd**, I 166, &c.; **Did(e)**, XI b 13, XVII 11 (2 *sg.*), &c.; *pl.* **Dede(n)**, II 32, XV i 13; **Diden**, XI b 247. *Pres. p.* **Doande**, IV b 9; *pp.* **Do**, XI b 271, XII a 107, &c.; **Doyme**, XVII 139; **Don(e)**, IX 326, XIV a 24, &c.; **Ydo**, II 381; **Ydone**, II 76. (i) To act, do, make, perform, work, II 32, III 17, IV b 9, 25, VI 161, XIV b 38, &c.; to exert, XI b 6; representing any verb understood, I 157, II 112, &c.; *be to done*, *es to doo*, is to be done, IV b 65, VIII a 197; *dop at*, act according to, I 82; *don gret pyne*, toil hard, VI 151; *don him felaschipe*, bear him company, XII a 24; *dop3 your best*, do your best, II 218; *do þi best*, get on as best you can, II 126; *made hymself to done*, set himself to work, VIII a 104. (ii) To make, cause to, III 60, VI 196; *ded come*, fetched, I 176;

# GLOSSARY

- do deye*, kill, VIII a 269; *dotz* *me drede*, makes me afraid, v 143; *do(n) to wyte, to vnderstande*, give (one) to understand, inform, II 2, VIII a 56; followed by *infin.* (without expressed subj., as *did it wryte*, had it written), I *introd.*, 218, VIII a 79 (note), and (merging into mere auxil. as in Mn.E.) I 167, XVI 203, XVII 326, &c. (*cf.* Gar). (iii) To put, I 219, VI 6; *dede on (upon)*, donned, II 343, XII a 53; *don awai*, set aside, abolished, XI b 206. (iv) *Reft. in dede him out*, went out, II 232, 474. (v) *Pp.* finished, I 68, XVII 139; at an end, XIV a 24; past, over, II 76, VII 167, XVII 148; *haue done*, (get it done), be quick, XVII 316, 352, 480. *I haue at do*, I have something to do, XVII 235 (*see* At); *do way!*, enough!, II 226. [OE. *dōn*; *dȳde* (*dēde*, *dāde*), pa. t.; *see* Morsbach, M.E. Gram., § 130, n. 6.] *See* Vndo.
- Docke**, *v.* to curtail, mutilate, XI a 57. [Obscure.]
- Doctours**, *n. pl.* doctors (of the Church), XI a 27. [Ofr. *doctour*.]
- Dozty**, Doughty, Douhti, *adj.* doughty, v 196, VII 84, XIV c 106; as *sb.*, v 266. [OE. *dohtig*.]
- Doztyr**, Doghter, -yr, Douzter (VIII), Dowhter (XII), *n.* daughter, I 44, 47, 215, VIII a 14, 73, XII a 192, &c.; Doghtyr, *gen. sg.* I 136; [OE. *dohtor*.]
- Doyme**. *See* Do(n).
- Doyll**, *n.* dole, what is distributed in charity; *penny doyll*, mass-penny, the offering for a mass for the soul of one dead, XVII 390. [OE. (*ge-*)*dāl*.] *See* Dele(n).
- Doynge**, *n.*; *d. awaye of*, putting away, IV b 61; *doyngeis*, affairs, XI b 290. [OE. *dōung*.]
- Dold**, *adj.* stupid, XVII 266. [! Related (as *dulled* to *dull*) to OE. *dol*.] *See* Dull.
- Dole**, Diol (II), *n.* lamentation, grief, misery, II 198, VIII a 114, XIV b 10, XVI 347. [Ofr. *dol*, *doel*, *deol*, *diol*, &c.]
- Dol(e)ful**, *adj.* doleful, XIV b 72, xv h 16. [Prec. + *-ful*.]
- Doluen**. *See* Deluen.
- Dome**, *n.* judgement, XVI 319; doom, I 173; award, VI 220; *domes for te deme*, to converse, xv b 30 (*see* Deme). [OE. *dōm*.]
- Domesday(e)**, Domysday, *n.* Doomsday, IV a 35, XI b 48, XVII 25. [OE. *dōmes dæg*.]
- Donge**, *n.* dung, manure, VIII a 283. [OE. *dūng*.]
- Donkep**, *pres. pl.* moisten, xv b 28. [Unknown; *cf.* Mn.E. *dank*.]
- Dore**, Doore (XVII), *n.* door, XII a 70, XVII 137, 280, 376. [OE. *duru*; *dor*.]
- Dore(n)**, Dorste. *See* Dar.
- Dosnyt**, *pp.* dazed, stunned, x 129. [Obscure.]
- Dote**, *n.* dotard, fool, XVII 265. [! From next.]
- Dote**, *v.* to talk folly, XVII 367. [Cf. MDu. *doten*; ! Ofr. *redoter*.]
- Dotz**, Dop. *See* Do(n).
- Doubill**, Double, *adj.* double, x *introd.*, XII a 162. [Ofr. *double*.]
- Doufe**; Douzter; Douhti. *See* Dowue; Doztyr; Dozty.
- Doumbe**, *adj.* dumb, XI b 175. [OE. *dūmb*.]
- Doun**, *n.* down (feathers), XII a 95. [ON. *dún-n*.]
- Doun(e)**, Down(e), *adv.* down, I 76, 194, II 69, x 101, &c. *See* Adoun.
- Dounes**, *n. pl.* hills, xv b 28. [OE. *dūn*.]
- Dousour**, *n.* sweetness, VI 69. [Ofr. *dousur*.]
- Dout(e)**, *n.* fear, I 147, XII a 144, XIV a 14; (fear of) danger, x 38, [Ofr. *doute*.]
- Doute**, *v.* to fear, VII 114; Dutte, *pa. t. sg.* v 189. [Ofr. *douter*.]
- Dowhter**. *See* Doztyr.
- Dowid**, *pp.* endowed, XI b 140. [Ofr. *do(u)er*.]
- Dowue**, Dowfe, Doufe, *n.* dove,

# GLOSSARY

- XVI 78, XVII 484, 505, 514.  
[OE. † *\*dūfe*; ON. *dúfa*.]
- Drad, Dradde.** See Drede(n).
- Dragounes, n. pl.** dragons, IX 203. [OFr. *dragon*.]
- Dray(e), n.** commotion, XIV b 34, XVI 146. [OFr. *de(s)rai*.]
- Draught, n.** (a move in chess), an artful trick, XVI 399 (see Drawe). [OE. *\*dræht*, related to next.]
- Draw(e), v. trans.** to draw, drag, pull, bring, &c., IV b 19, IX 124, X 82, XIII a 33, XVI 319; to cart, VIII a 283; *intr.* move, proceed, &c., XVII 245; Drogh, *pa. t. sg.* XV a 12; Drou, XV g 16; Drouh, Drowh, XII a 155, b 73, 124; Drogho, *pa. t. pl.* VII 88; Drew, X 58; Drawe, *pp.* XII b 90, XIII a 35; Drawyn, X 124; Ydrawe, II 295. *þou drawes to wittnesse*, thou citest, XVI 279; *drawe us no draught*, make no move against us, play us no trick (a chess metaphor; cf. Chaucer, *Bk. Duchesse*, 682), XVI 399; *drou hymself bi þe top*, tore his hair, XV g 16; *drawe to, toward*, approach, XII b 124, XIII a 57; *draweth (to) colour lyke*, approaches the colour of, IX 34 (note); *drawe after*, take after, resemble, XIII b 6. [OE. *dragan*.] See Vp-, With-drawe.
- Draw-brig, n.** drawbridge, X 165. [Prec. + ON. *bryggja*.] See Brygge.
- Drawynge (intill), n.** coming (to), IV b 63.
- Drede, n.** fear, I 147, 211, &c.; doubt (cf. Dredles), in *I puiþ þou holly out of d.*, I assure you, XIV c 12; *ensample and drede ajens*, a fearful caution against, I 261; *for drede*, in fear, V 190, XVII 212; in spite of their fear (of me), XVI 146. [From next.]
- Drede(n), Dred, v. trans.** to fear, IV b 85, V 287, XI b 141, XVII 47, 55; *intr.* to be afraid, IV a 31 (with *of*), 61, V 143; *refl.* to be afraid, XI a 61, XII b 67, 108 (*dradde him unto*, was afraid of). *Dradde, pa. t.* XII b 67, 108; *Dredde, i* 145, XIV c 30, 62; *Drad, pp.* XIV c 19. [OE. (*on*)-*drēdan*, -*drēdan*.] See Adrad.
- Dredles, Droid(les), adj.** fearless, V 266; (parenthetic) without doubt, X 88. [From Diede, *n.*]
- Dreed, pp.** endured, XVII 533. [OE. *drēogan*, str. v.]
- Dregh, Dre3, adj.** heavy; tedious, IV a 12; *adv.* heavily, forcibly, V 195. [ON. *drjúg-r*, older *\*dreog-*.]
- Dreie.** See Druyze.
- Dreynte, pa. t.** drowned (*intr.*), XII a 135; *Dreinte, pp.* XII a 167. [OE. *drencan*, *drencie*.]
- Dreme, n.** noise, XV h 16. [OE. *drēam*.]
- Dremys, n. pl.** dreams, XI b 73. [ON. *draum-r*, appar. identified in form with OE. *drēam*, noise, music; see prec.]
- Drepit, pp.** smitten, VII 9. [OE. *drepan*.]
- Dresse, Dres, v.** (to direct); to arrange, ordain, VI 135; to set (up), X 16; *I will dres me to*, I will get ready to, XVII 238. [OFr. *dresser*.]
- Drife, Dryfe.** See Dryue.
- Dry3tyn, n.** God, V 70. [OE. *dryhten*.]
- Drink, Drynk(e), Dryng, n.** drink, XV e 14, 15; *esp.* in *mete and drink*, &c., see Mete; *pl.* potions, VIII a 269. [From next.]
- Drynke(n), v.** to drink, IX 6, 256, &c.; drink strong drink, VIII a 257; *fig.* pay the penalty, pay for it, XVII 380 (*or* drown; but cf. *N.E.D.*, s.v. *Drink* 16); *Drank, pa. t. pl.* I 158; *Dronken, pp.* in *ben lyghtly d.*, easily get drunk, IX 14; *Ydronke, VIII a 274.* [OE. *drincan*.]
- Dryue, Drive; Dryfe, Drife (XVII), v. trans.** to drive, VIII a 128, 184, b 19, XV h 2, XVII 273; *intr.* to hasten, I 171, XVII

# GLOSSARY

- 193; as *pai miȝt driue*, as fast as they could go, II 141; *Dryuen*, *pp.* (*intr.*) hurtled, V 195. [OE. *drifan*.] See To-dryue.
- Drogh(e)**. See Draw(e).
- Drone**, **Drowne**, *v.* to drown, VII 154, XVII 372. [See *N.E.D.*]
- Dronke-lewe**, *adj.* given to drunkenness, XI b 197. [OE. *druncen-læwe*.]
- Dronken**. See Drynke(n).
- Drou(h)**, **Drowh**. See Draw(e).
- Drought**, *n.* dry weather, VIII a 283. [OE. *drūgop*, \**drūhp*.]
- Druyȝe**, **Drele** (XII), **Dry(e)**, *adj.* dry, I 120, XII b 23, XVII 370; as *sb.*, XIV c 30. [OE. *drūge* (Kt. *drēge*).]
- Du**, **Dew**, *adj.* belonging; *was dew to*, belonged to, VII 61; *hor du nyghtis*, the nights belonging to them, VII 127; **Duly**, **Dewly** (XVI), *adv.* correctly, rightly, as is due, VII 60, 64, XVI 248. [OFr. *deu*, *du*.]
- Duell(e)**. See Dwell(e).
- Duine**, *pp.* wasted, II 261. [OE. *dwinan*; *dwinen*, *pp.*]
- Duk(e)**, *n.* duke, VII 84, 92, XIV c 65, &c. [OFr. *duc*.]
- Dull**, *adj.* stupid, foolish, VII 50. [OE. *†dylle*, rel. to *dol*.]
- Dulle**, *v.* to make dull, stupefy, XII *introd.* [From prec.]
- Dure**, **Duyre**, *v.* to endure, last, remain, VIII a 58, b 25, XIII a 3, XIV c 4. [OFr. *durer*.]
- Durst**. See Dar.
- Dusche**, *n.* crash, X 106. [Echoic.]
- Duschit**, *pa. t. sg.* crashed, X 101. [As prec.]
- Dutte**. See Donte.
- Dwelle(n)**, **Duell(e)**, *v.* to linger, tarry, XII b 146; *to dwelle in*, to dwell on, XI b 130; to remain, abide, IV a 90, IX 173, XII b 172, XVI 304, &c.; to live, dwell, IX 10, 165, 288, &c. **Dwelling**, *n.* XIV a 24. [OE. *dwellan*.]
- Ebren**, *n.* Hebrew (language), XI a 44; **Ebrow**, IX 208, 212. [OFr. (*hebreu*).]
- Eche**, *adj.* each, VIII a 104, XI b 6, 19, &c.; *eche a*, every, VIII a 2, 189, 243; *prom.* each one, II 403, XI b 47. [OE. *ælc*.] See Ich, Ilk, Vch.
- Echone**, *pron.* each one, I 51, 196; **Echoune**, I 49. [Prec. + OE. *ān*.]
- Een**; **Eest**; **Eet**. See Eije; **Est**; **Ete(n)**.
- Eft(e)**, *adv.* afterwards, again, once more, thereupon, I 141, 143, 229, 235, II 211, V 227, 320, XVII 241, 448. [OE. *eft*.]
- Eftsone**, *adv.* (soon) afterwards, VIII a 163; immediately, XII b 68, 70. [Prec. + OE. *sōna*.]
- Eftstoneȝ**, *adv.* soon afterwards; moreover, V 349; **Eftsonis**, X 4. [Prec. + *adv.* -es.]
- Afterward**. See Afterward.
- Egge**, *n.* (edge, cutting weapon), axe, V 324. [OE. *ecg*.]
- Eggyng**, *n.* incitement, IV b 84. [From ON. *eggja*, to egg on.]
- Egyrly**, *adv.* fiercely, X 133. [From OFr. *aigre*, *egre*.]
- Egle**, *n.* eagle, IX 247, 251; *egle hys* for *egles* (gen. sg.), XIII a 22. [OFr. *aigle*, *egle*.]
- Eiȝe**, *n.* eye; *sg.* Eye, IX 304; Ye, I 149, 192; Yȝe, VI 207; Yhe, XII a 71; *pl.* Een, VII 57; Eȝe, XV c 14; Eȝen, VIII a 168; Eiȝe, II 327, 591; Eȝen, II 111; Yhen, XII a 106. [OE. *ēage*, *ēge*.]
- Eir**. See Er, *adv.*
- Eyleȝp**, 3 *sg. pres. ind.* ails, troubles, VIII a 122, 254; Alis, XVII 294. [OE. *eglan*, to molest.]
- Eiste**, *n.* goods, XV g 20. [OE. *ēht*. On *st* for *ht*, see App., p. 278.]
- Eyper**. See Aither.
- Ek(e)**, *adv.* also, II 323, VIII a 282, XII b 195. [OE. *ē(a)c*.]
- Elles**, -eȝ, -is, **Els** (XVII), **Ell** (IX), *adv.* otherwise, else, if not, VI 131, VIII a 175, 227, IX 132,

# GLOSSARY

- XI b 25, 241, 246, XVI 305, &c. ;** pleonastic in apodosis to *bote*, *but if*, I *introd.*, VIII a 307; (any one) else, v 40; (introducing threat), or (else), XVII 299. [OE. *elles*.]
- Elleswhere**, *adv.* elsewhere, away, XII b 180. [OE. *elles-hwær*.]
- Elmesses**. See *Almes*.
- Emang, Emong**. See *Amang, Amonge*.
- Emell**, *prep.* among (following pron.) XVI 104. [ON. *d* (or *i*) *milli*.]
- Empeyre**, *v.* to impair, IX 338. [OFr. *empierer*.] See *Apeyre*.
- Emperise**, *n.* empress, VI 81. [OFr. *emperesse*, with substitution of fem. suffix *-ice*.]
- Emperour(e)**, *n.* emperor, IX 260, XII b 191, 211. [OFr. *emper(e)our*.]
- Empyre**, *n.* imperial sway, VI 94. [OFr. *empire*.]
- En**, *prep.* in Fr. phrase, *en exile*, in exile, II 493. [OFr. *en*.]
- Enarmede**, *pp.* armed, VII 87. [OFr. *enarmer*.] See *Armyt*.
- Encerohe**, *v.* to explore, IX 273. [OFr. *encerchier*.] See *Serche*.
- Enchauntements**, *n. pl.* spells, IX 84. [OFr. *enchantement*.]
- Enchauntour**, *n.* sorcerer, IX 86. [OFr. *enchant(e)our*.]
- Enchesone, Enchesun**, *n.* cause, occasion, I 202; for *pat enchesone of*, on account of, I 43. [OFr. *acheso(u)n*, *encheso(u)n*, &c. For a similar alteration, see *Endorde*.] See *Chesouns*.
- Enclose**, *v.* to shut up, enclose, IX 165, 168, 174, 227. [*en* + *Close*; cf. *in cloos*, s. v. *Cloos, n.*]
- Encrees**, *v.* to increase (*intr.*), XVI 292. [OFr. *encreis*-(Afr. *encres*(s)-), stem of *encreistre*.]
- Ende**, *n.* (i) end, limit I 95, 187, v 112, VII 98, &c.; at *pe ende*, on the end, XII b 54; *sette an e. of*, put finishing touch to, XII *introd.*; *withouten e.*, for ever, XVI 300, 404; *the vitire-*
- meste e. of all þi kynne*, the furthest point (to which one can go back) in your ancestry, XVI 232; see *Fer*, *Laste*, *Partener*, *Toune*, *Tweluemonth*; (ii) borders, confines, IX 180; (iii) object, XII a 21; to *pat e. þat*, &c., in order that, IX 111, 281; (iv) result, success; [*ben*] *triet in þe e.*, turn out trustworthy, VII 17; *bryng to an e.*, accomplish, IX 169; *make an e.*, bring it about, XII a 48; *betre (wors) ende*, advantage, disadvantage, XIII a 59, 60; (v) fate, death, VII 180; *make e. of*, destroy, XVII 104. [OE. *ende*.]
- Ende**, *v. trans.* to end, I 206; to complete, VII 4; *intr.* to come to an end, VII 29; to continue to the end, XI b 110. [OE. *endian*.]
- Endyng**, *n.*; *withowten e.*, for ever, eternally, IV a 96, IX 335. [OE. *endung*.]
- Endyte**, *v.* to suggest or dictate (the form of words to be said or sung), I 56. [OFr. *endit(i)er*.]
- Endles(se)**, *adj.* endless, eternal, IV a 90, VII 2, XVI 35, &c.; *Yendles*, XVI 124. [OE. *endelēas*; *ende-*; with *Yend-* cf. *ederly* (and see *N.E.D.*, s. v. *End*).]
- Endorde**, *pp.* as *sb.* adored (one), VI 8. [OFr. *adorer*; confusion of prefix is probably English, but cf. *Enchesone*.]
- Endre**, *adj.* latter, just passed; *þis endre dai*, a day or two ago, xv a 4, Introduction xii. [ON. *endr* adv., formerly.]
- Enduir, -dure, Induyr**, *v.* to last, VII 39, XIV c 36, XVII 148, 283; to bear, have the strength (to), XIII a 42; *endured in worlde stronge*, suffered severely in the world (or ? remained strong in this world), VI 116. [OFr. *endurer*.]
- Enemy(e)**. See *Enmy*.
- Enes cunnes**. See *Eny*.
- Enew**. See *Ynow*.

# GLOSSARY

**Engendren**, *v.* to beget offspring, IX 59. [OFr. *engendrer*.]

**Engendroure**, *n.* parentage, origin, VIII a 228. [OFr. *engendrure*.]

**Engynys**, *n. pl.* machines, X 33. [OFr. *engin*.] See Gyn(e).

**Engynour**, *n.* engineer (contriver of machines), X 71, 89. [OFr. *engigneor*.] See Gynour.

**Englysch**, *n.* English (language), XI a 30, 37, 64, 65; Englysoh, XIII b 29, 34, &c.; English, XI a 2; Englis(s), III *introd.*; Englysshe, VII *introd.*; Inglis, I *introd.* [OE. *englisc*.]

**Englysch**, *adj.* English, XI a 34; Englysoh, XIV c 17; Englyssh, I *introd.*; Inglis, X 43, XIV a 26, b 10. [OE. *englisc*.]

**Englysch(e)men**, Englysohmen, *n. pl.* Englishmen, XI a 28, 40, 52, XIII b 9, 43, &c. [OE. *englisc + mann*.]

**Eny**, *adj.* any, III 5, VIII a 251, XIII a 48; *eny wyle*, any length of time, VIII b 25; *in eny weie*, by any means, XII a 16; Enes ouunes, XV g 22, Eny kyns, VIII b 20, of any kind, any kind of (OE. *\*æniges cynnes*). [OE. *ænig*, Kt. *ēni(g)*.] See Ani, Ony.

**Enmy**, Enemy(e), *n.* enemy, IV a 92, v 338, VIII b 78, IX 81, &c. [OFr. *enemi*.]

**Enogh**. See Yno3, Ynow.

**Enquestes**, *n. pl.* inquests (inquiries into matters of public or state interest), VIII b 59. [OFr. *enqueste*.]

**Ensa(u)mple**, *n.* example, instance, I 202, XI b 298, 301; cautionary instance, warning, I 261 (see Drede; cf. next). [AFr. *ensample* altered, by confusion of prefixes, from OFr. *essample*.] See Sample.

**Ensamplen**, *v. refl.*; *wherof* [he] may ensamplen him, from which he may take warning, XII b 223 (cf. prec.). [From prec.]

**Entaille**, *n.* fashion, XII a 64. [OFr. *entaille*.]

**Entent(e)**, *n.* purpose, VII 27; *to what e.*, for what reason, XII b 168; *to pat e. to, to pat e. and ende pat*, in order to, that, IX 120, 280; mind, X 184; will, desire, IV a 22; *with all thare e.*, with their whole minds, XVII 113. [OFr. *entent*, *entente*.]

**Enterlacé**, *adj.* interlaced, (verse) with alternate rime, Introduction xv. [OFr. *entrelacé*.]

**Entyrludes**, *n. pl.* comic dramatic pieces, farces, I 5. [AFr. *\*entrolude*, Anglo-L. *interludium*.]

**Entysyd**, *pa. t.* enticed, XVII 37. [OFr. *enticier*.]

**Entre**, Entere, *v.* to enter, XVI 270, 282; *entered in ludas*, inspired Judas, XVI 165. [OFr. *entirer*.]

**Entrike**, *v.* to deceive, XII a 116. [OFr. *entriquer*.]

**Enveremyt**, *pa. t.* surrounded, x 46. [OFr. *environner*; the forms *enverom-* &c. first appear in English in 14th c.]

**Enuy**, *n.* envy, XVII 51. [OFr. *envie*.]

**Eorne**, *v.* to run; to flow, XIII a 23, 37, 54, 62; Yarn, *pa. t. sg.* ran, III 43; Ourn, *pl.* II 85; Vrn, II 89. [OE. *earnan*; *pa. t. earn, urnon*.] See Ryn.

**Eorpe**. See Erth(e).

**Erbez**, Herbes, *n. pl.* (green) plants, v 122, XII a 82. [OFr. (*h*)erbe.]

**Erde**, *n.* dwelling-place, own land, VIII a 194; in tag *in erde* (on earth, among men), v 348, it is perh. a form of Erth(e). [OE. *ard*. The frequent ME. (Northern) form *erd(e)*, earth, may, in part, be due to this; but cf. Dede n.<sup>1</sup>]

**Er(e)**, Eir (x), *adv.* before, v 209, XII b 113; ere now, XVII 328; formerly, VI 12; earlier (with *befor*) X 140; *conj.* before (usually with *suby.*), II 190, 256, v 152, 204, 223, XII a 104, b 19; *prep.* before (in time), VIII a 140. [OE. *ær*.] See Ar, Are, Or.



# GLOSSARY

**Er(e)**, *pres. ind. pl. arc*, I *introd.*, IV *a* 60, *b* 8, 53, 54, XIV *a* 6, 7, 12, 18, *b* 85, &c. [ON. *eru*.] See **Ar(e)**, **Es**, &c.

**Ere**, *n.* ear, II 528, VIII *a* 263, XII *a* 104, *b* 32; **Eris**, *pl.* XI *b* 159. [OE. *ære*.]

**Erie**, **Erye**, *v.* to plough, VIII *a* 4, 5, 67, 100, 110. [OE. *erian*.]

**Erlas**, **Erla**, *n. pl.* earls, II 202, 503, VII 84. [OE. *forl*, infl. in sense by cognate ON. *jarl*.]

**Erllohe**, *adv.* early, VIII *b* 15; **Erlly**, VI 146; *e. and late*, at all times, VI 32. [OE. *ærlice*.] See **Er(e)**, **Ar**.

**Ernde**, *n.* the business (on which one has come), V 235. [OE. *ærende*, message; ON. *erindi*, &c. message, business.]

**Erre**, *v.* to err, XI *b* 14. [OFr. *errer*.]

**Errour**, *n.* error, falsehood, heretical opinion, VII 46, XI *b* 44, 77, 215; *speke errour*, say what is mistaken, VI 62. [OFr. *errour*.]

**Ert**. See **Art**.

**Erth(e)**, **Eorþe** (XIII, XIV *c*), **Vrþe** (VI), *n.* earth, soil, IV *b* 4, 12; the ground, IV *b* 36, V 161, IX 149, XIII *a* 8, 15; the world, VI 82, XI *a* 8, XVII 180; *in erth(e)*, on earth, in the world, IV *a* 47, IX 332, XVI 363, XVII 42, &c.; *in eorþe*, XIV *c* 110; *upon erthe*, V 30; *in erth* (sc. *lufe in erth*), earthly (love), IV *a* 10. [OE. *eorþe*, *eorþe*.] See **Erde**.

**Erth(e)ly**, *adj.* earthly, IV *a* 29, *b* 12, 29, XVI 134, &c. [OE. *eorþlic*.]

**Erytage**, **Herytage**, *n.* inheritance, VI 57, 83. [OFr. (*h*)*eritage*.]

**Els**, 3 *sg. pres. ind.* is, I 7, \*128 (note), IV *a* 1, 5, 10, &c., *b* 65, XIV *a* 5, 20, *b* 8, 9, XV *a* 9. [A Northern form. ON. *es*.] See **Is**, &c.

**Eschue**, **Eschuie**, *v.* to avoid, escape, VIII *a* 55, XII *b* 8. [OFr. *eschiver*, *eschuer*.]

**Ese**, **Ays**, *n.* comfort, pleasure, in

*him is ays*, gives him pleasure or comfort, II 239; *at ese*, comfortable, VIII *a* 144; well off, XVII 388. [OFr. *aise*, *eise*.] See **Malais**, **Missays**.

**Eesly**, **Esily**, *adv.* without discomfort, XII *b* 91; easily, IX 119. [From ME. *esé*, OFr. *aisié* (related to *prec.*).]

**Eest(e)**, **Eest** (XVII), east; *adj.* IX 2; *adv.* XVI 333; *n.* IX 73, XIII *b* 51, XVII 453. [OE. *east*, *adv.*, *east*, *n.*]

**Ete(n)**, *v.* to eat, VIII *a* 129, 258, 298, IX 142, 242, XV *g* 25, XVII 395 (see **Bred**), &c.; **Eet**, *pa. t. sg.* VIII *a* 291; **Ete**, *pa. t. pl.* I 158, II 396; **Eten**, *fp.* VIII *a* 261, IX 144; **Etin**, XIV *b* 74, 76, 77. [OE. *etan*.]

**Euangelistis**, *n. pl.* evangelists, XI *b* 306. [L. *evangelista*.] See **Awangelys**.

**Euel(l)**. See **Yuel**.

**Euen**, **Eve**, *n.* evening, III 54, VIII *a* 178, XII *b* 18, XVII 205; see **Morwe**. [OE. *æfen*, *ēfen*.]

**Euen(e)**, **Euyn**, **Evin**, *adv.* equally, exactly, just, quite, indeed, I *introd.*, VII 27, XII *b* 49, XVII 125, 290, 379, 462, &c.; also, too, VII 51, 154; *evin* (*till*), just opposite, X 81; *euene ryȝt*, exactly, XIII *a* 47; *euen Hym by*, on a level with Him, XVII 18; *ful(l) euen*, equally, as well, quite, XVI 280, XVII 10, 344. [OE. *efen*, *efne*.]

**Euenly**, *adv.* exactly, XVII 258. [OE. *efenlice*.]

**Euensong(e)**, *n.* evensong, vespers, VI 169, XI *b* 131, 189, 224, 241. [OE. *ēfen-sāng*, *-sōng*.]

**Euentyde**, *n.* evening, VI 222. [OE. *ēfen-tīd*.]

**Euer(e)**, *adv.* ever; always, continually, for ever, I 94, VII 2, VIII *a* 271, *b* 100, &c.; at any time, II 42, V 57, IX 327, &c.; added to indef. relatives (*q.v.*), I 2, XVII 210, &c. [OE. *æfre*.]

**Euerich**, **Euerych(e)**, **Eueri**, *adj.* every, each, I 9, II 60, 517,

# GLOSSARY

- 580, IX 63, XIII a 22, 26, &c.; *euërich a*, every, II 490, XVII 544. [OE. *ēfre-ylc.*] See Eche, Ich, &c.
- Euerichon**, *pron.* every one, II 189; **Euerilkone**, XVI 311 (in apposition to prec. noun). [Prec. + OE. *ān.*]
- Everydel**, *adv.* in every detail, XII a 147. [Eueri + Dele, *q.v.*] See Somdel.
- Euermare**, **Euermore**, *adv.* (for) evermore, ever after, I 97, II 213, IV a 20, VIII a 236, XIV b 64, &c.; now and always, VI 231. [OE. *ēfre + mære.*] See Mor(e).
- Euermo**, *adv.* evermore, II 168. [OE. *ēfre + mā.*] See Mo.
- Euyll**. See Yuel.
- Evidence**, *n.* evidence, indication (of what is to come), XII a 128. [Ofr. *evidence.*]
- Evin**, **Euyñ**. See Euen(e).
- Euper**, *conj.*; *euper . . and*, both . . and, VII 57. [OE. *ēg-hwæper*, *ēgweper.*] See Aither.
- Examyne**, *v.* to examine, test, IX 295, 297, 300. [Ofr. *examiner.*]
- Excellent**, *adj.* surpassing, IX 270, 330; *Excellently* of alle þyse oper, conspicuously among all these others, V 355. [Ofr. *excellent.*]
- Excuse(n)**, *v.* to excuse, V 63, 360, XI b 8, 145, &c. [Ofr. *excuser.*]
- Exile**, *n.*; *en exile*, in exile, II 493. [Ofr. *en exile.*]
- Expownd**, *v.* to expound; *I expownd*, it is my opinion, XVII 440. [Ofr. *expondre.*]
- Expres**, *v.* to express, XVII 13. [Ofr. *expresser.*]
- Expresse**, *adv.* definitely, XI b 63. [Ofr. *expres*, *adj.*]
- Fabill**, **Fable**, *n.* fable, fabulous tale, VI 232, VII 34, X *introd.* [Ofr. *fable.*]
- Face**, *n.* face, V 303, &c.; *distrib.* 59 (see I lert), XIII a 33; *in His face*, to His face, openly, XI b 179; *mannes face*, VIII a 234 (note). [Ofr. *face.*]
- Fader**, **Fadir**, -yr, **Uader** (III), *n.* father, I 122, II 29, III *introd.*, VIII b 37, IX 286, &c.; **Fadir**, *gen. sg.* XVI 79; **Fadris**, XVI 36. [OE. *fæder.*]
- Fadirhode**, *n.* fatherhood (as title), IX 294. [Piec. + OE. *hād.*]
- Faggatis**, *n. pl.* fagots, X 111. [Ofr. *fagot.*] See Flaggatis.
- Faght**. See Fight.
- Fai**, **Fay**, *n.* faith, XIV c 7; in French formula *par ma fay*, by my troth, VI 129. [Ofr. *fei.*] See Feith, Parlay.
- Faierie**. See Fairi.
- Fayll**, *n.* in *withoutten fayll*, without fail, XVII 149. [Ofr. *faillie.*]
- Fail(1)e**, **Fayl**, *v.* to fail, be wanting, VIII a 320, XI b 186, XIV c 35, XVII 274, &c.; *faile (fayl) of*, to fail in, miss, XVI 157, XVII 492; **Fayled**, 2 *sg. pa. t.* were at fault, V 288; **Failot**, *pl.* in *f. hym*, he lacked, VII 175. [Ofr. *faillir.*]
- Fayn(e)**, *adj.* glad, VI 33, 90, VIII a 266, 295; *fayn I wold (that)*, I would be glad (if), XVII 526. [OE. *fægen.*]
- Fayned**. See Feynen.
- Fair(e)**, **Fayr(e)**, **Feyre** (I), **Uayre** (III), *adj.* fair, beautiful, I 63, II 70, XV c 13, &c.; excellent, good, &c., I 260, III 2, V 250, VI 130, XIII a 30, &c.; seemingly, I 80; as *sb.* in *bat faire*, that fair being, IV a 81; *fayre myght the befall*, may good luck come to you, XVII 514; **Feyrest**, **Fairest**, *superl.* II 53, XV c 28, XVII 79, &c.; as *sb.* the fairest (season), VII 99. [OE. *fæger.*]
- Faire**, **Fayre**, *adv.* fairly; courteously, VIII a 25; well, V 161, XVII 255; deftly, V 241; properly (set out), VII 82. [OE. *fægre.*]
- Fayre(s)**. See Fare, *v.*

# GLOSSARY

**Fairi**, -y, **Feyré**, **Faierie** (XII), *n.* faëry, fairyland, II 10 (*the feyré*), II 283, 562; magic, II 193, 404, 492, XII b 67. [OFr. *faierie*.]

**Fairnise**, *n.* beauty, II 56. [OE. *fæger-nis*.]

**Fais**. See **Foo**, *n.*

**Faitest**, 2 *sg. pres.* beg under false pretences, VIII b 30. [Back-formation from **Faitour**.]

**Fayth**, &c. See **Feith**.

**Faitour**, *n.* impostor; beggar, or idler, feigning disease or injury, VIII a 115, 177; (as term of abuse), XVI 157, 209. [OFr. *faitour*.]

**Falce**. See **Fals**.

**Fall**, *n.* fall, XII b 14. [OE. (*ge*-)fall.]

**Falle(n)**, **Fall**, *v.* to fall; **Fel**, **Fell(e)**, *pa. t. sg.* I 23, VII 25, XII b 28, &c.; **Fyl**, I *introd.*, 25, 28, 186; **Falled**, *v.* 175; **Fell(en)**, *pl.* VII 95, IX 149; **Fyl**, **Fillen**, I 194, II 15; **Fal**, **Falle(n)**, *pp.* VII 93 (slain), XII b 57, XVII 521, &c.; *fal yn a swone* (corrupt. of *fallyn aswone*; see **Aswone**), I 195. To fall (down), I 194, II 327, &c.; *fel on slepe*, fell asleep, II 72; to happen, turn out, come to pass, I 23, II 8, V 183, 310 (see **Foule**), VII 25, XII b 18, &c.; (with *dat. pron.*) to happen to, befall, VII 171, XII b 28, 184; to fall to one's share, V 175, 259, VII 76; *hit fell hom of a foule ende*, an evil fate overtook them, VII 180; *as fell for the wintur*, for winter, VII 124. *And my fry shal with me fall*, my children who will share my fate (or who I may happen to have) XVII 66; **Fallyng**, *n.* VII 109. [OE. *fallan*.] See **Befalle**.

**Fals(e)**, **Falce**, *adj.* false, lying, dishonest, V 314, VII 18, VIII a 113, XI a 11, XVII 35, 201, &c.; as *sb.* VII 41; **Falsly**, *adv.* XI b 81. [OE. *fals*, from L. *falsus*.]

**Falshed**, *n.* lying, VN 34. [Prec. + OE. \**hæddu*.]

**Falssyng**, *n.* breaking of faith (applied to the girdle as the cause; cf. **Kest**), V 310. [From ME. *fals(s)en*; cf. OFr. *falsier*.]

**Fame**, *n.* rumour, tale, XII b 189; of good f., of good repute, XVII 141. [OFr. *fame*.]

**Famyn**, *n.* famine, VIII a 319. [OFr. *famine*.]

**Fand(e)**. See **Fynde(n)**

**Fang**. See **Fonge**.

**Fantasyes**, *n. pl.* delusions, imaginings, IX 84, XI b 73. [OFr. *fantasie*.]

**Fantosme**, *n.* illusion, XII b 75. [OFr. *fantosme*.]

**Fare**, *n.* behaviour, practices, V 318, XVI 158; *his feynit fare but he fore with*, the deceit he practised, VII 44. [OE. *faru*.] See **Wel-fare**.

**Fare**, **Fayre** (XVII), *v.* to go, fare, behave, II 604, XVII 190, 255, 415; *fare by, to, wiþ*, behave towards, treat, I 256, VI 107, XIV c 95; *fareþ wel*, &c., farewell, V 81, XVII 238; **Fore**, *pa. t.* VII 93; *fore with*, practised, VII 44; dealt with, VII 176; **Faren**, *pp.* departed, gone (by), VII 29, VIII a 99. [OE. *faran*.] See **Ferde**, *pa. t.*

**Farest**. See **Faire**.

**Farleis**. See **Ferly**, *n.*

**Fasor**, *n.* appearance, VI 71. [OFr. *faisure*.]

**Fast(e)**, *adv.* securely, I 101, II 94, IX 173, XII b 30, &c.; as intensive *adv.* varying with context, II 118, V 335, VIII a 102, XI b 187, XII b 69, XVI 107, XVII 488, &c.; quickly, V 147, XI b 274, XII b 104, &c.; *fast by*, hard by, XIII a 50. [OE. *fæste*.]

**Fastes**, 3 *pl. pres.* fast, IV b 49. [OE. *fæstan*.]

**Fath**. See **Feith**.

**Fauco(u)n**, *n.* falcon, II 307, 312, VIII a 32, &c. [OFr. *fauco(u)n*.]

**Fauntis**, *n. pl.* children, VIII a

# GLOSSARY

278. [Shortened from OFr. *ensa(u)nt.*]
- Fauour**(e), *n.* grace, beauty, VI 68, XVII 79. [OFr. *favour.*]
- Fautlest**, *adj. superl.* in *on þe f.*, the (one) most faultless, V 295. [Error for, or red. of, *faullesest*; OFr. *faute* + OE. *-lēas.*]
- Fautours**, *n. pl.* supporters, XI a 1, 49. [L. *fautor.*]
- Fawty**, *adj.* faulty, V 314, 318. [From ME., OFr. *faute*, *n.*]
- Fē**. See **Fēe**, *n.*<sup>1</sup>
- Fēaw**, **Fēw**(e), *adj. pl.* few, VI 212, VII 52, XIII b 50, XV a 19, &c. [OE. *fēawe.*] See **Fone**.
- Fēoche**, *v.* to fetch, VIII a 150; **Fētte**(n), *pa. t.* VIII a 287, XII b 150, XVI 382; **Yfet**, *pp.* II 170. [OE. *fētian*, *fēccan.*]
- Fēde**, *v.* to feed, VIII a 247, XI b 281; **Fēdde**, *pa. t.* VIII a 292, XI b 278, &c.; **Uedde**, *subj.* would feed, III 8; **Fēdde**, *pp.* IV b 39. [OE. *fēdan.*]
- Fēdyng**e, *n.* feeding; *in f. of*, for feeding, XI b 258. [OE. *fēding.*]
- Fēe**, **Fē**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> goods, XVII 309, 326. [OE. *fē(o)h*, *fēo-*] Distinguish next.
- Fēe**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> fee (as a term of venery, the share given to the dog, falcon, &c.); some small gain in their hunting, XVII 490. [OFr. *feu*, *fe*, &c.]
- Fēeldes**; **Fēele**; **Fēende**; **Fēere**; **Fēest**. See **Feld**(e); **Fēle**, *adj.*; **Fēde**; **Fēre** *n.*<sup>1,2</sup>; **Fēst**.
- Fēghtande**. See **Fight**.
- Fēye**, *adj.* doomed to die, XV c 20. [OE. *fēge.*]
- Fēill**. See **Fēle**, *adj.*
- Fēynd**(is). See **Fend**(e).
- Fēyne**(n), **Fayne** (VII), *v.* to feign, pretend, invent, VII 41, XI b 1, 81, &c.; *feyned hem*, pretended to be, VIII a 115; to falsify, VII 34; **Feynit**, *pp.* false, VII 18; *feynit fare*, deceit, VII 44. [OFr. *fēindre*, *fēign-*.]
- Fēyré**; **Fēyre**(st). See **Fairi**; **Faire**.
- Fēith**, **Fayth**, **Fath** (XVII), &c., *n.* faith, XI b 13, 171, XVI 364, &c.; plighted word, troth, V 216; *bi my fēith, in (god) fayth*, &c., upon my word, V 297, VIII a 266, XVII 228, 330, &c. [OFr. *fēid*, later *fēi.*] See **Fai**.
- Fēythful**, *adj.* honest, VIII a 247; **Fēithfulliche**, *adv.* honestly, VIII a 71; **Faithfully**, accurately, VII 78. [Prec. + OE. *-ful.*]
- Fēl**. See **Falle**(n).
- Fēlaȝschip**, **Fēlaſchipe** (XII), **Fēlaushēpe** (I), **Fellowship** (XVII), *n.* community, I *introd.*; company, in *bere*, *don f.* (with *dat. pron.*), keep (one) company, V 83, XII a 24; friendship, XVII 363. [Next + OE. *-ſcipe.*]
- Fēlawe**, **Fēlowe**, *n.* fellow, I *introd.*, XIV d 7, 16; (contemptuous), XVI 284. [OE. *fēo-laga*, from ON. *fē-lagi.*]
- Fēld**(e), **Filde**, **Fylde**, *n.* field, II 60, VIII a 134, 232; field of battle, VII 45, 93; **Fēeldes**, *pl.* XIII a 19. [OE. *fēld.*] See **Afelde**.
- Fēle**, **Fēele** (XVI), **Fēill** (X), **Uēle** (III), *adj.* many, II 401, 522, III 2, V 349, VI 79, VII 29, X 55, 63, 141, XV b 10, XVI 61, &c. [OE. *fēla*, *adv.*]
- Fēle**, **Fēele**, *v.* to feel, perceive, experience, IV a 25, b 45, V 125, XIII a 26, XVI 346 (see **Fitte**), XVII 121, &c.; *2 sg. subj.* V 204; **Fēlte**, *pa. t.* I 156, 163. [OE. *fēlan.*]
- Fēll**, *v.* to sell; to destroy, IV a 47. [OE. *fēllan.*]
- Fēll**(e), **Fēllen**. See **Falle**(n).
- Fēll**(e), *adj.* deadly, cruel, V 154, VI 7, VII 82, 109, XIV b 33; **Felly**, **Fellyche** (I), *adv.* cruelly, terribly, I 130; fiercely, V 234. [OFr. *fēl.*]
- Fēlloun**e, *adj.* grim, deadly, X 115, 192. [OFr. *fēloun.*]
- Fēmayl**, **Fēmele** (IX), *adj.* female, IX 58, XVII 152. [OFr. *femelle.*]

# GLOSSARY

- Fend(e)**, *n.* devil, Devil, v 125, VIII a 82, IX 93, XI b 3, 220, XVI 340, &c.; **Feende**, XVI 9, 14, &c.; **Feynd**, XVII 35, 43. [OE. *fēond*.]
- Fende**, *v.* to defend, XVI 30. [Shortened from *Defende*, *q v.*]
- Fenyl**, *n.* fennel, xv b 18. [OE. *finu(g)l*.]
- Fenylx**, *n.* Phoenix, VI 70. [OE. *fenix*, L. *phanix*.]
- Fer**, **Ferre**, **Far**, *adj.* and *adv.* far, IV b 36, v 24, XIII a 27, XV g 5, XVII 439, &c.; as *fer as*, in so far as, IX 293; (*vn*) to the *fer(re) ende*, to the very end, VII 78, 95. **Fer(re)**, **Fyrre** (v, VI), *compar.* farther, v 83, XIV b 18; away, XVI 156, 336; further, VII 97; moreover, v 53, VI 184; *fyrre þen*, beyond, VI 203. [OE. *feorr*; *feorr*, *firr* *compar.*] See **Ferforth**, **Fyrþer**.
- Ferde**, *n.* fear, in *for ferde*, in fear, v 62, 204, XVII 315. [Prob. false division of *for-fer(e)d*, pp., terrified; OE. \**for-færan*, -*fēran*.] See next.
- Ferd(e)**, *pp.* afraid, v 314, XIV b 93, XVII 102; at XVI 209 rime requires *flaide* (see **Flay** and note). [OE. *færan*, *fēran*.]
- Ferd(e)**, *pa. t.* fared, XII a 43, 145; *ferd with*, dealt with, X 172. [OE. *fēran*.] See **Fare**, *v.*
- Fere**, **Feere** (XVI), *n.* companion, xv f 5; wife, v 343, XVI 352. [OE. *fēra*.]
- Fere**, **Feere**, *n.* company, in *in fere*, &c., all together, collectively, XVI 126, 364, 385. [OE. *ge-fere*; but this use is prob. partly developed from ME. *y-fere(n)*, OE. *ge-fēran*, pl., (as) companions.] See **Yfere**.
- Fere**, *n.* fear, VIII a 177, 292. [OE. *fær*, *fēr*.]
- Fere**, *n.* outward appearance, VII 18. [Shortened from OFr. *afe(i)re*.]
- Fere-flunderys**, *n. pl.* fiery sparks, xv a 12. [See **Fyr**; cf. Mn.E. and dial. *flinders*, splinters.]
- Ferforth**, *adv.* far, XII b 190. [OE. *feorr* + *forþ*.] See **Fer**.
- Ferked**, *pa. t. sg.* flowed, v 105. [OE. *fer(e)cian*, go.]
- Ferly**, *adj.* wonderful, II 4 (note); *adv.* wondrously, extremely, I 145, xv b 10. [OE. *fær-lice*, suddenly, prob. infl. by ON. *ferliga* monstrously; see next.]
- Ferly**, *n.* a marvel, v 346, x 134; **Farleis**, **Ferlies**, *pl.* VII 95, XVI 61. [OE. *fær-lic*, sudden, prob. infl. by ON. *ferliki* (ME. *ferlike*) monster.] See **prec.**
- Ferre**. See **Fer**.
- Ferryit**, *pp.*; *f. wes*, had farrowed, x 109. [Formed on *farrow*, *ferry*; OE. *færh*, *ferh*, young pig.]
- Fers(e)**, *adj.* fierce, bold, II 293, XIV b 33, XVI 131. [OFr. *fer-s*, nom. sg.] See **Fuersly**.
- Fersch**, *adj.* fresh, XIII a 29, 49. [OE. *fersc*.] See **Fresch**.
- Ferste**, **Uerat**. See **Furst**.
- Feruent**, *adj.* hot, IX 10; burning bright, XVII 8; eager, XVII 77. [OFr. *servent*.]
- Fest**, **Feest** (XVII), *n.* feast, festival, v 333, XVII 454 († with topical allusion to the Corpus Christi festivities). [OFr. *feste*.]
- Feste-dayes**, *n.* feast-days (of the Church), VIII b 30. [From **prec.**]
- Fest(e)**, *v.* make fast, confirm, XVI 340; *pa. t.* v 279; *pp.* fixed, made fast, IV a 1, 82, XVI 335, 337. [OE. *fæstan*; on the vowel see **Cast**.]
- Festnyt**, *pp.* fastened, x 124. [OE. *fæstnian*; see **prec.**]
- Fet(e)**. See **Fote**.
- Fethre-bed**, *n.* feather-bed, XII a 94. [OE. *fēþer-bedd*.]
- Fette(n)**. See **Fecche**, **Fote**.
- Feurpe**, *adj.* fourth, XIII a 18. [OE. *fēorþa*, *fōwerþa*.] See **Fowre**.
- Fewe**. See **Feaw**.
- Ficht**. See **Fight**.
- Fift**, **Fyft**, *adj.* fifth, VII 129, x 2. [OE. *fīfta*.]

# GLOSSARY

**Fyfteyn**; **Uyf**, **Vif**, **Vyftene** (III); *adj.* fifteen, III 21, 26, 29, XVII 443. [OE. *fifteen*.]

**Fight**, **Fyght(e)**, **Fizte**, *v.* to fight, IV b 26, VIII a 36, XVI 131, &c.; **Ficht**, X 66; **Fiste**, XV g 31 (see Appendix, p. 278); *fyght with*, oppose, XVII 138; **Faght**, *pa. t. sg.* XIV b 48; **Foght**, *pl.* VII 45; **Feghtande**, *pres. p.* in *are f.*, fight, IV b 18; **Yfouzte**, *pp.* VIII a 146. [OE. *fe(o)htan*.]

**Fight**, **Fiht**, *n.* fighting, battle, VII 29, 52, XIV c 60; **Ficht**, X 115, 198. [OE. *fe(o)hte*.]

**Figure**, *n.* shape, XII a 114. [Ofr. *figure*.]

**Fyked**, *pa. t. sg.* flinched, V 206. [OE. *\*frian*; cf. *be-fician*, and next.]

**Fikel**, *adj.* fickle, XIV c 7. [OE. *ficol*.]

**Fyl**. See **Falle(n)**.

**Filde**, **Fylde**. See **Feld**.

**File**, *n.* worthless creature, XIV b 47. [ON. *fýla*.]

**Fyled**, *pp.* sharpened, V 157. [OE. *filian* to file; or Ofr. *afilier*.] See **Fylor**.

**Fill**, *v.* to fill, XVII 180. [OE. *fyllan*.]

**Fill(e)**, **Fulle**, *n.* one's fill, II 256, VIII a 261, XVII 207. [OE. *fyll*.]

**Fille**, *n.* chervil (see **Cheruelles**), or wild-thyme, XV b 18. [OE. *file*; in glosses *fil*, *cerfille* = *cerpillum* (i.e. *serpyllum* thyme, but perhaps confused with *chærephyllum*, chervil).]

**Fillen**. See **Falle(n)**.

**Fylor**, *n.* whet-stone, V 157. [Cf. Ofr. *afiloir*.] See **Fyled**.

**Filthe**, *n.* filth, IV a 37, b 16; corruption, XVI 380 (see note). [OE. *fylþ*.]

**Fyn(e)**, *adj.* fine, VII 175, IX 64. [Ofr. *fin*.] See **Fine**.

**Finaly**, *adv.* in the end, XII b 107. [From Ofr. *final*.]

**Fynde(n)**, **Finde**, **Fynd**, *v.* to find, discover, II 1, 256 (*subj.*), VI 148, VII 82, IX 75, XIII a 17,

XVI 6, XVII 330, &c.; to get, XII a 17, XVI 288; to invent, devise, II 4, 14, XI b 137; to provide for, VIII b 80; to provide one with (as *fynden hem tode*), VIII a 71, b 21, 27, 51, 92; *founden me to scole*, provided the means to put me to school, VIII b 37; *founden with*, provided with, XI b 140. **Fint**, **Fynt**, 3 *sg. pres.* (OWS. *find*) II 239, VIII b 92; **Fand**, *pa. t. sg.* X 182, 186; **Fond(e)**, I 37, II 426, VIII b 41, XII a 59, XV a 13, &c.; **Founde**, II 537, 569 (*subj.*); **Fande**, *pl.* XVI 62; **Found**, **Founde(n)**, II 309, VII 172, VIII b 37; **Fon**, *pp.* XVII 503; **Fonden**, IV a 63; **Founde(n)**, I 229, VII 66, XI b 140, &c.; **Fun**, XIV b 93; **Funden**, XIV b 47, 50; **Yfounde**, II 4, 14, XIII a 64. [OE. *findan*.]

**Fyndyng(e)**, *n.* finding, IX 234; invention, XI b 226. [From *prec.*]

**Fine**, *adv.* extremely, very, II 94. [Cf. *Afine*, **Fyn**; see **Zupitza**, (15th c.) *Guy of Warwick*, l. 9086 (note).]

**Fynen**, *pres. pl.* refine, IX 45. [Ofr. *finer*.]

**Fynger**, **Finger**, *n.* finger, II 109, VI 106, VIII a 10. [OE. *finger*.]

**Fint**, **Fynt**. See **Fynde(n)**.

**Fyr(e)**, **Fire**, **Fuyr**, *n.* fire, II 398, IV a 6, XII a 69, XIII a 3, 4, &c.; **Fere**, in *fere-flunderys* (q.v.), XV h 12. [OE. *fȳr* (Kt. *fēr*).]

**Firmament**, *n.* firmament, heavens, VII 124, 134, XVII 7, 422. [(Christian) L. *firmamentum*; first appears in E. c. 1050.]

**Fyrre**. See **Fer**.

**Firste**, **Fyrst(e)**. See **Furst(e)**.

**Fyrþer**, *adv.* further, I 255. [OE. *furþor*, † infl. by *ferr*.] See **Fer**, **Forþer**.

**Fysch**, **Fische**, **Fysh**, *n.* fish, VIII a 305, XIII a 37, XVII 3. [OE. *fisc*.]

**Fiste**. See **Fight**.

# GLOSSARY

**Fitte**, *n.*; *fete þi fitte*, undergo your turn of woe, XVI 346. [M.E. *fit*, terrible or violent experience, &c.; ! OE. (once) *fitt*, contest.]

**Fyue**; *Uif, Vif, Vyf* (III); *adj.* five, III 22, 23, 27, V 125, VI 91 (*see po, adv.*), VIII a 319, XIII b 32, &c. [OE. *fiſ*.]

**Flaggatis**, *n. pl.* fagots, X 23, 25, 27. [! Alteration of *Faggatis*, *q.v.*; another reading is *fagaldis*.]

**Flaz(e)**. *See* Fle(n), Flye.

**Flay**, *v.* to put to flight; terrify, XVII 380; **Flaide**, *pp.* \*XVI 209 (required by rime; MS. *ferde*). [OE. *flēgan*.]

**Flayles**, *n. pl.* flails, VIII a 178. [OE. \**flegel, fligel*; OFr. *flaich*.]

**Flapten**, *pa. t. pl.* lashed, laid on, VIII a 178. [Cf. Du., G., *slappen*.]

**Flasshet**, *pa. t. sg.* flashed, VII 134. [Obscure.]

**Flaw**. *See* Flye.

**Flawme**, *n.* flame, IV a 14, 66. [OFr. *flamme*.]

**Fle(n)**, *v.* to flee, V 57, 62, XV i 16, XVII 292, 296; **Fles**, 2 *sg. pres.* V 204; **Flese**, *pres. pl.* IV b 86; **Fleth**, *imper. pl.* XIV d 14; **Flaz(e)**, *pa. t. sg.* V 206, 208 (second); **Fley**, XI b 273; **Flowen**, *pl.* VIII a 177; **Fled**, *pa. t. and pp.* XIV b 48, 51, 80. [OE. *flēon*, str.] *See* Flye.

**Flee**, **Fle(e)yng(e)**, **Fleze**; *see* Flye. **Fley**; *see* Fle(n).

**Fleme**, *n.* a fugitive, XV b 36. [OE. *flēma*.]

**Flemmynges**, *n. pl.* Flemings, people from Flanders, XIII b 7. [OE. \**flēmīng*; cf. ON. *flēmīng-r*, MDu. *vlāmīng*.]

**Fles(e)**. *See* Fle(n).

**Flesch(e)**, **Flessche**, **Flessh(e)**, *n.* flesh, meat, I 129 (note), V 245, VIII a 18, 150, 305, IX 141; *flessh(e) or bone*, a limb, I 197. [OE. *flāsc*.]

**Flesch(e)ly**, *adj.* carnal, of the body, IV a 57, b 71; **Fleschly**, carnal-minded, worldly, XI b 158. [OE. *flāsc-līc*.]

**Flete**, *v.* to float; **Flietende**, *pres. p.* XII a 157; **Flett**, *pp.* XVII 436. [OE. *flēolan*, str.]

**Fleth**. *See* Fle(n).

**Flett**, *n.* floor, XVII 223. [OE. *flētt*.]

**Flex**, *n.* flax, VIII a 13. [OE. *flēx*.]

**Flye**, **Flyghe**, **Flee** (IV), *v.* to fly, I 193, IV b 4, 30, 38, 41, &c.; **Flaz**, *pa. t. sg.* V 208 (first); **Flaw**, X 92; **Fleze**, was, VI 71 (note); **Fle(e)yng(e)**, *pres. p.* IX 148, 252; **Flone**, *pp.* XVII 487. [OE. *flē(o)gan*.] *See* Fle(n).

**Flyeghyng(e)**, **Flyghyng(e)**, *n.* flying; of *gude (ill) fl.*, strong (weak) in flight, IV b 34, 35, 38. [From *prec.*]

**Flietende**. *See* Flete.

**Flyt**, **Flitte**, *v. trans. and intr.* to move, remove, escape, depart, XVI 210, 336, 340 (*subj.*), XVII 223, 263; **Flyt**, *pa. t.* XVII 17; **Flyt**, **Flit(t)**, *pp.* XVII 454, 540; *in synder flit*, separated, XIV c 31. [ON. *flytja*.]

**Flo**, **Floo**, *v.* to flow, XVII 101, 115. [OE. *flōwan*, ON. *flōa*.]

**Flone**. *See* Flye.

**Flood(e)**, **Flod(e)**, *n.* flood, water, stream, V 105, VII 160, XII a 166, XVI 76; (in *pl.*) waters, waves, VII 123, 142, 171; floods, VII 109, VIII a 320, XVII 101, &c. [OE. *flōd*.]

**Floterand**, *pres. p.* weltering, tossing, VII 160. [OE. *flōtarian*.]

**Flour**, **Flowre**, *n.* flower, II 60, 67, IV a 57, XV e 19, &c.; *in the floures*, in the bloom, XII *introd.*; excellence, in *bar þe flour*, excelled (all), XIV c 23; flour, VIII a 150. [OFr. *flour*; the sense in VIII was not differentiated in spelling until end of 18th cent.]

**Flowen**. *See* Fle(n).

**Flowyng**, *n.* flood, XVII 540. [From OE. *flōwan*.] *See* Flo.

# GLOSSARY

**Flume, n.**; *flume Iordanne*, River Jordan, XVI 76. [OFr. *flum.*]

**Fo.** See Foo.

**Fode, Foodde, n.** food, VII 175, VIII a 21, 71, 200, 264, XVII 10 (see Frute), &c. [OE. *fōda.*] See Fede.

**Foght; Fois.** See Fight; Foo.

**Foysoune, n.** abundance, great number, X 166. [OFr. *foison.*]

**Fold(e), n.** earth, in (*vp*) *on folde*, allit. tag of little meaning, V 305, XIV b 18. [OE. *fōlde.*]

**Fold(e), quasi-sb.** (variety, repetition) in *many oþer folde*, manifold other things, I 20; *other wise many fold*, in manifold other fashions, XVII 54; *bi foldis seuen*, seven times, XVII 13. [False division of OE. *manig-fāld*, *seofon-fāld*, &c., where *-fāld* is adj. suffix.]

**Folde, v.** to fold; enfold, XV f 9, 10; Folde, *pp.* († or *pa. t.*) in *folde vp*, ? covered with her hands, or upturned, VI 74. [OE. *fāldan.*]

**Fole, Foly, &c.** See Fool.

**Folehardi, adj.** foolhardy, II 426. [OFr. *fol-hardi.*] See Fool.

**Folzed.** See Folwen.

**Foly, n.** folly, I 67, XI b 123. [OFr. *folie.*]

**Folk(e), n.** people, II 389, VIII a 292, 295, &c.; mortals, VII 45; **Folkes, pl.** peoples, XVI 70. [OE. *folc.*]

**Folwen, v.** to accompany, VIII a 2; Folzed, *pa. t.* V 354 (see note). [OE. *folgian.*]

**Fome, n.** foam, VII 172. [OE. *fām.*]

**Fomen, n. pl.** foemen, XIV c 85. [OE. *fāh-mann.*] See Foo.

**Fon, Fond(e), Fonden.** See Fynde(n).

**Fonde, v.** to endeavour, seek (to), VIII a 213, XII a 183, XII b 171, XIII b 24; Fondet, *pa. t.* V 57. [OE. *fāndian, fōndian.*]

**Fone, Fune, adj. and pron.** few, XIV a 28, 29, XVII 99. [ME. also *fo*; ? obscurely rel to *few*, *g.w.*]

**Fonge, v.** to get, take, VI 79, 119; **Fang, XVII 245.** [OE. *fōn, ge-fāngen*; cf. ON. *fanga.*] See Onderuonge.

**Fonnyd, (pp.) adj.** infatuated, XI b 37, 38, 76, 167, 215. [From ME. *fon(ne)*, fool; obscure.]

**Foo, adv.** as an enemy, fiercely, V 258. [OE. *fāh, fā-*]

**Foo, n.** foe, XIV d 12; **Fo, II 112, VIII b 60; frende nor foo**, nobody, XVI 287; *ichon other fo*, each hostile to the other, every man against his neighbour, XVII 112; **Fais, pl.** X 55, 65, 197, **Fois, XVI 30; Fooes, XVI 386.** [OE. *ge-fā.*]

**Fool, Fol(e), n.** fool, I 30, V 346, XI b 42, 184, &c. [OFr. *fol.*]

**For, conj.** for, I 109, XVII 231, &c.; **Uor, III 6, 8, &c.**; because, V 300, VII 178, VIII a 235, 237, XIII b 16, XVI 258, 295; so that, XII a 93, 194, XVI 251; *for that*, so that, XII b 133. [OE. *for þam (þe)*, for, because; *for þy þæt*, so that.] See Forþi.

**For; Uor, Vor (III); prep.** for (i.) *Cause*: because of, on account of, through, I 134, II 32, III 17, IV b 35, V 279, VII 183, IX 130, X 136, XI a 32, b 28, 256, XV b 24, &c.; *for of* (OFr. *de par*) for sake of, XV d 5; *for why (whi)!*, and *why!*, XVII 14, 284, 518; *for* (fear of), V 57, 199, XVII 102, &c.; (as precaution) against, VIII a 9, 62, 87, 209, 306, XIV a 36, XV h 12. (ii) *Indir. object*: for (benefit of), III *introd.*, VIII a 278, &c.; for sake, on behalf, of, I 90, III 40, IV a 88, &c. (iii) *Dér. object*: for (purpose of), with a view to, to get, &c., IV a 69, VII 32, 88, VIII a 230, X 41, XI b 126, 182, 235, XVI 220, &c.; *for (uor) to, for te*, in order to, so as to, I 81, II 568, III *introd.*, 44, XV b 30, c 18, &c.; *for till*, X 149, 169; as equiv. of *for* with vbl. sb., X 8, 33, 105; merely equiv. of *to, till*, I 21,



# GLOSSARY

- II 37, X 143, &c. (iv) *Equivalence*: in favour of, VII 13, XI b 215; (in exchange, return, &c.) for, IV a 42, V 284, VIII b 76, IX 190, XI b 162, XV g 20, &c.; as result of, IX 201; for, as, VII 49, 50, VIII a 206, XII a 180, XIV c 92, &c. (v) *Reference*: with regard to, III 9, &c.; for the, for all you care, XVII 193; in spite of, II 571, V 64, XIV a 24, XVI 146; for all(e), despite (all), I 73, 86, XIV b 23, XVI 158. (vi) *Time*: during, VI 226, VIII a 236, &c. See Maystrie, Nones, Sope; Par(e), Pere(fore), &c. [OE *for(e)*.]
- Forbede**, *v.* to forbid, VI 19; *forbede þat* (with neg.), forbid to, I 78; Forbodyn, *pp.* I 7. [OE. *for-bēodan*.] See Bede, *v.*
- Forbere**, *v.* to spare, XIV b 12. [OE. *for-beran*.] See Bere, *v.*
- Forbette**, *pp.* cruelly beaten, IV a 86. [OE. *for- + bēatan*, str.] See Bete, *v.*<sup>1</sup>
- Force**, *n.* strength, XVI 210. [OFr. *force*.]
- Fordo**, *v.* to destroy, XVII 100, 114; Fordon(e), *pp.* XVII 145; *ben fardon*, come to grief, Introduction xv. [OE. *for-dōn*.] See Do(n).
- Fore**. See Fare, *v.*
- Forest**, *n.* forest; wild, unclosed, and partly wooded, land, II 160, 246. [OFr. *forest*.]
- Foret**. See Forþ.
- Forfete**, *v.* to transgress, v 326; Forfette, *pa. t.* XVI 352. [From OFr. *forfait*, -fet, *n.*]
- Forgaa**. See Forgon.
- Forge**, *v.* to forget, IV a 79; Forgetyng, *n.* IV b 68. [OE. *for- + ON. geta*; cf. OE. *for-getan*.] See Gete, Forþete.
- Forgon**, *v.* to give up, XV b 35; Forgoo, v 142; Forgaa, IV b 31. [OE. *for-gān*.]
- Forþ**, *n.* force, waterfall, v 105 (the earliest recorded instance in E.). [ON. *fors*.]
- Forþelde**, *v.* to repay, VIII a 272. [OE. *for-geldan*.] See Þelde.
- Forþete**, *v.* to forget, XI b 157; Forþete, *pp.* XII b 202, XIV c 8, &c. [OE. *for-getan*.] See Forþete, Vnderþete.
- Forþeue**, *v.* to forgive, IX 324. [OE. *for-gefan*.] See Þene.
- Forloyne**, *v.* to go astray, VI 8. [OFr. *forloignier*.]
- Forlorn**, (*pp.*) *adj.* ruined, in pitiful plight, I 136, II 127. [OE. *for-loren*, *pp.*] See Lese, *v.*<sup>1</sup>
- Forme**, *adj. superl.* first, v 305. [OE. *forma*.]
- Forme**. See Fourme.
- Forne**, *adv.* of old, v 354. [OE. *foran*, *forne*.]
- Forsake**, Fursake (xv), *v.* to deny, XV g 33; forsake, v 312; (soll. by *infin.*) to refuse to, neglect to, XV c 19, XVII 273; Forsoke, *pa. t. sg.* forsook, II 227. [OE. *for-sacan*.]
- Forschape**, *pp.* transformed (to something worse), XII a 8. [OE. *for-scapen*, *pp.*] See Schap(e).
- Forschreynt**, *pp.* withered (by fire), II 398. [OE. *for-screncan*, oppress, rel. to *forscrincan*, wither.]
- Forseyde**, *pp.* aforesaid, XIII b 49; Uore-zyede, Uorzyede, III 19, 23. [OE. *fore-sægd* (Kt. -sēd).]
- Forsworn**, *adj.* perjured, XIV a 21. [OE. *for-sworen*.] See Swere.
- Forto**, *prep.* until, XIII a 28, 29. [OE. *forþ id.*]
- Fortune**, *n.*; by (þe) *f.* by chance, VII 99, 180, IX 207; by good fortune, VII 171. [OFr. *fortune*.]
- Forp(e)**, Forth, *adv.* forth, away, out, on, forward, II 193, v 248, &c.; Foret, xv g 18 (see Appendix § 6); Fourth(e), XVI 298, 386; Furp(e), Furth(e), I 72, 87, X 87, XVI 140, XVII 480, &c.; *forþe ygete*, produced, II 14; *fra thine furth*, thenceforward, X 130. [OE. *forþ*, *forþ*.]
- Forþer**, *adv.* further, II 481. [OE. *furþor*, *forþor*.] See Fyrþer.

# GLOSSARY

- Forpered**, *pp.* furthered, advanced, XI b 231. [From *prec.*; cf. OE. *fyrþr(e)an, forþian.*]
- Forpi** (-py, -thi, -thy), *adv.* and *conj.* wherefore, and so, therefore, II 461, IV b 35, V 42, 50, VIII a 79, 88, b 86, XII *introd.*, b 170, XV c 22; because, IV b 26. [OE. *for-þi, for-þi þe.*]
- Forwake**, *pp.* worn out with lying awake, XV c 29. [OE. *for- + wacen*, *pp.* of *wæcnan*.] *See* Awake.
- Forward(e)**, *n.* agreement, covenant, V 279, VIII a 36, XVI 5, 166, 238. [OE. *fore-weard*, *n.*]
- Forwes**, *n. pl.* furrows, VIII a 98. [OE. *furh.*]
- Fote**, Foot(e), Fut (x), *n.* foot, V 248 (*see* Spenne), IX 17, &c.; *collect. (dat.) sg.* in *on fote (fut)*, on foot, V 295; on their legs, X 57; *under fote*, XIV c 85; foot's length, V 83, VIII a 2, XVII 263, 366; Feet, Fet(e), *pl.* II 79, 441, IX 255, &c.; Fette, IV b 4; Fote, Foot, *orig. gen. pl.* in *two fote long*, &c., V 157, IX 155, XIII a 38, &c.; *orig. dat. pl.*, in *on his, to (my) fote*, V 161, 208, VII 174. [OE. *fōt.*]
- Foul(e)**, *n.* bird, II 68, VIII a 32, XV b 6, 10, c 3, &c.; Fowhel(e), IV b 33; Fowle, IV b 47, XVII 3, 487, &c.; Fowll, XVII 472; Foull, *pl.* XVII 156. [OE. *fugol.*]
- Foule**, *adj.* foul, loathsome, bad, II 464, VII 180, VIII a 320, XVI 337, &c.; Uoul, III *introd.*; *adv.*, in *foule mot hit falle*, evilly may it fare, V 310. [OE. *fūl.*]
- Founde**, *v.* to hasten, V 62, 161. [OE. *fūndian.*]
- Founde(n)**, &c. *See* Fynde(n).
- Fourme**, *Forme*, *n.* manner, fashion, V 62, IX 305. [OFr. *fo(u)rme.*]
- Fourth(e)**. *See* Forþ(e).
- Forty**, Forty, *adj.* forty, XVII 148, 445, &c. [OE. *fēwertig.*]
- Fowe**, *adj.* streaked or variegated (fur), vair, in *fows and gris* (partial transl. of ME., OFr. *vair & gris*), II 241. [OE. *fāg.*]
- Fowheles**, Fowle(s), Fowll. *See* Foul(e), *n.*
- Fowre**, Four(e), *adj.* four, I 232, V 33, 157, XIII a 37, &c. [OE. *fēower.*] *See* Feurþe, Fourty.
- Fra**. *See* Fro, *prep.*
- Fray**, *n.* strife, XVII 184. [Shortened from *Affray*, *q.v.*]
- Frayne**, *v.* to inquire, VII 97. [OE. *(ge)frægnian.*]
- Fraist**, Frast (XVII), *v.* to question, inquire of, XVII 183; *fraist of*, investigate, VII 97. [ON. *fræista.*]
- Fram**; Uram. *See* Fiom.
- Franche**, *adj.* French, XIV b 33, 46; Frensche, XIV c 101; Frankys, *n.* French language, I *introd.*; Freynsch, XI a 27, XIII b 19, &c.; Frensch, XIII b 34, &c. [OE. *frēncisc*; the forms show infl. of OE. *Francon*, OFr. *France*, &c.]
- Franklens**, *n. pl.* franklins (men of free, but not noble birth, holding land by freehold), VIII b 68. [OFr. *francleins.*]
- Frast**. *See* Fraist.
- Fraunohyse**, *n.* privilege, or liberality, VI 249; the interpretation depends on that of Dard, Rescoghe (*q.v.* and note). [OFr. *franchise.*]
- Fredom**, *n.* freedom, XI b 150, 205, 206, &c. [OE. *frēo-dōm.*]
- Free**, Fre, *adj.* free, VIII b 68, XVI 295; lavish, VI 121; noble, good, XVI 5, XVII 327; as *sb.*, noble one, XVII 310; Freest, *superl.* noblest, V 354. [OE. *frēo.*]
- Freend**. *See* Frende.
- Freike(s)**. *See* Freke.
- Freynsch**. *See* Franche.
- Freke**, *n.* man, knight, V 57, 206, VIII a 212, &c.; Freike, VII 160, 172. [OE. *frēca.*]
- Freles**, *adj.* without reproach, VI 71. [ON. *frýja* + OE. *-lēas.*]
- Frely**, *adj.* pleasant, II 4 (note). [OE. *frēolic.*]

# GLOSSARY

**Frely**, *adv.* freely, IX 90, XI *b* 201, 245, 258. [OE. *frēo-līce*.]

**Fremmede**, *adj.* not akin, IV *b* 22. [OE. *fremede*.]

**Frenchype**. See *Frendschip*.

**Frende**, **Freend**, *n.* friend, VI 198, XIV *d* 12, XVII 118; *fr. nor foo*, nobody, XVI 287; **Frendes**, &c. *pl.* friends, IV *b* 22, XIV *a* 28, XVI 29, 385; kinsfolk, VIII *b* 37, 41, XVI 62. [OE. *frēond*, friend; ON. *frændi*, kinsman.]

**Frendschip**, -ship, *n.* friendship, love, XIV *c* 3, XVII 121; **Frenchype**, IV *b* 29; **Frenship**, XVII 362. [OE. *frēond-scipe*.]

**Frensch**. See *Franche*.

**Freris**, *n. pl.* friars, XI *a* 1, 33, 49, 55. [OFr. *frere*.]

**Fresch**, *adj.* fresh, VIII *a* 305. [Prob. OFr. *freis*, *fresche* (fem.), rather than OE. *fersc*.] See *Fersch*.

**Frese**, *n.* danger, in *no frese*, doubtless, XVII 391. [MDu. *vreese* (OFris. *frēs*, OS. *frēsa*).]

**Frese**, *v.* to freeze, II 247. [OE. *frēosan*.]

**Frete**, *pa. t. pl.* devoured, II 539. [OE. *fretan*, *pa. t. pl.* *fræton*.]

**Frewte**. See *Frut(e)*.

**Fry**, *n.* offspring, XVII 66, 177. [ON. *fræ*, *frjó*, seed.]

**Frydays**, *n. pl.* Fridays, VIII *b* 30. [OE. *frig(e)dag*.]

**Fryed**, *pp.* fried, VIII *a* 305. [OFr. *fri-re*.]

**Frip**, **Fryth**, *n.* woodland, park, II 160, 246, V 83. [OE. *fyr(h)þ*, *gefyrrhþe*, wood.]

**Fro**, **Froo**, *adv.* away, XVI 210; *to and fro*, to and fro, on all sides, XVII 111. [ON. *frá*.]

**Fro**, *conj.* from the time when, since, VI 15 (cf. *fra þat*). [As prec.]

**Fro**, *prep.* (away) from, I 76, V 263 (follows pron.), VI 15, VII 90, VIII *a* 29, IX 26, &c.; **Fra**, IV *a* 18, *b* 34, X 130, &c.; *fra þat*, from when first, IV *a* 25; *þat ... fro*, whence, IX 230; *ther...*

*fro*, to where ... from, XII *a* 33; *fro whom* ... *fro*, from whom (mixed Fr. and E. constr.), IX 329 (see next). [ON. *frá*.]

**From**, **Fram**, *prep.* from, II 190, 225, VIII *a* 51, XIII *a* 27, &c.; **Uram**, III *introd.*, 4; *uram þet*, from the time that, III 38; *adv.* in of whom ... *from*, from whom (mixed E. and Fr. constr.), IX 78 (see prec.). [OE. *from*, *fram*.] See *Pere*, *þare*.

**Frote**, *v.* to rub; wring, tear at, II 79; **Frotyng**, *pres. p.* grating, XIII *b* 59. [OFr. *froter*.]

**Frounse**, *v.* to pucker, V 238. [OFr. *fronci(e)r*.]

**Frut(e)**, *n.* fruit, II 257, VIII *a* 320, IX 143; **Fruyt**, IX 139, 148, XIII *a* 51; **Frewte**, in *f. of erthely fooðe*, the fruit of the tree, which was earthly food, XVI 10. [OFr. *fruit*.]

**Fuersly**, *adv.* hercely; *fuersly fell*, turned out stormy, VII 129. See *Fers(e)*.

**Fuyr**. See *Fyr*.

**Ful**, II 388; see note.

**Ful**, **Full(e)**, *adj.* full, complete, II 60, XV *e* 3, 6, &c.; *Uol*, III 47; as *sb.*, in *at þe full*, completely, XI *b* 198; *his fulle*, see *Fille*. [OE. *full*.]

**Ful**, **Full(e)**, *adv.* full, quite, very, I 22, II 443, 559, IV *b* 27, V 19, IX 244, &c. [OE. *ful*.]

**Fulfil(e)n**, **Fulfille**, *v.* to fill, IX 331, XII *introd.*; to fulfil, finish, perform, accomplish, IV *b* 15, 73, VIII *a* 36, 319, IX 317, XI *b* 86, 88, XVI 6, &c.; *Uol- ueld*, *pp.* III *introd.* [OE. *ful- fyllan* (Kt. *-fellan*).]

**Fun**, **Funden**. See *Fynde(n)*.

**Fune**. See *Fone*.

**Furred**, *pp.* fur-trimmed, VIII *a* 264. [OFr. *fo(u)rrier*.]

**Fursake**. See *Forsake*.

**Furst**, *adv.* first, II 14, XIII *b* 12, 20; **Fyrst**, **First**, I 154, II 121, XVII 42, &c.; at first, I 226, 228, V 159; firstly, XI *a* 6, *b* 5, &c.; **Uerst**, at first, III 33; *boþ*

# GLOSSARY

- first and last*, throughout, XIV c 76. [As next.]
- Furste**, *adj.* first, original, XIII a 7, b 4, 26; *Ferste*, XII a 112; *Fyrst(e)*, I 214, VI 188, &c.; *Firste*, in *atle firste*, at once, VIII a 165. [OE. *fyr(e)st*, (Kt. *ferst*).]
- Furth(e)**. See *Forþ(e)*.
- Fut**. See *Fote*.
- Ga, Gaa**. See *Go(n)*.
- Gabberes**, *n. pl.* swindlers, IX 112. [From ON. *gahba*, to mock.]
- Gadre**, *v.* to gather, pick up, assemble, XII b 22, 113, 117; *Ged(e)re*, *Gedyr*, IV b 81, V 192, VII 86; *Ygadered*, *pp.* III 44; *gedereþ þe rake*, 1 picks up the path, v 92. [OE. *gæderian*.]
- Gaf, Gaffe**. See *Giffe*.
- Gay(e)**, *adj.* gay, gallant, v 297, VII 111; as *sð.*, fair one, VI 73. [OFr. *gai*.]
- Gayne**, *n.* gain (*i.e.* the three kisses), v 281. [OFr. *gaigne*.]
- Gaynesay**, *v.* to speak against, IV b 75. [ON. *gegn* + OE. *secgan*.] See *Agayn*, *Seie*.
- Gam(e)**, *Gaume* (I), *n.* game, play, I 1 (see *Somer*), 99; sport, II 315; game (birds), II 309; trickery, XVII 214; merriment, XVII 529; *wip game*, merrily, II 19; *Gamys*, *pl.* rejoicings, XVI 20. [OE. *gamen*.]
- Gan**, *pa. t. sg.*; *Gune*, XVI 47, &c.; *Gan*, *pl.* II 504; *Gonne*, II 371; *Gun*, I 193; began, II 118, VIII a 146; (without *to*) II 425; made, II 438; did (without *to*, as equiv. of simple past) I 193, II 77, 78, 272, 371, 495, 504, 510, 530, XVI 47, 286. [OE. *ginnan*.] See *Begyn(ne)*; *Can*, *auxil.*
- Gane**. See *Go(n)*.
- Gang**, *v.* to go, depart, fare, x 4, XVI 144, 303, XVII 246. [OE. *gangan*.]
- Garn**, *n.* yarn, thread; *ther is garn on the reyll other*, there is other thread on the reel, other business on hand, XVII 298. [ON. *garn*.]
- Garre, Gar**, *v.* to make, cause to, IV a 26 (*subj.*), XVI 20, 144, 199, 334, XVII 346; *Gert(e)*, *pa. t.* and *pp.* VIII a 296, x 198; caused (men to), x 16, 70, 82, 90, 98, 185; *garre dye*, kill, XVI 164; *gert ga, cum*, sent, brought, x 168, 173. [ON. *görra*; the *a* forms are difficult to explain.]
- Garryng**, *adj.* grating, harsh, XIII b 15. [Cf. MDu., MLG. *garren*, v.]
- Gase**; *Gast(e)*, &c. See *Go(n)*; *Gost(e)*, &c.
- Gastli**, *adj.* terrible, XII b 126. [()E. (once) *gæst-lic*; cf. *gæstan*, v.] See *Agast*; *distinguish* *Gostly*.
- Gate**, *n.* 1 gate, II 379. [OE. *gæt*, *pl. gatu*.] See *3ate*.
- Gate**, *n.* 2 way, v 51; *hyge gate* (figuratively) highway, VI 35; *gang (jede) his gate*, go (went) his way, VI 166, XVI 144; *Gatis*, *pl.* in many *gatis*, in many ways, XI b 117. [ON. *gata*.] See *Algate*, *Sogat*, *pusgate*.
- Gate**. See *Gete*, v.<sup>1</sup>
- Gaud**, *n.* trick, in *gaudes and gile*, XIV a 18, 30; *gaudis and gillery*, xvi 160. [? Cf. AFr. *gaudir*, to jest.]
- Gaume**. See *Gam(e)*.
- Gawle**, *n.* gall; rancour, VI 103. The spelling and rimes are noteworthy at so early a date. [OE. *galla*.]
- Ged(e)re, Gedyr**. See *Gadre*.
- Gedlyng**, *n.* fellow (contemptuous), XVI 212. [OE. *gædeling*.]
- Gees**, *n. pl.* geese, VIII a 276, b 19. [OE. *gōs*, *pl. gēs*.]
- Gef**. See *Giffe*.
- Geynest**, *adj. superl.* most gracious, xv c 35. [ON. *gegn*.]
- Gentil(l)**, *Genty(l)*, *Ientil* (III), *adj.* of gentle birth, III 18, 23, VIII b 82, XIII b 20, &c.; noble, II 463, v 117, VI 245;

# GLOSSARY

- gentle, graceful, &c., II 305; docile, XVII 505; *þat gentyl*, that gentle lady, VI 242; *ientilman*, gentleman, III 18, XIV *introd.* [Ofr. *gentil*.]
- Gere, Geir (x), *n. sg.* tools, apparatus, necessary things, X 110, XVII 245, 316, 326; arms, XVI 211; contrivance (the ark), XVII 274; affair, business, V 137. [ON. *gerwi*.]
- Gered, *pp.* attired, V 159. [From prec. in frequent sense 'apparel'.]
- Gernier(e), *n.* garner, storehouse (for corn), III 43, 46. [Ofr. *gernier*.]
- Gert(e). See Garre.
- Gesse(n), *v.* to be of opinion; to expect, XI b 167; to conceive, form an idea, VI 139 (note). [Cf. MLG. *gissen*.]
- Geste, *n.* tale, VII *introd.*, Introduction xxxiii. [Ofr. *geste*.]
- Gestis, *n. pl.* joists, frame-timbers, X 5. [Ofr. *giste*.]
- Get(e), *v.* to get, find, XIV c 38, 110, XVII 184 (*subj.*); *pres.* as *fut.* XIV b 3, XVII 299; lay hold of, catch, XVII 339; *do get in*, get in (*trans.*), XVII 326; Gate, *pa. t. sg.* VII 76; Getyn, Ygete, *pp.* in *getyn agayne*, won back, XVI 11; *forþe ygete*, set forth, produced, II 14. [ON. *geta*.] See Forgete.
- Get, *v.* to guard; *get for*, look out for, XIV a 36. [ON. *gæta*.]
- Gep. See Go(n).
- Gyaunt, *n.* giant, VIII a 228. [Ofr. *geant*.]
- Gyde, *n.* guide, VIII a 1. [Ofr. *guide*.]
- Gif, Gyf, *conj.* if, IV a 85; *bot gif*, unless X 78, 180. [Northern variant of *þif*; the *g* (where not graphic for *þ*) is difficult to explain.]
- Gif(fe), Gyff(fe), *v.* to give, IV a 18, b 66, V 327, VI 183, XVI 114, &c.; Gyu(e), XV h 21; Gaf(fe), *pa. t. sg.* XVI 163, XVII 16; Gef, V 5 (wished), 281 (2 *sg.*); Gifen, *pp.* XIV b 88 (sundered); Gyff(ene), IV b 53, 66; *gaf in commaundement*, gave orders, XVII 33. [ON. *gefa*, OSwed. *gifu*; see N.E.D.] See Zeue.
- Gyfte, *n.* gift, IV b 53, 59, 69, VI 247; giving (for privilege), VI 205. [ON. *gift*.] See Giftis.
- Gile, Gyle, *n.* guile, treachery. II 7, XIV a 6, d 4, XVII 214, &c. [Ofr. *guile*.] See Wiles, B-gile.
- Gilery, *n.* fraud, XVI 160. [Ofr. *gilerie*, from prec.]
- Gill, *woman's name*, Jill, XVII 219; *for lak nor for Gill*, for nobody, XVII 336. [Shortened from *Gillian*, Ofr. *Juliane*.]
- Gylofrea, *n. pl.* in *clowe gylofres*, cloves, IX 157. [Ofr. *giloFRE*.] See Clowe.
- Gyn(e), *n.* engine, machine, X 90, 99; contrivance, XVII 128, 276. [Shortened from Ofr. *engin*.] See Engynys.
- Gyng, *n.* troop, company, VI 95. [OE. *genge*; ? infl. by *gang*.]
- Gynour, *n.* engineer (contriver of machines), X 98, 126. [Shortened from Ofr. *engigneor*.] See Gyn(e), Engynour.
- Girdelstede, *n.* waist, II 266. [OE. *gyrdel* + *stede*.] See Gurdel.
- Gyrde, *v.* to strike; *gyrdez he to*, strikes spurs into, V 92. [? Same as next.]
- Gyrdit, *pp.* girt, X 24. [OE. *gyrdan*.]
- Gisely, *adv.* skillfully, II 299. [From Ofr. *guise*, *n.*] See Degiselich.
- Giserne, *n.* battle-axe, V 197. [Ofr. *guiserne*.]
- Gyu(e). See Gif(fe).
- Glad(e), *v.* to make glad, VIII a 113, XVII 491; Gladde, IV a 49. [OE. *gladian*.]
- Gladde, Glad(e) (of), *adj.* happy, glad (at), II 583, XII *introd.*, XVI 42, 241, &c.; Gladly, *adv.* XII b 37; *beren gladly*, are glad

# GLOSSARY

- to wear, IX 109. [OE. *glæd*, *glæd-līce*.]
- Gle**, **Glew** (I, IV), *n.* mirth, pleasure, play, II 34, 267, IV a 44, 72, XVII 529; (skill in) making music, minstrelsy, II 383, 434, 444, 529, &c.; *made hem glew*, directed their singing, I 39. [OE. *glēo(w)*.]
- Glome**, *n.* radiance, XVI 42. [OE. *glōm*.]
- Glent**, *pa. t.* started aside, V 224. [Obscure; ME. *glenten* (mod. *glint*) has same senses as *Blenk*, *q.v.*]
- Glew**. See **Gle**.
- Glyde**, *v.* to glide, V 198, XII b 126. [OE. *glīdan*.]
- Glyfte** (*on*), *pa. t.* glanced sideways (*at*), V 197. [Obscure; ME. *gliffen*, and *gliften*, with same senses as *Blenk*, *q.v.*]
- Glode**, *n.* †glade, open space, V 113; *on glode*, appar. a variant of *on bent* (*q.v.*), on earth, where he stood, V 198. [Unknown.]
- Glorius**, -ous, *adj.* glorious, XVI 42, XVII 166. [OFr. *glori(ō)us*.]
- Glottyng**, **Glottony**, *n.* gluttony, XVII 37, 52. [OFr. *gloutonie*.]
- Gloutoun**, *n.* Glutton (personified), VIII a 296. [OFr. *glouton*.]
- Gloue**, *n.* glove, VIII a 147. [OE. *glōfe*.]
- Gnacohen**, *v.* to gnash the teeth, XV h 9. [Echoic, on model of next.]
- Gnauen**, to gnaw, grind the teeth, XV h 9. [OE. *gnagan*.]
- Go(n)**, *v.* VIII a 296, XV g 24, &c.; **Goo**, XI b 41, &c.; **Ga**, X 168; *pres. 2 sg.* **Gost**, II 129; 3 *sg.* **Gase**, IV a 11, XIV a 25; **Gep** (OE. *gæp*), II 238, 551; **Got3**, VI 5; **Goth**, IX 178, &c.; *pl.* **Gaa**, IV b 43; **Goo**, **Go(n)**, IX 18, 177, XI b 15, &c.; **Got3**, VI 150; **Gop**, XIII b 64, 65; *subj.* **Go**, VI 170, XVI 156; *imper. pl.* **Gos**, VI 161; **Got3**, V 51, 175; *pp.* **Gane**, X 84, 100, &c.; **Go**, I 222, II 196; **Gon(e)**, I 161, II 492 (ago), VI 16, XVII 408 (done for), &c.; **Ygo**, II 349, 541 (ago), **Goande**, *pres. p.* V 146. To walk, V 146, IX 18, XIV a 25; *in him com . . . gon* (OE. *cōm inn gān*), came walking in, XV g 24; to be (alive), V 41; *gon on bodi and bones*, see **Bodi**; to go, II 190, 345, XV g 12, &c.; *gon (be)*, travel (about), IX 112; *go hunte*, &c., go and hunt, &c., VIII a 30, 32; *go slepe*, go to sleep, VIII a 296; *hadde go*, had gone on, I 222; *hou it gep*, what is the (inevitable) course of things, II 551; *is go(n)*, &c., went, II 196, X 176, XII b 176; *war tharin gane*, were in it, X 128; to come, get, IX 164, 186, &c.; *got3 (goth) out*, issues, VI 5, IX 178. [OE. *gān*.] See **3ede**.
- Gobet**, *n.* small share, VIII b 106. [OFr. *gobet*.]
- God**, *n.* God, I 89, V 81, VI 241, &c.; **Godd(e)**, I 78, V 51, 137, &c.; **Godys** (MS. **God**; see XVII 88, note), *gen. sg.* XVI 241; **Godes**, **Goddes**, *pl.* gods, II 31, VII 45, 176, 181, &c.; *gef hym God and goud day*, wished him Godspeed and good day, V 5. [OE. *god*.] See **Goddesse**.
- God(e)**, *adj.* good, I 9, II 35, V 281, &c.; **Good(e)**, VIII b 71, XI b 121, &c.; **Goud(e)**, V 50, 202, VI 208; **Gud(e)**, IV b 15, X 47, XIV a 14, &c.; **Guod**, III 59 (*guode*, wk., III 30, 31, &c.); *goud day*, see **God**. [OE. *gōd*.]
- God(e)**, **Good(e)**, **Guode** (III), **Gude** (IV, XIV b), *n. sg.* good, IV b 9, V 59, XII a 149; good thing, II 230; *collective*, goods, wealth, III 8 (*dat.*), IV b 81, VIII a 225, XII b 35, XIV c 75, &c.; **Godes** (and forms as above) *pl.*, goods, III 1, VII 122, VIII a 218, XI b 272, XII b 48, XIV b 11, &c. [OE. *gōd*, *n.*]
- Goddesse**, *n.* goddess, XII a 44. [OE. *god* + OFr. *-esse*.]
- Godenisse**, **God(e)nesse**, **Goodnesse**, *n.* goodness, houny, II

# GLOSSARY

- 55, VI 133, VIII a 132, IX 329, &c. [OE. *gōd-nēs*.]
- Godhede**, *n.* divinity, VI 53, XI b 280, XVI 249. [OE. *god* + *\*-hædu*; cf. OE. *god-hād*.]
- Godspelle**, *n.* (*dat. sg.*) gospel, III 57; Gospel(l), VI 138, XI a 23, b 20, &c. [OE. *god-spell*.]
- Goyng**, *n.*; *for goyng*, as a result of moving about, I 157. [From *Go(n)*.]
- Gold(e)**, *n.* gold, II 150, XV g 22 (*dat. sg.*), &c. [OE. *gold*.]
- Golde-hemmed**, *adj.* bordered with gold, V 327. [Prec. and OE. *hemm*, border.]
- Golf**, *n.* abyss (of water), VI 248. [Ofr. *golfe*.]
- Gome**, *n.* man, V 50, 159, 171, 191, 202, VII 54, VIII a 210. [OE. *guma*.]
- Gon(e)**, **Goo**. See *Go(n)*.
- Gonne**. See *Gan*.
- Gore**, *n.* triangular strip (of cloth), gore; by synecdoche for 'gown', in *under gore*, in gown (among women, alive), XV c 35. [OE. *gāra*.]
- Gos**, **Gost**. See *Go(n)*.
- Goshawk**, *n.* goshawk (usually a large short-winged hawk), XII a 9. [OE. *gōs-hafo*.]
- Gost**, *n.* spirit, soul, V 182; Haly Gast(e), Hooly Gost(e), &c., Holy Ghost, IV b 53, IX 331, XI a 11, XVI 77, XVII 162, &c. [OE. *gāst*.]
- Gostly**, *adj.* spiritual, IX 332, XI b 281, 289; Gast(e)ly, IV a 51, b 70, 85. [OE. *gāst-līc*.]
- Gotez**, *n. pl.* streams, VI 248. [OE. *\*got-* rel. to *gōtan*.]
- Gotz**, **Gop**, &c. See *Go(n)*.
- Goud(e)**. See *Gode*.
- Gouerned**, *pa. t.* controlled, XIV c 26. [Ofr. *gouverner*.]
- Goune**, **Gowne**, *n.* gown (outer robe), v 328, XVII 262. [Ofr. *goune*.]
- Gowrdes**, *n. pl.* gourds, IX 139. [Ofr. *gourde*.]
- Gowtes**, *n. pl.*; *gowtes artetykes*, attacks of arthritic gout, IX 314. [Ofr. *goute*.] See *Artetyke*.
- Grace**, *n.* favour, IX 296, XIV b 46, &c.; consideration, VIII a 117; grace, mercy (of God), I 186, VI 76, 252, VIII a 120, b 106, XV i 8, XVII 551, &c.; personified in our Lord, VI 65; what God may send, XVII 334; favour of fortune, luck, VII 76, VIII b 102, XII b 169, 186; lot, II 547. [Ofr. *grace*.]
- Gracious**, *-vous*, **Gracius**, *adj.* pleasing, VIII a 222; gracious, XVII 28, 165. [Ofr. *gracious*.]
- Gradde**. See *Grede*.
- Graidly**. See *Graythely*.
- Graelis**, *n. pl.* books containing the 'gradual' (part of the Mass), XI b 229 (see note). [Ofr. *grail*.]
- Grayne**. See *Greyn*.
- Grayped**, *pa. t.*; *grayped hym*, got ready, V 191; Grathed, *pp.* made ready, XVI 211 (rime requires *Graide*). [ON. *grēiða*.]
- Graypely**, **Grathely** (XVI), **Graidly** (VII), *adv.* readily; ready, v 224; aptly, VI 139; carefully, VII 54; directly, XVI 92. [ON. *grēið-liga*.] See *prec.*, and *Grath*.
- Grame**, *n.* wrath, XVII 89. [OE. *grama*.] See *Greme*.
- Gramer(e)**, *n.* grammar, XIII b 36; *mayster of gr.*, (title of) a licensed teacher of grammar, XIII b 28. [Ofr. *gramaire*.]
- Gramerscole**, *n.* grammar-school, XIII b 28, 33, 38. [Prec. + OE. *scōl*.]
- Grant merci**, **gramercy**, thank you (*lit.* great thanks), v 58, XII b 92. [Ofr.]
- Grapes**, *n. pl.* grapes, IX 159, 160. [Ofr. *grape*.]
- Grases**. See *Gresse*.
- Grath**, *n.* readiness, in *with grath*, promptly, XVII 482. [ON. *grēiði*.] See *Grayped*, &c.
- Graue**, *n.* grave, I 139, XVI 23, 393. [OE. *grāf*.]
- Graunte(e)**, **Grante**, *v.* to consent,

# GLOSSARY

- 151; to grant, VII 3, VIII a 326, XIV b 46, XV i 8, XVII 178, &c.; (with *infin.*) I 199, II 604. [OFr. *graanter*, AFr. *graunter*.]
- Grece, *n.* fat, v 245. [OFr. *gresse*.]
- Grede, *v.* to cry out, II 104;
- Gradde, *pa. t.* XII b 68. [OE. *grædan*.]
- Greyn. See Grene.
- Greyn, Grayne, *n.* grain, corn, VIII a 113, 120. [OFr. *grain*.]
- Grekis, Grekys, *n. pl.* Greeks, VII 40, 61, 86, III, 176. [OE. *Grē(a)cas*, L. *Græci*.]
- Grem(e), *n.* anger; resentment, VI 105; mortification, v 302; cause for anger, harm, v 183; *with greme*, wrathfully, v 231. [ON. *gremi*; OE. *gremian*, v.] See Grame.
- Gremþ, *n.* wrath, VII 176. [OE. \**gremð*.]
- Grene, Greyn (XVII), *adj.* green, II 353, v 35, VIII a 276, &c.; *n.* green, v 123, 159, 191, 227; green swaid, II 72; earth, XVII 534. [OE. *grēne*.]
- Gresse, *n.* grass, II 244, v 113;
- Grases, *pl.* herbs, II 260. [OE. *græs*, *græs*.]
- Gret(e), Greate (III), *adj.* great, large, I 22, 210, II 101, 240, III 9, 17, &c.; greatly esteemed, VII 40; big, boastful, XVII 379; many *grete*, many important people, XI b 207; *smale and grete*, *grete and smale*, all, XIV c 22, XVII 90, 344; Grette, *compar.* IX 70, 91; Grette, *superl.* IX 182. [OE. *grēat*; *grēitra*, *compar.*]
- Gret(e), *v.* to greet, XII *introd.*, XIV d 2. [OE. *grēlan*.]
- Grete, *v.* to weep, v 89; Grette, *pa. t.* IV a 87. [OE. *grēlan* (\**grētan*), or *grēotan*.]
- Gretnesse, *n.* size, IX 54. [OE. *grēat-nēs*.]
- Greū, *n.* Greek (language), XI a 45. [OFr. *greu*.]
- Grevance, *n.* offence, sin (or affliction), XVII 58. [OFr. *greuance*.]
- Greue, *v.* to grieve, offend, VI 111, VIII a 225, XV f 3; oppress, VIII a 313; injure, VIII b 60; *greueth hym azeines*, voices a grievance against, VIII a 311; Greuyng, *n.* offending, insulting, VII 181. [OFr. *greuer*.]
- Greuous, *adj.* grave, IX 287; Greuously, *adv.* gravely, XI b 144. [OFr. *greuous*.]
- Grew(e). See Growe(n).
- Gryed, *pa. t.* sorrowed (inwardly), v 302. [Not known; cf. XI Pains of Hell (OE. *Miscell.*) l. 160, *gryd and wept*.]
- Griffoun, *n.* griffin, IX 245, 248, 251. [OFr. *griffon*.]
- Griis, *n.* grey (fur), II 241 (see Fowe). [OFr. *gris*.]
- Grymme, Grim, *adj.* fearsome, grim, II 184, v 192. [OE. *grimm*.]
- Gryndel, *adj.* wrathful, v 270; Gryndelly, *adv.* wrathfully, v 231. [? Back-formation from \**grindlaik* (*gryndellayk* Sir Gaw. 312), ON. *grimmd + laik-r*; cf. ON. *grimm-leikr*.]
- Gryndel-ston, *n.* grindstone, v 134. [OE. \**grindel* (from *grindan*) + *stān*.]
- Grys, *n. pl.* young pigs, VIII a 276. [ON. *grīs-s*.]
- Grisbittynge, *n.* gnashing of the teeth, XIII b 15. [OE. *grist-bitung*.]
- Gryste, *n.* resentment (? *lit.* grinding of the teeth), VI 105. [OE. *grist*, grinding.]
- Grochinge, *n.* reluctance, III 10. See Grucche.
- Gron(e), *v.* to lament, complain, v 89, XVII 409; groan, VIII a 255, XV h 9. [OE. *grānian*.]
- Gronyngys, *n. pl.* lamentations (as a sign of repentance), XI b 99. [OE. *grānung*.]
- Grot, *n.* small bit; *euerich a grot*, every detail, II 490. [OE. *grat*.]
- Ground(e), Grownd (XVII), *n.* ground, XII a 80, &c.; bottom, XII b 71; bottom of the sea, XVII 439, 462; deep pool, XIII a



# GLOSSARY

- 52; land, XVII 465; foundation, cause, VI 12, 24, 36, 48, 60, VII 80; (*up*) on *grounde*, on earth, V 82, VIII a 225; to *grounde*, on the ground, II 549, VI 74. [OE. *gründ*.]
- Grounde**, *v.* in *nouȝt groundiþ hem*, they have no foundation, XI a 4; *groundid* (*in*), based (on), XI b 52; *ben not gr. in God*, have no divine sanction, XI a 62. [From prec.]
- Grounden**, *pp.* ground, V 134; **Ygrounde**, XIV d 9. [OE. *grindan*, *ge-gründen*.]
- Grow**, *v.* to feel terror, X 94. [Cf. MLG. *grüwen*.]
- Growe(n)**, **Grufe**, *v.* to grow, VIII a 113, IX 33, 53, XII a 80, &c.; to come into being, in *begynnyngs to grufe to us*, is about to begin for us, XVII 463; **Grew(e)**, *pa. t.* I 164, 236, VI 65, VII 80; **Growe**, *pp.* II 266, XIV c 89, 98; **Growynge**, *n.* growth, IX 71. [OE. *grōwan*; *grufe* is freq. Northern term.]
- Grucche**, **Gruch**, *v.* to grumble, VIII a 210, 311; grumble at, V 183; **Gruchyng**, *pres. p.* reluctant, V 58. [OFr. *gr(o)ucher*.] See **Grochinge**, **Bigruccheth**.
- Grufe**. See **Growe(n)**.
- Grwe**, *n.* jot, in *no grwe*, not a jot, not at all, V 183. [! OFr. *gru*, grain; cf. **Grot**.]
- Gud(e)**, **Guod(e)**, &c. See **Gode**.
- Gun(e)**. See **Gan**.
- Gurdel**, *n.* girdle, V 327; **Girdel**, V 290. [OE. *gyrdel*.]
- Guttes**, *n. pl.* entrails, VIII a 171. [OE. *guttas*.]
- 3a**, **3aa**, *adv.* yea, yes, XVI 109, 305. [OE. *geā*.] See **3e**, **Yei**.
- 3af**. See **3eue**.
- 3alow**, *adj.* yellow, IX 34, 115, 116; fair (-haired), IX 22. [OE. *geolu*, *geoluw*.]
- 3alownesse**, *n.* fairness (of hair), IX 22. [From prec.]
- 3ar**, *adj.* ready, X 110. [OE. *gearo*.]
- 3are**, *adv.* fully, V 342. [OE. *gear(w)e*.]
- 3arkke**, *v.* to ordain, decree, V 342; **Y3arked**, *pp.* II 547. [OE. *gearcian*.]
- 3ate**, *n.* gate, II 232 (*dat.*), 385; **3et**, X 167, 181, &c.; **3ate3**, -es, -iis, *pl.* V 2, IX 223, XVI 124, &c. [OE. *ge(a)t*, *gæt* (*pl. gatu*); the pls. above show infl. of sg.] See **Gate**, *n.*<sup>1</sup>
- 3e**, *adv.* yea, yes, VIII a 38, 227, b 110. [OE. *geā*.] See **3a**, **Yei**.
- 3e**, *prom.* 2 *pl. nom.* you, I 38, II 215, &c.; **3ee**, IX 187, 219, 284; **Ye**, XV g 25, &c.; **Yee**, XVII 397. *Ou, acc.* and *dat.* (to) you, XIV c 97; **3ou**, II 24, 204, &c.; **3ow**, I 22, VIII a 6, 14, &c.; **You(e)**, XVI 402, XVII 294, &c.; **Yow**, V 23, 26, &c.; *refl. (acc.)* yourselves, VIII a 112, XIV b 7, XVI 178; yourself, V 49, VIII a 25; (*dat.*) for yourselves, II 216, 217; *3if 3ou lyke, it lyke 3ou*, if it please you, IX 74, 284; *3ou to*, for yourselves, XIV d 7. *3or, poss. adj.* XIV c 13, 106; **3our(e)**, I 84, II 218, &c.; **3owre**, VIII a 14, 21, XIV a 8, 10, b 4, &c. The plural forms are often used to a superior, as: II 582, VIII a 118, *ff.*, &c.; but also without special reason and intermingled with *3ou*, &c., as: II 466, V 42, 256-7, &c. [OE. *gē*, *low*, *lower*.]
- 3ede** (*pa. t.* of **Gon**, *q.v.*), fared, went, &c., I 53, 104, II 301, 476, VIII a 93, &c.; walked, II 509; was, V 265; **3ede atwynne**, broke apart, separated, I 191; **3ede on fote** = lived, V 295; **3ede his gate**, went his way, VI 166. [OE. *ēode*; see *N.E.D.*, s.v. *Yede*, and **Luick**, *Hist. Gramm.* d. engl. Sprache § 261 n. 3; § 360.]
- 3ederly**, *adv.* † promptly, † fully, V 257. [! OE. *ēadre*, *ēdre*, quickly, fully; cf. **Yendles**.]
- 3eer**, *n.* year, IX 61, 63, &c.; **3er(e)**, I 151, V 332, VIII a 44,

# GLOSSARY

- XIII a 44, &c.; Yeare (dat.), III introd.; Yer(e), III 44, VII 12, 99, XIV c 2, XVII 57; 3er(e), pl. I introd., II 264, 492, 541, VI 123, VIII a 319, b 36, XVI 39, 354; 3eres, I introd. [OE. *gēr, gear.*] See To3ere.**
- 3ef, Yef; 3if, 3yf, conj.** (usually with *subj.*) if, I 17, II 169, III 13, 28, V 230, VI 122, VIII a 163, XIII a 35, 48, XV b 34, &c.; whether, I 17, III 5, &c.; Hyf, VIII b 43; If(f), VIII a 123, XVI 331, &c.; Iif, V 275; Yf, IV b 24; Yif, XV a 23; 3if (if) 3at, if, IV a 24, 88, IX 219, 271, XII a 16, b 46, XIV c 69; whether, XII a 184; *all if*, although, XVII 231; *see also* Bote. [OE. *gef, gi(e)f.*] See Gif.
- 3eit.** See 3et(e), *adv.*
- 3elde(n), v.** to yield, give (back), pay, repay, V 155, 257, VIII a 44, IX 189; Yelde, III 50; 3elde, *subj. (imper.)* in 3. *hit 3ow*, requite you for it, V 342; 3. *3ow (of)*, reward you (for), VIII a 121; 3olden, *pp.* surrendered, XIV b 89; Yyolde, restored, III 58 (*see the French*). [OE. *gēldan.*] See For3elde.
- 3emen, n. pl.** ycomen, hired labourers, VI 175. [† OE. *geong-man*, ME. *youngman*, *jem-man*, *jēman*; *see N.E.D.*, s.v. *Yeoman*.]
- 3epl, adv.** cunningly; (allit. only) quickly, promptly, V 176. [OE. *gēap-līce.*]
- 3er(e).** See 3eer.
- 3ern(e), adv.** eagerly, readily, II 323, VIII a 103, 292. [OE. *georne.*]
- 3erne, v.** to desire, long for; Y3yrned, *pp.* XV c 32 (the relative before *yhabbe* is omitted); 3hernyng, *n.* (the object of) desire, IV a 22 (*cf.* Couaytyng, Lufyng). [OE. *geornan, gīrnan; georning.*]
- 3et.** See 3ate.
- 3et(e), 3eit (x), Yet; 3it(t), 3yt, Yit; 3ut (VIII b); adv.** yet; up to now, even now, XI b 243, XII a 196, XIV c 84, XVI 373, XVII 359, &c.; strengthening (*n*) *euere*, II 103, 147, VI 89, VIII b 41, XVI 136; still, once more, in addition, moreover, II 464, VI 14, VIII a 38, 250, IX 40, 200, XII b 75, &c.; all the same, none the less, I 225, II 174, V 151, VI 83, VIII b 98, XI b 119, XV g 31, XVII 12, &c.; *conj.* and yet, but, XVII 17, 197; *ac 3ete, but 3it, bot yit (3eit), &c.*, and yet, II 191, IX 99, X 95, XI b 239, XVII 35, &c. [OE. *gēl(a), gett, gī(e)t, gýt, &c.*]
- 3ete, v.** to grant, give; *no waning* I *wyl 3e 3ete*, I wish to give you no curtailment (of what is due), VI 198. [OE. (late) *gēatan*, prob. modelled on ON. *jāta*.]
- 3eue, Yeue (III), v.** to give, grant, III 7, IX 79, 293, XI b 162, &c.; 3iue(n), II 454, VIII a 121 (*subj.*), XII b 35, 42, &c.; 3yue, XI b 300; 3ifth, 3 *sg. pres.* XII a 87. 3af, Yaf, *pa. t. sg.* III 39, 44, VIII a 192, 238, XI a 11; Yeaf, III 10, 22, 52; 3af, *pa. t. pl.* II 20; Yeau, *pa. subj.* III 21, 51. 3ouen, *pp.* IX 90, XI b 264; Yeue, III 7, 14; Y-yeue, III 25, 29; 3af of, gave (cared) for, XIV c 54. [OE. *gefan, giefan, gyfan.*] See Giffe, For3ene.
- 3hernyng.** See 3erne, *v.*
- 3if (3yf); 3ifth.** See 3ef; 3eue.
- 3iftis, n. pl.** gifts, VIII a 42, XI b 265. [OE. *gift*; *see N.E.D.*, s.v. *Gift*.] See Gyfte.
- 3it(t), 3yt, Yit.** See 3et(e), *adv.*
- 3iue(n), 3yue.** See 3eue.
- 3oked, pp.** yoked, IX 253. [OE. *geocian.*]
- 3olden.** See 3elde(n).
- 3ole, n.** Yule, Christmas; 3ole *ny3t*, Christmas night, I 187. [OE. *gēol*; *cf.* ON. *jól*, *n. pl.* Yule; *jóla-nátt*, Yule-night.]
- 3on.** See Yone.
- 3ong(e), Yong (XVII), adj.** young, VI 52, 114, 175, VIII b 36, IX 21,

# GLOSSARY

XVII 397; *old or jong*, any one, II 221; *jong and alde*, every one, IV a 49. [OE. *geong*.]  
**3or.** See *3e*, *pron.*  
**3ore**, *adv.* (since long ago), a long while, II 559, V 46, VI 226, XV c 32. [OE. *gēara*.]  
**3ou**, *3our(e)*, *3ow(re)*. See *3e*.  
**3ouen**. See *3eue*.  
**3ut**. See *3et(e)*, *adv.*  
**Haade**. See next.  
**Habbe(n)**, *v.* to have, possess, get, take, put, and *auxil.*, XIII a 59, 60, XV g 23; A, I 127; *Haf(e)*, IV a 64, V 150, &c.; *Haif*, XVII 286; *Han*, XIV c 6; XV h 22; *Haue(n)*, I 107, VIII a 74, XII a 66, &c.; *Hawe*, X *introd.* *Haf*, *Haue*, I *sg pres.* V 23, IX 289, &c.; see *Ichabbe*, *Ichauē*; *Has(e)*, 2 *sg.* XVI 243, XVII 430, &c.; *Hast(e)*, I 131, XVI 223, &c.; *Hat3*, V 173, 228, 273, 324; *Hauet*, VIII b 26; *Habbe3*, 3 *sg.* \*V 271 (note); *Hase*, IV a 39, XVII 550, &c.; *Hap*, *Hn̄th*, I 11, XVI 356, &c.; *Hat3*, V 46, 126, 340; *Haues*, XV a 20; *Hauēp*, VIII b 98; *Habbe3*, *pl.* III 2, XIII a 15, &c.; *Haf(e)* (with *pron.*), IV b 16, VI 159, X 16, &c.; *Han* (the commonest form), II 21, V 25, &c.; *Has(e)* (sep. from *pron.*), IV a 2, X 52, XIV b 71, XVII 95, &c. *Haue*, *pres. subj.* V 219, VIII a 114, 261; as *haue I (thou)*, so may I (you) have, XVII 237, 333, 402. *Haf*, *Haue*, *imper. sg.* V 75, I 124, &c.; *Haueth*, *pl.* XIV d 13. *Hadde*, *pa. t.* I 100, II 51, XI b 265, &c.; *Had(e)*, I 116, V 13, XI b 202, &c.; *Hedde*, III 5, 42, &c. (OKt. *hefde*); *Hadde*, 2 *sg.* XVI 219; *Hadestow*, II 533 (see *pou*); *Hadyn*, *pl.* VII 126. *Haade*, *pa. t. subj.* had, would (should) have, XI b 270; *Hadde*, *Had(e)*, II 559, I 195, V 196, &c.; *Hed(d)e*, III 13, 30, &c.; *Hade3*, *Hadest*, 2 *sg.*

*subj.* II 573, V 326. *Yhad*, *pp.* II 249, 253. *Haf (haue) at 3e*, have (i. e. let me get) at thee, V 220, XVII 219; *haue done*, be quick, XVII 316, 352, 480; *his lyf hade*, preserved his life, VII 163. [OE. *habban*.]  
**Habide**. See *Abide*.  
**Habundant**, *adj.* abundant, IX 330. [Ofr. *abundant*.]  
**Hacches**, *n. pl.* hatches; of a buttery, or kitchen, VIII b 29; of a ship, VII 147. [OE. *hæcc*.]  
**Hade**, see *Habbe(n)*, *Heued*; *Hadestow*, see *Habbe(n)*.  
**Haf(e)**. See *Habbe(n)*, *Half*.  
**Hafyng**, *n.* possession, VI 90. [From stem of *Habben*; cf. OE. *hæfen*.]  
**Hay(e)**, *n.* hay, XVII 159; mowing grass, IV a 33. [OE. *hæg*.]  
**Haif**. See *Habbe(n)*.  
**Hayle**, *n.* hail, I 162. [OE. *hægl*.]  
**Hayroun**, *n. (collective)*, herons, II 310. [Ofr. *hairon*.]  
**Haithill**. See *Hapel*.  
**Haywarde**, *n.* hayward (who had charge of fences, enclosures, &c., and was sometimes keeper of the cattle on the common land), VIII b 16 (see note). [OE. *hægward*.]  
**Hald(e)**, &c. See *Holde(n)*.  
**Haldynge**, *n.*; *haldynge vp*, maintaining, XI b 168. See *Holde(n)*.  
**Hale**, *v.* to draw, pull, XII b 87; *Halt*, *pp.* in *vp halt*, uplifted, high, V 11. [OE. \**haliam* (Ofris. *halia*), or Ofr. *haler*.]  
**Half**, *Halue*, *Haf (III)*, *n.* side, X 198; *upon bope halue*, on both sides, V 2, 97; *o this half*, on this side (of the world), IX 250; behalf, in *ane ... haf* (with intervening *gen.*) on behalf of, III 11; (*vp*) *on Godde3 halue*, a (on) *Godde3 half*, &c., in God's name, for God's sake, V 51, 81, XI a 15, XII b 80; *adv.* half, IX 241, XII b 35, 79, &c. [OE. *half*.] See *Behalue*.

# GLOSSARY

**Halȝeȝ**, *n. pl.* saints, v 54. [OE. *hālga*.] See **Holi**.

**Haly**. See **Holi**.

**Halydam**, *n.* halidom, holy thing (such as relics of the saints, but frequent coupling with *God*, and *help*, seems to show word to imply the saints as a body; cf. prec. line), v 55. [OE. *hālig-dōm*.]

**Hall(e)**, *n.* mansion, hall, home, II 219, v 261, XVI 136, XVII 67, 348, 516, &c. [OE. *hall*.]

**Halme**, *n.* shaft, v 156. [OE. *halm*, stalk; cf. *Stele*.]

**Halpeny**, *n.* halfpenny in *halpeny ale*, ale at a halfpenny a gallon, small beer, VIII a 300. [OE. *half-penig*.] See **Pené**.

**Hals**, *n.* neck, VIII a 63. [OE. *hals*.]

**Halsed**, *pa. t.* embraced, greeted, XVI 64. [OE. *h(e)alsian*, \*embrace, implore, usually confused with next. Cf. ON. *heilsa* (= next), greet; *halsa*, embrace.]

**Halsen**, *v.* to interpret (dream), XII a 148. [OE. *hælsian*, *hālsian*, interpret omens, &c.]

**Halt**, see **Hale**; **Halue**, see **Half**.

**Halue-acre**, **Half-acre**, *n.* half-acre, small plot, VIII a 4, 5, 100, 110. [OE. *half* + *æcer*.]

**Halvendel**, *n.* half, XII b 49, 218. [OE. *halfan dæl*, accus.] See **Dele**.

**Halwid**, *pp.* consecrated, XI b 29. [OE. *hālgian*.] See **Halȝeȝ Holi**.

**Ham**, **Hamsylf**. See **Hi**, *pron. pl.*

**Hame**. See **Hom**, *adv.*

**Hamerys**, **Hamers**, *n. pl.* hammers, xv h 10, 13. [OE. *hamor*.] See **Homered**.

**Hamese**, *n. pl.* alleged oriental name for diamonds, IX 37 (so in French original).

**Han**, see **Habbe(n)**; **Hand(e)**, see **Hond**.

**Handled**, *pp.* wielded, xv h 13. [OE. *handlian*.]

**Hange**, *v.* to hang (*trans.* and *intr.*), I 219, VIII a 63, XVI 307;

**Hongeȝ**, 3 *sg. pres.* II 506, 507; **Heng(e)**, *pa. t. sg.* II 344, 500;

**Yhongeȝ**, *pp.* XIII a 14. [OE. *hōn* (*pa. t. hēng*), *trans.*; *hāngian*, *intr.*; cf. ON. *hanga* (*str.*) *intr.*]

**Hap**, **Happ**, *n.* chance, fortune, XII b 8, xv c 9; **Happes**, *pl.* happenings, II 8, XIII a 62. [ON. *happ*.] See **Myshap**.

**Happe**, *v. impers.* happen, VIII a 47; **Happed**, **Happit**, *pa. t.* it befell, VII 117, VIII b 99. [From *prec.*]

**Happene**, **Happyn**, *v.* to happen, IX 47, 207, XVII 481; **Hapneth**, 3 *sg. pres.* XII b 6. [Extended from *prec.*]

**Hard**. See **Here**, *v.*

**Hard(e)**, *adj.* hard, harsh, cruel, I 28, 135, II 243, &c.; strong, immovable, IV a 48; as *sb.*, what is hard, VI 246; *adv.* hard, v 85, xv h 13; grievously, VII 117; closely, X 150, XVI 151. [OE. *heard*; *hearde*.]

**Hardely**, **Hardily**, **Hardiliche**, *adv.* boldly, VIII a 30, XVI 143; (parenthetic), certainly, I may say, v 322, XVII 522. [From *next*.]

**Hardi**, **Hardy**, *adj.* bold, II 27, VIII a 179, &c. [Ofr. *hardi*.]

**Hardyment**, *n.* (act of) daring, X 183. [Ofr. *hardement*.]

**Hardynesse**, *n.* hardihood, boldness, IX 79. [Ofr. *hardi* + *-ness*; cf. Ofr. *hardiesse*.]

**Hardis**, *n. pl.* hards (coarser part of flax), X 20. [OE. *heordan*, *pl.*]

**Hare**. See **Hi**, *pron. pl.*, and *fem.*

**Harkens**, &c. See **Herkne**.

**Harlot**, *n.* rascal, scurrilous fellow, VIII a 54, [XVI 185]. [Ofr. *harlot*.]

**Harm(e)**, *n.* grief, misfortune, injury, detriment, I 147, v 204, 209, VI 28, XII a 162, XIII b 39, XIV a 26, XVI 323, &c. [OE. *hearm*.]

**Harp**, *n.* harp, II 19, 231, &c. [OE. *hearp*.]

**Harpe**, *v.* to harp, II 37, 271, &c. [OE. *hearpian*.]

# GLOSSARY

**Harpour(e)**, **Harper**, *n.* harper, minstrel, II 35, 40, 513, 522, &c. [OE. *hearpere*; OFr. *har-pour*.]

**Harpyng**, *n.* harping, minstrelsy, II 3, 43, 277, &c. [OE. *hearpyng*.]

**Harryng**, *n.* snarling, XIII b 15. [Echoic.]

**Harrowe**, **Harrowe**, *interj.* a cry for help, XVI 185, 343; as *sb.*, uproar, XVI 98. [OFr. *harou*.]

**Harrowing**, *n.* despoiling, XVI *title*. [OE. *hergung*.]

**Hartely**. See **Hertely**.

**Harwen**, *v.* to harrow, VIII b 19. [Cf. ON. *herfi*, OSwed. *harva*, a harrow.]

**Hasell-note**, *n.* hazel-nut, IX 55. [OE. *hæsel-hnutu*.]

**Hast(e)**, *n.* violence, haste, VIII a 291, XVII 411, &c.; *an haste*, III 22, 43, 47; *in hast(e)*, V 150, VIII a 167, XVII 158, 293, 447, speedily, immediately. [OFr. *haste*; cf. *Heste*, *n.*<sup>2</sup>]

**Hast(e)**, *v. intr.* and *refl.* to hasten, VIII a 317, XVII 182; *hastis hemselue to hange*, rashly (precipitately) hang themselves, XVI 307. [OFr. *haster*.]

**Hast(e)ly**, *adv.* speedily, XVII 39, 109. [From *Haste*, *n.*; cf. OE. *hæstlice*.]

**Hate**. See **Hoot**.

**Hate**, *n.* hatred, VI 103, &c. [Stem of next.]

**Hate**, **Hatie**, *2 sg. pres. subj.* (you should) hate, IV a 47, VIII a 52. [OE. *halian*.]

**Hat3**, **Hap**, &c. See **Habbe(n)**.

**Hatte**, *n.* hat, V 13, XIV b 41. [OE. *hætt*.]

**Hatte**, see **Hote**, *v.*; **Hatter**, see **Hoot**.

**Hapel**, **Haithill** (VII), *adj.* noble, VII 38; *n.* knight, V 263, 340. [OE. *æpele*, *adj.*, and *hæleþ*, warrior; see Björkman, *Morte Arthure*, 358 (note, and refs.).]

**Haunenes**, *n. pl.* harbours, XIII b 68, XIV c 38. [OE. *hæfen(e)*.]

**Hauer-cake**, *n.* oat-cake, VIII a 277. [ON. *hafri* + ME. *cake* (cf. Icel., Swed. *kaka*).]

**Haukin**, *n.*; *on haukin*, a-hawking, II 308. [OE. *hafoc*, ON. *hawk-r*, a hawk.]

**Haunche**, *n.* haunch; app. = shoulder, I 120. [OFr. *hanche*.]

**Haunt**, *n.* frequentation; *wel gode haunt*, great plenty, II 309. [OFr. *hant*, from next.]

**Haunteþ**, *3 sg. pres. frequents*, I 2. [OFr. *hanter*.]

**Hawe**. See **Habbe(n)**.

**He**, *pron. 3 sg. masc.* he, I 4, 10, &c.; **Hee**, XVI 185; **A**, XIII a 27, &c. (see **A**); *indef. one*, VIII a 130, 131, 211; as *he which*, as (being) one who, XII a 23 (note), b 37, &c. **Him**, **Hym(e)**, *acc.* and *dat.* I 63, II 51, &c.; *refl.* (for) himself, I 10, 70, II 244, 485, IV b 78, 80, V 191, VI 118, XVI 126; often pleonastic (*dat.*) with verbs of bodily action, II 289 (note), XV b 7 (note), g 33; esp. of motion, III 19, V 86, XIV c 61, XV g 18, 24 (note), 27, 29, 30; orig. *refl. accus.* II 475, 501. **Himself**, **Hymself(e)**, *-selue(n)*, *-seluyn*, *-sylf*, *nom.* himself, IV b 82, V 41, VII 69, XI b 225, XIII a 27, &c.; *he himself*, II 37, VII 161; *acc. refl.* XI b 223, XV g 16, &c. **His**, *poss. adj.* (orig. *gen.*) XIV d 7; **Hys**, **His**, I 46, II 29, &c.; **Hysse**, VI 58; **Hus**, VIII b 60, 101, 102; **Is**, XV g 7, 24, 29; **Us**, VIII b 106; **Hise**, *pl.* XII a 156, &c.; as *sb.*, his folk, I 135, XVII 553; written for genitive inflexion, XIII a 22 (see note), b 23. [OE. *hē*, *nom.*; *his*, *gen.*; *him*, *dat.*] See **Hi**, **Hit**.

**He**, *pron. fem.* she, II 408, 446, XV c 7, 15, 17, &c. (see **Hi**, *pron. fem.*); *pl.* they, II 185 (see **Hi**, *pron. pl.*). [OE. *hēo*.]

**He**. See **Heigh(e)**.

**Hebenus**, *n.* ebony, XII a 91. [L. *ebenus*.]

# GLOSSARY

**Hed(e)**, *see* Habbe(n), Heued;  
**Hedde(n)**, *see* Habbe(n).

**Hede**, *n.* heed, notice, VIII *a* 15,  
XIV *c* 10; *take hede*, look you,  
XVII 424. [Stem of OE. *hēdan*.]

**Heder**, -ir. *See* Hider.

**Hee**. *See* He, *masc.*; Heie, *adv.*

**Heele**, *n.* heel, XIII *b* 39; Hele<sup>3</sup>,  
*pl.* v 85. [OE. *hēla*.]

**Heele**. *See* Hele, *n.*

**Heep**, **Hep**, *n.* host, VIII *a* 181;  
*an hep* (without of), a host of,  
XII *a* 82. [OE. *hēap*.]

**Heere**. *See* Her(e), *adv.* and *n.*

**Heggen**, *v.* to make and trim  
hedges, \*VIII *b* 19 (MS. *eggen*).  
[From next.]

**Hegges**, *n. pl.* hedges, VIII *a* 31.  
[OE. \**hecg*.]

**Heght**. *See* Hight.

**Heie**, **Hye** (x), Hy<sup>3</sup>(e), Hee  
(iv); *adv.* high, IV *a* 9, VI 113,  
X 16, 124, XV *g* 12; loudly, V  
144, X 86. [OE. *hēh*.]

**Heigh(e)**, Hei<sup>3</sup>(e), Heih, *adj.*  
high, noble; loud; II 26, 205, 326,  
356, VIII *a* 4, XI *b* 133, XIV *c* 18,  
100, 109, &c.; also He, XVII  
469; Hegh, VII 142; He<sup>3</sup>e,  
V 129; Hye, IX 196, XVII 553;  
Hy<sup>3</sup>e, V 19, VI 35, XIII *a* 40,  
&c.; High(e), Hygh, I 13, VII  
101, IX 137, &c.; Hihe, XII *a*  
51; *an hy<sup>3</sup>, on hegh*, on high,  
VII 142, XIII *a* 11; *hy<sup>3</sup>e gate*,  
*see* Gate, *n.*<sup>2</sup>; *heighe pryme*, full  
prime, the end of the period  
'prime' (6-9 a.m.), VIII *a* 106;  
*hygh tymes*, festivals, I 13;  
*heigh way*, highway, VIII *a* 4;  
**Hyar**, *compar.* taller, X 10.  
[OE. *hēh*.]

**Heighlich**, *adv.* at a high rate,  
VIII *a* 307. [From prec.; cf.  
OE. *hēa-līce*.]

**Heijing**, *n.* haste; *an heijing*, in  
haste, II 137. [From Hy, *v.*]

**Heiste**; Heite; Held(e). *See*  
Hote; Hete, *n.*; Holde(n).

**Helde**, *v. intr.* to incline, turn, V  
263; Heldand, *pres. p.* inclined,  
IV *a* 28. [OE. *hēldan*.]

**Hele**, Heele (xvi), *n.* health,

VIII *a* 256, *b* 7, 10; restoration,  
XII *a* 18; salvation, XVI 38, 67,  
106. [OE. *hēlu*.] *See* Hol(e).

**Hele**, *v.* to heal, VIII *a* 186, IX  
92. [OE. *hēlan*.]

**Hele<sup>3</sup>**. *See* Heele.

**Heling**, *n.* covering, X 6. [From  
OE. *hel(e)an*.]

**Hell**. *See* Hil.

**Hell(e)**, **Hel**, *n.* hell, IV *a* 48, 64,  
VI 82, &c.; originally *gen.*, in  
*helle pitte*, the abyss of hell, XVI  
348; *fendis in h.*, hell-fiends,  
XI *b* 216 (cf. OE. *fēond on helle*).  
[OE. *hell*.]

**Helme**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> helm(et), V 75, 129,  
&c. [OE. *helm*.]

**Helm(e)**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> helm (of rudder),  
XIV *c* 59, XVII 272, 420. [OE.  
*helma*.]

**Help(e)**, *n.* help, reinforcements,  
VII 3, VIII *a* 240, X 180, &c.;  
forces, XIII *b* 65. [OE. *help*.]

**Helpe(n)**, **Help(pe)**, *v.* to help,  
avail, II 116, V 141 (note), VIII *a*  
21, 241, &c.; *pres. subj.* V 55, XVII  
247; **Holpyn**, *pa. t. pl.* VIII *a*  
100; **Hulpen**, VIII *a* 110; **Help-**  
**ing**, *n.* X 18. [OE. *helpan*.]

**Hemself**, -selue. *See* Hi, *pl.*

**Hende**, *adj.* courteous, gracious,  
II 563, XVI 45; as *sb.*, good  
sir, V 262; **Hendely**, *adv.* cour-  
teously, V 340. [OE. (*ge*-)*hēnde*,  
convenient, at hand.]

**Hendy**, *adj.* gracious, fair, XV *c* 9,  
37, &c. [Extended from prec.]

**Henge**. *See* Hange.

**Hennes**; Hence; Hens (xvii),  
*adv.* from here, VIII *a* 273, *b* 84,  
XVII 292, 507; from now, ago,  
VIII *b* 36, XVII 25. [M.E.  
*hennen(e)*, *henne* (OE. *heonane*)  
+ *adv.* -*es*.]

**Hent(e)**, *v.* to catch, seize, get,  
receive, I 112, V 249, VI 28  
(*pres. subj.*), VIII *a* 167, 181;  
*hent to*, lay hold of, XVII 420;  
**Hent**, *pp.* IV *a* 24, V 209, 255;  
**Yhent**, XV *c* 9, 37, &c. [OE.  
*hentan*.]

**Hep**; Heore. *See* Heep; Hi, *pl.*  
**Her(e)**, Heere, Hier(e), (iii),

# GLOSSARY

- XII**), *adv.* here, at this point, III 2, VI 159, XI a 1, b 82, XII b 34, 118, XVI 40, &c.; here is, XII b 161, XVI 325; *here aboute*, hereabouts, XV i 1. **Her(e)-**, **Hy-**, used for *neut. pron.* (this &c.) in: **Her(e)fore**, for this reason, XI a 22, 33, b 139; **Hereinne**, VI 217; **Her(e)of**, **Hyerof**, at, of this, III 1, VIII a 177, IX 150, XI a 54. [OE. *hēr*.]
- Her(e)**, **Heere** (I), *n.* hair, I 164, 237, II 265, 506, XV c 13. [OE. *hār, hār*.]
- Her(e)**, *see* **Hi**, *pron. fem.* and *pl.*; **Hereseif**, *see* **Hi**, *fem.*
- Herbarwe**, **Herberowe**, *n.* lodging, II 434, XVI 136. [OE. *hære-beorg*.]
- Herber**, *n.* arbour (grassy place with trees), XV a 13. [OFr. *herbier*.]
- Here**, *n.* host (of foes), V 203. [OE. *here*.]
- Here**, *v.* to hear, listen to, hear of, I 81, II 43, V 136, 205, VIII a 54, 206, XI b 223 (*subj.*), &c.; **Heryn**, II 17; **Heris**, 2 *sg. pres.* XVI 101; **Herd(e)**, *pa. t.* I 75, 239, &c.; **Hard**, *pp.* XVII 46; **Herd(e)**, IV a 24, IX 172, XVI 98. *For likyng to here*, VII 71, *see* **Likeing**. [OE. *hēran*.] *See* **Yhere**.
- Heremites**, **Heremytes**, *n. pl.* hermits, VIII a 139, 181, b 4. [Med.L. (*h*)*erēmīta*; OFr. (*h*)*eremite*.]
- Hereres**, *n. pl.* hearers, IX 276, 321. [From **Here**, *v.*]
- Heresye**, *n.* heresy, XI a 1, 64. [OFr. *heresia*.]
- Heretik**, *n.* heretic, XI a 4; **Heretiks**, -ys, *pl.* XI b 37, 45, &c. [L. *hæreticus*.]
- Heryen**, *v.* to praise, XI b 152. [OE. *hērian*.]
- Heryng(e)** (*of*), *n.* hearing (of), listening (to), IX 277, X *introd.*, XI b 59, &c. [OE. *hiring*.]
- Herkne**, **Herken**, *v.* to listen, II 443, 525; *imper. sg.* II 557, XV c 36; *pl.* II 23; **Harke**, *imper. sg.* XVI 137; **Harkens**, *pl.* XVI 37. [OE. *hercnian*; cf. O.Fr. *herkia*.]
- Herrowe**. *See* **Harrowe**.
- Hert(e)**, *n.* heart, II 338, IV a 8, VI 4, VIII a 208, &c.; *distrib. sg. for pl.* (usual ME. idiom in similar contexts, cf. **Kne**, &c.), IV a 16, b 41; *heries lif*, life, XII a 4. [OE. *heorte*.]
- Hertely**, **Hartely**, *adj.* heartfelt, XVI 245; *adv.* in heart, XVII 388. [Prec. + OE. *-lic(e)*.]
- Heruest**, *n.* autumn, harvest, VII 101, VIII a 68, 285, 294, b 7. [OE. *hærfest*.]
- Heruest-tyme**, *n.* harvest-time, VIII a 108. [OE. *hærfest-tīma*.]
- Hespyne**, *n.* boat, X 127. [ON. *espīng-r*, a ship's boat.]
- Heste**, *n.* command(ment), XI b 106; **Hestis**, *pl.* XI b 70, 187, 191, &c. [Extended from OE. *hæst*; cf. **Beheste**, **Biqueste**.]
- Heste**, *n.* violence, VII 142. [OE. *hæst* (allit.). This form has hitherto escaped record(!); prob. distinct from **Hast(e)**, *q.v.*]
- Het(e)**, **Hette**, &c. *See* **Hote**, *v.*
- Hete**, *n.* heat, I 163, VI 194, VII 138, IX 13; **Heite**, VII 101. [OE. *hætu*.]
- Heterly**, *adv.* bitterly, violently, suddenly, V 223, 243, 249, VI 42. [Blend of OE. *hete-lice*, and ON. *hatr-liga*.]
- Hethen**, *adv.* hence, IV a 17. [ON. *hétan*.]
- Hep(e)**, *n.* heath, II 237, 243. [OE. *hæþ*.]
- Hepenisse**, *n.* pagan lands, II 513. [OE. *hæþen-nes*.]
- Heu**. *See* **Hew(e)**.
- Heue**, *v.* to raise, exalt, V 220, VI 113 (2 *sg.*). [OE. *hebban*, *heft*.]
- Heued**, *n.* head, VI 99, 105, XV g 13; † leader, XIV d 8; **Hade**, II 391; **Hed(e)**, V 75, 249, VIII a 322, XI b 136, &c.; *on hed*, on his head, II 149. [OE. *hæfod*, *hæfod*.]
- Heuen(e)**, **Heuyn**, *n.* sky, heaven,

# GLOSSARY

- Heaven, IV *a* 9, *b* 10, V 11, VII 137, 153, XIII *b* 52, &c.; Heuenez, *pl.* the heavens, VI 63, 81; *Crystes* (*pe Lordes, &c.*) *loue of heuene*, love of Christ (&c.) in heaven, VIII *a* 19, 214, XIV *d* 10. [OE. *heofon*.]
- Heuently, *adj.* heavenly, XI *b* 291. [OE. *heofon-lic*.]
- Heuentryche, Heuentryke, *n.* Heaven, IV *a* 15; *vnder heuentryche*, on earth, V 355. [OE. *heofon-ricc*.] See Ryche.
- Heuy, *adj.* heavy, XV *h* 13; *heuy in*, laden with, IV *b* 29. [OE. *hefig*.]
- Heuynes, Heuynesse, *n.* heaviness, IV *b* 35; sorrow, XII *a* 10. [OE. *hefig-nas*.]
- Hew(e), Heu (XV), *n.* hue, complexion, beauty, I 165, 237, IV *a* 69, XV *c* 13; shade (of colour), XII *a* 55. [OE. *hēow*.]
- Hi, *pron.* 3 *sg. fem.* she, III 32, 33, 55, 60 (it, *ref. to fem. noun.*), &c.; Hy(e), II 81, 337, III 45; He, II 408, 446, XV *c* 7, 15, 17; Ho, VI 68, 77, 83, 84, 94, 96. Hare, *acc.* and *dat.* III 55; Her(e), I 53, II 92; Hir(e) (the most usual form), II 73, VI 68, X 30, XII *a* 27, 44, 107, 145, XV *c* 17 (*refl.*), &c.; Hyr, VI 67, 70; Hure, VIII *b* 53. *Poss. adj.* (orig. *gen.*) Hare, III 33, 35, 45; Her(e), I 210, 243, II 565; Hir(e) (the most usual form), II 56, IV *b* 6, &c.; Hyr(e), IV *b* 4, VI 69, XV *c* 4, &c. Hereself, Hirsself, *refl. acc.* herself, XI *b* 57, XII *a* 32, 184. [OE. *hēo* (*heō*), also *hē*, *hie*, *hī*, *nom.* and *acc.*; *heore*, *hire*, &c., *gen.* and *dat.* On vowel of *hare* see next.]
- Hi, *pron.* 3 *pl.* they, III 58; Hy(e), II 91, XIII *a* 17, *b* 9, 11; Hil, VIII *a* 15; also He, II 185, III 57 (second); A, XIII *a* 13, &c. (see A). *Acc.* and *dat.* Ham (to, for) them, III *introd.*, XIII *a* 23, *b* 39; Hem (the most usual form), I 39, II 88, &c.; Hom, V 353, VII 24, 35, &c.; *refl.* (to, for) themselves, I 200, II 69, VI 191, VII 33, VIII *a* 69, 181, 182, XI *b* 40, XV *h* 10, &c.; *pleonastic (dat.)*, XI *a* 61; *cf.* He. Ham-sylf (XIII); Hemself, -selue, *nom.* themselves, XI *b* 190; *acc.* and *dat.*, XI *b* 198; (*refl.*) VIII *a* 144, XI *b* 93, 109, XIII *b* 24, XVI 307; *of hemself*, by themselves, XI *b* 73. *Poss. adj.* (orig. *gen.*) Hare, their, III *introd.*; Heore, XIV *c* 7, 45, &c.; Her(e) (the most usual form), I 39, II 16, &c.; Hire, IX 165, 185, &c.; Hor, V 345, VII 8, 181, &c.; Huere, XV *b* 8, 11, 29; Hure, VIII *b* 50; (*pronom.*) here, theirs, XI *b* 129; here names of alle, the names of all of them, I 37; at here about, see Abone(n). [OE. *hī*, *hie* (*hē*, *hēo*), &c., *nom.*, *acc.*; *heora*, *hira*, &c. *gen.*; *heom*, *him*, *dat.* The vowel of *a*, *hare*, *ham*, is prob. due to infl. of OE. *þā*, *þāra*, *þām*.] See Pal, His(e).
- Hy, Hy3 (v), Hie, *v.* to hasten; *intr.* XI *b* 274, XII *b* 104, XVII 371; *refl.* V 53, XVII 289, 312 (1 *pl. imper.*). [OE. *higian*.]
- Hy(e), *n.* haste, in *in hy(e)*, in haste, swiftly, X 46, 82, XVI 367, &c.; in (*full*) gret hy, X 80, 90, &c. *Cf.* Heizig. [From *prec.*]
- Hy(e). See Heie, Heigh(e); Hi, *pron. fem.* and *pl.*
- Hyar. See Heiz(e).
- Hide, *v.* to hide, keep secret, XI *a* 57; *refl.* XIV *b* 22; Hidde, *pa. t.* II 268, XVI 249 (*intr.*); Hidd, *pp.* XII *b* 187. [OE. *hýdan*.]
- Hyde, *n.* skin, V 244; hide, XV *h* 11. [OE. *hýd*.]
- Hydel. See Ydel.
- Hider, *adv.* hither, II 422, V 23, XIV *c* 47, &c.; Heder, XVII 290; Hedir, to me, XVII 291. [OE. *hider*.]
- Hiderward, *adv.* hither, VIII *a* 317. [OE. *hiderweard*.]
- Hidous, Hidus, *adj.* awful, XVII



# GLOSSARY

101, 417; Hydously, *adv.* terribly, XVI 138. [Ofr. *hidous*.]  
**Hiere**, *Hyerof*, see *Her(e)*, *adv.*;  
**Hyf**, see *3ef*; **Hy3(e)**, see *Heie*,  
*Heigh(e)*; *Hy*, *v.*  
**Hight**, **Hy3t** (VI), **Heght** (XVII),  
*n.* height, XVII 260; *of h.*, in  
height, XVII 125; *on h.*, on  
high, above, up, VI 141, XVI 88,  
235, XVII 136. [OE. *hēhpu*.]  
See *Heigh(e)*.  
**Hizt(e)** (*Hyght*, *Hih̄te*, &c.);  
*Hihe*. See *Hote, v.*; *Heigh(e)*.  
**Hli**, see *Hi*, *pl.*; **Hiis**, see *He*,  
*masc.*  
**Hyle, v.** to protect, I 184. [ON.  
*hylja*.]  
**Hil**, **Hill(e)**, **Hyll(e)**, *n.* hill, II  
354, V 13, 131, XVII 337, 442,  
466, &c.; *Hell*, XII a 65, 79,  
86; *Hul* (*Hulles, pl.*), XIII a  
18, 45; *by hylle ne be vale*, no-  
where, under no circumstances,  
V 203. [OE. *hyll* (Kt. *hell*).]  
**Him**, **Hym(e)**. See *He, masc.*; *Hit*.  
*Himself*; *Hymself*, -*selue*,  
-*sylyf*, &c. See *He, masc.*  
**Hyndrid**, *pp.* hindered, XI b 232.  
[OE. *hindrian*.]  
**Hyne, n.** servant, VIII a 125; *pl.*  
labourers, VI 145. [OE. *higa*,  
*gen. pl. higna*.]  
**Hypped**, *pa. t.* hopped, V 164.  
[OE. \**hyppan*; cf. *hoppian*.]  
See *Hoppit*.  
**Hir(e)**, **Hyr(e)**. See *Hi, prons.*  
**Hyre**, **Hire**, **Huyre** (VIII), *n.*  
hire, pay, reward, VI 163, 223,  
VIII a 133, 189, 192, &c.; (in  
bad sense) XIV b 66, XVI 167,  
260. [OE. *hȳr*.]  
**Hyre, v.** to hire, VI 147; *Huyred*,  
*pp.* VIII a 108, 307. [OE.  
*hȳr(e)an*.]  
*Hirself*. See *Hi, pron. fem.*  
**Hys**, **His(e)**. See *He, masc.*;  
*Hit*; *Is*.  
**His(e)**, *pron. acc. sg. fem.* her, III  
32, 53; *acc. pl.* them, III 7, 8,  
28 (see note). [See *N.E.D.*,  
*s.v. His*.]  
**Hyase**. See *He, masc.*  
**Hystoriale**, *adj.* historical, VII

*title* and *introd.* [Ofr. *his-*  
*torial*.]  
**Hit**, *pron. 3 sg. neut. (nom. and*  
*acc.)* it, III 27, IV a 52, &c.;  
*Hyt*, I 19, XIII a 12, &c.; *It*,  
II 132, &c.; *pleonastic*, XII a  
56; as anticipated subject, *it is*  
(*ere*), there is (are), I *introd.*,  
II 552; *it* (with *pl. verb. ref.* to  
*prec. or following plural*), they,  
VIII a 56, b 62, IX 139, XIII a  
11; them, VIII a 43, 44. *Dat.*  
*Him*, (to) it, IX 124, 127; *It*,  
IV a 16, II 20 (*indef. or pl.*).  
*Poss. adj.* *His*, *Hys*, IX 130,  
132, XIII a 61, XIV c 59; *Hyt-*  
*self, refl.* itself, VI 86. [OE.  
*hit, him, his*.]  
**Hitte, v.** to strike, to hit (a mark),  
V 228; *Hit*, *Hyt, pa. t.* V 85,  
X 103, 127; *Hitte, pp.* V 219.  
[OE. (late) *hittan* from ON.  
*hitta*.]  
**Ho**, **Hoo**, *interj.* ho! esp. used to  
call a pause, V 262 (or *imper. of*  
*next*), XIV d 13, XVII 229. [Cf.  
Ofr. *ho*!]  
**Ho, v.** to pause, XVII 411. [From  
*prec.*]  
**Ho, pron. she**; see *Hi, fem.*  
**Hobbe**: familiar form of Robert  
(used contemptuously), XI b 176;  
*Hobbe þe Robbere*, XIV d 6 (see  
note).  
**Hode, n.** hood, II 229, V 229,  
VIII a 264. [OE. *hōd*.]  
**Hogges, n. pl.** hogs, VIII a 174.  
[OE. *hogg*.]  
**Hoylle**. See *Hol(e), adj.*  
**Hoyne** (= *hōne*), *v.* to delay, XVII  
319. [† Related to *Ho, v.*]  
**Hol(e), adj.** whole, sound, entire,  
(a)mended, V 322, VI 46, VIII a  
61, IX 80; *Hoylle*, XVII 388;  
*Holle*, V 228. [OE. *hāl*.] See  
*Hele, v.*  
**Hold(e), n.** stronghold, XII a 98;  
captivity, XVI 151. [OE. (*ge-*)  
*hāld*.]  
**Holde, adv.** loyally, V 61. [OE.  
*hōlde*.]  
**Hold(e)n**, **Hold**, **Hald(e)**, *v.*  
*trans.* to hold, keep, guard;

# GLOSSARY

- possess, have; regard as, think; II 295 (inf. dep. on *se* 289), 495, IV a 52, 95, V 145, 280, 322, VI 94, 130, X 31, XI b 186, XIV b 37, &c.; *refl.* keep (oneself), remain, VIII a 194, IX 279, XIV d 15, xv h 10 (*holdyn*, pres. pl.); think oneself, IV b 12, V 273, XVI 325; *intr.* keep, remain, II 95, X 57. Held(e), *pa. t.* II 94, VII 21, &c.; 2 *sg. subj.* if you kept, V 61; Holdyn, *pa. t. pl.* VII 50; Halden, *pp.* V 29, 209; Holde(n), VII 38, XI b 45, XII *introd.*, &c.; Yhold, II 31. Held in hond, ruled, II 488; holde up her hertis, keep up their spirits, (or sustain them), VIII a 208; holde with, have to do with, VIII a 54; holde it for, treasure it as, VIII a 206; hold none slyke, reckon none like (her), XVII 233; holde (to), beholden (to), XII *introd.*; holden, bound, under obligation, VIII a 88, XI b 298, 300. [OE. *haldan.*] See Bihold.
- Hole, *n.* hole, V 112, IX 222, XIV b 22, &c. [OE. *hol.*]
- Holz. See Holwe.
- Holi, Holy, *adj.* holy, I 12, XI b 299, &c.; Hooly, XI a 10, 11; Haly, IV a 84, b 50, 53, 75; Holyere, *compar.* XI b 28. [OE. *hālig.*] See Halȝez, Halwid.
- Holy. See Holliche.
- Hollicherche, *n.* Holy Church (personified), VIII a 239; Holikirke, VIII a 28. See Holi, Cherche, Kirke.
- Holynesse, *n.* sanctity, XI b 100. [OE. *hālig-nes.*]
- Holle. See Hol(e).
- Holliche, Holly, Holy (VI), *adv.* wholly, altogether, VI 58, XIV c 12, 97. [From Hol(e).]
- Holpyn. See Helpen.
- Holtes, *n. pl.* woods, II 214. [OE. *hol.*]
- Holwe, Holz, *adj.* hollow, II 268, V 114. [OE. *holh*, *n.*]
- Holwenes, *n.* cavity, XIII a 15. [From prec.]
- Hom. See Hi, *prom. pl.*
- Hom(e), *n.* home, XII b 181; long home, eternal home (after death), I 207. [OE. *hām*; cf. *langne hām gesēcean*, Fates of Apost., 92.]
- Hom(e), Hame (vVII), *adv.* home (-wards), II 162, III 54, V 53, VIII a 194, IX 285, 314, XVII 143, &c.; back, VIII a 92. [OE. *hām.*]
- Homely, *adv.* familiarly, XVI 64. [OE. \**hām-lice.*]
- Homered, *pa. t.* (hammered), struck, V 243. [From OE. *hamor*, *homor*, *n.*] See Hamerys.
- Homward, *adv.* homewards, XII b 104, 154, XVII 182. [OE. *hām-weard.*]
- Hond(e), Hand(e), *n.* hand, I 101, II 470, IV a 27, V 37, XIV c 45 (*pl.* or *distrib. sg.*; see Hert), &c.; Hēnd(e), *pl.* IV a 65, 80, XVI \*75, 400, XVII 34, 255; Honden, *pl.* II 79. Held in hond, ruled, II 488; at our h., at hand, VII 13; hand yn h., I 151, 223; on hond, on the wrist, II 307; out of honde, straight away, V 217; tak vpon hand (without to), undertake to, X 130. [OE. *hōnd*, *hānd*; *pl.* *hānda*; ON. *pl.* *hend-r.*]
- Hondqwife, *n.* moment, VII 117. [OE. *hōnd-hwīl.*]
- Hondred, Hundred, *adj.* and *n.* (orig. foll. by *gen. pl.*), II 143, 291, III 12, 15, XIII b 31, XV g 30 (see note), &c.; (as ordinal) hundredth, IX 301. [OE. *hundred.*] See Hund(e)reth; Part.
- Hondreduald, *adj.* hundredfold, III 50. [From prec.; cf. OE. *hund(i)ontigfōld.*]
- Hongep. See Hange.
- Hony, *n.* honey, IV b 19, 20, 26. [OE. *hunig.*]
- Honnoure, Honour(e), *n.* honour, II 36, VI 64, XVI 132, 133, &c. [OFr. *honour.*]
- Honoure, *v.* to honour, adorn, VIII a 12; *pp.* as *adj.* V 344. [OFr. *honourer.*]
- Honourable, *adj.* worthy (of

# GLOSSARY

- honour), IX 311. [Ofr. *honourable*.]
- Hoo**, *see* Ho, *interj.*; **Hooly**, *see* Holi.
- Hoot**, **Hot**(e), **Hate** (IV, VI), *adj.* hot, burning, II 58, VI 28, VIII b 7, IX 7, 11, XIII a 1, XV h 10, &c.; grievous, bitter, IV a 31; **Hatter**, *compar.* IV a 13. [OE. *hāt*; *hättira*, *compar.*]
- Hope**, *v.* to hope, expect, imagine, V 233, VIII *introd.*, a 88, XIV c 91, XVI 43, &c.; *hoped of*, *hoped for*, V 240. [OE. *hopian*.]
- Hoper**, *n.* sower's seed-basket, VIII a 63. [See *N.E.D.*, s.v. *Hopper*.]
- Hoppit**, *pa. t.* leapt, VII 142; **Hoppyng**, *pres. p.* dancing, I 233; *verbal n.* I 226. [OE. *hoppian*.] *See* Hypped.
- Hor**. *See* Ili, *pron. pl.*
- Hore**, *adj.* hoar, grey, II 214, VIII a 77. [OE. *hār*.]
- Hors**, *n.* horse, V 85, &c.; *pl.* XIII a 34 (beside *horses*, XIV b 73); *on hors*, on horseback, II 304, 395; *gen. in hors bred* (see *Bred*). [OE. *hors*.]
- Hose**, *n. pl.* hose, long stockings, XVII 225. [OE. *hosa*, *hose*.]
- Hospitalité**, *n.* hospitality, XI b 254. [Ofr. *hospitalité*.]
- Host**. *See* Ost.
- Hote**, *v.* to bid; promise, assure, VIII a 256, 258; **Hete**, V 53, VI 42, XIV a 26. *Pa. t. (act.)* **Het**, bade, III 7, 20; **Hyzt**(e), **Hizte**, promised, V 150, 273, VIII a 125, 230. *Passive (pres. and pa. t.)*, is (was) called, **Hatte**, III *introd.*, VIII a 45, XIII a 63; **Heiste** (= *hehte*; see Appendix § 6, end), XV g 18; **Hette**, XV g 19; **Hyzt**(e), **Hyght**, **Hizte**, **Hight**, I 27, 40, 45, VIII a 72, XVI 231, &c.; **Hihte**, XII a 85, b 20, &c. [**Het**], *pp.* promised, XVII 301; **Hight**(e), XVI 351, 396, XVII 46; **Yhote**, called, II 601; commanded, III 29. [OE. *hātan*; *hēt*, *heht*, *pa. t.*; *hätte*, *pass. Hette*, *hizte*, &c., are due to blending in form and function of the *pa. t.* forms with *pass.* (taken as *wh. pa. t.*). **Hete**, *pres.*, is prob. back-formation from *hette*.]
- Hote**. *See* Hoot.
- Hou**, *adv. interrog. (dir. and indir.)*, how, in what way, that, II 132, 507, III 1, XI a 62, 233, &c.; **Hou3**, XI b 281. XIII a 13, b 1, 42; **How**(e), XVI 3, &c.; *hou euere*, however, XI b 255; *how pat*, how (*indir.*), IX 220, XII a 43, &c.; *hou*, how (it happened), II 115. [OE. *hū*.] *See* Wou.
- Houed**; **Houndes**. *See* Hufe; Hund.
- Houped**, *pa. t. sg.* shouted, VIII a 165. [Ofr. *houper*.]
- Houre3**. *See* Ourc, *n.*
- Hous**(e), *n.* house, II 432, III 54 (*dat.*), XII a 47, XVI 136, &c.; *houses of offyce*, XVII 134, *see* Office. [OE. *hūs*.]
- Housebonde**, *n.* husband, XII a 133; **Husband**, XVI 45, XVII 208, &c. [OE. *hūsbanda*, from ON. *húsbóndi*.]
- How**(e), *interj.* ho!, VIII a 110, XVI 213. *Cf.* Ho.
- Huanne**; **Huere**; **Huerof**. *See* Whan(ne); **Hi**, *pron. pl.*; **Wher**(e).
- Hufe**, *v.* to tarry, XVII 461; **Houed**, *pa. t.* halted, V 100. [ME. *hōve*(n); obscure.]
- Huge**, *adj.* great, V 13, 352, IX 233, XIII a 10. [Cf. Ofr. *ahuge*.]
- Huyre**(d); **Hul**(les); **Hulpen**. *See* Hyre; **Hil**; **Helpen**.
- Hund**, **Hound**, *n.* dog, II 286, XIV b 21, 76; *houndes bred*, *see* *Bred*(e). [OE. *hūnd*.]
- Hund**(e)reth, *adj. and n.* hundred, V 226, X 147, XVI 39, XVII 57, &c. [ON. *hundrað*.] *See* Hondred.
- Hungre**, **Hunger**, *n.* hunger, VIII a 233, XVII 155, &c.; **Famine** (personified), VIII a 165,

# GLOSSARY

- &c. [OE. *hunger*.] See A-hungrye.
- Hunt(e) (*to*), *v.* to hunt (after), II 284, VIII a 30; Huntunge, *n.* XII b 5. [OE. *huntian*; *huntung*.]
- Hure. See Hi, *pron. fem.* and *pl.*
- Hurt, *v. trans.* to hurt, V 223; *pp.* and *pa. t.* V 243, X 56. [OFr. *hurter*.]
- Hus. See He, *masc.*; We.
- Hw-. See Wh-.
- I. See Ich; In, *prep.*
- Iaoke, Iak. Jack, XI b 176; *Iak nor Gill*, nobody, XVII 336. [ME. *Iakke*, &c., pet-name assoc. with 'John'.]
- Iales, *n. pl.* jays, XI b 249. [OFr. *jai*.]
- Iangle, *v.* to quarrel, VIII a 309. [OFr. *jangler*.]
- Iape, *n.* trick, delusion, XI b 137, XII a 129, b 66. [Not known.]
- Iboust. See Bigge, *v.*
- Io; Icast. See Ich; *pron.*; Cast.
- Ich, *adj.*<sup>1</sup> (after *his* or *pat*), same, very, II 63, 455, 540; Yche, I 208, 216. [OE. *ilca*.] See Ilk(e), *adj.*<sup>1</sup>
- Ich, Yohe, *adj.*<sup>2</sup> each, every, II 179, 254, 364 (see *Manere*), VII 19, XVII 151 (see *Kinde*), 170, &c.; Voh, V 13, VI 243, XV b 6; *ich a*, every, II 187, 276 (not 307); each, XVII 273; *vch a*, VI 15, 76, 101, XIV c 20, 99; *ich a deyll*, *ylk a dele*, see *Dele*, *n.*; in *ich ways*, see *Way*, *Wise*; Ioh, *pron.* each (one), II 184, 292, 295, 307. [OE. *ylc*.] See Eche; Euerich; Ichon; Ilke, *adj.*<sup>3</sup>; Pe.
- Ich, *pron.* I *sg.* I, II 113, III 2, VIII b 1, XV c 5, d 4, f 6, &c.; Io, XV g 26, 31; Ioohe, XV a 2, 11; I, Y, *passim*; coalescing with foll. word in Ichabbe, Icham, Ichaue, Ichil, Ichim, Ichot, Ichulle, *q. v.* Me, *acc.* and *dat.* (to, for) me, V 138, 145, VI 205, XV a 20, c 10, 31 (see *Reue*), and *passim*; Mee, XVI 274; *ethic dat.* (I beg), V 76; in *impers. constr.* (where Mn.E. has 'I'), II 177, IV a 10, XV b 34; *me is wo*, woe is me, II 331; *refl. acc.* myself, IX 279, XVI 325, XVII 238, &c.; *dat.* (pleonastic with verb of motion) XV a 4. Mi, *poss. adj.* II 120, 124, &c.; My, *passim*; Min, Myn(e), I 126, II 205, VIII a 31, XV g 11, &c.; as *sb.* (my property, people, &c.), VI 206, VIII a 142, XVI 217, 312, XVII 226 (see *Pat*, *pron.*). Miself(f)e, Myselue(n), *nom.* myself, II 566, V 293, VIII a 80, IX 292, &c.; I myself, VIII a 252, XVI 67, 212; *acc.* and *dat.* (me) myself (not *refl.*), VIII a 28, 131. [OE. *ic*, *mē*, *min*, *mē selfan*, &c.] See Self.
- Ichabbe, I *sg. pres. ind.* I have, XV c 9; Ychabbe, XV c 32; Iohaue, II 209, 516. [OE. *ic hæbbe* (*hafo*, but not WS.).] See Habbe.
- Icham, I *sg. pres. ind.* I am, II 127, 382, 513, XV c 8, 29, d 1; Ycham, XV b 23. [OE. *ic am*.]
- Ichil, I *sg. pres. ind.* I will, intend to, II 132, 212, 341, 451; (with ellipse of verb of motion) I will go, II 129, 316; Ichulle, XV c 19; *ichil patow be*, may you be, II 471. [OE. *ic wile*, *wylle*.] See Wille, *v.*
- Iohim = Ich him (*acc.*), II 428.
- Ichon, Vehon (VI, VIII), *pron.* each one, every one, II 161, VI 90, VIII a 202, &c.; in apposition with *pl. noun*, XVII 279. [OE. *ylc + ān*.] See Ich, *adj.*<sup>2</sup>; Echone, Euerichon, Ilkane.
- Ichot, I *sg. pres. ind.* I know, XV b 23, c 10. [OE. *ic wāt*.] See Wite(n).
- Ichulle. See Ichil.
- Iconowe, *v.* to know, XV g 32. [OE. *ge-cnāwan*.] See Knowe(n).
- Ientilman. See Gentil.
- Ieu, Iew, *n.* Jew, IX 163, XI b 201, XV g 18, XVI 147, &c. [OFr. *gīu*, older *ju*(s)*eu*.]

# GLOSSARY

- If(f), Yf, If.** See **3ef**.
- Ile, n.** island, IX 40; **Yle**, IX 134, 261 (note), 310. [OFr. *ile*.]
- Ileid, Ileyd.** See **Lay**.
- Ilyohe** (MS. *inlyche*), *adv.* equally, alike, VI 186, 242. [OE. *ge-lice*.] See **Lyke**.
- Ilyke, adj.** equal, the same, IV a 14. [OE. *ge-lic*.] See **Lyke**.
- Ilkane, Ilkone, pron.** each one, every one, X 160 (note), XIV b 74. [OE. *ylc + ān*.] See **Ilk**, *adj.*<sup>2</sup>; **Ichon**; **Echone**.
- Ilk(e), adj.**<sup>1</sup> (only after *þe, his, þat*) very, same, III 45, V 65, VIII a 155 (see **While**), XII a 190, b 29, &c.; *þe ilke ælue*, (namely) that same man, III 27. [OE. *ilca*.] See **Ich**, *adj.*<sup>1</sup>; **Thilke**; **þe**.
- Ilk(e), Ylk** (IV), *adj.*<sup>2</sup> each, every, X 35, XVI 273; **ilk(e) a**, every, IV a 27 (see **Dele, n.**), X 133, XVI 130, 253. [OE. *ylc*.] See **Ich**, *adj.*<sup>2</sup>; **Eche**.
- Ill, Yll, adj.** bad, IV b 35; grievous, IV a 31; evil, wicked, IV b 84, XVII 208; as *sō. (pl.)*, the wicked, XVI 34; **Ill(e), adv.** ill, XV b 24 (see **Like**); badly, evilly, cruelly, unluckily, VIII a 198, XIV a 31, XVI 139, XVII 203, 220, 246, &c. [ON. *ill-r*; *illa*, *adv.*]
- Illusions, n. pl.** deceptions, IX 85. [OFr. *illusion*.]
- Imete, v.** to meet, XV g 6; *imette wīd*, he met, XV g 7. [OE. *ge-mētan*.] See **Met(e)n**.
- Impe.** See **Ympe**.
- In, Yn, adv.** in (of motion), I 80, II 347, XIII a 9, XV g 24, XVI 270, &c.; **Inne**, V 128. [OE. *inn*.] See **Into**, **Intill**; **Inne**; **Pare**.
- In, n.** lodging, II 565; *pl.* in takes *he his ines*, takes up his quarters, XIV b 27. [OE. *inn*, *n.*]
- In, Yn, I** (XV a, g), *prep.* (i) **In**, I 3, II 13, XIII a 3, XV a 9, g 5, 13, &c.; **into**, II 349, XII a 125, &c.; according to, as regards, with respect to, &c., VI 239, IX 141, XI b 26, 204, &c.; *in all his myghte*, with &c., IV b 77.
- (ii) **On**, IV b 41, V 157, 279 (of time), IX 122, 286, XIII a 45, &c. *In cas, in feere (fere)*, see **Cas**, **Yfere** (**Fere**). [OE. *in*.] See **In**, **Inne**, *adv.*
- Incontynence, n.** unchastity, IX 130. [OFr. *incontinence*.]
- Indede, adv.** indeed, XI b 108, &c. [OE. *in + dæde*, *dat. sg.*]
- Induyr.** See **Enduir**.
- Informacioun, n.** information, IX 291. [OFr. *informacion*.]
- Infortune, n.** evil fortune, XII a 162. [OFr. *infortune*.]
- Inglis.** See **Englysch**.
- Inne, Ynne, adv.** in (inside), IX 188, XIII a 21; after *rel.* in *þat . . in(ne)*, in which, I 190, VIII a 298, XV i 10; **Ine, prep.** in, III *introd.* 16, 33, 35, 49, 50; on (of time) III *introd.* [OE. *innan*, *prep.*, *adv.*; *inne*, *adv.*] See **In**, *adv.*, *prep.*; **Pare**; **Per(e)**.
- Innoghe, Inogh(e).** See **Ynos**.
- Impossible, adj.**; *impossible . . to be*, impossible, IX 152. [OFr. *impossible*.]
- Inspiracioun, n.** inspiration, IX 331. [OFr. *inspiration*.]
- Instrumentis, n. pl.** appliances, X 8. [OFr. *instrument*.]
- Insuffisance, n.** inability, IX 313. [OFr. *insuffisance*.] See **Suffise**.
- Intil(l), Intyl(l), prep.** into, IV a 3, 9, 16, 21, b 30, &c.; in, X 118, 122. [OE. *inn + ON. til*.] See **In**, *adv.*; **Til**, *prep.*
- Into, Ynto, prep.** into, I 146, II 163, &c.; onto, in *putten hem into*, embark on, IX 183; up to, until (*cf.* **To**), XII a 190, 221; (un)to, XIV c 25. [OE. *inn tō, intō*.] See **In**, *adv.*
- Inward, adv.** inside, XII a 72. [OE. *in(nan)-weard*.]
- Inwardly, adv.** heartily, earnestly, XVI 361. [OE. *in-weard-lice*.]
- Inwytt, Inwytte, n.** conscience, III *title* and *introd.* [OE. *in + witt*; *cf.* *in-gewitnes*, conscience.]
- Inwith, adv.** within, V 114. [OE. *in + wip*.]

# GLOSSARY

**Iohan, Iohon.** John, XIV d 2, 3, 6, 9, 16. [L. *Iohannēs*; cf. OFr. *jehan*.] See Iacke.

**Ioie, Ioy(e), n.** joy, II 6, 45, IV b 54, XII a 175, &c.; *makes ioie*, rejoice, XVI 383. [OFr. *joie*.]

**Iolif, adj.** gay, joyous, II 305. [OFr. *jolif*.]

**Iolitē, n.** riotous mirth, levity, XI b 116, 129, 182. [OFr. *joli(ve)ttē*.]

**Ioparde, n.** hazard; *lys no ioparde of*, there is no question of, VI 242. [OFr. *ju (jeu) parti*, even game, doubtful chance.]

**Iourneyes, n. pl.** day's journeys, IX 259. [OFr. *journée*.]

**Ipotayne, n.** hippopotamus, IX 240. [*Ipotaine*, mistake (*in* for *m*) for OFr. *ypotame*, convenient corruption of L. *hippopotamus*.]

**Ire.** See Yre, n.<sup>2</sup>

**Irnebandis, n. pl.** iron bands, x 24. [OE. *iren* + ON. *band*; cf. OE. *iren-bend*.] See Bond; Yre, n.<sup>1</sup>

**Is, Ys, His (XI), 3 sg. pres. ind.** is, I 9, 19, VIII b 105, XI b 256, &c.; exists, IX 146; (without *pron.*) it is, I 253, 254, V 121, &c.; 2 sg. art, XVI 360; *pl. are*, VIII b 48, x 124, XVII 10, &c.: rime requires *Es (g.v.)* at I 128 (note), XVII 10. [OE. *is*.] See Es, Nis.

**Is, gen. sg.** See He.

**Iseȝe, -seye, -seȝe.** See Se(n).

**Isoid.** See Selle(n).

**Issue, n.** way out, IX 198, 235. [OFr. *issue*.]

**Ist, is it,** XVII 517. See Is.

**It; Itake.** See Iit; Take(n).

**Iueler, n.** jeweller, XII b 150. [OFr. *juel(i)er*.]

**Iuelis, n. pl.** jewels, XI b 283. [OFr. *juel*.]

**Iuge, v.** to judge, XVI 320. [OFr. *jugier*.]

**Iuggement, n.** judgement, XII b 207. [OFr. *jugement*.]

**Iuntly, adv.** close, x 97. [From OFr. *joint, juint*, pp.]

**Iustice, n.** justice, VIII a 324. [OFr. *justice*.]

**Iwis, Iwyssō, adv.** certainly, indeed (often, *esp.* in rime, practically meaningless), V 121, 172, VI 34, XIV b 17, XVII 550. [OE. *ge-wiss*, adj.; cf. *mid (to) gewisse*.]

**K-.** See also C.

**Kache, v.** to chase, catch; *kacheȝ his caple*, urges on his horse, V 107; *Kaȝt (to), pa. t.* took hold (of), V 308; *Cawht, pp.* caught, XII a 161. [ONFr. *cachier*, conjugated on anal. of ME. *la(c)chen*.]

**Kaies, Kayes, n. pl.** keys, XIV a 36, b 88, 89. [OE. *cæg*.]

**Kalf, n.** calf, VIII a 282. [OE. *calf*.]

**Kanel, n.** (wind-pipe), neck, V 230. [ONFr. *canel*.] See Chanel.

**Karol(1)e, v.** to perform a 'carol' (see next), I 54, 83, &c.; *Karol-lyng, n.* I 55. [OFr. *carol(i)er*.]

**Karolle, n.** a carol, a dance accompanied with song (often used with ref. to song only), I 1, 14, &c. [OFr. *carolle*.]

**Kauelacion, n.** cavilling, quibbling objection, V 207. [OFr. *cavillation*.]

**Keyng(es).** See Kyng.

**Kele, Keill, Keyle, v.** to cool, IV a 26 (*intr.*); *to kele (keill) cares*, to assuage sorrows, XVI 84, XVII 300; with person as dir. obj., *from cares the to keyle*, to preserve thee from grief, XVII 118. [OE. *cēlan*.]

**Ken, Kenne, v.** to make known, VII 25 (see note); to teach, VIII a 14, 22, 24, XIV b 4 (see Crede), XVI 50, &c.; to know, in *daw to ken*, to be known for a fool, XVII 248; *will ȝe it ken*, if you will recognize the fact, XIV b 8; understand, I *introd.*; *pp.* (well) known, XIV b 9. [OE. *cennan*, prob. infl. by senses of ON. *kenna*.] Cf. Knowe(n).

**Ken.** See Cou, Kyn.

# GLOSSARY

**Keene**, *adj.* keen, bold, eager, XIV a 2, b 9, 76; bitter (enemy), v 338. [OE. *cene*.]

**Kepe**, *n.* heed; in *tok no kepe of*, XII a 159. [From next.]

**Kepe**, *v.* to guard, preserve, keep, tend, II 208, v 80, 230, VIII a 85, 134, 153, IX 206, XI b 146, XVII 235 (see *Charité*), &c.; *kepe seyntewarie*, minister in the sanctuary, VIII b 83; to care to, in *þe lette I ne kepe*, I have no wish to stop you, v 74; **Kepeynge**, *n.* XI b 70. [OE. *cēpan*.] See *Vnkept*.

**Kertel**. See *Kirtel*.

**Kerue(n)**, *v.* to cut, VIII a 98; prune, VI 152. [OE. *ceorfan*.]

**Kest**, *n.* a 'cast' (see *Cast*, *v.*); a blow, v 230; plot, treachery, v 345; used as 'treacherous thing' (cf. *Falssyng*), v 308. [ON. *kast*.]

**Kest(e)**. See *Cast*, *Kysse*.

**Ketten**. See *Kutten*.

**Keuer(e)**, *v.* to (re)gain, recover; *intr.* recover, survive, v 230; *keueres*, 'gets', makes his way, v 153. [OE. *ā-cofriān*, *intr.*, and OFr. *(re-)couer*, 3 sg. *-keuvre*, trans.] See *Recoueren*.

**Kidde**, *Kyd*; *Kyend*; *Ky3n*, *Kyn(e)*. See *Kype*; *Kinde*; *Con*.

**Kille**, *Kylle*, *v.* to kill, VIII a 32, v 43. [?OE. *\*cyllan*; earliest ME. sense appar. 'beat'.]

**Kyn**, *Kynne*, *Ken* (III), *n. sg.* kindred, relatives, III *introd.*, VIII b 81, XVI 232 (see *Ende*); *kind*, sort: *Cunnes*, *Kyns*, *gen. sg.* in *enes cunnes*, (of any kind), any sort of, XV g 22; *eny kyns*, VIII b 20; *nones cunnes*, (of no kind), no sort of, XV g 20; (with loss of inflexions) *na kyn*, x 59 (see *Þing*); *nor...no kyn*, *nor...any* (sort of), XVII 138; cf. *Alkyn*, *Wolues-kynnes*. [OE. *cynn* (Kt. *cenn*).] See *Eny*, *No(ne)*.

**Kinde**, **Kynd(e)**, **Kyend** (IV), *n.* nature, natural character (of

body or mind), *kind*, IV a 41, 44 (see note), v 312, VIII a 157, IX 56, XII a 8, 125, &c.; in *hir kinde*, in her own way, XII b 128; species, in *ich kynd* (without of), every kind of, XVII 151; **Kyndis**, *pl.* characteristics, IV b 1. [OE. *(ge-)cýnd*.]

**Kynde**, *adj.* inborn, naturally belonging to one, VIII a 243, b 58; to his *kynde name*, as his proper name, VII 70; *Kynde Witt*, natural intelligence, commonsense, VIII a 243 (personif.). [OE. *(ge-)cýnde*.] See *Vnkinde*.

**Kynd(e)ly**, *adv.* kindly, VI 9, VII 173, &c. [From prec. in developed sense 'having natural feeling'; OE. *ge-cýnde-lice*, naturally.]

**Kindel**, *v.* to kindle; *trans.* to cause (sorrow), XIV a 10; *intr.* to begin, XIV a 19. Cf. *Kele*. [Rel. to ON. *kynda* (cf. *kyndill*, torch); distinct from ME. *kindlen*, beget.]

**Kyndom**, *n.* kingdom, VI 85. [OE. *cýne-dōm*.] See *Kyngdome*.

**Kyng**, **King**, **Keyng** (IV), *n.* king, I 27, II 25, IV a 8, 66, v 207 (note), XIV d 10 (note), &c.; **Kynggis**, *pl.* XI b 284. [OE. *cýning*, *cýng*, &c.]

**Kyngdome**, **Kingdom**, *n.* kingship, XI b 268, XVI 186; kingdom, II 206, &c. [OE. *cýning-dōm*.]

**Kirke**, **Kyrk**, *n.* church, Church, v 128, VIII a 85; see note to VIII b 63. [ON. *kirkja*.] See *Cherche*.

**Kirtel**(1), **Kertel** (III), *n.* kirtle (a short coat reaching about to the knees, worn under an outer garment), II 229, III 39, XIV b 61. [OE. *cyrtel*, Kt. *\*certel*.]

**Kysse**, *v.* to kiss; **Kyssedes**, 2 sg. *pa. t.* v 283; **Keste**, 3 sg. XII a 178. [OE. *cyssan* (Kt. *cessan*).] See *Cossez*.

**Kip**, **Kyth**, *n.* country, people, v 52, XIV c 92. [OE. *cýppu*.]

**Kype**, *v.* to make known, reveal;

# GLOSSARY

- \***Kype3** (MS. *lypes*), *imper. pl.* show, VI 9; **Kidde**, *pp.* revealed, XII b 188, XVI 251; **Kyd**, shown, offered, V 272; acknowledged, VII 173; **Kud**, famed, XIV c 91. [OE. *cýpan*, *pp.* (*ge-*) *cýdd*.]
- Knacke(n)**, *v.* to sing in a lively or ornate manner (ref. esp. to the breaking up of simple notes into runs and trills; cf. *smale brekynges*), XI b 161, 173, 177; **Knackynge**, *n.* trilling, XI b 159, 182. [Prob. same as ME. *knacken*, to crack, snap, &c.]
- Knackeris**, *n. pl.* trill-singers, XI b 145. [From prec.]
- Knape**, *n.* fellow, V 68. [OE. *cnapa*.]
- Knappes**, *n. pl.* studs, bosses, VIII a 265. [OE. *cnæpp*.]
- Knarrez**, *n. pl.* † crags, † gnarled boulders, V 98. [† Cf. LG. *knarre*, knot.]
- Knaue**, **Knafe** (XVII), *n.* a low-born man, servant, VIII a 51, b 66, XVI 244, XVII 173; **Knaue**, *gen. plur.* VIII b 56, xv h 4. [OE. *cnafa*.]
- Knaw(e)**. See **Knowe**.
- Kne**, **Kneo** (XIII), *n.* knee, II 507, XIII a 39, XVII 488 (*distrib. sg.*; see Herte). [OE. *cnéo*.]
- Knele**, **Kneole** (XIII), *v.* to kneel, II 223, 418, 472, V 4, XIII a 48; **Kneland(e)**, *pres. p.* II 250, VI 74, XVII 488. [OE. *cnéowlian*.]
- Knet**; **Knew(e)**. See **Knit**; **Knowe**.
- Knight(e)**, **Knyght(e)**, **Knigt**, **Knyzt(e)**, **Kniht** (XIV), *n.* knight, II 86, III 14, V 63, VII 87, VIII a 22, IX 108, XIV c 58, &c.; **Knigte**, *dat. sg.* III 11, 25; **Cnistes** (for **Cniste**, *gen. pl.*), xv g 30 (note). [OE. *cnicht*, servant; on *cnistes*, see Appendix, p. 278.]
- Knyght-fees**, *n. pl.* estates of land (held by a knight under obligation of armed service), VIII b 81. [Prec. + OFr. *fé*.]
- Knit**, **Knyt**, **Knet** (XII), *pp.* tied, bound, closed together, XII b 30, 54, XIV c 29, XVII 451. [OE. *cnyttan*.]
- Knok(ke)**, **Knock(e)**, *n.* knock, blow, V 311, XV h 4, XVII 342. [From next.]
- Knokkep**, 3 *sg. pres.* knocks, II 379. [OE. *cnocian*.]
- Knokled**, *adj.* knobbed, rugged, V 98. [From ME. *knok(e)le*, knob, knuckle; cf. OFris. *knok(e)le*.]
- Knorned**, *adj.* † gnarled, V 98. [Unknown.]
- Knowe(n)**, *v.* to know, V 26, IX 75, &c.; **Cnowe**, VIII a 213; **Knaw(e)**, I, IV, VI, XVI, XVII; **Knewe(n)**, **Knew**, *pa. t.* II 408, IV a 43, IX 291, &c.; **Knowe(n)**, *pp.* VII 46, XI b 231, XIV c 91; **Knowun**, XI a 2, 7, &c.; **Yknowe**, XIII a 12, b 1: to know, understand, recognize, I 220, IV b 86, V 174, VI 50, VIII a 51, IX 75, 114 (*subj.*), XI a 40, &c.; **knowe** (*fro*, *fram*), distinguish (from), VIII a 50, XIV d 12; to experience, in *unrid* to **knowe**, grievous to endure, XVII 41; to confess, acknowledge (cf. **Biknowe**), XVI 315; *the soth for to knaw*, to tell the truth, XVII 246; to make known, declare, XVI 283. [OE. (*ge-*) *cnāwan*.] See **Icnowe**, **Ken**.
- Knowing**, *n.* knowledge, XI a 41, 66. [From prec.]
- Knoweleche**, **Knowlage**, *n.* knowledge, VII 73; for **knoweleche**, for fear of recognition, II 482. [† Stem of ME. *knowelechen*, OE. \*(*ge-*) *cnāwulmcan*; but the noun is recorded first.]
- Koyntly**. See **Queynt**.
- Kokeney**, *n.* (*lit.* cocks' egg), small egg, VIII a 280. [ME. *cokhen(e)*, *gen. pl.* (OE. *cocc*) + *ey* (OE. *æg*); see *N.E.D.*, s.v. *Cockney*.]
- Kole-plantas**, *n. pl.* cabbages (and similar vegetables), VIII a



# GLOSSARY

281. [OE. *cāl + plante*.] See Coyll.
- Kongons**, *n. pl.* changelings, misshapen creatures, XV h 5. [ME. *conjoin* (frequent); from ONFr. \**ca(u)ngiūn*, OFr. *changan* (very rare).]
- Konne**. See Can, v.
- Kort**, *n.* court, V 272; Court(e), I 232, II 376, &c. [OFr. *co(u)rt*.]
- Kowarde**, *adj.* coward(ly), V 63. [OFr. *coward*.] See Cowardyse.
- Kowe**, *n.* tail, (verse in) tail-rime; *couthē not haf coppelēd a k.*, could have made nothing of an intricately rimed verse, Introduction xv. [OFr. *coue*.] See Couwee.
- Kronykeles**, *n.* chronicles, I 251. [OFr. *cronicle*.]
- Kud**. See Kype.
- Kun**, *Kunne*(n). See Can, v.
- Kutten**, *v.* to cut, IX 140; Out, VII 146; Ketten, *pa. t. pl.* VIII a 182. [! OE. \**cyttan*; see *N.E.D.*]
- Labour(e)**, *n.* labour, VIII a 27, 247, b 44, &c. [OFr. *labour*.]
- Labor(e)**, *Labour(e)*, *v.* to labour, VIII a 118, b 8, 70, &c.; *laboure with londe*, till the soil, VIII a 267; *trans.* to labour upon, cultivate, VI 144. [OFr. *labo(u)rer*.]
- Laborer(e)**, *n.* labourer, VIII a 302, 313, b 77, XI b 296. [From prec.; cf. OFr. *laboreor*.]
- Lac**, *n.* blemish, flaw, II 460. [Cf. MLG. *lak*.] See Lakke.
- Lacche**, *v.* to catch; to get, VIII a 223; Laghton, *pa. t. pl.* in *laghton þe watur*, put to sea, VII 119. [OE. *laccan*, *lakte*.]
- Lace**, *n.* thong, V 158 (see note).
- Lacyd**, *pp.* ensnared, caught, IV a 79. [OFr. *lac(i)er*.]
- Ladde**, *n.* low-born fellow, XVI 243. [Obacure.]
- Laddo**. See Lede(n).
- Ladyschyp**, *n.* queenly state, VI 218. [OE. *hlāfdige + -scipe*.] See Lenedi.
- Laghton**. See Lacche.
- Lay**, *Legge* (VIII), *Lei*, *Ley(e)*, *Leyn*, *v.* to lay, set, put, I 217, IX 125, XV f 12, g 13, XVII 461; *lay on*, smite, XVI 143; *leid to wedde*, deposited in pledge, mortgaged, VIII b 77; to wager, VIII a 263, XVII 479; lay down, establish (law), XVI 329. *Layde*, *pa. t.* in *layde þeron*, applied to it, II 38; *Leyde*, VIII a 116; *Leyd*, *leid*, *pp.* in *ileid . . . lowe*, laid low, XIV c 71, 81; *Layd*, *laide*, I *introd.*, XVI 83, XVII 282, &c.; *Leyd*, *leid(e)*, I 109, XII b 33, 119, &c. [OE. *leccan*, *leg-*; *legde*.] See Ligge(n).
- Lay**, *Lay3*. See Ligge(n).
- Lay(e)**, *n.* lay, II 3, 13, 599, &c.; see note to II 12. [OFr. *lai*.]
- Layf**, *Laiif*, *n.* remainder, rest, X 132, 142. [OE. *laf*.]
- Layne**, *v.* to conceal; *layne yow (me)*, keep your (my) secret, V 56, 60. [ON. *leyna*.]
- Laitē**, *n.* lightning, VII 135, 153. [OE. *lēget(u)*.]
- Laited**, *pa. t.* searched for, VII 170. [ON. *leita*.]
- Lake**, *n.* lake, IX 182, XIII a 63, 64. [OE. *lacu*, stream infl. by unrelated OFr. *lac*, lake.]
- Lakke**, *v. intr.* with *dat.* to be lacking (to); *yow lakked a lyttel*, you were somewhat at fault, V 298; *trans.* to find fault with, VIII a 219. [From Lac, *n.*; cf. M.Du. *laken*.]
- Lammasse**, *n.* Lammas (August 1st), VIII a 284 (note). [OE. *hlāf-mæsse*, *hlāmmæsse*.]
- Lance**, *v.* to utter, V 56. [OFr. *lanc(i)er*, cast.] See Launchet.
- Land(e)**; **Lang-**. See Lond; Long-.
- Langage**, **Longage** (XIII), language, VII 59, IX 185, XI a 12, XIII b 2, 4, &c. [OFr. *langage*.]
- Langett**, *n.* thong (for tying hose, shoes, &c.), XVII 224. [OFr. *languette*.]
- Lante**. See Lene, v. 1
- Lanterne**, *n.* lantern, VIII a 170. [OFr. *lanterne*.]
- Lapidarye**, *n.* treatise on precious

# GLOSSARY

- stones, IX 75 (*see note*). [L. *lapidarium*.]
- Lappe**, *n.* loose end, or fold, of a garment, VIII *a* 288, XV *f* 11. [OE. *læppa*.]
- Large**, *adj.* generous, II 28; ample, VI 249; broad, large, V 157, IX 18, 155, 254 &c.; **Largelich**, *adv.* generously, II 451. [OFr. *large*.]
- Larges**, *n.* generosity, V 313. [OFr. *largesse*.]
- Lascheth**, 3 *sg. pres.* † belabours, XV *h* 17. [See *N.E.D.*, s.v. *Lash*.]
- Lasse**, **Les**(se), *adj. compar.* less, smaller, IV *a* 92, V 158, VI 131, IX 29, 48, XIII *b* 36, &c.; *quasi-sb.*, less, VI 241, &c.; † a smaller piece, XV *h* 17; *þe lasse in werke*, those who have worked less, VI 239, 240 (*see Longe, adv.*); *more and les(se), les and more*, *see More*; *adv.* less, V 300, VIII *a* 161, XI *a* 58, &c.; *newer þe lesse*, nevertheless, I 71.
- Leest**, **Leste**, *superl.* least, IV *b* 85; *both the most and the leest*, all, XVII 452. [OE. *læssa* (*læs*, *adv.*); *læst*.]
- Last**, **Lest**, *conj.* lest, XI *b* 242, XV *c* 31, XVII 55. [OE. *þe læst-þe*.]
- Last**(e), *superl. adj.* last, VI 187, 211, &c.; *quasi-sb.* in *at þe, atte, ate last(e)*, at last, in the end, II 93, VIII *b* 99 (MS. *latiste*), XII *a* 105, *b* 188, &c.; *at þe laste ende*, in the end, VIII *b* 101. [OE. *latost, lætest*.] *See Atte, Late, Furst.*
- Last**(e), *v.* to endure, last, extend, IV *a* 1, 25, IX 199, XVI 66, XVII 265, &c.; **Laast** (OE. *læst*), 3 *sg. pres.* II 335; **Last**, *pa. t. sg.* VII 56; *þe lastand*, endure, IV *a* 58; *ever to last*, everlasting, VII 2; **Lastynge**, *n.* endurance, perseverance, IV *b* 73, XI *b* 122. [OE. *læstan*.]
- Lat**(e). *See Lete.*
- Late**, *adv.* late, I 108, VI 178, XIV *b* 91, &c.; lately, recently, XVII 442; *erly and late*, at all times, VI 32; *nowe late*, just lately, XVI 162, 329. [OE. *late*.] *See Laste.*
- Lateyn**, **Latyn**(e), *n.* and *adj.* Latin, I 58, 96, XI *a* 18, &c. [OFr. *latin*.]
- Latte**. *See Lete.*
- Laped**, *pa. t.* invited, V 335. [OE. *lapan*.]
- Laude** (*of*), *v.* to praise (for), XVI 384. [L. *laudare*.]
- Laue**, *v. trans.* and *intr.* to pour, VI 247, XV *g* 16. [OE. *lafian*.]
- Launce**, *n.* lance, V 129. [OFr. *lance*.]
- Launchet**, -it, *pa. t.* darted, leapt, VII 135, 153; *launchet to*, reached, VII 163. [ONFr. *lancher*.] *See Lance.*
- Launde**, *n.* glade, grassy space, V 78, 86, 103, 265. [OFr. *la(u)nde*.]
- Laund-syde**, *n.* shore, VII 170. [OE. *land + side*.] *See Lond(e).*
- Law**. *See Lowe, adj.*
- Law**(e), *n.*<sup>1</sup> law, VIII *a* 159, 313, XI *a* 2, 22, XIV *b* 63, XVI 313, &c.; practice, customary behaviour, in *doþ at Crystym mennys l.*, behave as Christians, I 82. [OE. *lagu*, from ON.]
- Lawe**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> mound, knoll, V 103, 107. [OE. *hlāw*.]
- Lawse**, *v.* to loose(n), undo, V 308; **Lowsyd**, *pa. t.* delivered, XVII 209. [From ME. *laus*, *lous*, *adj.*; ON. *laus-s*.]
- Leche**, *n.* physician, VIII *a* 268. [OE. *læce*.]
- Lechecraft**, *n.* (art of) medicine, VIII *a* 251. [OE. *læce-craeft*.]
- Lechery**(e), *n.* sensuality, VIII *a* 137, XVII 53. [OFr. *lecherie*.]
- Ledderis**, *n. pl.* ladders, X 53. [OE. *hlædder*.]
- Lede**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> man, knight, V 27, VII 62, 75; *voc.* my good man, VI 182; **Leyde**, XVII 48, in *euery liffyng l.*, everybody; **Loude**, V 265, 321, 353. [OE. (allit.) *læod*, prince.]
- Lede**, **Leede**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> people, country,

# GLOSSARY

- in *purgh land and lede*, over the earth, I 227; in *leede*, on earth, XVI 70, 135. [OE. *lode*, pl., and *leod*, fem.]
- Lede(n)**, **Ledyn**, **Leyd** (XVII), *v.* to lead, bring, I 153, IX 214, XVI 391; guide, direct, XI a 55; to pass, lead (life), IV a 49, 63, VI 32, XV h 20, XVII 393. **Ledys**, *pres. pl.* IV b 55; **Ladde**, *pa. t.* II 584; **Ledde**, I 63, III 55; **Led**, *pp.* treated, XVII 202. [OE. *lædan*.]
- Ledeing**, *n.*; at his *l.*, under his control, XIV b 54. [From *prec.*]
- Leder**. See **Lyþer**.
- Leders**, *n. pl.* leaders, XIV b 94. [From **Lede(n)**.]
- Leede**. See **Lede**, *n.*<sup>2</sup>
- Leef**, **Lef**, *n.* leaf; item (with ref. to books), VIII a 251; *sette . . . at a lef*, made light of, VIII b 101; **Leues**, **Leves**, *pl.* II 244, VII 103, IX 154, XV b 14. [OE. *læaf*.]
- Leel**; **Leere**. See **Lele**; **Lere**.
- Lees**, **Lese**, *n.* falsehood; *with-out(en) lees*, &c., truly, XVI 127, XVII 390. [OE. *læas*.] See **Lesing**.
- Læst**; **Leet**; **Leene**. See **Lasse**; **Lete**; **Leue**, *v.*<sup>2</sup>
- Lef**, **Leof** (XIV), *adj.* dear, II 102, \*406; eager, XIV c 6; **Leue** (*wk. in voc.*), XV g 10; as *sb.*, dear one, VI 58. **Leuer**, *compar.* in *I me were to*, I would rather, II 177; **Leueste**, most pleasing (to God), VIII b 89. [OE. *læof*.]
- Lef**, see **Leef**; **Lef(f)e**, **Lefto**, see **Leue**, *v.*<sup>1</sup>
- Leggaunce**, *n.* (performance of) duty to his liege lord, XIV c 67. [OFr. *legiance*.]
- Legg**, *n.* leg, VI 99, V 160, VIII a 116. [ON. *legg-r.*]
- Legge**, **Lei**, **Ley(e)**, &c. See **Lay**, *v.*
- Leid(e)**, **Leyd(e)**. See **Lay**, *v.*; **Lede**, *n.*<sup>1</sup>; **Lede(n)**.
- Leif(f)**, **Leyf**, **Leyue**. See **Leue**, *v.*<sup>1</sup> and *v.*<sup>2</sup>
- Leymonde**. See **Leme**.
- Lele**, **Leel**, *adj.* lawful, VIII b 109; faithful, XVI 65; according to covenant, XVII 446. [OFr. *leil*.]
- Lelly**, *adv.* loyally, faithfully, v 56, 60, XVI 403. [From *prec.*]
- Leme**, *v.* to shine, flash, v 158; **Leymonde**, *pres. p.* VII 153. [OE. \**læoman*; ON. *ljōma*.]
- Lemes**. See **Lym(e)**.
- Lemman**, *n.* lover, xv a 20. [OE. \**læof-man*; early ME. *leofmon*.]
- Lende**, *v. trans.* and *intr.* to 'land'; *lende (on)*, to come, fall (upon), XVI 47, 54; *lendes (in)* brings (into), IV a 44; **Lended**, *pa. t.* remained, XIV b 45; **Lent**, *pp.* gone, taken away, XV c 11, 39; **Ylent (on)**, come (upon), XV c 24. [OE. *lendan*, go, arrive; the ME. sense development is obscured by confusion with **Lene**, *v.*<sup>1</sup>]
- Lene**, *adj.* lean, II 459. [OE. *hlæne*.]
- Lene**, *v.*<sup>1</sup> to grant, give, VIII a 17, (*absolutely*) VIII a 215; **Lante**, *pa. t.* v 182; **Lent**, *pp.* IV a 21. [OE. *lænan*.]
- Lene**, *v.*<sup>2</sup> to lean; *lened (with)*, inclined, v 187; *lened (to)*, leant (on), v 264. [OE. *hlæonnan*.]
- Leng**; **Lengar**, *-er*. See **Long(e)**, *adv.*
- Lenghe**, *n.* length, VI 56. [OE. *lengu*.]
- Lent**. See **Lende**, **Lene**, *v.*<sup>1</sup>
- Lenten**, *n.* spring, XV b 1; **Lenten-tyde**, **Lent**, I 242. [OE. *lencien*, *lencien-tid*.]
- Lenpe**, **Lennthe**, **Lenght**, *n.* length, v 248, XVII 123, 257. [OE. *lengþu*.]
- Leof**. See **Lef**.
- Lepe**, *v.* to leap, run; *lepe; hym*, gallops, v 86; **Lepte**, *pa. t.* leapt, XII a 160. [OE. *hlæpan*, *str.*]
- Lepys**, *n. pl.* leaps; *wyth sundyr lepys*, †dancing separately, I

# GLOSSARY

- 234 (but *see* Sonder, and note).  
[OE. *hlēp*.]  
Lere, *n.* face, VI 38. [OE. *hlōr*.]  
*See* Lyre.  
Lere, Leere, *v.* *trans.* to teach,  
instruct, VIII *a* 251, XVI 55,  
127, 330, 391; *intr.* to learn,  
IV *a* 17, XIV *b* 57, XVI 313, 321;  
Lerid, *pp.* educated (*i. e.* clergy),  
XI *a* 38. [OE. *lǣran*, teach.]  
Lerne(n), *v.* to learn, II 39, VII  
20, &c. Lurne(n), XIII *b* 29,  
34, 36. [OE. *lǣornian*.]  
Lernyng(e), *n.* learning, XI *b* 169;  
instruction, in *for l. of us*, for  
our instruction, VII 32; know-  
ledge, XVI 85. [OE. *lǣornung*,  
*intr.*]  
Les(e). *See* Lasse, Lees.  
Lese, *v.*<sup>1</sup> to lose, II 178, V 74,  
IX 130; Lose, XVII 363; Lore,  
*pp.* XII *a* 187; Lorne, XVI 198;  
Lost, VII 148, VIII *b* 99; Ylore,  
II 209, 545. [OE. (*be-, for-*)  
*lēosan*, *pp.* -*loren*; cf. *losian*,  
*be lost*.] *See* Forloin.  
Lese, *v.*<sup>2</sup> to glean, VIII *a* 68. [OE.  
*lesan*.]  
Lesing, *n.* a lie, II 465; Lesyngis,  
*pl.* XI *b* 39; *lesyngis on*, lies  
against, XI *b* 98. [OE. *lāsing*.]  
*See* Lees.  
Lesse. *See* Lasse.  
Lesso(u)n, *n.* lesson, VIII *a* 272,  
XIII *b* 19. [OFr. *leço(u)n*.]  
Lest(e). *See* Lasse; Last, *conj.*  
Lete, Lette (IV *a* 88), *v.* to let,  
&c.; Lat(e), IV *b* 41, X 30;  
Lat(e), Latte, *imper. sg.* VIII *a*  
40, 262, XVI 194, &c.; Let(e),  
II 114, V 140, &c.; Lete3, *pl.*  
V 319. Leet, *pa. t. sg.* IX 223,  
232; Let(e), II 386, III 34,  
&c.; Lette, V 189; Lete, *pl.*  
II 74; Ylete, *pp.* III 32, \*VIII *b*  
3. (i) To let, allow, II 74,  
IV *b* 41, &c.; bequeathe, III 32,  
34; cause to (as *leet make*,  
caused men to make, had it  
made), IX 223, 232, XII *b* 192;  
*let untrusse*, unloaded, XII *b* 52;  
forming periphrastic *imper.*,  
XIV *b* 90; *lete ben, latte be*,  
cease, stop, II 114, XVI 234;  
*let be*, left unheeded, XII *b* 94.  
(ii) To give up, abandon, IV *a*  
88, VIII *a* 266, XIV *c* 6; lose,  
II 177; cease, II 279; neglect  
(to), XIV *c* 70. (iii) *Lette as*,  
behaved as if, V 189; *lete lȳte*  
*of*, make (made) light of, give  
little thought to, VIII *a* 161,  
XIV *c* 63; *lytel ylete by*, held  
in small esteem, \*VIII *b* 3. [OE.  
*lǣtan*, *lǣtan*; forms with *a*  
perhaps due partly to ON. *lǣta*,  
and partly to early shortening  
(? orig. in *imper. sg.*).]  
Lette, *n.* hindrance, obstacle, XII *a*  
72; delay, XII *a* 154. [From  
next.] *See* Ylet.  
Lette(n), Let (*of, fro*), *v.* to  
hinder, prevent, keep (from),  
V 74, 235, XI *a* 41, *b* 3, 155, 179,  
XVII 341 (*subj.*), 470; Let, *pp.*  
XII *b* 10; Lettid, XI *b* 181;  
*lette to sue (studie)*, prevent  
from following (studying), XI *a*  
41, *b* 112. [OE. *lettan*.] *Dis-*  
*tinguish* Lete.  
Lettyng(e), -ing (*to*), *n.* hindering  
(from), hindrance, XI *a* 26, *b* 307;  
delay, interruption, VIII *a* 7, XI *b*  
80. [OE. *letting*.]  
Lettres, *n. pl.* letters, III *introd.*;  
Letturs, writings, VII 26, 59.  
[OFr. *lettre*.]  
Lepe3, 3 *sg. pres.* softens, is  
assuaged, VI 17. [OE. (*ge-*)  
*līpian*, -*leopian*, distinct from  
*līpian*.]  
Leude. *See* Lede, *n.*<sup>1</sup>  
Leue, *n.* permission, VIII *a* 68;  
leave, in *tok his leue*, XII *a* 31.  
[OE. *lēaf*, fem.]  
Leue(n), *v.*<sup>1</sup> to leave (alone, be-  
hind, off), abandon, neglect,  
cease (to), V 86, XI *b* 10, 50,  
301, XIII *a* 56, XVI 284, &c.;  
Lef(f)e, IV *b* 66, XVI 376;  
Leif(f), X 156, 198; Leueþ,  
*imper. pl. stop*, I 265. Left(e),  
*pa. t.* and *pp.* I 71, IV *b* 74, VII  
26, XI *b* 261, XII *b* 179, XVI 314,  
&c.; Leuid, Leuyt, Levit,  
VII 74, 126, X 159, XIV *b* 78;

# GLOSSARY

- Yleft**, *pp.* XIII b 8, 41. *For to leue for to*, that you may cease to, I 21; *to lefe*, to be left undone, avoided, IV b 66. [OE. *lēfan*.] See **Bloue**.
- Leue(n)**, **Leeue**, *v.* to grant, in *Crist leue*, Christ grant, XIV c 87, 95. [OE. *lēfan*.] See **Leue**, *n.*
- Leue(n)**, *v.* to believe, V 60, 353, VI 65, 109, VIII a 84; **Leyf**, **Leyue**, *imper.*, VIII b 3, 24. [OE. (*ge-*)*lēfan*.] See **Beleue**, **Ylefde**.
- Leue**, **Lou-**, &c. See **Leef**, **Lef**, **Liue(n)**.
- Leued**, *adj.* leafy, I 62. [From **Leef**.]
- Leuedi**, *n.* lady, mistress, II 53, 89, 347, 455, XV c 23, &c.; **Ladi**, XII a 50, 144, &c.; **Lady**, *gen. sg.* in *oure Lady day*, I 242. [OE. *hlāfdege*.]
- Levyn**, *n.* lightning, XVII 346. [! OE. \**lifn* - < \**lau(h)mni* - (cf. Goth. *lauhmuni*).]
- Leyyr**, *n.* liver; *l.* and *long*, allit. elaboration of *hert*, XVII 399. [OE. *lifer*.]
- Lew**. See **Lo**.
- Lewed(e)**, **Lewid**, *adj.* lay, ignorant, uneducated, III *introd.*, VIII b 4, XI a 3, XII b 144; *lerid* and *lewid*, XI a 38. [OE. *lāwede*.]
- Lewtē**, *n.* loyalty, fidelity, V 298, 313. [OFr. *le(a)uté*.] See **Lele**.
- Lhord**, &c. See **Louerd**.
- Lyand**. See **Ligge(n)**.
- Libben**, *v.* to live, XV a 10; **Libbe**, I *sg. pres.* XV c 5; **Libbeth**, **Lybbeth**, *pres. pl.* VIII a 20, 71. [OE. *libban*, *libbe*, *libbap*.] See **Liue(n)**.
- Lich(e)**; **Lyokend**. See **Lyk**; **Likne**.
- Lie**, *v.* to tell lies, VIII a 227. [OE. *lī(o)gan*.]
- Lye**. See **Ligge(n)**.
- Lif**, **Lyfe** (obl. stem **Lif-**, and **Lyu-** &c.), *n.* life, manner of life, lifetime, I 199, V 44, VI 32, VIII a 170, XI a 57, b 40, XVII 398, &c.; **Liffe**, XVI 66; **Liif**, II 124, &c.; living being, IV a 43, XII a 117, 121; *lef liif*, beloved (one), II 102, \*406. **Lyfes**, *gen. sg.* IX 328; **Lyue3**, VI 117 (see **Longe**, *adv.*), 218; **Liue**, **Lyue**, *dat. sg.* II 583 (being still alive), III 16, XII a 168; *bi my lyue*, during my life, VIII a 95; *yn þys lyue*, in this world, I 170; *upon lyue*, alive (*lede upon l.* = man), V 27. [OE. *lif*.] See **Liue(n)**.
- Lyf-holynesse**, *n.* holiness of life, VIII b 84. [OE. *lif + hālignes*.]
- Lyflich**, *adj.* active, XIV c 93. [OE. *lif-lic*.]
- Lifode**, **Lyfode**, *n.* (means of) living, sustenance, food, VIII a 17, 230, 267, 284, b 43, 47, XII b 25. [OE. *lif-lād*.]
- Lift**, **Lyfte**, **Lest**, *adj.* left (hand, &c.), V 78, IX 69, XIII b 39, &c. [OE. *lyft*.]
- Lift**, *n.* sky, X 100. [OE. *lyft*.] See **Loft(e)**.
- Lyfte**, *v.* to raise, IV a 15, V 241; **Lyft(e)**, *pp.* IV a 9, VI 207 (see **Lyper**). [ON. *lyfta*.]
- Lyf-tyme**, *n.* lifetime, VIII a 27. [OE. *lif + tīma*.]
- Ligge(n)**, **Lygge**, **Lig**, *v.* to lie (down, idle, &c.), be (lodged, situated, &c.), II 74, VIII b 16, XIII a 53 (*subj.*), XVII 409; **Lye**, VII 172, IX 19; **List** (OE. *list*), 2 *sg. pres.* XV f 2; **Lyep**, 3 *sg.* is to the point, is admissible, VIII b 93; **Liggeth**, lies idle, VIII a 156; **Ligia**, XVII 84; **Lys**, exists, VI 242; **Lip** (OE. *lip*), II 243, XII a 95; **Liggep**, *pl.* II 441, VIII a 15; **Lyso**, IV a 61. **Lay**, *pa. t. sg.* I 181, II 133, IX 286, &c.; *pl.* II 394, 399, X 1 (were encamped), &c.; **Lay3**, *subj.* XI a 52. **Lyand**, *pres. p.* X 55; **Ligand**, XIV b 71; **Liggeand**, II 388 (see note); **Lyggyng**, I 139. **Liggen oute**, be abroad, out of doors, VIII b 16. [OE. *ligan*; the *g(g)* forms in I, XIV b, XVII prob. represent dial. *lig* from ON. *ligga*.]

# GLOSSARY

**Lightnes**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> splendour, XVII 16.

[OE. *līht-nēs*.]

**Lightnes**, **Līhtnesse**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> lightness; gladness, VII 15; ease, unburdensomeness, XI *b* 151.

[OE. *līht<sup>2</sup> + -nes*.]

**Lyȝt**, **Light**, **Lyht**, *n.* light, VII 135, XI *b* 291, XV *b* 25, &c. [OE. *lī(o)ht*.]

**Līȝt**, *v.*<sup>1</sup> to shine, II 371. [OE. *līhtan*.<sup>1</sup>]

**Lyȝt**, **Līȝte**, **Light**, *v.*<sup>2</sup> *trans.* to lighten, relieve, IV *a* 70; *intr.* to alight, V 108; come down, V 152; **Lyht** (*on*), *pp.* lit (*on*), settled (*on*), XV *c* 12. [OE. *līhtan*.<sup>2</sup>]

**Lyȝte**, **Līȝt**, **Lyhte**, *adj.*<sup>1</sup> light, bright, II 369, VI 140, XV *b* 14. [OE. *lī(o)ht*, *lī(o)ht*, *adj.*<sup>1</sup>]

**Līȝte**, **Lyȝht**, **Līht**, *adj.*<sup>2</sup> light, slight, easy, I *introd.*, IV *a* 49; *lete līȝte* (*līht*) *of*, make (made) light of, give little thought to, VIII *a* 161, XIV *c* 63; **Lyȝttere**, *compar.* easier, XI *b* 238. [OE. *lī(o)ht*, *lī(o)ht*, *adj.*<sup>2</sup>]

**Līȝtly**, **Lightly**, **Lyȝhtly**, *adv.* lightly, easily, IV *b* 5, V 241, IX 14, 118. [OE. *līht-lice*.]

**Lyȝtning**, *n.* lightning, I 166. [From ME. *līȝtne(n)*, extended from **Līȝt**, *v.*<sup>1</sup>]

**Līf**. See **Līf**.

**Līk**, *v.* to sup, taste; *līk on*, have a taste of, XVII 378; *cf.* **Drynk**. [OE. *līccian*.]

**Lyk(e)**, **Like**, **Līch(e)**, *adj.* and *adv.* usually foll. by (*un*)*to*, like, IV *a* 16, VI 72, 141, IX 35, 98, XII *a* 57, XVII 506. [OE. (*ge-*)*līc*; (*ge-*)*lice*, *adv.*] See **Ilyche**.

**Like**, **Lyke**, *v.* to please, II 251, 449, 529, VI 206, VIII *b* 42, XI *b* 142; *impers.* with *dat.* (as *vs liketh*, it pleases us, we please), V 66, 173, VIII *a* 150, 286, IX 177, XII *a* 115, XVI 321 (or *pers.* *pl.* 'like', as below), &c.; *ȝif ȝou lyke*, if it pleases you, IX 74 (*cf.* *ȝif it lyke ȝou*, 284); *for ioue pat likes ille*, that are wretched bec. of love (or bec. of

love that is painful), XV *b* 24; *quasi-pers.* (with *it*) V 267, IX 284; *pers.* to like, XVII 361. [OE. *līccian*.]

**Likeing**, **Līkyng**, **Lykyng(e)**, *n.* delight, pleasure, IV *a* 30, VII 20, 75, XI *b* 158, XVII 75, &c.; *for līkyng to here*, to be heard with delight, to give pleasure in the hearing, VII 71; *of gode likeing*, well-pleasing, II 599. [OE. *līcung*.]

**Līkne**, **Lykne**, **Lyken**, *v.* to make like, XIII *b* 23; to compare, IV *a* 6, VI 140, XIV *c* 74; **Lyokend**, *pp.* (to be) compared, IV *a* 33. [From **Lyk**, *adj.*]

**Līknes(se)**, *n.* likeness, appearance, XII *a* 9, 133, 172, XVII 28. [OE. *līc-nēs*.]

**Līlie**, *n.* lily, XV *b* 17; **Līlie-flour**, lily, XV *c* 19. [OE. *līlie*; see **Flour**.]

**Lym(e)**, *n.* limb, member, VI 102, XIV *c* 93; **Lemes**, *pl.* IX 80; **Limes**, **Lymes**, II 171, VIII *a* 118, *b* 8; **Lymmeȝ**, VI 104. [OE. *lim*; *pl.* *leomu*, *limu*.]

**Lymbo**, **Lymbus**, *n.* limbo; the 'border' (of hell) where the souls of the just who died before Christ awaited His coming, XVI 102, 198. [L. *limbus* (*patrum*); *in limbo*.]

**Lymp(e)**, *v.* † to limp; *lympit of the sothe*, † stumbled from, fell short of, the truth, VII 36. [Cf. OE. *lemp-healt*, limping; MHG. *limphin*, to limp. Not recorded otherwise in E. until much later.]

**Lynage**, *n.* kindred, VIII *b* 26; tribe, IX 163. [OFr. *lī(g)nage*.]

**Lynde**, *n.* lime-tree; (allit.) tree, V 108. [OE. *līnd(e)*.]

**Lyne**, *n.* sounding-line, XVII 461. [OE. *līne*; OFr. *līgne*.]

**Lynt**, *n.* lint, refuse of flax used as an inflammable stuff, X 20. [ME. *līn(e)*, obscurely rel. to OE. *līn* (OFr. *līn*), flax.]

**Lyoun**, *n.* lion, II 538, IX 247, 249. [OFr. *līoun*.]

**Lippe**, **Lyppe**, *n.* lip, V 238,

# GLOSSARY

- VIII *a* 259, XI *b* 84, XII *a* 181, &c. [OE. *lippa*.]
- Lyre**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> face, XVI 119. [ON. *hlýr*.] See *Lere*.
- Lyre**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> flesh, calves, V 160. [OE. *lira*.]
- Lys(e)**, *List*. See *Ligge(n)*.
- List(e)**, **Lyst(e)**, *v. impers.* to desire, wish (as *me list*, I desire), IV *a* 77, V 65, 74, XVI 68, 277; prob. *pers.* at IX 302, XVI 313; *þat hym list after*, what he has a desire for, VII 20; *List*, *pa. t.* VII 166. [OE. *lystan*.]
- Lyste**, *n.* joy, VI 107. [Alteration of *Lust*, under infl. of *prec.*; or ON. *lyst*.]
- Lystens**, *imper. pl.* listen, XIV *b* 57. [OE. \**hlysnan* (ONth. *lysna*) infl. by *hlystan*.]
- Lite**, *adv.* little; *bot gode lite*, of but little worth, II 258. [OE. *lyt*.]
- Lyte**, *n.* waiting; *on lyte*, in delay, V 235. [From ME. *liten*, to expect, await, tarry; ON. *hlíta*, to trust.]
- Litel**, -ill, **Lytil**, **Littel**, **Lyttel**, **Lutel** (XV *c*), &c., *adj.* little, small, slight, unimportant, IV *b* 45, VI 214 (or *adv.* 'little time there'), 244, IX 14, 21, 141, XV *a* 6, *c* 3, &c.; *quasi-sb.* in a *lityl(l)*, &c., a little, V 298, IX 62; *þa* small piece, XV *b* 17; somewhat (*adv.*), V 199, IX 103, 110; a little way (*adv.*), V 78, 103, XVII 507; *for litill*, for little cause, XVII 187; *litel or nouȝt*, little or nothing, XI *b* 188 (*adv.*), 258; *wyȝh lyttel*, with little result (or ?soon), VI 215; **Litel**, **Litle**, **Lyttill**, *adv.* little, IV *b* 24, VII 36, VIII *b* 3, XI *b* 253, &c. [OE. *lytel*, *adj.*] See *Lite*.
- Lip**, **Lyth**, *n.* limb, VI 38, XIV *c* 93. [OE. *líp*.]
- Lip**, **Lith**. See *Ligge(n)*.
- Lyper**, **Leder**, *adj.* bad; sluggish, XVII 289; as *so.*, in *to lyper is lyfte*, *þis* is turned towards evil, VI 207. [OE. *lǽpre*.]
- Līue(n)**, **Lyue(n)**, *v.* to live, II 168, VI 117, VIII *a* 70, &c.; **Lif(fe)**, **Lyf(e)**, IV *a* 17, 73, XVI 68, 70, XVII 4, 58, 145, &c.; **Leue**, XVI 243, 322, 353, &c.; **Lyfed**, 2 *sg. pa. t.* VI 123; *pres. p.* living, (while) alive, IV *b* 31, XII *a* 171, XVI 55, XVII 47, 48, 73, &c.; *lyue men*, let men live, XI *a* 46; *liuen bi*, &c., live on, II 257, VIII *b* 26 (but *lyue on*, VIII *b* 46, &c.); *lyue (leue) with*, live by, VIII *b* 44, XVI 160. [OE. *lifian*, *leofian*.] See *Libben*, **Lif**.
- Lo**, **Loo**, *interj.* lo! II 381, 556, XVII 239; look, see, II 505, 507; **Lew**, XVII 507; *we loo*, alas! V 140 (see *We*, *interj.*). [OE. *lā*; ME. vowel and usage show infl. of *Loken*.]
- Lode**, *n.* load, XII *b* 26. [OE. *lād*.]
- Lodesman**, *n.* leader, I 39. [Cf. OE. *lād-mann*.]
- Lofers**, *n. pl.* lovers, IV *a* 50. [From *Louye*.]
- Lofte**, *n.* air, in *on lofte*, aloft, V 193. [ON. *loft*, *ð loft*.] See *Alofte*, **Lyft**.
- Logede**, *pa. t.* dwelt, VII 62. [OFr. *logier*.]
- Loȝe**, **Loh**. See *Louȝ*.
- Loke**, *pp.* locked, I 101. [OE. *lūcan*, *pp. locen*.] See *Vnlockynne*.
- Loke(n)**, **Look**, *v.* to look, I 124, XVII 129, &c.; **Lokyte**, *pa. t.* VII 36; **Yloked**, *pp.* III 58. *Intr.* (i) to look, gaze, I 124, II 112, III 34, V 78, &c.; have an expression, VIII *a* 315; appear, VIII *a* 170; *loken (app)on*, look at, VIII *a* 179, XI *b* 175; read, VII 75; *on lusti to loke*, pleasant to read, VII 15; *loke agaynste*, gaze (straight) at, XVI 92; *loke to*, look at, V 265; (ii) to make investigations, VII 36; (iii) to see to it, take care; foll. by *þat* and *subj.*, II 165, XVI 152, 211; without conj., IV *a* 19, 46, VIII *a* 39, XIV *d* 7, XVII 129. *Trans.* to watch over, in

# GLOSSARY

- God þe mot loke*, may God have you in his keeping, v 171; adjudicate, III 58; ordain, decree, VIII a 313. *Loke what*, consider what (i.e. whatever, *interrog.*), VI 103 (cf. OE. *lōc(a) hwæt*, indef.). [OE. *lōcian*.]
- Lokýng**, *n.* examination, VII 26. [From prec.]
- Lokke3**, *n. pl.* locks (of hair), v 160. [OE. *locc*.]
- Lollare, ere**, *n.* idler, vagabond, VIII b 2, 4; Lollarene, *gen. pl.* VIII b 31. [From ME. *lollen*, to lounge; see Piers Pl. C x 215.]
- Lomb(e)**, *Lamb*, *n.* lamb, IX 142; used of Our Lord, VI 47, 53. [OE. *lōmb*, *lāmb*.]
- Lome**, *n.* tool, weapon, v 241, VIII b 47. [OE. *lōma*.]
- Lond(e)**, *Land(e)*, *n.* land, country, soil, I 25, II 208, 355, VII 163, VIII a 267, IX 179, XIV b 63, &c.; *in land(e)*, on earth, XVI 68, 314, XVII 145; *purgh land and lede*, I 227 (see *Lede*, *n.*<sup>2</sup>). [OE. *lōnd*, *lānd*.]
- Long**, *n.* lung (see *Levy*), XVII 399. [OE. *lungen*.]
- Longage**. See *Langage*.
- Long(e)**, *adj.* long, II 506, IX 152, 155, &c.; *longe clothes*, clerical garb, VIII b 42; tall, VIII b 24; lasting long, I 203, VIII a 7; *þy long home*, your eternal home (after death), I 207 (OE. *lang hām*); *for long þore*, a long while, VI 226; *þe long day, the l. night ouer*, al þe woke l., all day (&c.) long, VI 237, VII 166, XIII a 28 (cf. next); tedious, IX 267. [OE. *lāng*, *lōng*.]
- Long(e)**, *Lang*, *adv.* a long while, II 335, v 232, VIII a 19, b 84, XV c 19, XVII 244, &c.; after an *advb. gen.*, in *hys lynes3 longe, þise daye3 longe*, all his life (this day) long, VI 117, 173 (cf. prec.); *Long*, *compar.* longer, II 84; **Lenger(e)**, *Lengar*, I 79, II 330, v 235, XI b 130, XII b 146, XVI 68, 193; *euer þe lenger þe lasse þe more*, the further (you pursue the argument) the less (work) the more (pay), VI 240; **Longer**, XVII 531. [OE. *lōnge*, *lānge*; compar. *lōng* (adv.), *lengra* (adj.).]
- Long(e)**, *v.*<sup>1</sup> to long, VII 113; *Langand*, *pres. p.* in *langand es*, longs, IV a 91. [OE. *lōngian*, *lāngian*.]
- Long(e)**, *v.*<sup>2</sup>; *longe to (into)*, to belong (to), befit, v 313, XIV c 25, 53; *Longande*, *pres. p.* that belongs, VI 102. [From ME. (*3*)*long*, adj.; OE. *ge-lāng (on)*, dependent (on).] See *Bylongeth*.
- Longinge, -yng**, *n.* longing, VII 119, XV c 24; *Langyng (ti)*, longing (for), IV a 93. [OE. *lōngung*, *lāngung*.] See *Louelonginge*.
- Longith**, 3 *sg. pres.* lengthens, ? beats out long, xv h 17. [From *Long*, *adj.*]
- Lording, -yng**, *n.* man of high rank, II 26, 520; sir (as a polite address, esp. of minstrel to his audience), II 23, 204. [OE. *hlāfording*.] See *Louerd*.
- Lordischipes, -is**, *n. pl.* lordships, estates, XI b 97, 141. [OE. *hlāford-scipe*.]
- Lore**, *n.* (method of) teaching, XI a 39, XIII b 28. [OE. *lār*.]
- Lore**, *Lorne*, *pp.* of *Lese*, *v.*<sup>1</sup>
- Lorel(l)is**, *n. pl.* good-for-nothings, wastrels, XI b 140, 161, 173. [Prob. from prec.] See *Loseles*.
- Los**, *n.* fame, XIV c 111. [OFr. *los*.]
- Loseles**, *n. pl.* wastrels, VIII a 116. [Prob. from ME. *lose(n)*, variant of *lore(n)* pp. of *Lese*, *v.*<sup>1</sup>] See *Lorel(l)is*.
- Losengerye**, *n.* lying flattery (of a parasite), VIII a 137. [OFr. *losengerie*.]
- Lossom, Lossum**. See *Louesum*.
- Lost**, *n.* loss, VIII b 101. [Rel. to *Lese*, *v.*<sup>1</sup>; cf. OE., ME. *los*.]
- Lote**, *n.* noise, v 143. [ON. *lā* (pl.), behaviour, noise; cf. *Bere n.*<sup>1</sup>]



# GLOSSARY

- Lop, Lothe**, *adj.* hateful, I 9; loath, unwilling, XIV c 6. [OE. *lāp*, *adj.*]
- Lope**, *n.* grief, VI 17. [OE. *lāp*, *n.*]
- Lopli, Loplich**, *adj.* horrible, II 78; unpleasing, II 461. [OE. *lāp-lic*.]
- Loud(e)**, *adj.* loud, II 511, XII a 138; *loud or still*, under all circumstances, XIV b 54. [OE. *hlūd*.]
- Loue**, *n.* love, II \*12, 55, &c.; Louue, XV a 21; Luf(e), I *introd.*, IV a 1, 5, XVII 82; with *object. gen.* (as *mi lordes loue*, love for my master), II 518 (note), VIII a 19, 214; *þi loue*, love of thee, VIII a 27; *for loue or ay*, in any event, II 571. [OE. *lufu*.] See Louye.
- Louely**, *adj.* gracious, beautiful, pleasant, VIII a 10, 272, XVI 119. [OE. *luf(e)lic*.] See Luffyly.
- Lou(u)e-longinge**, *n.* unsatisfied love, XV a 9, c 5. [OE. *lufu + lōngung*.] See Longinge.
- Louerd**, *n.* lord, (the) Lord, master, husband, XV g 1, 11, &c.; Lhord, III *introd.*, 11, 29, 46; Lord(e), II 120, 518, VIII a 19, 272, XII a 157, &c.; Lordene, *gen. pl.* VIII b 77. [OE. *hlāford*.]
- Loues**, *n. pl.* loaves, VIII a 278. [OE. *hlāf*.] See Pese-lof.
- Louesum**, -som, *adj.* beautiful, lovely, II 111, 460; Lossom, -sum, XV b 17, c 15; Lufsum, as *sb.*, lovely one, VI 38. [OE. *lufsum*.]
- Lou3**, *pa. t. sg.* laughed, II 314; Lo3e, v 321; Loh (*on*), smiled (upon), XV c 15. [OE. *hlāhhan*, *pa. t. hlōh*.]
- Louy(e)**, Louie, *v.* to love, like, v 27, 31, VIII a 202; Loue(n), II 34, IX 100, 101, XII a 5, &c.; Luf(e), Luffe, IV a 4, b 7, v 300, XVI 403, XVII 47, &c.; Yloued, *pp.* II 123. [OE. *lufian*.]
- Louyly**, *adj.* !lawful, VI 205 (note). [OE. *lah-lic*.] See Lawe, *n.*<sup>1</sup>
- Louyng, Lufyng**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> love; beloved (one), IV a 5 (note), 56. [From Louye.] *Distinguish* next.
- Louyng**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> praise, IV a 24, XVI 405. [OE. *lofung*.] *Distinguish* prec.
- Loupe**, *n.* any jewel of imperfect brilliance (*esp.* sapphire, with which it is often joined), IX 116. [Ofr. *loupe*.]
- Lowable**, *adj.* praiseworthy, VIII b 109. [Ofr. *louable*.]
- Low(e)**, Law, *adj.* low, VII 102, X 137, XVII 21; near the bottom, VI 187; lowly, VIII a 223, &c.; *heize and loue*, all men, XIV c 100; *adv.* low, v 168, XII b 11, &c.; *thus low*, here below, in so lowly a place, XVII 173. [ON. *lág-r*.]
- Low(e)**, *n.* flame, VII 136, 152, 159. [ON. *logi*.]
- Lowe**, *v.* to praise; *to lowe*, praiseworthy, II 12 (MS. Harl.); *cf. Sir Gaw.* 1399, and (for idiom) Wale. [Ofr. *louer*.] See Allowe.
- Lowsyd**. See Lawse.
- Lowte**, *v.* to bow; *trans.* (but see *pat. rel.*) bow before, reverence, XV i 4; Lutte, *pa. t. sg.* bowed, v 187; *refl.* v 168. [OE. *lutan*, *str.*]
- Lud**, *n.*, in *on hyre lud*, !in her own language, XV c 4. [!OE. *lōden, lȳden*, language.]
- Lufe**, *n.* palm of the hand, XVII 462. [ON. *lōfi*.]
- Luf(f)-**. See Loue-; Lony(e); Louyng, *n.*<sup>1</sup>
- Luffyly**, *adv.* courteously, v 321; in seemly manner, v 108. [From Louely.]
- Lunatyk**, *adj.* suffering from recurrent fits of insanity (thought to depend on the changes of the moon), IX 93. [L. *lunaticus*.]
- Lurdans**, *n. pl.* rascals, XVI 102. [Ofr. *lourdein*, lazy fellow.]
- Lurnede, Lurnep**. See Leerne.

# GLOSSARY

**Lust**, *n.* pleasure, desire, IV *a* 16, 59; lust, IV *b* 17, IX 277. [OE. *lust*.] See *Lyste*.

**Lustful**, *adj.* pleasure-loving, XI *b* 256. [OE. *lust-ful*.]

**Lusti**, *adj.* pleasant, VII 15. [From *Lust*.]

**Lutel**; **Lutte**. See *Litel*; *Lowte*.

**Ma**. See *Make(n)*, *Fai*.

**Maad(e)**, **Mad(e)**, &c. See *Make(n)*.

**Madde**, *adj.* mad, XVI 247. [OE. (*ge*-)*mædd*, pp.]

**Madde**, *v.* to act madly, V 346. [From prec.]

**Magesté**, *n.* majesty, VII 1. [OFr. *majesté*.]

**Magré**. See *Maugré*, *prep*.

**Maȝtyly**, *adv.* powerfully, forcibly, V 194, 222. [OE. *mæhtig-lice*.] See *Myȝt(e)*.

**Mal**, *v.* I & 3 *pres.* (*ind.* and *subj.*), am able to, can, may, may well, have reason to, &c., IV *a* 31, XII *a* 66, XIV *c* 1, &c.; *May(e)*, IV *a* 6, 36, &c.; *May(e)*, 2 *sg.* IV *a* 20, XVI 173, &c.; *Meist* (= *meiht*; see Appendix, p. 278), XV *g* 6; *Miȝt*, *Myȝt(e)*, II 452, VIII *a* 217, *b* 35. *Mal*, *May*, *pl.* IV *a* 61, IX 213, &c.; *Moun*, VI 176; *Mowe*, I 115, VIII *a* 40, IX 164, &c. *Mioht*, *Myoht*, *pa. t.* (*ind.* and *subj.*), was able to, could, might, &c., X 17, 139, &c., *Miȝt(e)*, *Myȝt(e)*, I 16, II 221, VIII *a* 133, XI *a* 44, *b* 283, &c.; *Myȝtte*, XI *b* 30, 103; *Myght(e)*, I 184, IX 276, &c.; *Mihte*, *Myhte*, XII *a* 16, 75, XIV *c* 36, &c.; *Moȝt(e)*, VI 67, 115, 119, *Moghte*, IV *b* 31. [OE. *mæg* (*meaht*, *mihht*, 2 *sg.*); late *pl.* *mugon*, *subj.* *muge*; *pa. t.* *mihhte* (late *mukhte*).]

**Mal**, **May**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> maiden, VI 75, XV *a* 6, 16, *c* 28, Introduction xii. [ON. *má-r*, *gen.* *meyj-ar*; cf. OE. *mæg*, woman (in verse).]

**May**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> May, II 57, IV *a* 57; **May dew**, dew gathered in May (thought to have special pro-

perties), IX 63. [OFr. *mai*.] See *Deaw*.

**Maid(e)**. See *Make(n)*.

**Mayde(n)**, **Maiden**, *n.* maiden, virgin, I 41, II 64, VIII *a* 323, XV *i* 7, &c. [OE. *mægden*.]

**Mayll**, **Male**, *adj.* male, IX 58, XVII 152. [OFr. *ma(s)le*.]

**Mayn**, *n.* might, XVII 310. [OE. *mægen*.]

**Mais**; **Maister**. See *Make(n)*; *Mister*.

**Maysterful**, *adj.* arrogant, VI 41. [From next.]

**Maistre** (-*er*, -*ur*), **Mayster**, *n.* lord, Lord, II 413, VI 102, VII 1, XIII *a* 2; master, V 22, VIII *a* 41, 236, 314, XV *h* 17; *mayster of gramere*, a title, XIII *b* 27 (see note). [OFr. *maistre*; OE. *mægester*.]

**Maistris**, **Maystris**, *n.* mastery, VIII *a* 323; for the *maystris* (OFr. *pour la maistris*), to the utmost possible degree, IX 233; *pl.* (partly due to OFr. *maistrise*, *sg.*) in *make maistris*, do a wonderful, mighty (*here* masterful, high handed) deed, XVI 116, 202, 216, 217. [OFr. *maistris*.]

**Make**, *n.* mate, XV *b* 20, *c* 18, 31, XVII 139. [OE. (*ge*)*maca*.]

**Make(n)**, **Mak**, *v.* to make, do; (with or without *to*) cause, compel; VIII *a* 205, 280, IX 120, 206, XIV *b* 87, &c.; *Ma*, X 14, 167; *Mase*, 3 *sg.* IV *a* 15; *Matz*, VI 250; *Mais*, *pl.* X 72; *Man*, VI 152; *Mase*, XIV *b* 34, XVI 116; *Makes*, *Maketh*, *imper. pl.* VIII *a* 14, XVI 383. **Mad**, **Made(n)**, *pa. t.* I 39, II 20, VI 179, &c.; **Maid(e)**, X 5, XVII 3 (2 *sg.*), 28, &c.; **Maked**, II 329, 498, &c. **Maad(e)**, *pp.* XI *b* 101, 196, &c.; **Mad**, VI 126, VIII *b* 74, &c.; **Maid(e)**, X 3, XVII 73, &c.; **Ymaked**, III *introd.*; **Ymaked**, VIII *a* 180. **Mad sumoun**, caused (men) to summon (them), VI 179; **makes soie**, rejoice, XVI 383; **it maketh**, brings it about (that), VIII *a* 199;

# GLOSSARY

- ich made of*, I summed up (as Mn. E. idiom), VIII *b* 5; *see also* Dere, Qwart, Ylet, &c. [OE. *macian*; with the reduced forms cf. Taken.]
- Makelez**, *adj.* matchless, VI 75. [OE. *ge-maca* + *-l̥as*.]
- Maker**, *n.* maker, causer, I 204; Creator, VII 1, XVI 2, XVII 1. [From Maken.]
- Makyng**(ē), *n.* building, work, I 183; making, XI *b* 230. [OE. *macung*.]
- Malais**, *n.* hardship, II 240. [OFr. *malaise*.] *See* Èse.
- Malice**, *Malis*, *n.* evil purpose, ill-will, VII 177, IX 119, XVI 302. [OFr. *malice*.]
- Malt**, *pa. t. sg.* melted, V 12. [OE. *mieltan*, *mæltan*.]
- Man**. *See* Make(n).
- Man(e)**, **Manne**, *n.* man, man-kind, (any) body, one, I 102, II 27, IV *a* 12, *b* 62, XVII 236, &c.; **Mon**, V 32, 170, 271 (note), VI 160, &c. *Gen. sg.* (often generic, equiv. to 'human', &c.), **Manes**(se), II 552, XV 16; **Mannes**, -is, -ys, -us, III 54, VIII *a* 234 (note), XI *b* 113, 114, XII *b* 139, XVI 246, &c.; **Mans**, in *mans wonder*, monster, XVII 408. **Manne**, *dat. sg.* III 19. **Men**(e), *pl.* I 32, IV *b* 9, &c.; **Men**(ne), **Mene**, *gen. pl.* men's, people's, &c., IV *b* 69 (footnote), VIII *b* 29, XIII *b* 20; **Mennes**, -ys, -us, I 82, VIII *a* 96, XI *b* 119, 192; **Mens**, IV *b* 50, \*69 (footnote). [OE. *man*(n), *mon*(n).] *See* Men, Noman.
- Manaced**, *pa. t.* threatened, VIII *a* 163; **Mansed**, V 277. [OFr. *manecier*, *manasser*; cf. *Comsed*, for the reduction.]
- Manans**, *n.* threat, X 72. [OFr. *manace*, with confusion of suffix.]
- Mandep**, 3 *sg. pres.* sends forth, XV *b* 16, 25. [OFr. *mander*.]
- Maner**(e), **Manyere** (III), *n.* (a) manner, way, I 80, X 103, XI *a* 11, XIII *b* 30 (without foll. *of*), &c.; *in his manere*, after his fashion, VIII *a* 104; custom, II 431, XIII *b* 17, 26; kind, sort, IX 102, 139, &c.; *any (ich) maner*, any (every) kind of, II 364, VIII *a* 213; with *sg.* form after *al(le)*, *meny*, and numerals (usually without *of*), II 302, III *introd.*, VIII *a* 20, XIII *a* 37, *b* 1, 9, &c.; *deuyse, tell, the maner (of)*, describe, IX 264, 268; **Manere**3, *pl.* courtesy, \*VI 22 (MS. *marere*). [OFr. *man*(i)ere.]
- Manes**(se). *See* Man(e).
- Manfully**, *adv.* manfully, X 117. [From OE. *mann* + *-full*.]
- Manhode**, *n.* virility, IX 80. [OE. *mann* + *hād*.]
- Mani**(e), **Many**(e), *adj.* many, I 133, II 294, III 41, VIII *a* 100, &c.; **Meny**(e), VIII *b* 36, XIII *a* 6, &c.; **Moni**, **Mony**, V 201, VI 212, &c.; *mani* (*moni*) *a*, &c., many *a*, II 432, XIV *c* 68, 92, &c.; (without *a*), I 157 (note), II 520, XVII 355, 436; *many . . . fold(e)*, *see* Fold(e). [OE. *manig*, *menig*, *monig*.]
- Manyere**. *See* Maner(e).
- Manyfold**, *adj.* many times multiplied, great, XII *b* 154. [OE. *manig-fāld*.] *See* Fold.
- Mankyn**, *n.* mankind, XVII 71. [OE. *man-cyn*(n).]
- Mankunde**, **Mankynde**, *n.* mankind, XIII *a* 2, XVI 15. [OE. *mann* + *cýnd*; cf. *prec.*]
- Mannus**, &c.; **Mansed**. *See* Man(e); *Manaced*.
- Mappa Mundi**, *n.* map, or descriptive geography, of the world, IX 301. [Latin; also appears in ME. in Fr. form *mappe-monde*.]
- Mar**, **Marre**, *v.* to hinder, stop, XVI 116, XVII 129 (*subj.*); *marre . . . to*, prevent from, XVI 173; to destroy, V 194, XVI 208. [OE. *merran*, hinder, spoil.]
- Marchant**, *n.* merchant, XII *b* 166. [OFr. *marchand*.]
- Marchaundise**, *n.* commercial dealings, XI *b* 290. [OFr. *mar-chandise*.]

# GLOSSARY

**Marches**, *n. pl.* (frontiers), regions, IX 273. [OFr. *marche*.]

**Marche**, *v.*; *marceth* (*to, upon*), borders on, IX 193, XII a 61. [OFr. *marchir*, from prec.]

**Mare**. See **Mor(e)**.

**Maryage**, *n.* marriage; *to Hys m.*, as His spouse, VI 54. [OFr. *mariage*.]

**Mark**, *n.* a mark (about  $\frac{3}{4}$  of a pound, 13s. 4d.), XI b 162. [OE. *marc*, a borrowed word of disputed origin.]

**Marked**, *n.* market-place, VI 153. [Late OE. *marcet*, from ONFr. *market*.]

**Martyrdome**, *n.* martyrdom, I 34. [OE. *martyr-dōm*.]

**Mase**. See **Make(n)**.

**Mased**, *adj.* bewildered, XVI 247. [Cf. OE. *ā-masod*.]

**Mass**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> Mass, VIII a 88, XI b 131, &c.; **Messe**, I 8, 69, VI 137, &c. [OE. *māsse*, *messe*; OFr. *messe*.]

**Mass**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> conglomerate mass, IX 44, 46. [OFr. *masse*.]

**Masso-prest**, *n.* (secular) priest, v 40. [OE. *māsse-prēost*.]

**Mast**. See **More**, **Mor(e)**.

**Mast**, *n.* mast, X 123, XIV c 49, &c. [OE. *māst*.]

**Mate**, *adj.* dejected, VI 26. [OFr. *mat*, orig. 'mated' in chess.]

**Mater(e)**, **Matiere**, *n.* matter, subject, VII 35, 98, IX 111, XII a 45, XIV c 14. [OFr. *mat(i)ere*.]

**Matz**. See **Make(n)**.

**Matyn**(es), **-ys**, *n. pl.* **matins** (first of the canonical 'hours', properly recited at midnight or before daybreak), v 120, XI b 131, 189, &c.; applied to all the morning office preceding public Mass, I 68, † XI b 208; *matynes of Oure Lady*, matins proper to Our Lady (made a part of daily morning office), XI b 132. [OFr. *matines*.]

**Maugré**, *n.* displeasure, ill-will, VIII a 236. [OFr. *maugré*.]

**Maugré** (-ee), **Mawgree**, *prep.* in spite of, VIII a 69, IX 197, 314;

**Magré**, x 197; *m. Medes* (*þē chekes*, in spite of Meed (you), VIII a 41, 151 (an extension of ME. *maugré þin*, *his*, &c. where *þin*, &c., are orig. *gen.*). [OFr. *maugré*.]

**Maulardes**, *n. pl.* mallards, wild-duck, II 310. [OFr. *mallart*.]

**Maundementis**, *n. pl.* commandments, XI b 184. [OFr. *mandement*.]

**Mauged**, *pp.* eaten, VIII a 255. [OFr. *mangier*.]

**Mawe**, *n.* belly, VIII a 167, 306 (*pl.* or *distrib. sg.*; see **Herte**). [OE. *maga*.]

**Me**. See **Men**; and **Ich**, *pron.*

**Measse**, *n.* mess, portion (of food), XVII 389. [OFr. *mes*.]

**Meoull**. See **Mekill**, **adj.**

**Mede**, *n.* reward; Lady Meed (personif. of bribery, &c.), VIII a 41; *to mede*, in payment, as reward, IV a 64, XIV b 2, XVII 122; *qwite hym his m.*, pay him out, XVII 216. [OE. *mēd*.]

**Medeful**, *adj.* profitable, XI b 247. [From prec.]

**Medycyne**, *n.* cure, I 244. [OFr. *medicine*.]

**Medill-erd**. See **Myddel-erde**.

**Medyn**, † *n. pl.* meadows, xv i 14 (such a *pl.* form is remarkable in this text, if genuine). [OE. *mēd*, *mēd*.]

**Meditacioun** (*of*), *n.* meditation (upon), XI b 295. [OFr. *meditation*.]

**Meete**, *n.* measure(ment), XIII a 47. [OE. *ge-met*.] See **Meteth**.

**Meyny**, *n.* household, body (of servants, &c.), retinue, company, VI 182; **Meneye**, XVII 290; **Menjhe**, x 39; **Menye**, VII 37, XVII 22. [OFr. *mai(s)nee*.]

**Meyntene(n)**, **Mayntene**, *v.* to maintain, defend, support, keep up, VIII a 37, XI b 43, 55, 166, XIV c 76; *subj.*, XIV c 100; **Meyntenynge**, *n.* upholding, XI b 170. [OFr. *maintenir*.]

**Meist**. See **Mai**, *v.*

**Meke**, *adj.* meek, humble, sub-

# GLOSSARY

- missive, IV *a* 74, VI 44, VIII *a* 199, XI *b* 58, XVI 1. [ON. *mysik-r*, earlier \**meuk-*.]
- Mekenesse**, *n.* meekness, gentleness, VI 46, VIII *a* 41 (personified), XI *b* 118, 122. [From prec.]
- Mekill**, *adj.* great, X 116, XIV *b* 84, XVI 129, XVII 109, &c.; **Mecull**, VII 10. [OE. *micel*.] See **Miche**, **Mochel**, **More**.
- Mekill**, *adv.* greatly, much, IV *b* 23. [OE. *micel*, *micle*.] See **Moche**, **Mor(e)**, **Mo**.
- Mekis**, 2 *sg. pres.* in *mekis þiselfe*, humblest thyself, XVI 350. [From **Meke**, *adj.*]
- Mele**, *v.* to speak, say, V 227, 268, 305, VI 137, 229, ?\*XV *b* 20 (MS. miles). [OE. *mēlan*.]
- Melke**, **Milke**, *n.* milk, II 146, VIII *a* 176. [OE. *me(o)lc*, *milc*.]
- Mell**, *v.*<sup>1</sup> to announce, declare; †grant, XVII 44 (or from next, in vague use extended from that seen in XVI). [OE. *meðlan*.] Cf. **Mele**.
- Melle**, *v.*<sup>2</sup> to mix, mingle, XVI 302; **Mellit**, *pp.* X 22; **Ymelled**, XIII *b* 3; **Mellyng**, *n.* mingling, XIII *b* 12. [OFr. *mesler*, *meller*.]
- Melody**, *n.* melody, (sweet) music, II 46, 278, 442, 523, 590, IV *a* 67. [OFr. *melodie*.]
- Membre**, *n.* limb, member, V 224, VIII *b* 34; *fig.* VI 93. [OFr. *membre*.]
- Memoire**, **Memorye**, *n.* memory, XII *b* 221; commemoration (of the faithful departed), VIII *a* 89. [OFr. *memoire*, *memorie*.]
- Men**, *impers. subject sg.* one, IX 69; also freq. (esp. in *men may*) in syntactically doubtful cases prob. apprehended as pl., as IX 75 (first), I 18, XV *b* 3, &c.; **Me**, III 3, 16, 48, 51, XIII *a* 9, XV *g* 8, 28. [OE. *man*, reduced under wk. stress.] See **Man** (esp. V 170).
- Mencioun**, *n.* mention, IX 267. [OFr. *mention*.]
- Mend(e)**, *v.* to improve; make better (free from fault), XVI 359, increase (joy), XVI 79; *mend jow of joure misdede*, reform your evil ways, XIV *b* 7; **Mending**, *n.* improvement, VI 92. [Shortened from **Amend**.]
- Mendinauns**, *n. pl.* beggars, VIII *b* 80. [OFr. *mendinant*.]
- Men(e)**. See **Man(e)**.
- Mene**, *adj.* common, thin (ale), VIII *a* 176. [OE. (*ge-*)*mēne*.]
- Mene(n)**, *v.*<sup>1</sup> to mean; signify, I *introd.*, VIII *b* 38, XVI 46; declare (as one's intention), XVI 174; to intend, \*XVI 301 (MS. *mouys*); to imagine, suppose XI *b* 74 (or imply); *impers.* in *me menys*, I call to mind, XVI 231; **Menede**, *pa. t.* VIII *b* 38; **Mente**, *pa. t.* I *introd.*; *pp.* XVI 174; **Ymende**, *pp.* noted, III *introd.* [OE. *mēnan*.]
- Mene**, *v.*<sup>2</sup> to complain, XV *b* 22; *refl.* in *mened hem*, made their complaint, VIII *a* 2. [OE. *mēnan*, *v.*<sup>2</sup>; prob. distinct from prec., and rel. to **Mon(e)**, *q.v.*]
- Meneye**. See **Meyny**.
- Mengen**, *v.* to remember, VIII *a* 89. [OE. *myn(d)gian*.]
- Menzhe**. See **Meyny**.
- Meny(e)**. See **Mani**, **Meyny**.
- Menyng**, *n.* mention, XVI 103. [From **Mene**, *v.*<sup>1</sup>]
- Menne(s)**, *-ys*, *-us*. See **Man(e)**.
- Menskes**, *n. pl.* honours, V 342. [ON. *mennska*, humanity, kindness, †hence in ME. grace, courtesy, honour; cf. senses of OE. *dr.*]
- Menstraci**, *n.* minstrelsy, music, II 302, 420, 589. [OFr. *menestralsie*.]
- Menstrel**, *n.* minstrel, II 430, 449, 532; **Minstrel**, II 382, 486. [OFr. *menestral*, *-cl.*]
- Mente**. See **Mene**, *v.*<sup>1</sup>
- Merci**, **Meroy(e)**, **Meray**, *n.* mercy, I 167, II 113, III 1, VI 23, VIII *a* 40 (personified), XVI 359, &c.; *grant merci*, thank you, V 58, XII *b* 92 (see **Grant**). [OFr. *merci*.]

# GLOSSARY

- Mercii**, *n. pl.* Mercians, men of the Midlands, XIII b 54. [Med.L. *Mercii*; OE. *Merce*.]
- Mery**. See *Miri(e)*.
- Meridionall**, *adj.* Southern, IX 2, 3. [L. *meridionalis*.]
- Merke(nes)**. See *Mirke*, *Myrknes*.
- Mersh**, *n.* March, XV c 1. [AFr., ONFr. *march(e)*.]
- Merpe**. See *Mirthe*.
- Meruayl(1)e**, -uail(e), -ueyl(1)e, &c. (*of*), *n.* amazement, wonder (at), I 211, IX 151, 226; marvel, II 409, 598, IX 143, 146, 292, &c.; a marvel (without *a*), I 115, 205, IX 18; no *meruayle þaȝ* (with *subj.*), no wonder (if), v 239. [OFr. *merveille*.]
- Merueyl(1)ous**, *adj.* marvellous, I 247, IX 145; Merveilous, XII a 64; Mervelus, XVII 12, 164. [OFr. *merveillous*.]
- Meschaunce**; **Meschief**. See *Myschance*; *Myschefe*.
- Mese**, *n.* moss, II 248. [OE. *mos*.]
- Message**, *n.* errand, XII a 52, 102; message, XII *introd.* [OFr. *message*.]
- Messagere**, *n.* messenger, XII a 46; **Messengere**, XVI 362. [OFr. *messenger*.]
- Messais**. See *Missays*.
- Messe**. See *Masse*, *n.*<sup>1</sup>
- Mesurable**, *adj.* moderate, reasonable, VIII a 192. [OFr. *mesurable*.]
- Measure**, *n.* capacity, XI b 113; moderation, XVI 302. [OFr. *mesure*.]
- Mesurit**, *pp.* measured, x 25. [OFr. *mesurer*.]
- Mete**, *n.* food, VIII a 133, IX 15, xv e 7, g 3, XVII 160, &c.; **Mette**, XVI 230; *esp.* joined with *drink*, I 158, II 254, VIII a 20, XI b 257, XVII 197; *at(te) mete*, at table, II 519, VIII a 55, xv g 24. [OE. *mete*.]
- Mete(n)**, *v.* to meet, II 510, v 138, 167, VI 20, XIV a 27; **Mette**, *pa. t.*, VIII a 163, b 6. [OE. *mētan*.] See *Imete*.
- Metop**, 3 *sg. pres.* measures, XVII a 46. [OE. *metan*.] See *Meete*.
- Methles**, *adj.* immoderate, violent, v 38. [OE. *mēþ-lēas*.]
- Mette**, *pa. t.* dreamt, XII a 139, 153. [OE. *mētan*, *impers.*]
- Meue**, **Moue**, *v.* to move; *trans.* (inspire), XI a 66, b 246; *intr.* proceed, pass on, VII 98; **Meuyt**, *pa. t.* passed, VII 30; **Mevid**, *pp.* carried away, XVII 542. [OFr. *moveir*; accented stem *moev-*, *meuv-*, &c.]
- Mexeyse**. See *Missays*.
- Mi**, **My**. See *Ich*, *pron.*
- Miche**, **Myche**, *adj.* great, much, II 278, 523, 560, VII 41, 122. [OE. *micel*.] See *Mekill*, *Mochel*, *More*.
- Micht**, **Mycht**. See *Mai*, *v.*; *Myzt(e)*.
- Mid**, **Midde** (xv), *prep.* with, III *introd.*, 9, 51, 55, xv a 19. [OE. *mid*.] See *Per(e)*.
- Myddel**, *adj.* central, Midland, XIII b 10, 54. [OE. *middel*.]
- Middel**, **Myddel**, *n.* middle, XIII b 11; waist, xv c 16. [OE. *middel*.]
- Myddel-erde**, **Medill-erd**, *n.* the world, v 32, XVII 100, 234. [Altered by assoc. with prec. from OE. *middan-(g)earð*.]
- Mydyng**, *n.* midden, dunghill, XVII 376. [Cf. Danish *mög-dyng*, *mödding* (ON. \**myk(t)-dyngja*) muck-heap.]
- Mydnyȝt**, *n.* midnight, v 119. [OE. *mid-niht*.]
- Myghtfull**, *adj.* mighty, XVII 1. [OE. *miht + -ful*.]
- Mighty**, **Myghty**, *adj.* mighty, VII 177, &c.; *was so myghty to*, had the power to, XVI 91; *quasi-sb.* mighty princes, VII 118. [OE. *mihtig*.]
- Myzt(e)**, *n.* might, power, strength, capacity, I 84, 186, VIII a 195, XI b 114; **Myoht**, x 48, 65, &c.; **Myght**, IX 197, XVI 233, &c.; **Miste**, **Myste** (see App. p. 278), xv g 29; *of myste*, mighty, VI 102; *pl.* deeds of power, XVI

# GLOSSARY

- 174; *do (all) his mygt*, &c., do all in his power, x 79, xi b 6; *with thair mychtis all*, with all their might, x 95; *at my myght*, as far as I can, xvii 322. [OE. *miht*.]
- Mihte**, *Mihte*, &c. See *Mai*, v.
- Myke3**, *n. pl.* † favourites, vi 212 (note); see *Mike*, *n.* in *N.E.D.* [Unknown.]
- Milde**, *Myld*, *adj.* gentle, kindly, iv a 74, b 75, xv g 2, &c. [OE. *mild*.]
- Mile**, *Myle*, *n.* mile; *sg.* for *pl.* after numerals, ii 350, xiv b 42; *wel a four grete myle*, fully (a distance of) four 'long miles', ix 200 (see note). [OE. *mil*.]
- Miles**, † *n. pl.* xv b 20; † read *meles murge (wi)þ*, call lovingly to; see *Mele*, v.
- Myn**, *adj.* smaller, in *more and myn*, all, xvii 112, 278. [ON. *minni*; *meiri ok minni*.]
- Myn**, *Mynne*, *v.* to remember, recall, mention, vii 30, 37; *myn(ne) of*, be mindful of, vi 223, xvii 551. [ON. *minna*, remind; *minna-sk*, remember.]
- Min**, *Myn(e)*. See *Ich*, *pron.*
- Mynd(e)**, *n.* mind, memory, vii 10, 11, 30, ix 319, xvi 2; *take in m.*, recollect, xii a 194, b 223. [OE. (*ge-*)*mýnd*.]
- Myne**, *n.* ore, ix 46, 52. [OFr. *mine*.]
- Myne(n)**, *v.* to mine, tunnel, ix 222, 224, 231, x 8. [OFr. *miner*.]
- Mynestres**, *n. pl.* servants, viii b 63. [OFr. *ministre*.]
- Ministre**, *Mynstre*, *n.* monastery, viii b 95, xiii a 50. [OE. *mynster*.]
- Myngot**, -it, *pa. t.* mingled, vii 131; *pp.* vii 108. [OE. *mēngan*.]
- Mynt**, *Munt*, *n.* aim; faint, pretence at a blow, v 277, 282, 284. [From next.]
- Mynte**, *v.* to aim, swing (an axe), v 222; *Mynte*, *Munt*, *pa. t. sg.* v 194, 206. [OE. *myntan*.]
- Miraole**, *n.* miracle, xi b 280. [OFr. *miracle*.]
- Mire**, *Myre*, *mire*; *fig.* a desperate situation, xiv b 71, xvi 256. [ON. *mýr-r*.]
- Miri(e)**, *Myrie*, *adj.* merry, joyous, gay, ii 58, 436, viii a 151, xv a 11, 16, &c.; *Mery*, viii a 69, xvii 463; *Myrrest*, *superl.* vi 75; *Muryly*, *adv.* pleasantly, playfully, v 227, 268, 277. [OE. *myrge*.] See *Mirth(e)*, *Murgeþ*.
- Mirke**, *Mørke*, *adj.* dark, vii 108; *n.* darkness, xvi 53. [OE. *myrce*, ON. *myrk-r*, *adj.*]
- Myrknes**, *n.* darkness, iv a 64; *Mørkenes*, vii 131. [From *prec.*]
- Mirth(e)**, *Myrth*, *n.* joy, mirth, iv a 44, xiv b 3, xvi 79, &c.; *Merþe*, ii 6. [OE. *myrgþ*.]
- Mys**. See *Misse*, *Myss*.
- Mysbede**, *v.* to ill-use, viii a 46; *Mysboden*, *pp.* v 271. [OE. *mis-bōdan*.]
- Myschance**, *Meschaunce*, *n.* disaster, misfortune, v 127, ix 87, xiv b 30. [OFr. *mescha(u)nce*.]
- Myschefe**, -cheif, -chief, *n.* distress, damage, misfortune, i 175, viii a 199, x 136, 178; *Meschief*, xii b 14. [OFr. *mesch(i)ef*.]
- Misdede**, *n.* wrong-doing, xiv b 7. [OE. *mis-dēd*.]
- Miself(e)**, *Myselfe(n)*. See *Ich*, *pron.*
- Mysereoorde**, *n.* mercy, vi 6. [OFr. *misericorde*.]
- Myshap**, *n.* accident, viii b 35. [OE. *mis- + Hap*, *q. v.*]
- Myslyke**, *v. imper.* it displeases, is unpleasant to; *subj.* iv b 58, v 239. [OE. *mis-lician*.]
- Missays**, *Messais*, *n.* hardship, suffering, ii 262, 325; *Mexeyse*, iii 42. [OFr. *mesaise*, -eise.] See *Ese*.
- Myse**, *Mys*, *n.* (sense of) loss, vi 4; misery, xvii 551; *Mysses*, *pl.* offences, faults, v

# GLOSSARY

323. [OE. *miss*, and *mis*-prefix.] See *Amya*.  
**Miss**, *Mya*(*æ*), *æ*. to miss; *mis**se* (*ef*), fail (in), VII 118, XVII 404; to do without, XVII 237; lack, VI 22. [OE. *missan*.]  
**Mysspend**, *pp.* misspent, VIII b 97. [OE. *mis*- + *spendan*.] See *Spende*.  
**Myste**, *Mist*, *n.* mist, V 12, VII 108, &c. [OE. *mist*.]  
**Miste**, *Myste*. See *Myt(e)*.  
**Mister**, *Myster*, *n.* need, IV b 58, 67, X 151, 161; *Maister*, in *hom maister were*, was their duty, VII 35. [OFr. *mest(er)*, *meistier*.]  
**Myst-hakel**, *n.* cloak of mist, V 13. [OE. *mist* + *hacel*.]  
**Mnam**, *n.* (mina), talent, VIII a 237, 238; *Nam*, VII a 235. [L. *m(i)nam*, accus.]  
**Mo**, *adj.* and *quasi-pron.* more (in number), others, I 133, II 90, 350, V 254, IX 153, XIV d 7, XV b 22, XVI 358, XVII 134, &c.; **Moo**, XVI 208, 328. [OE. *mā*, compar. adv.]  
**Moche**, *adv.* greatly, much, IX 101, 300, XI b 107, 183, &c.; to a great extent, XIII b 41; **Much**(*e*), VI 14, XI b 297, &c. [OE. *mycel*, *mycle*.] See *Mekill*, *Mor(e)*, *Mo*.  
**Moohel**, *adj.* (and *quasi-sb.*), great, much, XII a 105, b 212; **Moche**, II 36, III 25, 32, XIII a 51, &c.; **Much**, V 72, 268, VI 244, &c.; in *so moche*, to the corresponding extent, XI b 232; in *so moche þat*, in as much as, IX 299. [OE. *mycel*.] See *Mekill*, *Miche*, *More*.  
**Mod**, *n.* mood, temper, VI 41. [OE. *mōd*.]  
**Mody**, *adj.* as *sō*. the passionate (lover), xv b 22. [OE. *mōdig*.]  
**Moder**, *-ir*, *n.* mother, II 30, III 40, V 252, XVI 250, &c.; **Moder**, *gen. sg.* XI b 29; as *adj.* in *modir tunge*, XI a 40. [OE. *mōdor*.]  
**Mojt(e)** **Moghte**. See *Mai*, *æ*.  
**Moyne**. See *Mone*.  
**Moyst**, *adj.* moist, IX 95. [OFr. *moiste*.]  
**Mol**, *n.* dust, VI 22 (cf. *mul*, Pearl 905). [OE. *myl*.]  
**Mold(e)**, *n.* earth, in tag (*ap*)*on mold(e)*, on earth, alive, XIV b 3, XVI 1, 91, XVII 62. [OE. *mōlde*.]  
**Mon**. See *Man(e)*.  
**Mon(e)**, *n.* complaint, lamentation, grief, II 198, VI 14, VIII a 117, XIV a 27. [OE. \**mān*, rel. to *Mene*, v. 2]  
**Mone**, *n.* moon, XV b 16, 25, XVII 355; **Moyne**, XVII 6; lunar month, 478; *abouen þe m.*, to the skies, ridiculously high, XI b 182. [OE. *mōna*.]  
**Moneday**, *n.* Monday, XIII a 29. [OE. *mōnan-dæg*.]  
**Mong**, *prep.* among, VII 120. [Shortened from *Amouge*, q. v.]  
**Moni**, *-y*. See *Mani*.  
**Moniales**, *n. pl.* nuns, VIII b 80. [Med.L. *monialis*.]  
**Monk(e)**, *n.* monk, V 40, VIII a 322, b 80. [OE. *munuc*.]  
**Monthe**, *n.* month, VIII b 52, XII a 34, &c.; *pl.* (orig. *gen.*) in *two monthe day*, two months' time, XII a 29 (see *Day*). [OE. *mōn(a)þ*.] See *Tweluemonth(e)*.  
**Moo**; **Moost**. See *Mo*; *Mor(e)*.  
**Mor**, *n.* moor, V 12, XV e 1, &c. [OE. *mōr*.]  
**More**, *adj. compar.* greater, V 32, IX 28, 245, &c.; more, further, &c. (easily passing into *adv.*, as XIV b 3, &c.), II 264, V 180, XVI 106, &c.; *quasi-sb.* a greater amount, more, VI 193, 217, 240 (see *Longe adv.*), &c.; *more and les(se)*, *les and more*, all, XVI 383, XVII 11, 94; *more and myn*, all, XVII 112, 278 (see *Myn*).  
**Mast**, *superl.* greatest, most, X 18, 38, 104; **Most(e)**, XI b 25, XIV c 15, XVI 360; *both the m. and the leest*, all, XVII 452; *þe most*, (the) most (part), I 23. [OE. *māra*; *māst* (late Nth. *māst*, with vowel of compar.)] See *Mekill*, &c.



# GLOSSARY

**Mor(e), Mare** (IV, XIV), *adv. compar.* more, VI 193, &c.; forming *compar.*, VI 239, IX 248, XII b 130, &c.; longer, further, in the future, again, &c. (*esp.* in *no more, na mare*, &c.), I 83, 144, IV a 58, XIV b 3 (or *adj.*), &c.; moreover, VI 205; *no3t... more*, not... either, VI 228; *no more bot*, none the more except that. V 243. **Mast** (IV), **Moost**, **Most(e)**, *superl.* most(ly), for the most part, II 12, 33 (*see* Ony), IV a 77, VII 10, XI a 20, &c.; forming *superl.*, IX 42, &c. [As *prec.*; for older *compar.* *adv.* *see* Mo.] *See* Mekill, &c.; *Nomore*.

**Moreyn**, *n.* plague; *pe furste moreyn*, the Black Death (1349), XIII b 26. [OFr. *morine*.]

**Morn(e)**, *n.* morning, morrow, I 137, V 282. [OE. *morne* *dat. sg.*] *See* Morwe.

**Mornyf**, *adj.* mournful, VI 26. [Stem of Mournen + OFr. *-if*; cf. OFr. *morni*.]

**Mornyng**, *n.* morning, XVII 498. [From Morne.]

**Mornyng**. *See* Mourmen.

**Morter**, *n.* mortar, VIII a 136. [OFr. *mortier*.]

**Morthereres**, *n. pl.* murderers, VIII a 268. [Cf. OE. *myrþra*, OFr. *mordreour*.]

**Morwe**, **Morow**, *n.* morning, morrow, VIII a 140, XII a 152, b 176, &c.; *fram m. til euen*, all day, VIII a 178, (reversed for rime) XVII 205. [OE. *morgen*.] *See* Morn(e).

**Most(e)**, &c. *See* Mor(e), and next.

**Mot(e)**, *v.* may, II 532, V 52, XI b 115, XIV c 87, &c.; must, II 125, 248, VIII a 284, XI a 38, &c.; **Most** (*to*), 2 *sg. pres.* must go (to), xv g 3; **Most(e)**, *pa. t.* might, II 233, 330; must, is (was) bound to, II 468, IX 197, 287, XI b 205; **Must(e)**, XVI 274, XVII 130 (2 *sg.*); *impers.* in *must* *us*, we must, XVII 292, 334. [OE. *mōt*, *pa. t.* *mōste*.]

**Mote**, *n.* a whit, V 141. [OE. *mot*.]

**Mote**, *v.* to argue, XVI 256 (*see* note). [OE. *mōtian*.]

**Mournen**, *v.* to mourn, xvc 34; **Mournyng**, *n.* mourning, sorrow, IV a 72; **Murning**, XIV b 2; **Mornyng**, XI b 118, 125, 130, &c. [OE. *murnan*.]

**Moun**. *See* Mai, v.

**Mountayne**, *n.* mountain, IX 161, 162, &c. [OFr. *munlai(g)ne*.]

**Mountez**, *n. pl.* hills, v 12. [OE. *munt*; OFr. *munt*.]

**Mouthed**, *pa. t.* uttered, VIII a 234. [From next.]

**Moupe**, *n. (dat. sg.)* mouth, II 465; *be mouthe*, by word of m., XII b 199. [OE. *mūþ*.]

**Mowe**. *See* Mai, v.

**Mowe(n)**, *v.*<sup>1</sup> to mow, VIII b 14 (first). [OE. *māwan*.]

**Mowe(n)**, *v.*<sup>2</sup> to stack (in mows), VIII b 14 (second). [OE. *mūga*, *mūwa*, a mow, heap.]

**Mowres**, *n. pl.* Moors, IX 5. [OFr. *Maure*, *More*.]

**Much(e)**. *See* Moche(1).

**Muged**, *pa. t.* drizzled, was damp, v 12. [Cf. Norw. *mugga*, drizzle, and *Mug*<sup>4</sup> in *E.D.D.*.]

**Muk**, **Mukke**, *n.* dung, VIII a 136, XVII 62. [Cf. ON. *myki*.]

**Mullere**, *n.* Miller, XIV d 3, 9. [OE. *\*mylnere*.]

**Mulne**, *n.* mill, v 135. [OE. *mylen*.]

**Multiplye(n)**, *v.* to multiply, increase; *trans.* III 1, VIII a 120, 323; *intr.* IX 60, XVII 31, 179. [OFr. *multiplier*.]

**Multitude**, *n.* multitude, XI b 228. [OFr. *multitude*.]

**Mun**, *v. auxil.* will (*fut.*), XIV b 2. [ON. *munu*.]

**Munt**. *See* Mynt(e).

**Murgep**, *pres. pl.* gladden, xv b 20 (*see* Miles). [OE. (*ā-*) *myrgian*.]

*See* Miri(e).

**Muryly**. *See* Miri(e).

**Murning**. *See* Mourmen.

**Mused**, *pa. t.* mused; existed, were, v 356 (characteristic

# GLOSSARY

- action of '*homo rationalis*' standing for verb 'to be'; cf. *flaze*, VI 71). [OFr. *muser*.]
- Muster**, -ir, *v.* to show, manifest, XVI 86, 104, 174. [OFr. *moustrer*.]
- Na**. See No, Non(e).
- Nabbe**, I *sg. pres. ind.* have not, XV f 8, 11; *Nade*, *pa. t.* had not (with another neg.), II 392. [OE. *nabban*, *næfde*.] See Habbe, Ne.
- Nacion**, *n.* race, nation, XIII b 4, 17. [OFr. *nacion*.]
- Najt**, *n.* night; *be najt*, by night, by the time night has come, VI 163. [OE. *næht*.] See Nyght.
- Najt**, *pron.* nothing (with neg. *adv.*), III 18; *Najt*, *Naujte*, *adv.* not, VIII a 43; (with neg. verb) III 42. [OE. *nā-wiht*, *nā(u)ht*.] See Nat, Nojt.
- Nay(e)**, *adv.* nay, II 131, III 26, XVI 335, &c.; as *sb.*, in *with-outten nay*, undeniably, XVII 2 (*cf.* No). [ON. *nei*.]
- Nail(e)**, *Nayle*, *Naill(e)*, *Nayll*, *n.* nail, XVII 119, 273, 277; *finger-nail*, I 164, 236, II 106, VIII a 62. [OE. *nægel*.] See Naule.
- Nayled**, *pp.* nailed, IV a 86. [OE. *nægl(i)an*.]
- Nale**; *atte nale* = *atten ale*, at the ale, over their ale, VIII a 109. [OE. *alu*.] See Atte.
- Nam**, I *sg. pres. ind.* am not; *nam bot*, am only, II 430. [OE. *nam*.] See Ne.
- Nam**. See Mnam, Nyme.
- Name**, *n.* name, I 37, VII 60, XV i 10, &c.; good name, praise, XI b 257; *Nome*, VII *introd.*; *be name (nome)*, by name, individually, I *introd.*, 46, VII 37; *by name*, especially, XVI 190; *bi Godes name* (oath), II 316. [OE. *nama*, *noma*.]
- Nameles**, *adj.* (as a name) Nameless, Nobody, XIV d 2. [OE. *nama* + *-lēas*.]
- Namely**, -liche, *adv.* namely, especially, I 264, VIII a 55, XI b 253. [OE. *nama* + *-lice*.]
- Namore**; **Nane**. See Nomore; Non(e), *pron.*
- Nar(e)**, *pres. ind. pl.* are not (with neg.), II 390, V 24. [OE. *naron*.] See Ne.
- Narwe**, *adj.* narrow, mean (dwelling), II 483. [OE. *nearu*.]
- Nas**, **Nes** (III), *pa. t. sg.* (usually with neg.) was not, II 98, 150, 354, III 42, XV g 28; *Nere*, *pl.* II 123; *subj.* would be, II 457. [OE. *næs* (Kt. *nes*), *næron*, *nære*.]
- Nat**, *neg. adv.* not, I 12, 97, 132, VIII b 93. [Reduced form of *Najt*, *g.v.*]
- Natheles**. See Nopeles.
- Nature**, *n.* nature, XII a 113. [OFr. *nature*.]
- Naujte**. See Najt.
- Naujty**, *adj.* (worth nought), penniless, VIII a 218. [*cf.* OE. *nāht-lic*.] See Najt.
- Nauy**, *n.* navy, VII III, 143. [OFr. *navie*.]
- Naule**, *n.* finger-nail, VI 99. [ON. *nagl*, or OE. *nægl*, \**naglas*.] See Naile.
- Nauper**, **Nawper**, *v.* VI; **Noper**, I, VIII, XIII; **Nouper**, -ur, XIV c; **Nowder**, XVII; **Nowper**, **Nowther**, XIV b; **Nowthir**, XVI; *adv.* neither, either (after a neg.), V 299; *conj.* neither (foll. by *ne*, *nor*), I 118, V 206, XIV b 75, 78, c 57, 62, XVI 287, XVII 534, &c.; (foll. by *then*) XVII 535; *nor*, XIII a 13, 37. [OE. *nā-hwæper*, *nō-hwæper*, *nā(w)þor*, *nōþer*, &c.] See Neyther, Noiþer.
- Nawhere**. See Nowhar(e).
- Ne**, *adv.* not (preceding verb), I 73, V 74, VIII a 138, 172, &c.; (usually with another neg., esp. *nojt*, &c.), I 71, 156, III 18, VI 2, &c.; coalescing with auxil. verbs, see Nabbe, Nam, Nar(e), Nas, Nil, Nis, Not; *conj.* *nor*, I 118, 160, IV a 2, &c.; *ne* . . . *ne*, neither . . . *nor*, *nor* . . . *nor*,

# GLOSSARY

- I 158, IX 201; (foll. by another neg.) and, I 12, 153, VIII a 280, IX 181, &c. [OE. *ne*.]
- Nede**, **Neid** (x), *n.* need, IV b 67, X 18, XI b 259, XVII 426; *at nede*, in time of need, VIII a 113; *pl. wants*, business, V 148. [OE. *nēd*.]
- Nedes**, *adv.* needs, of necessity, II 468, IX 288, XI b 205. [OE. *nēdes*.]
- Nedeth**, **Nudeth**, *pres. (impers.) sg.* (It) is necessary, VIII a 240, b 20; *hem nedeth*, they have need, VIII a 203; **Neyd**, with mixed constr. in *neyd thowe*, you need, XVI 242. [OE. *nēodian*; cf. *next*.]
- Nedid**, *pa. t.* compelled, XI b 75; *pp.* XI b 9, 35. [OE. *nēdan*.]
- Nedeful**(l), **Nedfull**, *adj.* necessary, IX 113, 131, XI a 51. [OE. *nēd + -ful*.]
- Nedy**, *adj.* needy, in want, VIII a 15, 218; as jocular name, XVII 405. [OE. *nēadig-*, \**nēdig*.]
- Nedle**, *n.* needle (of compass), IX 124, &c. [OE. *nēdl*.]
- Nee**. See **Ny3**.
- Negh** (*nere*), *v. intr.* to approach, XVI 224; **Nyghys**, 3 *sg. pres.* XVII 370; **Neighed**, *pa. t.* VIII a 294. [From **Ny3**, *q.v.*]
- Neid**; **Neyd**; **Nei3e**; **Neir**. See **Nede**; **Nedeth**; **Ny3**; **Ner(e)**.
- Neyther**, **Nei3er**, *adv.*; *ne neyther*, and neither, VIII a 276; *nei3er . . . ne*, neither . . . nor, XI b 190, 286. [OE. *ne + ægher*; cf. *nāhwæper*.] See **Na3er**, **Noi3er**.
- Nek**, *n.* neck, V 187, 242. [OE. *hnecca*.]
- Neltow**. See **Nil**.
- Nemeled**, *pp.* named, mentioned, XVI 10. [OE. *nemnan*, with *mn > ml*.]
- Nempned**, *pa. t.* named, II 600. [OE. *nemnan*.] See **Neuen(e)**.
- Ner(e)**, **Neir** (x), *compar. adj.* and *adv.* nearer, I 255; as *pos.*, near, X 77, XII b 114, XVI 43, 224, XVII 370; *adv.* nearly, VIII a 171, XVII 412; *prep.* near (to), VI 44, VIII a 294, X 67; **Nest**, *superl. next*, I 215; **Next(e)**, nearest, VII 13; next, I 138, &c. [OE. *nēar(a)*, compar. (cf. ON. *nēr*, compar. and pos.); *nēst(a)*, *nēxt(a)*.] See **Ny3**.
- Nere**, **Nes**. See **Nas**.
- Nesch**, *adj.*; *quasi-sb.* (what is) soft, pleasant, VI 246. [OE. *hnesce*.]
- Nest**. See **Ner(e)**.
- Nest(e)**, *n.* nest, IV b 36, IX 252, XIII a 22. [OE. *nest*.]
- Neuen(e)**, *v.* to name, mention, I *introd.*, XVII 12. [ON. *nefna*.]
- Neuer(e)**, *adv.* never, I 152, VIII a 23 &c.; not at all, I *introd.*, XVII 313; *neuer sa*, so, no matter how, IV a 75, V 61, VI 211; *neuer þe lesse*, nevertheless, I 71. [OE. *nēfre*.]
- New(e)**, **Nw(e)** (v, vi), *adj.* new, II 217, v 176, 332. VI 167, VIII a 294, &c.; *quasi-sb.* IX 275; *na new*, no new thing, IV a 42; *for new*, in exchange for new (ones), VII 13; *adv.* anew, II 593; newly, v 155; *now neue* (OE. *nū niowan*), just lately, XVI 314. [OE. *niowe*.]
- Next**; **Nye**. See **Ner(e)**; **Noy(e)**.
- Nyghys**. See **Negh**.
- Nyght**, **Ni3t**, **Ny3t**; **Nyocht** (x); **Nyht** (xii); *n.* night, I 29, II 370, VII 127, X 197, XII a 68, &c.; *be ny3t*, *nyhte* (dat.), at night, XII a 117, 131, XV 15; *on nyght*, at night, XV h 22; see next. [OE. *niht*.] See **Nazt**.
- Nyghtes**, **Nihtes**, **Nytes** (xv), *adv.* at, by, night, XV c 21; with *prep.*, a *nyghtes*, *be nytes*, VIII b 16, XV 120. [OE. *nihtes*.]
- Nyght-rest**, *n.* rest at night, IV a 83. [OE. *niht + rest*.] See **Ryste**.
- Nygromansye**, *n.* necromancy, black magic; (used vaguely as) impious nonsense, XI a 5. [OFr. *nigromancie* (i) s.]

# GLOSSARY

**Ny3, Nyh, Nee** (IV), **Nei3e** (II), *adv.* nigh, at hand, close (by), XII a 155, b 13, XIII a 52, b 61; *nyh aboute*, near at hand, XII a 74; almost, II 199; *prep.* near (to), IV a 11 (note), XII b 29. [OE. *nā(a)h.*] See **Ner**(e), **Welne3**.

**Ny3t-olde**, *adj.* kept over night, a day old, VIII a 303. [OE. *niht-āld.*]

**Nyhte**, *v.* to become night, grow dark, XII b 19. [From **Nyght**, *n.*]

**Nyhtegales**, *n. pl.* nightingales, xv b 5. [OE. *nihtegale.*]

**Nil**, 1, 3 *sg. pres. ind.* will not (usually with another neg.) II 211, 332, 338; **Nul**, XV g 20; **Neltow** (nelt + þow), 2 *sg.* VIII a 149; **Nule**, *pl.* XV g 25; **Nold(e)**, *pa. t.* would not, was unwilling to, II 140, 280, V 163, VIII a 232; *subj.* V 82; *wold ich nold ich*, whether I would or not, willy nilly, II 154. [OE. *nyllan, nellan; nōlde.*] See **Ne**.

**Nym(e)**, *v.* to take, catch, seize; receive; take one's way, go (cf. *hap þe way ynome*, II 477); VIII a 43; *nym* to *þyseluen*, take upon yourself, be responsible for, V 73; **Nymmeth**, *imper. pl.* VIII a 15; **Nam**, *pa. t. sg.* I 76, II 154, XII b 84, 156; **Nom**, III 53; XII b 182; **Nom(e)**, *pl.* I 233, II 92, 287, VI 227; **Ynome**, *pp.* II 182, 193, 403, 477, 565 (note). [OE. *niman.*] See **Vnderiome**.

**Nyne**, *adj.* nine, XIII b 33. [OE. *nigon.*]

**Nis**, **Nys**, 3 *sg. pres. ind.* is not (usually with another neg.), II 131, 306, 552, XII b 118, XIV c 27, XV c 25. [OE. *nis.*] See **Ne**.

**Nist**, **Nytes**. See **Not**, *v.*; **Nyhtes**.

**No, Na** (IV), *adj.* no, none, (with neg.) any, I 11, 156, IV a 16, 36, 42 (see **Newe**), &c.; **Non(e)** (before *h* or vowel, or sep. from noun) I 15, 160, II 354, 392,

V 38, VIII a 54, IX 182, &c.; *na (no) kyn*, see **Kyn**, *pinge*; *non oper*, nothing different, see **Oper**(e); *na thyng, no þing*, see **Pinge**; **Nones**, *gem. sg.* in *n. cunnes*, see **Kyn**. [OE. *nān.*] See **Non**(e), *pron.*

**No, Na**, *adv.* not, no, I 79, II 84, IV a 58, &c.; see **Mor**(e), **No**-**more**. Used in II as equivalent of **Ne** (*q.v.*); *adv.* not, II 84, 147, 225, &c.; *conj.* nor, and (with neg.), II 140, 150, &c.; *no ... no*, neither ... nor, II 229. As *sb.* in *wipouten no*, undeniably, II 50 (cf. **Nay**). [OE. *nā.*]

**Noble**, **Nobel**, -ill, -ull, *adj.* noble, excellent, II 48, VII 5, 49, XIII b 67, XIV b 65, c 18, XVII 128, 276, &c. [OFr. *noble.*]

**Nobleie**, *n.* splendour; fame and *n. of þe world*, reputation for splendour among men, XI b 235. [OFr. *nobleie.*]

**Noblesse**, *n.* nobility, in *yourre ... noblesse* as form of address, IX 270. [OFr. *noblesse.*]

**Nobot**, *conj.* only, V 114. [OE. *nā + būtan.*]

**No3t**, **Noght**(e), **Noth** (XV f), **Nou3t**(e), **Nouht**, **Nout**, &c., and reduced **Not**, *adv.* not at all, not, I 64, 86, II 22, 73, 348, IV b 2, VIII a 46, b 94, XV f 7 (see App. p. 278), &c.; (with further neg.) I 15, II 306, 336, IX 196, &c. [OE. *nā-(wi)ht, nō-(wi)ht.*] See **Nast**.

**No3t**, **Noght**(e), **Nocht**, **Nou3t**(e), *n.* nothing, VIII a 142, 241, X *introd.*, XI a 4, XVII 96, 287; (with addit. neg.), VI 160; *for no3t*, to no purpose, I 183, XIV b 55; no good, in *now3t nis (nere)*, is (would be) impossible, II 131, 457 (cf. OE. *nāht*, worthless). [As *prec.*]

**Noy**(e), **Nuy**, **Nye** (V), *n.* harm, distress, V 73, VII 149, XIII a 49; *noy for to here*, grievous to hear (cf. **Pine**, **Reuþe**), VII 133. [Shortened from OFr. *anoi*,

# GLOSSARY

- anui**; with Nye compare Byled, Strye.]
- Noye**, *v.* to do harm, XIII a 36. [Shortened from OFr. *anoier*.]
- Noys(e)**, Noise, *n.* noise, I 75, VII 133, XV b 3, &c. [OFr. *noise*.]
- Noise**, *v. intr.* to make a noise, XII a 78 (note). [From prec.]
- Noiper**, *pron.* neither, II 324; *conj.* in *noiper* . . . *no*, neither . . . *nor*, II 346. [Nauþer, Noper infl. by Neyþer.]
- Nolde**. See Nil.
- Noman**, *n.* nobody, XII a 67, b 8, &c. [OE. *nān* + *mann*.]
- Nombre**, Nowmber, *n.* number, VII 86, IX 195. [OFr. *nombre*, *nombr*.]
- Non(e)**. See Name, Nym(e).
- Nomore**, *n.* nothing more, VIII a 90; Namore, VIII a 140. [OE. *nā* + *māre*, neut.] See Mor(e).
- Non(e)**, Nane (IV, X), *pron.* none, not one, I 197, V 102, X 143, XII b 13, XIII a 23, &c.; no one, (with neg.) any one; I 153, II 423, IV a 13, V 36, VI 83, X 130, &c. [OE. *nān*.] See No, *adj.*
- None**, Noyne (x), Noon, *n.* noon, mid-day hour, II 372, VII 129, X 67, XIII a 28, XVII 317, &c.; Nones, *pl.* mid-day meal, VIII a 139. [OE. *nōn*, L. *nōna* (*hōra*).]
- Nonetide**, *n.* noontide, II 497. [OE. *nōn-tīd*.]
- Nones**; *for þe nones*, for the nonce (practically meaningless tag), II 53, XII a 83. [For *for þen ones* (OE. \**for þam ānum* + *adv. -es*) as regards that particular thing, occasion, &c.].
- Norysscht**, *pp.* nourished, IX 59. [OFr. *norris*, *norris-*.]
- Normans**, *n. pl.* Normans, XIII b 13, 20. [OFr. *Normant*, *pl.* *Normans*.]
- Norp**, *n.* and *adj.* north, XIII b 53, 64, XVII 477, &c. [OE. *norþ*, *adv.*; *norþ-*.]
- Norþeron**, *adj.* northern, XIII b 10, 56. [OE. *norþerne*.]
- Northumbres**, *n. pl.* Northumbrians, XIII b 58. [Cf. OE. *Norþ-hymbre*.]
- Not**, I *sg. pres. ind.* know not, XII b 164, XIV c 110; Nist, *pa. t.* (with neg.) knew not, II 288, 296, 494. [OE. *nāt*, *nyste*.] See Ne, Wite(n).
- Note**, *adj.* ? useful, required; desired, V 24. [! Rel. to next.]
- Note**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> affair, business, XVI 268 (with *pl. vb.*), XVII 264; *ado*, XVII 368. [OE. *notu*.]
- Note**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> (musical) note, II 438, XI b 162, &c.; tune, II 602, XV a 11. [OFr. *note*, L. *nota*.] See Countre note.
- Note**, *n.*<sup>3</sup> nut, IX 157 (note). [OE. *hnutu*.]
- Notemuges**, *n. pl.* nutmegs, IX 157. [Prec. + OFr. *mug(u)*, *musk*; cf. OFr. *nois mug(u)ede*, &c.]
- Noth**. See Noȝt, *adv.*
- Notwipstondinge**, *prep.* in spite of, XI a 25. [Noȝt + *pres. p.* of ME. *wipstonden*, OE. *wipstāndan*.]
- Nopeles**, *adv.* all the same, nevertheless, XIII a 6, b 3, &c.; Natheles, IX 51, XII a 130, &c. [OE. *nā-þe-lēs*.]
- Noper**, *adj.* no other; (*no*) *no noper*, nor any other, II 230. [OE. *nān* + *ōþer*.]
- Noper**; Nopynk. See Nauþer; ping(e).
- Novelrie**, *n.* newfangledness, new invention, XI b 124, 164, 169, 200, 206, 210, 215. [OFr. *novelrie*.]
- Novels**, *n. pl.* news, something new, XVII 508. [OFr. *novel(l)e*.]
- Nouȝt(e)**, Nou(h)t. See Noȝt.
- Noupe**, Noutho, *adv.* just now, II 466; at present, VIII a 199. [OE. *nū-þā*.] See Now(e).
- Nouper**, -ur. See Nauþer.
- Now(e)**, Nou, *adv.* now, I 128, IV b 43, XI a 21, &c.; *ōþer now* *ōþer neuer*, now or never, V 148;

# GLOSSARY

*see* Late, New(e); *conj.* since, now that, v 352, vi 29; *now* ... *now*, now that, vi 17. [OE. *nū*.]

**Nowder.** *See* Nanper.

**Nowhar(e), -where, Nawhere** (vi), *adv.* nowhere, v 96, vi 174, xiii a 17; in no case, not at all, v 186. [OE. *nā-hwār*.] *See* Whar(e).

**Nowmber; Nowper, &c.** *See* Nombre; Nanper.

**Nudep; Nuy; Nul(e); Nw(e).** *See* Nedeth; Noy(e); Nil; New(e).

**O.** *See* Of, On, On(e).

**Obediand, adj.** obedient, xvii 121. [Ofr. *obedient* with substitution of pres. p. -and.]

**Obediencer, n.** an obediendary, one owning obedience (to a monastery, &c.); an administrative officer of a religious house, viii b 95. [Ofr. *obediencier*.]

**Obitte, adj.** dead, xvi 269. [Nonce-use of L. *obitus*, deceased.]

**About.** *See* About(e)n.

**Ocean, n.** Ocean (as name of Indian Ocean), ix 9. [Ofr. *ocean*.]

**Occupacio(u)n, n.** occupation, employment, xi b 156, 251, 288, &c. [Ofr. *occupacion*.]

**Ocupied (about, in), pp.** occupied (with, in), xi b 114, 218, 242, 262. [Ofr. *ocupier*, altered on anal. of verbs in -fier, -plier, &c.]

**Od, adj.** odd, (some) over, xvii 57. [ON. *odda*, in *odda-madr*; *see* N.E.D., s.v. *Odd*.]

**Oder.** *See* Oper(e), *adj.*

**Of, Ofte, adv.** off, v 181, 340; of, out of, from (after *pat* relative), vi 65, ix 135, 282, &c.; (with infin.) ix 257, 282, &c.; *of the whiche* ... *ofte*, *see* next. [OE. *of*.] *See* Her(e), par(e), per(e).

**Of, Of, vii 5; O, ii 12, 283, vi 69, vii 18; prep. of.** (i) From, off,

out of, ii 29, iii 4, 36, v 131, 153, 179, vi 247, vii 169, viii a 204, &c.; out of, (made) of, in, ii 4, 362, ix 115, xvii 119, &c. (ii) By, iii 18, iv b 5, v 99, ix 55, xi b 31, 204, &c.; by (means of), with, ii 364, ix 65, &c. (iii) Of, about, concerning, i 160, ii 5, 12, iii 3, viii a 197, ix 147, xi b 1, 295, &c. (iv) *Forming equiv. of gen.:* as *possess.*, i 34, 216, &c.; *adjectival*, ii 3, iv b 34, &c. (*see* the nouns); in, as regards, &c., v 170, vi 71, vii 18, 38, 164 (first), viii a 52, xii a 9, xvi 129, xvii 543, &c.; *of breed*, &c., in breadth, &c., xvii 123, 125, 259, 520; (introd. actual measurement), ix 155, xvii 126; *objective gen.*, at, for, on acc. of, &c., ii 471, 573, viii a 38, 117, xi b 10 (first), xii a 144, &c.; *grame* ... *of*, wrath against, xvii 90; *partitive*, of, among, in, vii 43 (*see* Oper(e)), viii a 259, ix 182, xi a 39, xvi 388 (*cf.* note to ii 388); after Fr. idiom, ix 158, 227, 275, xii a 66; *see* Ony, Oper(e), Owen; *adverbial* (of time), for viii a 253; in, xi b 136. *Of the whiche* ... *ofte*, *of whom* ... *from*, of which, from whom (mixed E. and Fr. constr.), ix 25, 77; *of preiere of holy lif* (xi b 83), *see* Vnderstonden; for other idiomatic uses *see* the nouns, &c., concerned. [OE. *of*.]

**Offend, v.** to offend, xvii 108. [Ofr. *of(f)endre*.]

**Office, n.** duty, xi b 18, 21, 47, 60; *houses of offyce*, quarters, stables (orig. places set apart for menial duties), xvii 134. [Ofr. *office*.]

**Offringis, n. pl.** offerings, offertories, xi b 300. [OE. *offring*.]

**Of-hild, pa. t. sg.** withheld, iii 10. [OE. *of-hieldan*, pa. t. -hield.]

**Of-sende, v.** to send for, ii 428. [OE. *of-sendan*.] *See* Assent.

**Ofte, Ofte(n), adv.** often, ii 1, 197,

# GLOSSARY

III 39, &c.; *ofte(n) tyme(s)*, IX 61, 129, XVI 370. [OE. *oft*.]  
**Ofte(s)ithes**, **Ofte(s)aythes**, *adv.* often, IV b 27, VII 182, IX 63. [OE. *on oft-sīþas*.] See **Sithes**.  
**Oghne**. See **Owen(c)**.  
**Oght(e)**, **Oȝt**, **Ought**, **Ouȝt**, *pron.* anything, IV b 45, V 147, XII b 99, 107, XVI 100; *adv.* in any way, at all, XIV c 69. [OE. *ō(wi)ht*.]  
**Oghte**. See **Owe**.  
**Oȝain**; **Oȝe**; **Oȝene**. See **Aȝayn**; **Owe**, *v.*; **Owen(c)**.  
**Oyl(l)e**, *n.* oil, IX 35; *fig.* XVII 46. [OFr. *oile*.]  
**Ok**, *n.* oak, XIV c 57. [OE. *āc*.]  
**Old(e)**, **Alde**, *adj.* old, V 114, VII 5, XII *introd.* (see **Dai**), &c.; as *sb.*, in *old or jong*, *jong and alde*, any one, every one, II 221, IV a 49; *of olde*, of old, VII 26, 182. [OE. *dld*.]  
**Olif-tre**, *n.* olive-tree, XVII 510. [OFr. *olive+Tre*.]  
**On**, *adv.* on, II 343 (see **Do**); (still) V 232; (with *infin.* or *relative*), upon, at, in, I 89, II 367, VII 15, XV f 9, 10, XVI 179. [OE. *on*.] See **per(c)**.  
**On**; **O**, VII 106, IX 250, XV a 5, g 28; *prep.* on. (i) On, upon, I 92, 194, II 303, XV c 24 (following *pron.*), &c.; *on him seiȝe*, saw he had, II 325; *on my frendship*, as you value my f., XVII 362. (ii) At, V 112 (first), XV c 15, h 3, 22, XVII 137, &c.; (iii) In, I 99, XIV b 79, XV a 5, XVII 422, &c.; see **Bodi**, **Lyte**, **Lud**, &c.; after 'believe', I 89, VI 65; with *manere*, *wise*, I 80, V 124, VII 65, 77, XI a 11, XIV b 95, &c.; (reference) II 455, XV c 13, &c.; *on Englyssh tunges*, into English, I *introd.* (iv) Of (after 'think') I 221, &c. (v) A, in *on a day*, a day, VI 150 (OE. *on dæg*). (vi) A-, on (in *adv.* expressions), as *on haukin*, a-hawking, II 308; see **Behalue**, **Fote**, **Lofte**, **Slep**, &c. [OE. *on*.] See **A-**; **A(n)**, *prep.*; **Vpon**.

**Onderuongo**, *pp.* received, III 28. [OE. *under-fōn*, *pp.* *under-fāgen*.] See **Fonge**.  
**On(e)**; **Oon(e)**, XI a 41, XVII 2, &c.; **Oo**, I 180, 231; **O**, I 49, &c.; *adj.* one, a single, II 306, V 83, VI 170, IX 17, XI a 45, XIII b 45, XIV d 8, XVII 136, &c.; one (and the same), I 49, 231, II 95 (see **Cri**); one (indivisible), VII 2, IX 334, XVII 2, 169; one (as opposed to 'other'), I 180, IX 180, &c. (see **pe**, **Ton**); *o*, a certain, II 308; *oone or two*, one or two, some, XVII 133, 484; *quasi-sb.* in *into on*, together, XV i 6; *at on*, at one, in harmony, VI 18; *al oon*, (all) one and the same thing, XI a 41. [OE. *ān*.] See **A(n)**, **Ane**, **One**.  
**On(e)**, *pron.* one (thing or person), V 348, VI 197, IX 24, XI b 223, XIII a 24, XV b 23, 34, &c.; **Oone**, XVII 209; **Onen**, *dat. sg.* III 4; one (opposed to 'another'), IX 53, XIII b 16; *boȝe þat on and þat oȝer*, both, V 344; see **pe**, **Ton**; (some) one, a certain person, V 149, VII 54 (with name). [As *prec.*]  
**One**, *adj.* alone, only, V 6, VIII b 54, XIV b 61; strengthened with *al*, V 87, XII a 131, b 15; *a . . . one*, one . . . only, V 181, 277; *oure one*, by ourselves, V 177 (note); *let . . . one*, leave alone, avoid (cf. OE. *ān-forlūtan*), V 50. [OE. *āna*.]  
**Onehed**, *n.* unity, or simplicity; *onehed of wit*, the uniformity of men's understanding (interpretation) of the Bible, or the ease of understanding it, XI a 32. [OE. *ān + \*hādau*.]  
**Onely**, *adj.* in *onely aleȝy*, a single solitary, I 159; **Oon(e)ly**, *adv.* only, XVII 288, 307. [OE. *ān-lic*, *adj.*] See **Anely**.  
**Ones**, **Oneȝ** (v), **Onys** (XVII), *adv.* once, on a single occasion, I 182, II 122, V 212, XII b 92; formerly, V 150, VIII a 202; at

# GLOSSARY

- some (future) time or other, XVII 207, 389. [OE. *ānes*.]
- Onest**, *adj.* trustworthy, VII 48. [OFr. *honeste*.]
- Ony**, *adj.* any, IX 85, 245, XI b 300, &c.; *most of ony þing*, above all things, more than anything, II 33; *pron.* any, IX 326, XI b 147. [OE. *ænig*, infl. by *ān*.] See *Ani*, *Eny*.
- Onone**. See *Anon(e)*.
- Oo**, *adv.* ever, continually, XV b 7. [OE. *ā*.]
- Oo**, *Oon(e)*, &c. See *On(e)*, &c.
- Oostré**, *n.* inn, lodging, XVII 329. [OFr. *host(e)rie*.]
- Opan**, *Opon*. See *Vpon*.
- Opy**, *Open*, *adj.* open, V 2, XVII 344; manifest, XI b 42.
- Opy**, *adv.* manifestly, XI b 52; publicly, XI b 62. [OE. *open*, *open-lice*.]
- Opy**, *Oppen*, *v.* to open, XVI 122, 194. [OE. *openian*.]
- Oplondysch**. See *Vplondysch*.
- Or**, *conj.*<sup>1</sup> or, I 1, &c.; or ... or, either ... or, VIII a 244. [Reduced form of *Oþer*, *conj.*]
- Or**, *conj.*<sup>2</sup> before, ere (usually with *subj.*), VIII a 79, X 2, XVI 154 (see *Ware*, *adj.*) 156, 278, XVII 110 (see *Blyn*, 153, 263, &c.; (postponed) XVII 130; lest, XIV d 11. [See next.]]
- Or**, *prep.* before, ere, XVI 224, XVII 317, 481. [? OE. *ær*, pos. and compar. (once late Nth. *ar*) infl. by ON. *dr*, pos.] See *Ar(e)*, *Er(e)*.
- Orchard**, *n.* garden, orchard, II 66, 91, 163; Orchard-side, II 134. [OE. *ort-geard*, *orceard*.]
- Ordayn(e)**, *Ordainy*, *v.* to decree, establish, appoint, direct, arrange, contrive, fashion; &c., II 205, XVII 309; *Ordand*, XVII 119, 468; *Ordeigne*, XII b 216; *Ordayn(e)*, I 55, 148, VIII b 57, XI b 125, 132, &c.; *Ordand*, *Ordanit*, *pa. t.* X 11, 34, XVI 25, 226; *ordaynede to*, destined to, IV b 54. [OFr. *ordener*, 3 sg. *ordei(g)ne*, *-aine*.]
- Ordynal(e)**, *-alle*, *n.* a book setting out the order and manner of church services and ceremonies, XI b 1, 183, 186. [Med.L. *ordinale*.]
- Ordennaunce**, *Ordynaunce*, *n.* ordinance, decree, law, XI a 15, b 100, &c.; *preie oure ... ordynaunce*, say the prayers we have appointed, XI b 38. [OFr. *ordenance*.]
- Ordre**, *Order*, *-yre*, *n.* order, rank, VIII a 159, XI b 20; *pl.* religious orders, XI a 61; the (nine) orders of angels, XVII 10; moderation, in *holde þe ordyre of*, keep the rule of, observe moderation in, IV b 22. [OFr. *ordre*.]
- Orgon**, *n.* diaphony; singing in two parts, XI b 138 (note). [OE. *organ*, song, from L. *organum*.]
- Orysun**, *n.* praying; *yn orysun*, at prayer, 117. [OFr. *oreisoun*.]
- Oritore**, *n.* oratory, chapel, V 122. [OFr. *oratoire*, infl. by prec.]
- Orpedly**, *actively*, v 164. [OE. *orped-lice*.]
- Ost**, *Host*, *n.* (armed) host, army, II 290, X 43, 45; multitude, XIII a 32. [OFr. (*h*)*ost*, army.]
- Opeþ**, *Othes*, *n. pl.* oaths, v 55, XII b 44. [OE. *āþ*.]
- Oþer(e)**, *Other(e)*, *-ir(e)*, *-yre*; *Oder*, XVII 160; *Ouper*, I, (i) *Adj.*, other, another, other kinds of, I 18, 258, IV b 16, 45, v 274, IX 227, XII b 170, XVII 298 (see *Garn*), &c.; *Othre*, *pl.* XII a 82, 136; *many oþer folde*, see *Folde*; *othre gude*, some other good (thing), IV b 9; *oþer mani*, many other, II 496; *þat oþer*, see *þe*; *þis oþir daye*, the other day, XVI 148. (ii) *Pron. sg.* another, some one (something) else, the other, I 101, II 324, VI 89, X 22 (see *Aither*), &c.; *Oþerþ*, *gem. sg.* VI 90; *ichon oþer*, each man to his neighbour, XVII 112; *non oþer*, nothing different (from what has been said), VII 42, VIII *introd.*, a 173; *oþer oþer*,



# GLOSSARY

- pat oper*, see next and *pe*; *pl.* (uninflected), others, I 211, IV *b* 67, 78, V 355, VII 48, XI 54, &c.; *Othre*, *pl.* XII *introd.*, a 41; *Opren*, *dat. pl.* III 53; *derrist of other*, most excellent of (illogically for 'more worthy than') all others, VII 39. [OE. *ōper*.] See Anopire, Toþer.
- Oper**, **Other**; **Auper**, V 225; **Opur**, **Outhire**, **Owthyre**, IV *b* 8, 23, IX 276; *adv. and conj.* or, I 3, II 350, V 39, VIII *a* 305, &c.; *oper oper*, or any one else, V 34; *oper . . . oper*, either . . . or, V 148; *oper . . . or*, I 197, IV *b* 8, 23, IX 276; introducing alternative questions, VIII *b* 34, 35; *adv. in or oper*, or else, I 6; *oper . . . auper*, or else, V 225. [OE. *ā-hwæþer*, *ā(w)þer*; *ā-hwæþer*, *ōwþer*.] See Or<sup>2</sup>, Ayther, Euper.
- Oper-while**, **Other-while**, **Oper-wyle** (VIII *b*), *adv.* on another occasion, XVII 213; at other times, II 289, 297; now and again, VIII *b* 52; *other while . . . other while*, sometimes . . . sometimes, XII *a* 128. [Oþer, *adj.* + *While*.]
- Ou**. See 3e.
- Ouer(e)**, **Our(e)**, *prep.* over, I 177, V 246, X 84, 112, &c.; over and above, XI *b* 150; (of *time*) through, VII 166 (following noun); *adv.* over, II 578, V 164, &c.; *all . . . ouer*, all over, in all parts, VII 134 (*cf.* next); too, I 130, IV *b* 23, 24, VI 113, VII 36, &c. [OE. *ofer*.]
- Ouerall**, *adv.* everywhere, II 62, 208, XII *introd.*, *b* 184. [OE. *ofer all*.]
- Oueroast**, *pp.* overcast, clouded, VII 107, XVII 353. [OE. *ofer* + ON. *kasta*.]
- Ouercoma**, 3 *sg. pres.* overcomes, IV *a* 68. [OE. *ofer-cuman*.]
- Ouergrowen**, *pp.* overgrown, V 113, 122. [OE. *ofer* + *grōwen*, *pp.*]
- Ouerhaghede**, *pp.* raised too high, IV *b* 5. [Ouer, *adv.* + ME. *heizen* from Heigh.]
- Ouerlaide**, *pp.* covered over, sub-merged, XVII 306. [OE. *ofer-lægan*.] See Lay.
- Ouermochē**, *adj.* and *n.* too much, VIII *a* 255, XI *b* 219; *cf.* IV *b* 23. [OE. *ofer-mycel*.] See Mochel.
- Ouerraght**, *pa. t.* revised, VII 69. [OE. *ofer* + ? *rūcan* ? *reccan*.]
- Ouersēn**, *v.* to supervise, VIII *a* 107. [OE. *ofer-sēon*.]
- Ouerset**, *pp.* overthrown, defeated, XIII *a* 59. [OE. *ofer* + *settan*.]
- Ouertake**, *v.* to (re)gain, V 319 (note). [OE. *ofer* + ON. *taka*.]
- Ouerte**, *adj.* open, plain to see, VI 233. [OFr. *ouvert*.]
- Ouerturnyt**, *pp.* overturned, VII 148. [OE. *ofer* + *tūrnian* (see Turne).]
- Ought**, **Ouzt**, **Ouhte**. See Oght, Owe.
- Oune**. See Owen.
- Oure**, *n.* hour, time, I 188, 189, VI 170, 191, &c.; *Hourē*, I 190, VI 195. [OFr. (*h*)*oure*.]
- Our(e)**; **Our(e)**, **Ous**, &c.; **Ourn**. See Ouer(e); **We**; **Eorne**.
- Out(e)**, **Owt(e)**, *adv.* out, I 50, IV *b* 3, XI *b* 26 (see Charitē), XVI 18, &c.; abroad, out of doors, VIII *b* 16; as exclam. of anger, dismay, &c., XVI 185, 195, 343; *out(e) apon the*, fie on thee, XVII 229, 408. [OE. *ūt*, *ūte*.]
- Outguoinge**, *n. ate* *outguoinge of*, on departing from, III 4. [From OE. *ūt-gām*.] See Go(n).
- Ouper**, **Outhire**. See Oþer(e), *adj.* and *conj.*
- Outraye**, *v.* to transgress, XIV *c* 69 (*ouzt* is *adv.*). [OFr. *outrier*.]
- Oway**. See Awai.
- Owe**, **Owyn**, **Oʒe**, *v.* to have; to have (to), be bound (to), ought, XI *b* 6, XV *i* 4; with mixed *pers.* and *impers. constr.*, in *vus oʒe*, we ought, VI 192; to owe, VI 183; **Awe**, 2 *sg. pres.* XVII 171; **Oghte**, *pa. t.* possessed, XII *b* 48; **Ouhte**, ought to, VIII *b* 73;

# GLOSSARY

- Auzt**, was bound to, II 555. [OE. *āgan*, pa. t. *āhte*.]
- Owen(e)**, **Owne**, *adj.* own, I 126, v 291, VIII b 63, IX 185, &c.; **Oghne**, XII a 4; **Ojene**, III *introd.*; **Oune**, XIII a 47, b 18, &c.; **Owhen**, II 163, &c.; **Awen**, v 73, 233; **Awne**, XVI 237, XVII 74; *quasi-sb.* in *of hire owne*, of their own, IX 188; *haue of myn owen*, have property of my own, VIII a 77. [OE. *āgen*.]
- Owher**, *adv.* anywhere, II 17. [OE. *ō-hwār*.]
- Owy**; **Owr(e)**; **Owte**. *See* **Awai**; **We**; **Out(e)**.
- Owth**, *adv.* on top, x 6. [? Reduction of OE. *ufan*, *ufe-* + *wip*; cf ME. *out-wip*.]
- Owthyre**. *See* **Oþer**, *conj.*
- Oxe**, *n.* ox, XV f 5; **Oxen**, *pl.* IX 253, 255. [OE. *oxa*.]
- Page**, *n.* knave, fellow, XVI 125. [OFr. *page*.]
- Pay**, *n.* pay, v 179. [OFr. *paie*.]
- Paie**, **Pay(e)**, *v.* to please, satisfy, VIII a 304; *payes to*, is pleasing to, IV a 29; *impers.* in *me paies*, I am pleased, XVI 82; to pay, II 451, VI 164 (*fut.*), VIII a 87, XIV d 10; **Paied**, **Paied(e)**, &c., *pp.* satisfied, content, v 273, XVI 325, XVII 283; paid, VI 224, 243. [OFr. *payer*.] *See* **Apayed**.
- Palement**, **Payment**, *n.* payment, VI 238, XII b 151. [OFr. *palement*.]
- Payn(e)**, **Peyne**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> pain, suffering, torment, I 163, XI b 32, XVI 4, 122, XVII 547, &c. [OFr. *peine*.] *See* **Peynen**.
- Payne**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> bread, VIII a 144. [OFr. *pain*.]
- Payneme**, *n.* pagan, IX 171. [OFr. *pai(e)nisme*, sg. collect., pagans.]
- Palays**, *n.* palace, II 85, 157 (*see note*), 439. [OFr. *palais*.]
- Pale**, *adj.* pale, II 110, IV a 10; wan, chill (connoting 'fatal', 'ill-omened'), VII 100, 116, 125. [OFr. *pale*.]
- Palfray**, *n.* palfrey, saddle-horse (*esp.* for use of women), II 156. [OFr. *palefrei*.]
- Palmer**, *n.* pilgrim (properly one that had been to the Holy Land and bore a palm-branch in token of this), VIII a 66. [OFr. *palm(er)*.]
- Pans**. *See* **Pené**.
- Panter**, *n.* snare (for birds); *fig.* XI b 220. [OFr. *pantiere*.]
- Pappe**, *n.* breast, XV f 12. [Children's language.]
- Par**, **Per** (XII), *prep.* (with French words), by, through, for, VI 129, VIII a 250, XII a 7, b 18, &c. (*see the nouns*); transl. (in Fr. phrases) by *for*, *thurgh*, XII b 8, XV d 5, XVII 557, &c. [OFr. *par*, *per*.] *See* **Paramoure**, **-aunter**, **-fay**, **Perdé**.
- Paradys**, **Paradis(e)**, *n.* Paradise, II 45, 376, XVI 48, &c. [OFr. *paradis*.]
- Parage**, *n.* (noble) lineage, VI 59, XIV c 109. [OFr. *parage*.]
- Paramoure**, *adv.* with all (his) heart, XVII 80. [OFr. *par amour*.] *See* **Par**.
- Paraunter**, **Peraunter** (IX), **Peraventure** (XVII), *adv.* perhaps, v 275, VI 228, IX 272, XVII 503. [OFr. *par aventure*.] *See* **Auentur(e)**, **Par**.
- Parceyuet**, **Persauit**, *pp.* perceived, x 76, XIII a 13. [OFr. *parceiv-re*.]
- Pardoun**, *n.* forgiveness of sins, VIII a 66. [OFr. *pardun*.]
- Parfay**, *interj.* by my troth, II 315, 339, 382. [OFr. *par fei (fas)*.] *See* **Fai**.
- Parfyt**, **Perfyte**, **-fite**, *adj.* perfect, IV b 84, VIII b 88, IX 338. [OFr. *parfit(e)*.]
- Parfyttesse**, *n.* perfection, perfect conduct, VIII b 94. [From *prec*.]
- Parforme**, **Performe**, *v.* to complete, IX 170; to perform, XI b 194, 286. [OFr. *parfourmer*.]
- Parische**, **Parysahe**, *n.* parish; *attrib.* in *a. prest*, *p. chirchis*.

# GLOSSARY

- I 201, XI b 97.** [OFr. *paroche*, *paroisse*.]  
**Parlement, n.** parliament, council, II 216. [OFr. *parlement*.]  
**Parlours, n. pl.** parlours, living rooms, XVII 133. [OFr. *parlour*.]  
**Part, n.** part, share, VI 213, IX 31, 325, XI b 57, &c.; *more be an hundred part*, more (by) a hundred times, IX 301 (*lit.* more by the hundredth part: the use seems modelled on that of ME. *dele*; see *N.E.D.*, s.v. *Deal*, 1 e). [OFr. *part*.]  
**Part(e), v.** to divide, share, XII b 201; separate, I 103; *refl.* in *part me . . . with*, part with, leave, VII 96; *Partinge*, -yng, *n.* distribution, XI b 275; separation, IV a 31. [OFr. *partir*.]  
**Partener(e), n.** sharer, IX 325; *parteners of þe endes*, sharers (in their linguistic peculiarities) with the extremes, XIII b 55. [OFr. *parson*(*er*), infl. by *Part*.]  
**Party, Partie, n.** part, IX 1, 2, X 156, XIII b 52, &c.; side, IX 72; party (in legal proceeding), XII b 215; *most party*, most (part) of, XVII 49. [OFr. *parti*, *partie*.]  
**Pas, n.** pace, gait; *queynt pas* (as *adv.*), with skilful steps, II 300. [OFr. *pas*.]  
**Passage, n.** passage, pass, IX 205, 206. [OFr. *passage*.]  
**Passe(n), Pas, Pasi (III), v.**; *Passed*, -it, *Past(e)*, *pa. t.* and *pp.* (i) *Intr.* to pass, proceed, go, get, IV b 34, VII 125, VIII a 78, XVI 296, &c.; go one's way, depart, pass on, V 61, VII 112, VIII a 196, XVI 66, 96, 152, 194, &c.; pass away, XI a 9; *passe bi (be)*, pass (by), V 36, &c.; go over (through), IX 8, 137, &c.; *passe the see*, go abroad, IX 308, XIII b 39; *was past to*, had reached, VII 100; *pp.* past, gone by, over, VII 9, IX 317, XVI 105, XVII 181, &c. (ii) *Trans.* to cross, go over (through), pass (safely), V 3, VII 116, 171, IX 308, XIII b 39, &c.; to surpass, VI 68; *passyng*, exceeding(ly), IX 11, 232; to pass (time), III 44. *Passed*, *Passit*, *pp.* as *prep.* past, VI 168, X 2. *Cf.* *Apassed*. [OFr. *passer*.]  
**Pater, Pater-noster, n.** the 'Our Father', Lord's prayer, VI 125, VIII b 48, 91, IX 323, XI a 33, 35.  
**Patrones, n. pl.** patrons, those holding advowson, or right of presentation to benefices (earliest use in E.), VIII b 82. [OFr. *patron*.]  
**Pauement, n.** pavement, I 194. [OFr. *pavement*.]  
**Peece, n.** piece, VIII a 304, IX 46. [OFr. *pece*.]  
**Pees, Pesse, n.** peace, XIV d 15, XVI 66, 296. [OFr. *pais*, *pes*.]  
**Pees.** See *Pese*.  
**Peiere, v.** to impair, damage, XI b 250; *peierid* imperfect, XI b 26. [Shortened from Ap(p)eyre, Empeyre.]  
**Peyne.** See *Payn(e)*, n<sup>1</sup>.  
**Peynen, v. refl.** to take pains, endeavour, IX 272. [OFr. *se pener*, 3 sg. *peine*.] See *Payne*, n<sup>1</sup>.  
**Peler, n.** robber, XIV a 15. [From ME. *pelen*, OFr. *peler*, rob.]  
**Pelrinage.** See *Pilgrimage*.  
**Penaunce, n.** penance, V 324, VI 117, VIII a 78, b 88. [OFr. *pen(e)ance*.]  
**Pené (vi), Penny, Penny, n.** penny (a silver coin, a twelfth of the shilling), III 13, VI 150, 186, VIII a 275, &c.; *penny doyll*, see *Dele*, *Doyll*; *Pans*, *pl.* pence, III 6, 10, &c. (*cf.* ME. *paneyes*, and OFris. *panning*). [OE. *peni(n)g*, *pæn(n)ing*.] See *Halpeny*.  
**Peny-ale, n.** ale at a penny a gallon, thin ale, VIII a 304 (*cf.* Halpeny-ale). [Prec. + OE. *alu*.]  
**Pennes, n. pl.** quills, barrels of the feathers, IX 257. [OFr. *penné*.]  
**Peopull, People, n.** people, VII 16, 82, XIII b 1, &c.; *Peple*, VIII a 287, IX 165, XI b 19, &c.;

# GLOSSARY

- Pepul**(l), VII 145, XVI 194;  
**Poeple**, VIII a 156; **Puple**,  
 XI a 13, 20, b 268, XIV b 67, &c.  
 [Ofr. *people, poeple, puple*, &c.]  
**Peraventure**, -aunter. See **Par-**  
**aunter**.  
**Peroe**(n), v. to pierce, penetrate,  
 IX 224, XII a 104. [Ofr. *percer*.]  
**Peroil**, n. parsley, VIII a 281.  
 [Ofr. *persil*.]  
**Perd **, *interj.* (by God), indeed,  
 XVII 512. [Ofr. *pardieu*, -d .]  
 See **Par**.  
**Peroles**, *adj.* peerless; unequalled,  
 XVI 4. [From ME., Ofr. *per*.]  
**Perfite**, -fyte. See **Parfyt**.  
**Peril**, n. peril, VIII a 87, III, &c.;  
**Perellis**, *pl.* VII 116. [Ofr.  
*peril*.]  
**Peril**(l)ous, **Perelous**, **Perlous**,  
*adj.* perilous, dangerous, par-  
 lous, v 29, VIII a 45, XI b 44,  
 XVII 431, &c. [Ofr. *perillous*.]  
**Perish**, v. to perish, XVII 94, 155.  
 [Ofr. *perir*, *periss*.]  
**Perl**(e), n. pearl, v 296, VI 16,  
 IX 66, &c. [Ofr. *perle*.]  
**Persaut**. See **Parceyuet**.  
**Person**(e), n. person, IX 304, XI a  
 46, XII a 115, XVII 2. [Ofr.  
*person*.]  
**Pese**, **Pees**, n. a pea, v 296, IX  
 48; *at a peas*, at nought, VIII a  
 162; **Pesen**, *pl.* peas, pease,  
 VIII a 189, 293; **Peses**, VIII a  
 180. [OE. *pise*, *peose*.]  
**Pese-coddes**, n. *pl.* peascods,  
 pea-pods, VIII a 287; **Pese-lof**,  
 n. loaf made of pease-meal,  
 VIII a 172. [Prec. + OE. *codd*,  
*hlaf*.]  
**Pesible**, *adj.* tranquil, \*XI b 67  
 (MS. possible). [Ofr. *paisible*,  
*pesible*.]  
**Pesse**; **Pet**; **Pet **. See **Pees**;  
**Pyt**; **Pit **.  
**Philosophie**, n. philosophy,  
 natural science, IX 77. [Ofr.  
*philosophie*.]  
**Phisik**, n. (art, practice, of) medi-  
 cine, VIII a 266; (personified)  
 VIII a 264. [Ofr. *fisique*, L.  
*physica*.]  
**Picohe**, v.; *picche atwo*, † to  
 thrust apart, divide (on the  
 sharp point of the *pyk-staf*),  
 VIII a 97; to pitch, load (hay,  
 in homing the crop), VIII b 13.  
 [Perh. distinct verbs; see  
*N.E.D.*, s.v. *Pitch*.] See **Pike**.  
**Pictes**, n. *pl.* Picts, XIII b 6. [L.  
*Picti*; cf. OE. *Pihtas*.]  
**Pie**, n. magpie, XI b 249, XII a  
 75. [Ofr. *pie*.]  
**Pik**, **Pyk**, n. pitch, x 19, XVII  
 127, 282. [OE. *pic*.]  
**Pike**, v. to pick; *piked up*, † dug  
 out (with a pointed implement),  
 VIII a 105; **Pyke3**, 3 *pl.* † pick  
 out, get, VI 213. [ME. *pi(k)ken*,  
 with variety of senses prob. due  
 to confusion of distinct words;  
 see *N.E.D.*, s.v. *Pick*, *Pike*,  
 &c.]  
**Pykers**, n. *pl.* pilferers, VIII b 17.  
 [† From prec.]  
**Pykstaf**, n. pikestaff, staff with  
 a spike at lower end, VIII a 97.  
 [OE. *pic* + *st f*; cf. ON. (late)  
*pik-stafr*.]  
**Piler**, n. pillar, II 367. [Ofr.  
*piler*.]  
**Pylgrym**, **Pilgryme**, n. pilgrim,  
 VIII a 59, 96, 99, XIII a 48.  
 [Ofr. *pele(g)rin*, &c.; cf. OHG.  
 (from Fr.) *pilgrim*.]  
**Pilgrimage**, **Pylgrymage**, &c.,  
 n. pilgrimage, VIII a 66, 78, IX  
 325; **Pelrinage**, XII a 12.  
 [Ofr. *pel(e)rinage*, *pelrimage*,  
*peligrinage*, &c.]  
**Pilwe**, n. pillow, XII a 95. [OE.  
*pyle*, (once in gloss.) *pylu*.]  
**Pyn**, n. pin (as a something  
 valueless), XVII 364. [OE.  
*pinn*.]  
**Pynd**, *pp.* confined, penned, XVII  
 332. [ME. *pinne*(n), or *pin-*  
*de*(n); OE. *pyndan*.]  
**Pine**, **Pyne**, n. torment, suffer-  
 ing, grief, I 213, III 9, IV a 32,  
 50, 60, XVII 227, 437; toil,  
 VI 151; *pyne to behold*, (paren-  
 thetic), grievous to see, VII 145  
 (cf. Noy, Reupe). [OE. \**pin*;  
 cf. next.]

# GLOSSARY

- Pyne, v.** to torment, XVI 4, 219. [OE. *pinian*.]
- Pypyng, n.** piping, playing on pipes, I 6. [OE. \**pipian*, from *pipe*, pipe.]
- Pyt, Pitte, Pet (XII), n.** hole, pit, I 143, XII b 9, 11, 29, &c.; pit (of hell), XVI 271, 348. [OE. *pytt* (Kt. *pett*).]
- Pité, Pyté, Peté, n.** compassion, pity, II 101, IV b 57, 75, VIII a 193; *es* . . . *pyté*, is pitiful, IV a 87. [OFr. *pité*.]
- Piteuous, adj.** full of pity, III 39; **Pytosly, adv.** compassionately, VI 10. [OFr. *pitous*; *piteuous* is due to anal. of words like *Plenteuous, q.v.*]
- Pip, n.** pith, XIV c 90. [OE. *pipa*.]
- Placebo, n.** Vespers of the Dead, VIII b 48, XI b 131 (see note).
- Play(e), Pley, n.** mirth, rejoicing, IV a 59, XVI 392; (dramatic) play, XI a 34. [OE. *plega*.]
- Play(e), Pleie, v.** to play, amuse oneself, II 66, XIII b 22; rejoice, XII b 159; **Playinge, n.** disport, xv a 5. [OE. *pleg(i)an*.]
- Plain, Playne, adj.** flat, level, II 353; plain, clear, XVI 48; **Playnly, Pleynly, adv.** plainly, clearly, XI b 43, 47, XVI 267, 326. [OFr. *plain*.]
- Playni, Pleigne, Pleyne, Pleny, v.** to complain, III 19, VI 189; *refl.* in *pleyned hym*, made complaint, VIII a 152; to sue (at law), XII b 215. [OFr. *plaindre*, *plaighn*.]
- Planettis, n. pl.** planets, XVII 345. [L. *planēta*.] See *Starne*.
- Plas, Place, n.** place, I 155, II 40, x 152, &c. [OFr. *place*.]
- Platen, n. pl.** (plates), pieces of (silver) money, xv g 4, 15, 21, 23 (cf. 'plates' in Wicliffe version, Matt. xxvi 15, &c.). [OFr. *plate*.]
- Plee, n.** (plea, lawsuit), quarrel, IX 81. [OFr. *plai(d)*, *plait*, *plet*, &c.] See *Plete*.
- Pleigne, Pleny.** See *Playni*.
- Plenté, -ee, n.** plenty, abundance, II 253, VIII a 156, XIII a 63, XVI 392; *quasi-adv.* in *plenté*, abundantly, XVII 146; *more plentee*, in greater abundance, IX 245. [OFr. *plenté*.]
- Plenteuous, adj.** abundant, XI b 265. [OFr. *plentivous*, *-evous*.]
- Plese, v.** to please, VI 124, VIII a 105, 290, b 89, IX 321; **Plesynge, n.** in *to pl. of*, so as to please, \*XI b 108. [OFr. *plaisir*, *ple(i)sir*.]
- Plesance, n.** pleasure, liking, IX 327, x *introd.*; *do the plesance*, perform the pleasant office, XII a 185. [OFr. *plaisance*, *ples*.]
- Plesant, adj.** pleasant, IX 278. [OFr. *plaisant*, *ples*.]
- Plete, v.** to sue for; claim, VI 203. [OFr. *plaitier*, *pledier*, &c.] See *Plee*.
- Plyzt, n.** (liability), offence, v 325. [OE. *pliht*.]
- Plizte, v.** to plight, pledge, VIII a 35. [OE. *plihlan*.]
- Plom, n.** pluimmet; as *adj.* vertical, straight down (measured by the plumb-line), XVII 520. [OFr. *plomb*.]
- Plouman, Plouzman, Plowman, n.** ploughman, VIII a 3, 147, 152, XIV d 5. [Next + OE. *mann*.]
- Flow(e), n.** plough, VIII a 96, 99, 156, &c.; **Plough, XVII 534; Plowgh, IX 254.** [OE. *plōg* (a land-measure); ON. *plōg-r*.]
- Flow-fote, n.** a stave supporting the plough-beam and regulating furrow's depth, but here appar. = 'plough-staff' (cf. other readings 'plou-bat'), a staff ending in a small spade for clearing earth, &c., from mould-board, VIII a 97. [Prec. + OE. *fōt*.]
- Plus, adv.** (in French phrase) more, VIII a 306. See *Chaude*.
- Poeple.** See *Peopull*.
- Poesie, n.** poetry, poem, XII a 1, 62. [OFr. *poesie*.]
- Pouere.** See *Pouer(e)*.
- Poyet, Poete, n.** poet, VII 33, 47, XII *introd.* [OFr. *poete*.]

# GLOSSARY

- Poynt(e), Point, n.** (i) (sharp) point, v 324, IX 118; (ii) point (of time or place), VII 100, XII a 68; *at the poynt*, to hand, IX 253; *bryng me to þe poynt*, come to the point with me, v 216; item, detail, instance, matter, &c., VI 234, VIII a 38, IX 287, XI b 106, XVI 105, 326, &c. [OFr. (i) *pointe*, (ii) *point*.]
- Poynted, adj.** pointed, IX 55, 105. [From prec. (i).]
- Poysoun, n.** poison, IX 94. [OFr. *poison*.]
- Poysoun, v.** to poison, VIII a 293. [OFr. *poisonner*.]
- Poletes, n. pl.** pullets, chickens, VIII a 275. [OFr. *polete*.]
- Polysse (v), Pollis(s)che, Polylsch, v.** to polish, IX 35, 41, 119, 121, &c.; to cleanse, v 325. [OFr. *polir*, *poliss-*.]
- Pond, n.<sup>1</sup>** pool, lake, XIII a 19, 31, 43, &c.; Pound, XIII a 21, 23, 24, 25. [OE. \**pūnd*, cf. *pýndan*.]
- Pond, n.<sup>2</sup> pl.** pounds, III 21, 24, &c.; Poundis, XI b 162. [OE. *pūnd*.]
- Pope, n.** Pope, I 249, VIII b 82, IX 286, XI b 46. [OE. *pāpa*.]
- Popi, n.** poppy, XII a 81. [OE. *popig*.]
- Por-.** See Pur-.
- Porche, n.** porch, I 77. [OFr. *porche*.]
- Pore.** See Pouer(e).
- Poret(te), n.** (young) leek or onion, VIII a 281; *collect. sg.* VIII a 293. [OFr. *porêt*, leek; *porette*, small onion.]
- Porful, adj.** poverty-stricken, xv f 2. [From Pouer(e), Pore.]
- Porpos.** See Purpos.
- Porter, n.** porter (at the gates), II 380, v 4, &c. [OFr. *port(er)*.]
- Portos, n.** (pl. as sg.) breviary, XI b 228 (see note). [OFr. *porte-kors*.]
- Possyble, adj.** possible, VI 92. [OFr. *possible*.]
- Post(e)les, n. pl.** apostles, xv g 24, 25; itinerant preachers, VIII a 143. [OE. *postol*.] See Apostel.
- Potage, n.** (vegetable) soup, VIII a 144. [OFr. *potage*.]
- Potful, n.** potful, VIII a 180. [OE. *pott* + *full* (properly adj. with prec. noun).]
- Pound.** See Pond.
- Pouerlich, adv.** in humble guise, II 236, 567. [From prec.]
- Pouer(e), adj.** poor, humble, II 430, 486, XII b 20, 36, &c.; Pouere, XI b 272; Poure, III 48, IV b 20, VIII b 82; Pore, VI 213, VIII a 18, XI b 255, &c.; *adj. pl. as sb.*, poor (people), the poor, III 8, 41, VIII a 18, &c.; Pouren, *dat. pl.* III 7. [OFr. *pov(e)re*, *poure*.]
- Pour-.** See Pur-.
- Power(e), Pouer, Poure, n.** ability, power, VIII a 35, XII a 187, XVI 219; authority, VIII a 143; forces, XIV c 46. [OFr. *po(u)eir*, *pouer*.]
- Pray(e), n.** prey, II 313, XVI 175; *fig.* (of good things won as prize) VI 79. [OFr. *preie*.]
- Prece, Pres(s), v.** to press; thrust, force, X 49, 69, &c.; *intr.* and *refl.* to press forward, hasten, v 29, x 131; *pressit on*, assailed, x 190; *hardest pressit*, most hard pressed, x 150. See Prees. [OFr. *presser*; on forms *prece*, *pre(e)s*, see *N.E.D.*]
- Preche, v.** to preach, VIII a 143, XI b 7, 24, XVI 51, &c.; Prechinge, -ynge, *n.* preaching, III 49, XI b 3, &c. [OFr. *prech(er)*.]
- Precious, Precy(i)ous(e), adj.** precious, costly, IX 42, 99, XI b 257; *precious ston*, II 151, 366, IX 123. [OFr. *precious*.]
- Preef, n.** test, IX 128. [OFr. *proeve*.] See Preue.
- Frees, Press, n.** press; crowd, XII b 213; uproar, commotion, XVI 125. [From Prece, *q.v.*]
- Preened.** See Preue.
- Preie, Preye(n), Prey, Pray(e), v.** to pray, beg, II 534, IV b 8, VIII a 119, 250, XI b 37,

# GLOSSARY

- XVII 242, &c.**; **Praid, Preide, Preyd(e), pa.** *l.* I 89, II 224, VIII a 117, XII b 69; *pray, pray to, VI 124, prey of, beg for, VIII a 38, 117; prey to, pray (to), IX 320, 322; Preiynge, n.* in *p. of lippes*, prayer with lips (only), XI b 89. [OFr. *preier.*]
- Preiere, Preyer(e), Prezer** (XIV c), *n.* prayer, VIII a 244, b 88, XI b 36, XIV c 78, &c.; *preiere in lippis, p.* with the lips (only), XI b 90. [OFr. *preiere.*]
- Preise(n), Preyse, Prayse, v.** to praise, esteem, V 4, VIII a 102, b 31, XI b 176, 182. [OFr. *preis(i)er.*] See **Prese, Prys, Prist.**
- Preostas.** See **Prest(e), n.**
- Pres(s).** See **Prece, Pres.**
- Prese, n.** praise, great worth, VI 59. [Stem of **Preise(n)** with AFr. monophthongization.]
- Presence, n.** presence, IX 94, XII b 127, &c. [OFr. *presence.*]
- Present(e), adj.** present, IX 128, 336; as *sb.* in *in your presente*, in your presence, VI 29. [OFr. *present.*]
- Present, n.** present, gift, I 123, VIII a 42, 290. [OFr. *present.*]
- Presente, v.** to give gifts to, IX 24. [OFr. *presenter.*]
- Prest, adj.** prompt, quick, VIII a 190, XIV b 67; **Prestly, adv.** promptly, VIII a 87. [OFr. *prest.*]
- Prest(e), n.** priest, I 8, 9, III 49 (*dat.*), 53, &c.; **Preost, XI b 291.** [OE. *præost.*]
- Presthod, n.** priesthood, XI b 47. [OE. *præost-hād.*]
- Pretermynable, adj.** who pre-determines, fore-ordains, VI 236. [Appar. invented for rhyme from *pre + terminable* used actively.]
- Preue, Preeue, v.** to prove, show, VII 47, IX 298; to test, IX 297; to approve, IX 305. [OFr. *preuv-, proev-, &c.* accented stem of *prover.*] See **Preef, Proue.**
- Pryde, Pride, n.** pride, magni-ficence, IV a 59, b 14, XI b 55, XVII 543, &c.; *of pryde*, proud, XVI 182. [OE. *prȳdo.*] See **Proude.**
- Priis.** See **Prys.**
- Prike, v.** to spur; *intr.* gallop, II 141, XIV a 15. [OE. *prician*, to prick.]
- Pryme, n.** prime, first division of the day according to the sun (varying with the season), or a fixed period 6-9 a.m.; *heighe pryme*, fully prime, end of the period of prime, about 9 a.m., VIII a 106. [OE. *prim*, from L. *prima* (*hōra*).]
- Prymer, n.** devotional manual, VIII b 48 (note). [Origin of name doubtful; see *N.E.D.*]
- Primerole, n.** primrose, XV c 9, 10, 13. [OFr. *primerole.*]
- Prynce, Prince, n.** prince, V 4 (*i.e.* Sir Gawayne), XIV c 59, XVI 182, &c. [OFr. *prince.*]
- Princypall, Principall, adj.** and *n.* chief, IX 1, 28, XVI 111; **Principaly, adv.** in the first place, XI b 96. [OFr. *principal*, or L. *principālis.*]
- Pryour, n.** priory, VIII b 95. [OFr. *priorie*; with this form of the suffix *cf.* *Oritore.*]
- Prys, Priis, Priis (II), n.** worth, excellence, V 296, VI 59; *of priis, &c.*, worthy, excellent, noble, II 51, 64, 249, V 330, VII 47. [OFr. *pris*, earlier *pricis.*] See **Preise(n), Prist.**
- Prisoune, Prison, n.** prison, XI b 126, XVI 220 (or read *prisounes*, prisoners; see note). [OFr. *priso(u)n.*]
- Prist, pp.** esteemed, VII 33. [OFr. *pris(i)er.*] See **Preise(n).**
- Processioun, n.** procession; pomp, II 587. [OFr. *pro-cession.*]
- Proferi, Profre, v.** to offer, II 434, V 278, VIII a 25, XII b 122, &c. [OFr. *proffrir*; *proferer.*]
- Profession, n.** declaration; vows (on entering religious order), in *singular prof.*, special vows,

# GLOSSARY

- as opposed to the regular vows taken by all priests, XI *b* 101. [OFr. *profession*.]
- Profit**, *n.* profit, VIII *b* 107. [OFr. *profit*.]
- Profit-**, **Profytable**, *adj.* profitable, advantageous, VIII *a* 270, XIII *b* 68. [OFr. *profitable*.]
- Prologe**, *n.* prologue, VII 96. [OFr. *prologue*.]
- Property**, *n.* property, special virtue, VI 86. [OFr. *propriété*.]
- Prophet(t)e**, *n.* prophet, XI *b* 18, XV *g* 9, XVI 267, &c. [OFr. *prophete*, L. *propheta*.]
- Propheeye**, **Prophieye**, *n.* prophecy, IX 216, XVI 27. [OFr. *prophécie*.]
- Propheciéd**, *pa. t.* prophesied (MS. *prophecie*), XVI 188. [From prec.]
- Propre**, *adj.* proper, separate, IX 187; **Propurly**, *adv.* properly, rightly (*or* of my own knowledge, at first hand), IX 264. [OFr. *propre*.]
- Proude**, **Prowd(e)**, *adj.* magnificent, glorious, II 376; proud, haughty, arrogant, V 36, 201, VIII *a* 191, XV *b* 32, &c.; *prowdist of pryde*, greatest in pride (*or* splendour), XVII 543; **Prowdly**, *adv.* out of pride, XVII 17. [OE. *prūt* (rarely *prūd*), from OFr. *prout*, *prou(d)*, valiant.]
- Proue**, **Prufe**, *v.* to prove; demonstrate, show, X 74, XVI 255; test, try, XVII 460. [OFr. *prover*; cf. OE. *prōfian*.] See **Preue**.
- Prow(e) (to)**, *n.* benefit, good (of), IV *b* 82, XVI 220, 326; *may to prow*, may be of benefit ('prow' prob. apprehended as infin.), I *introd.* [OFr. *prou*.]
- Psalme**, *n.* psalm, VIII *a* 246; *Seuene Psalmes*, the Seven Penitential Psalms, VIII *b* 49; note allit. with *s*. [OE. (*ψ*)*salm*, L. *psalmus*.]
- Puire**, **Puit**. See **Pure**, **Putte(n)**.
- Pull**, *v.*; **Puld**, *pa. t.*; to drag, VII 178; *pull up*, hoist, VII 125, XVII 153. [OE. *pullian*.]
- Puple**. See **Peopull**.
- Puplisshid**, *pp.* (rime requires *puplist*), openly declared, XVI 59. [OFr. *puplier* + *-is(h)* from other verbs of Fr. origin.]
- Purchase**, **Porchase**, **Pourochase**, *v.* to acquire, obtain, VI 79, VIII *b* 81, XII *a* 18. [OFr. *p(ō)urchac(i)er*.]
- Pure**, **Puire**, *adj.* pure; elegant, seemly (cf. Clene), V 330; utter, sheer, VIII *a* 111, IX 31, XIV *c* 13. [OFr. *pur*.]
- Pure(n)**, *v.* to purify, V 325, IX 45. [OFr. *puer*.]
- Purgatorie**, *n.* Purgatory, VIII *a* 45. [L. *Purgatorium*.]
- Purge**, *v.* to purge out, IV *b* 77. [OFr. *purg(i)er*.]
- Purper**, *adj.* purple, II 242. [OFr. *purpre*; cf. OE. *purpuren*.]
- Purpos(e)**, **Pourpos**, **Porpos**, *n.* intention, purpose, resolve, IV *b* 73, VI 148, VII 118, XII *a* 21, XIV *b* 39; *put in a p.*, resolved, VII 112. [OFr. *po(u)rpos*.]
- Purpose(n)**, *v.* to intend, XI *b* 110. [OFr. *po(u)rposer*.]
- Purs**, *n.* purse, XII *b* 157, 173, 182. [OE. *purs*.]
- Pursewe**, **Pursuen**, **Poursuie**, *v.* to follow, pursue, IX 229, XII *b* 7; persecute, torment, IX 93; *pursewe to*, go eagerly to, XVI 316. [OFr. *pursiwer*, *pursuer*.]
- Purwaye**, **Purweye (to)**, to provide, prepare (for), XVI 69, XVII 553. [OFr. *po(u)rweier*.]
- Putte(n)**, **Puit** (XIV *c*), *v.*; **Put(te)**, *pa. t.* and *pp.*; to thrust, IV *b* 3, 10, X 187, XVI 259, XVII 39; to put, set, VII 112 (see **Purpos**), VIII *a* 191, XII *b* 141, XIV *c* 12, XVII 21; to impose, XI *a* 64; *putte away*, do away with, XI *b* 127; *puttem errour in*, impute error to, XI *b* 77; *put hom þerto*, set themselves to the task, VII 33; *putten hem into*, put out on, IX 183;



# GLOSSARY

- put onto payn*, set in torment, XVII 547; *putte wryten*, set in writing, IX 318. [OE. *pūtan*, *ŷtān*, *potian*; see *N.E.D.*]
- Qu(h)-**. See also *Wh-*.
- Qualitee**, *n.* degree (of goodness), question of how good, IX 335. [OFr. *qualité*.]
- Quantytee**, **Quantité**, *n.* limitation of greatness, question of how great, IX 336; capacity, quantity, X 26. [OFr. *quantité*.]
- Quarell**, *n.* cross-bow bolt, IX 258. [OFr. *quar(r)el*.]
- Quap**, **Quath**, *pa. t. sg.* quoth, said, II 127, VIII b 26, &c.; **Quat3**, VIII a 3; **Quod**, V 58, VI 61, &c. [OE. *cwæp*.]
- Queer**, *n.* choir, VIII b 63, XI b 172. [OFr. *cuér*.]
- Queynt**, *adj.* skilful, elegant, II 299, 300 (see *Pas*); **Koyntly**, *adv.* cunningly, V 345. [OFr. *cointe*, *queinte*, &c.]
- Quelle**, **Qwell**, *v.* to kill, destroy, IV a 92, V 41. [OE. *cwellan*.]
- Queme**, *adj.* pleasant, V 41. [OE. *cwēme*.]
- Quen**. See *Whan(ne)*.
- Queen(e)**, **Queen(e)**, *n.* queen, II 51, 71, VI 55, IX 190, XII a 195, &c. [OE. *cwēn*.]
- Querele**, *n.* (legal) complaint, accusation, XII b 209. [OFr. *querel(l)e*.]
- Questioun**, *n.* question, IX 178. [OFr. *question*.]
- Quhedirand**, *pres. p.* whirling, or whirling, X 92. [Cf. Early ME. *to-ŷwideren*, *-hwideren*, whirl to pieces; OF. *hwaperian*, make a rushing noise.]
- Quhelis**, *n. pl.* wheels, X, 17. [OE. *hwē(o)l*.]
- Quhen**; **Quhill**. See *Whan(ne)*, *Whil*.
- Quyck**, *adj.* alive, V 41. [OE. *cwic*.]
- Qwyte**; **Qwyte**, **Qwyte** (XVII); *v.* to pay, repay, V 176, 256, VI 235, XVII 216, 228; **Quitte**, *pp.* paid, VIII a 92. [OFr. *quiter*.]
- Quite**, **Qwyte**. See *Whyyt*.
- Quo(m)**; **Quod**. See *Who*; *Quap*.
- Qwake**, *v.* to tremble, IV a 61. [OE. *cwacian*.]
- Qwart**, *n.* health; *masse in quart*, heals, IV a 15. [ON. *kwirt*, (neut. adj.) untroubled.]
- Qwiles**. See *Whiles*.
- Race**, **Rase**, *n.* headlong course, XVII 429; onslaught, violent blow, V 8. [ON. *rás* infl. by senses of related OE. *rās*.]
- Rajt**, **Raid**. See *Reche*; *Ride*.
- Rayle**, *v.* to order, array, XV b 13. [OFr. *reiller*.]
- Rayn**, *v.* to rain, XVII 147; **Renys**, *pl.* are raining down, XVII 351. [OE. *regnian*.]
- Rayn(e)**, *n.* rain, VII 109, 132, XVII 445; **Reyn(e)**, I 162, XIII a 18. [Oln. *regn*.]
- Rayne**, *n.* rein, V 109. [OFr. *raigne*, *rainne*, &c.]
- Raysede**, *pp.* uplifted, IV b 71. [ON. *reisa*.]
- Rake**, *n.* path, V 76, 92. [OE. *racu*, water-course, or ON. *råk*, streak (Norw. dial *rank*, path).]
- Ram-skyt**, *n.* a term of abuse, XVII 217. [OE. *ramm* + ON. *skila*.]
- Ran(ne)**. See *Ryn*.
- Randoune**, *n.*; *in a randoune*, with a rush, X 102. [OFr. *en un randon*.]
- Ranke**, *adj.* brave, fine, VII 122. [OE. *ranc*.]
- Rape**, *v. refl.* to hasten, VIII a 112, b 108. [ON. *hrapa*.]
- Rapely**, *adv.* hastily; quickly, V 151; rashly VI 3. [ON. *hrapalliga*.]
- Rapes**; **Rase**. See *Ropis*; *Race*.
- Rather**, *adv.* earlier, VIII a 112. [OE. *hrapor*.]
- Bathly**, *adv.* quickly, XIV b 6. [OE. *hræp-līc*.]
- Raton**, *n.* rat, XV i 1, 9, 18. [OFr. *raton*.]
- Rapeled**, *pp.* entwined, V 226. [See *N.E.D.* s.vv. *Raddle*, v<sup>1</sup>, *Ratheled*.]

# GLOSSARY

**Raue, v.** rave, talk foolishly, VI 3. [OFr. *raver*.]

**Ravyn, n.** raven, XVII 479, 499. [OE. *hræfn*.]

**Rauysche, v.** to carry off captive, carry away, IV a 16; **Rauey(se)d**, pp. II 82. [OFr. *ravir*, *raviss-*.]

**Rawe; Rawpe.** See Rowe; Renpe.  
**Real, adj.** royal, II 356. [OFr. *real*.]

**Reame, n.** realm, kingdom, VIII b 78; **Reume**, XI a 25, 32, 52; **Rem(e)**, VI 88, XIII b 47, 48; **Roialme**, IX 261. [OFr. *re(i)alme*, *re(a)ume*; later *roialme*.]

**Reasoune.** See Reson.

**Rebalde, n.** Rascal, XVI 99. [OFr. *ribauld*.] See Rybaudry.

**Rebuke, v.** to rebuke, VI 7, VIII b 86. [ONFr. *rebuk(i)er*.]

**Receyue, v.** to receive, take, VIII b 73; **Res(a)yue**, v 8, XVI 390; **Resceuyed**, pp. XI b 265. [OFr. *receiv-re*.]

**Beche, Bechoe, v.** to reckon, care, VIII a 114; *me no reche*, I care not (mixed pers. and impers. constr.), II 342. [OE. *reccan*.]

**Beche, v.** to give, v 256; **Ra3t**, pa. t. v 229; **Ra3te3**, 2 sg. v 283. [OE. *ræcan*, *ræhte*, *ræhte*.]

**Beches, n.** sg. riches, IV b 61. [OFr. *richesse*.]

**Recorde, v.** to ponder, go over in one's mind, IX 317; record, XII introd., b 111. [OFr. *recorder*.]

**Recoueren, v.** to regain, IX 131. [OFr. *recouuer*.] See Keuer(e).

**Recuyell, n.** compilation, VII introd. [OFr. *recueil*.]

**Red(e), adj.** red, II 107, XIV b 41, XV e 19; **red(e) gold**, red gold, II 150, 362. [OE. *rēad*.]

**Red(e), n.** advice, III 51 (dat.); counsel, plan, in *canno other red*, sees nothing else for it, XII b 102 (cf. Wane, n.). [OE. *rēad*, *rēd*.]

**Red(e), Bedyng, Reede, v.** to advise, counsel, IV a 45, v 43 (note), VIII b 108, XIV c 97, XVII 341, &c.; to read, II 1, IV b 9, x in-

*trod*., XII a 112, &c.; to read aloud, I 14; to reckon, VIII b 73; to think, XVII 427; *hard red* (inf.), heard read, XVII 46; **Ret** (OE. *rætt*, *rēt*), 3 sg. pres. reads, III 3, 16; **Reede**, pp. read, XVI 317. [OE. *rēdan*, *rēlan*, str., later wk.]

**Redere, n.** reader, IX 321. [OE. *rēdere*.]

**Bedi, Bedy, adj.** prompt, ready (to hand), II 380, VI 231, x 34, XII b 119, XVI 394; *al redy*, prompt(ly), XVI 120; **Bedyly**, adv. promptly, v 256. [Extended from OE. (*ge-*)*ræde*.]

**Redresse, v.** to redress, set right, XII b 206. [OFr. *re-dresser*.]

**Reformed (of), pp.** changed back to his proper form (from), XII a 19. [OFr. *reformer*.]

**Refusep, pres. pl.** reject, VIII b 82. [OFr. *refuser*.]

**Reghtewysnes, Reghtwysely.** See Ryghtwyse.

**Regioun, n.** region, IX 161, XII a 13. [OFr. *regioun*.]

**Regne, n.** kingdom, VI 141. [OFr. *regne*.]

**Begni, Regne, v.** to reign, II 425, IX 339. [OFr. *regner*.]

**Reheroe, Beherse, v.** to repeat, XI a 4, XII a 103; **Rehercyng(e), n.** recounting, IX 274, 279. [OFr. *rehercer*.]

**Reyll, n.** reel, XVII 298 (see Gam). [OE. *hrēol*.]

**Reynand.** See Ren.

**Beyny, adj.** rainy, XII a 53. [OE. *regnig*.] See Rayn(e), n.<sup>1</sup>

**Bele, v.** to reel, behave wildly, sway (in combat); *rele as we like*, let us fight as fiercely as we please, v 178. [Prob. related to Reyll.]

**Belece, v.** to release, v 274. [OFr. *relaissier*, *relesser*.]

**Belees, Reles, n.** release, discharge, VIII a 84, XVI 288, 290. [OFr. *reles*.]

**Beleif, Beleue, v.** to relieve, give relief to, x 151, 161, XI b 255. [OFr. *relouer*.]

# GLOSSARY

- Religioun**, *n.* religious rule, or order, VIII *a* 145. [OFr. *religion*.]
- Belikes**, *n. pl.* heirlooms, precious things, VII 122. [OFr. *relique*.]
- Rem(e)**. See Reame.
- Remembraunce**, *n.* recollection, VIII *b* 11. [OFr. *remembra(u)nce*.]
- Remene (to)**, *v.* to compare (to), interpret (as), XIV *c* 41. [!OFr. *remener*, bring back; senses seem due to assoc. with Mene, *v.*]
- Remissioun**, *n.* discharge, pardon, VIII *a* 84. [OFr. *remissoun*.]
- Remytte**, *v.* to hand on, refer (for consideration), IX 296. [L. *remittere*.]
- Remnaunt**, **Remenaunte**, *n.* remainder, V 274, 333, VIII *a* 94. [OFr. *remenant*.]
- Remorde**, *pp.* afflicted, VI 4. [OFr. *remord-re*.]
- Remwe**, *v.* to take away, VI 67. [OFr. *remuer*.]
- Ren**, **Renne**, *v.* to run, XIV *b* 6; to flow, IX 179, XII *a* 84; !**Reynand**, *pres. p.* XVII 111; see **Ryn**. [ON. *renna*.]
- Renys**. See **Rayn**, *v.*
- Renk**, *n.* knight, man, V 138 (see note), 178, 269. [OE. *rinc*.]
- Renne-about**, **Gad-about**, **Vagabond**, VIII *a* 142. [From **Ren**.]
- Renoun**, **Renowne**, *n.* renown, glorious name, in *of renoun*, *renouns* (*pl.* in Fr. constr. with ref. to several persons), I 248, II 202, XIV *b* 81. [OFr. *renoun*.]
- Rent**, *pp.* torn, VII 147. [OE. *rendan*.]
- Rental**, *n.* rent-book, VIII *a* 84 (see note). [OFr. *rental*.]
- Rentes**, *n.* revenues from property, VIII *b* 77, XI *b* 96. [OFr. *rente*.]
- Reparde**, *pp.* shut off, barred, VI 251. [OFr. *re-* + ME. *parren*.]
- Repe**, *v.* to reap, VIII *b* 15. [OE. *ripan*; on stem-vowel see *N.E.D.* s.v. *Reap*.]
- Repent(e)**, *v.* to repent, XVII 81, 91, 117. [OFr. *repentir*.]
- Repentance**, *n.* repentance, XVII 56. [OFr. *repentance*.]
- Repereyne**, *n.* head-reaper, harvest-overseer, VIII *b* 15. [OE. *rip*, harvest (or stem of prec.) + *rifa*.] See **Rene**, *n.*
- Repleye**, *v.* XVI 380 (see note). [Cf. OFr. *repley(i)er*, &c. or *replevir*; see *N.E.D.* s.vv. *Repledge*, *Replevy*, &c.]
- Reprene**, *v.* to reprehend, find fault with, VI 184. [OFr. *reprandre*, *preign-*.]
- Repreue**, **Reprouen (of)**, *v.* to reprove (for), V 201, XI *b* 187. [OFr. *repro(u)ver*, *reprouv-*.]
- Reprufe**, *n.* disgrace, XVII 84. [OFr. *repro(u)ve*.]
- Rerd**, **Rurde** (*v*), *n.* loud voice V 269, XVII 230; noise, V 151 (see **Rusche**), XVII 101. [OE. *rdord*.]
- Rert**, *pp.* (aroused), ready, VI 231. [OE. *rēran*.]
- Res(s)ayue**, **Resceyued**. See **Receyue**.
- Rescove**, **Rescoghe**, *n.* rescue, V 240; *mat3 rescoghe*, ! comes to the rescue (cf. *make rescowes*, *Morte Aithure* 433), VI 250 (see note). [Stem of ME. *rescouen*, *v.*, OFr. *rescourre*.]
- Resette**, *n.* (place of) refuge, shelter, V 96. [OFr. *recet*.]
- Residue**, *n.* residue, VIII *a* 94. [OFr. *residu*.]
- Reson**, **Resoun(e)**, **Reasone**, *n.* reason, (good) sense, VIII *a* 311, XI *a* 30, 48, *b* 6, XII *b* 225, XVII 501, &c.; (personified) VIII *b* 5, &c.; what is reasonable, XVI 263; reasoning, XVI 255; argument, saying, XVI 337; *by reson*, as a logical consequence, XVII 81; motive, in *by þat resoun*, with that intent, XVI 248. [OFr. *raison*, *re(i)son*.]
- Resonabele**, *adj.* reasonable, VI 163. [OFr. *resonable*.] See **Vnresounable**.
- Restay**, *v.* to stop; *intr.* to pause, VI 77. [OFr. *restair*; see *N.E.D.*, s.v. *Stay*, *v.*]

# GLOSSARY

- Restor(e)**, *v.* to restore, V 215, XVI 13, XVII 29; *true mon true restore*, let an honest man honestly restore (another's property), V 286. [Ofr. *restorer*.]
- Ret.** See Red(e), *v.*
- Reue**, *n.* reeve, manager of an estate, VI 182, XI b 288. [OE. (*ge*-)*rēfa*.]
- Reue**, *v.* to rob, steal, IV b 20; constr. with *dat. pron.* of person deprived, IV a 83, XV c 31. [OE. *rēafian*.]
- Reuey(se)d.** See Raunysche.
- Reuel**, *v.* revel, V 333. [Ofr. *reveler*.]
- Reuerence**, *n.* reverence; *at þe r.*, out of respect, V 138; *do a r.*, make an obeisance, XII b 128. [Ofr. *reverence*.]
- Reuerse**, *v.* to reverse, countermand, XI a 15. [Ofr. *reverser*.]
- Reuest**, *pa. t.* (*reft*.) vested, robed (himself), I 70. [Ofr. *revestir*.]
- Reulis**, *n. pl.* rules, XI b 203. [Ofr. *reule*.] See Rewle.
- Reume.** See Reame.
- Reupe**, *Rawpe*, *n.* (mental) pain, grief; *hedde r. þer of*, was grieved at that, III 20; *r. to here*, grievous to hear, V 136 (cf. Noy, Pine). [Extended with suffix *-þ* from OE. *hrēow*; cf. ON. *hrygð*.] See Rewe(ful).
- Reward(e)**, *n.* regard, consideration, in *takeþ r. of (to)*, give a thought (to), XIV c 105-7; reward, VI 244, XII b 42. [ONfr. *reward*.]
- Rewardep**, 3 *sg. pres.* gives reward, VIII b 32. [ONfr. *rewarder*.]
- Rew(e)**, *v.* to rue, regret, II 570, XVII 202; *it shal him rewe*, he shall rue it, XV a 23. [OE. *hrēowan*, pers. and impers.]
- Reweful**, *Ruful* (*v*), *adj.* rueful; piteous, II 114; grievous, V 8. [OE. *hrēow* + *full*.]
- Rewle**, *v.* to guide, XVII 429. [Ofr. *reuler*.] See Reulis.
- Rybaudry**, *n.* ribaldry, coarse jesting, II 9. [Ofr. *ribauderie*.] See Rebalde.
- Ribbes**, *n. pl.* ribs, IX 257. [OE. *ribb*.]
- Riche**, *Byohe*, *adj.* of high rank, noble, II 326, 446, VIII b 26, XV g 18, &c.; wealthy, III 52, &c.; splendid, costly, rich, II 81, 161, 356, &c.; high (feast), V 333; *quasi-sb.* noble (steed), V 109; *adv.* (or *predic. adj.*) richly, II 362. [OE. *rice*; Ofr. *riche*.]
- Byohe**, *n.* kingdom, VI 241. [OE. *rice*.] See Heunenryche.
- Byohed**, *pp.* directed, intended, V 138. [OE. *reccan*, but form prob. due to confusion with ME. *richen*, *ruchen* (OE. *\*ryccan*), draw.]
- Richt**, *Byoht*. See Right.
- Rydde**, *v.* to separate (combatants), V 178. [Blend of OE. *hreddan*, rescue, and ON. *ryðja*, rid.]
- Ride**, *Byde*, *v.* to ride, II 340 (*subj.*), 347, V 39, 76 (note), &c., *Raid*, *pa. t. sg.* X 149; *Rod(e)*; I 62, V 21, XV a 4; *him rod*, sailed, XIV c 61; *Riden*, *pl.* II 308; *Ryden*, *pp.* gone on military service (as knights), VIII b 78. [OE. *ridan*.]
- Rifild**, *pp.* despoiled, XIV a 16, 17. [Ofr. *rifler*.]
- Rife**, *adj.* plentiful, VII 122. [Late OE. *ryfe*, *\*ryfe*.]
- Ryfls.** See Ryue.
- Rigge**, *n.* back, II 500; *Bugge*, XV g 4. [OE. *hrycg*.]
- Right**, *Ryght*, *Riht* (XII), *adj.* right, proper, true, XII a 124, XVI 255, XVII 471, &c.; right (hand), IX 70. [OE. *riht*.]
- Right**, *Ryght*, *Riȝt(e)*, *Ryȝt*, *Riht* (XII, XIV c); *Rioht*, *Byoht* (x); *adv.* straight, right, II 100, 186, V 94, &c.; *ful riȝt*, straight (away), II 85, 191; *ryȝt vprise* (cf. *Vpperight*), rise up, XVI 31; correctly, XVII 139; exactly, just, right, I 94, II 166, V 236, IX 64, X *introd.*,

# GLOSSARY

- 102, XII a 146, XVII 513, &c.; *nicht ewin*, just, X 93; (with neg.) at all, VI 160, VIII a 145, b 86, XVII 524, &c.; very, IX 150, X 138, XIV c 10, &c. [OE. *rihte*.]
- Right**, *Ryght*, *Ryȝt*, *n.* right, XIV b 37; justice, V 278, VI 136, 231; just cause, VIII b 78; *by þe way of ryȝt to aske dome*, if they demand an award acc. to strict justice, VI 220; *Ryȝtes*, *Riȝtis*, *pl.* duties, XI b 203; obligations, V 274. [OE. *riht*.]
- Right**, *pa. t.* corrected, VII 69. [OE. *rihtan*.]
- Rightfull**, *adj.* just, IX 82; *Riȝtfulleste*, *superl.* XI b 193. [OE. (late) *riht-ful*.]
- Ryȝtfulnesse**, *n.* Justice, VIII b 32. [From prec.]
- Ryȝtwyse**, *adj.* righteous, IV b 7; *Reȝtwysely*, *adv.* righteously, IV b 55; *Reȝtewysnes*, *n.* righteousness, IV b 80. [OE. *rihtwīs* (*rehtwīs*), *-lice*, *-nes*.]
- Riȝtes**; *al to riȝtes*, quite correctly, fittingly, II 136; *to his riȝtes*, as he should be, fittingly, II 292. [Extension of *to riȝt*, according to what is right (see *Right*, *n.*), with adv. *-es*.]
- Ryme**, *n.* riming poem, I *introd.*; *Rymys*, *pl.* (trivial) popular poems, I 14; *Ryme couwee*, see *Couwee*. [OFr. *rims*.]
- Ryn**, *v.* to run, flow, pass swiftly, X 17, XVII 101, 277, 305, 357; *Ran(ne)*, *pa. t.* I 155, IV a 9 (note), X 107; *Bunne*, *pp.* in *be runne*, may have mounted up, VI 163. [OE. *rinnan*.] See *Eorne*, *Ren(ne)*.
- Rinde**, *n.* bark, II 260. [OE. *riind*.]
- Ryne**, *v.* to touch, V 222 (see note). [OE. *hrinan*.]
- Rynge**, *v.* to ring, resound, XV b 12; *Bonge*, *pa. t.* V 136; *Ry(n)kande*, *pres. p.* V 269 (confus. of *ng*, *nē*, freq. in this poem). [OE. *hringan*, *wk.*]
- Ryot**, *n.* strife, violence, IX 83. [OFr. *riot(s)*.]
- Rype**, *Ripe*, *adj.* ripe, VIII a 289, IX 140. [OE. *ripe*.]
- Ris**, *n.* leafy spray, II 305. [OE. *hris*.]
- Rise**, *Ryse*, *v.* to rise, IV a 62, V 17, XVI 394, &c.; *Ros*, *pa. t.* sg. VI 77, 146, 159; *Ryse*, *pl.* I 208; *Rysen*, *pp.* XVII 442; *Rysing*, *n.* resurrection, XVI 317. [OE. *ā-rīsan*.]
- Ryste**, *n.* repose, rest, IV b 10; *Rest(e)*, II 74, IV a 3, &c. [OE. *rest*; on *y*-form see *N.E.D.* s.v. *Rest*.]
- Ryste**, *Rest(e)*, *v.* to rest; *intr.* IV b 42, V 263; *refl.* IV b 38, IX 20. [OE. *restan*; see prec.]
- Ryne**, *v.* to tear (asunder), cleave, V 222 (note); *Ryſe*, 3 *sg. pres. intr.* is torn, XVII 399; *Roue*, *pa. t.* V 278; *Ryne*, *pp.* I 121. [ON. *riſa*.]
- Riueling**, *n.* a rough shoe (as nickname for a Scot), XIV a 19. [OE. *riſeling*.]
- Riu(er)**, *Ryuer(e)*, *n.* river, II 160, 308, IX 12, XII a 85, XIII a 16, &c. [OFr. *riuers*.]
- Ro**, *n.* peace, XVII 237. [OE. *rōw*, ON. *rō*.]
- Robbe**, *v.* to rob; *Yrobbed*, *pp.* III 18; *Robbing*, *n.* XIV b 6. [OFr. *rob(b)er*.]
- Robbere**, *n.* robber, XIV a 6. [From prec.; OFr. *robbour*.]
- Robe**, *n.* robe, II 81. [OFr. *roba*.]
- Roc**, *Rokke*, *n.* rock, V 76, 130, XV g 12. [Cf. OE. gloss *stān-rocc*, *scopulus*; OFr. *ro(c)que*.]
- Roche**, *n.* rock, II 347, V 131, IX 33, 62, &c.; *Roche(e)*, XIII a 21, 22. [OFr. *roche*.]
- Roché**, *adj.* rocky, V 226. [From prec.]
- Rod(e)**. See *Ride*.
- Rode**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> rood, cross, VIII a 94, XIV c 73. [OE. *rōd*.]
- Rode**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> rosy hue, fair face, II 107, XV b 13. [OE. *rudu*.]
- Rof**, *adj.* rough; grievous (with *sore*), or *! n.* gash, V 278 (note). [(i) As next with alteration of

# GLOSSARY

- final spirant (*cf.* *þof*), though this is not the usual form of 'rough' in this text. (ii) Related to *Ryue*, *v.*]
- Ro3(e)**, *adj.* rough, rugged, *v* 94, 109, 130; *Rouh*, *XIV c* 37; *Rowe*, *II* 265, 459 (*see* *Blac*); *Ru3e*, *v* 98. [OE. *rūh*, *rūg*, *rūw*.]
- Roialme**. *See* *Reame*.
- Boyis**, 2 *sg. pres.* talkest folly, *XVI* 99. [Unknown.]
- Bok**, *n.* distaff, *XVII* 338. [Cf. ON. *rokk-r*, MDu., MLG. *rocke*(*n.*).]
- Bokke**. *See* *Roc*.
- Romayn**, *n.* a Roman, *VII* 69. [OFr. *romain*.]
- Romance**, *n.* (French) romance, story, *XIV b* heading. [OFr. *romanz*.]
- Rome**, *v.* to wander, make one's way, *v* 130, *VIII b* 11. [ME. forms point to OE. *\*rāmian*.]
- Rooc(es)**. *See* *Roche*.
- Rooris**, 2 *sg. pres.* roarest, *XVI* 99. [OE. *rārian*.]
- Roopur**. *See* *Roþur*.
- Ropis**, *Rapes*, *n. pl.* *rcpes*, *VII* 147, *XIV b* 68. [OE. *rāp*.]
- Ros**. *See* *Rise*.
- Rose**, *n.* rose, *xv* *b* 13, *e* 19. [Oe. *rose* from L. *rosa*.]
- Rote**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> root, *v* 226, *VI* 60 (origin), *VIII a* 97, *XIV c* 82; *Rote*, *pl.* (or *collect. sg.*), *II* 256, 260. [ON. *rōt*.]
- Rote**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> way, in *bi rote*, on the way, *v* 139. [OFr. *rote*.]
- Roted**, *pa. t.* rotted, *I* 236. [OE. *rotian*.]
- Roþur**, *Roopur*, *n.* rudder, *XIV c* 25, 29, 36, 57. [OE. *rōþor*.]
- Roue**; *Rouh*. *See* *Ryue*; *Ro3(e)*.
- Roun(e)**, *n.* speech, voice, *xv* *b* 2, 29 (*see* note), *c* 36; [OE. *rūn*.]
- Round**, *adj.* round; *adv.* in *al abouts round* (as *prep.*) round, *XII a* 79; *Roundnesse*, *n.* roundness, *IX* 67. [OFr. *roünd*, *round*.]
- Rout(e)**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> host, company, (great) number, *II* 283, *x* 176, *XII b* 118, *XIV a* 16; *en a route*, in a mass, tumultuously, *XVII* 305. [OFr. *route*.]
- Rout**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> roar, loud noise, *x* 92. [Stem of OE. *hrūtan*, or ON. *rauta*; *see* *Rowtyn*.]
- Rouwed**, *pa. t.* rowed, *XIV c* 61. [OE. *rōwan*, *str.*]
- Rowe**, *Rawe*, *n.* row, *VI* 185; *be rowe* (*rawe*), *on rawe*, in (due) order, in turn, *xv* *b* 15, *XVI* 317, 401. [OE. *rāw*.]
- Rowe**. *See* *Ro3(e)*.
- Rowtyn**, *pres. pl.* they crash, beat, *xv* *b* 15. [OE. *hrūtan*; but *see* *N.E.D.* for various sources and senses of *Rout*, *n.* and *v.*]
- Rude-ovyn**, *n.* eve of the feast of the (Exaltation of the) Cross, *x* 42. [OE. *rōd* + *ūfen*.] *See* *Rode*, *n.*<sup>1</sup>
- Ruful**. *See* *Reweful*.
- Rugge**; *Ru3e*. *See* *Rigge*; *Ro3(e)*.
- Rugh-fute**, *n.* rough-footed, *XIV a* 19. [OE. *rūh* + *fōt*.] *See* *Ro3(e)*, *Fote*.
- Buyсанд**, *pres. p.* glorifying, in *r. hyme of*, glorying in, taking credit to himself for, *IV b* 80. [ON. *hrōsa sér*.]
- Runne**; *Burde*. *See* *Ryn*; *Rerd*.
- Busche**, *v.* to rush; make a loud rushing noise, *v* 136; *rushed on þat rurde*, I went on with that rushing noise, *v* 151. [Echoic, but app. based on OFr. *r(e)usser*, AFr. *russ(h)er*; cf. OE. *hrýscan*.]
- Sa**, *Saat*. *See* *So*; *Sitte*(*n.*).
- Sacramente**, *n.* sacrament, *XVI* 316. [L. *sacramentum*.]
- Sacrifise**, *-ice*, *n.* sacrifice *XI b* 202, *XII a* 15, 40. [OFr. *sacri-fice*.]
- Sacrylage**, *n.* sacrilege, *I* 4, 19. [OFr. *sacrilege*, *infl.* by suffix *-age*.]
- Sad(de)**, *adj.* steadfast, *IX* 92; heavy, grievous, *XVI* 44; *sette hym sadde*, give him sorrow, *XVI* 204; *Sadly*, *adv.* sufficiently, long enough, *v* 341. [OE. *sad*,

# GLOSSARY

- sated, wearied; ME. shows also senses 'heavy, firm', &c.]
- Sadel**, *n.* saddle, V 42. [OE. *sadol*.]
- Saf(e)**, *see* Saue; **Sagh**, *see* Se(n); **Say**, **Sai-**, *see* Se(n), Sei(e).
- Saye**, *v.* to make trial of, explore, XIV c 34. [Shortened from *Assaic*.]
- Sayf**. *See* Saue, *prep*.
- Sayl(l)**, **Sail**, *n.* sail, VII 125, XIV c 50, XVII 153, 271, &c. [OE. *segl*.] *See* Seile.
- Sayn**, **Saytz**, *see* Sei(e); **Saynte**, *see* Seynte.
- Sake**, *n.* in *for . . . sake* (with *interven. gen. or poss. adj.*), (i) for (one's) sake, VIII a 96, XII *introd.*; (ii) on (one's) account, XV c 23; (with loss of prec. inflexion) I 177, XVII 88 (note). [OE. *sacu*; cf. ON. *fyrir sakir* because of.]
- Sakke**, *n.* sack, VIII a 9. [OE. *sacc*.]
- Sakles**, *adj.* innocent (*i. e.* against whom you had no just quarrel), XIV a 3. [OE. *sac-lēas*, from ON. *sak-lauss*.]
- Sale**, *n.* in *to the sale*, for sale, XII b 148. [OE. \**salu* (once) *salā*.]
- Sal(l)**, **Saltou**. *See* Schal.
- Salt(e)**, *adj.* salt, VIII a 279, IX 13, XII a 166, &c.; *n.* XIII a 30. [OE. *salt*, *adj.* and *n.*]
- Salvaciouun**, *n.* salvation, IX 333. [OFr. *salvaciouun*.]
- Sam(e)**, **Samen**, **Somyn** (VII), *adv.* together, VII 66, XVI 170, 239, XVII 316; *brether sam*, brothers both, XVII 320; *al samen*, all *sam* (*togeder*), (all) together, XVII 292, 530; with one accord, VI 158; *see* Alsaume. [OE. *æt samne*, *somne*; (late) *somen*; cf. ON. *allir saman*.]
- Same**, *adj.* same I 188, &c.; *pron.* in *þe (þis) same*, the very one (*or thing*), XII b 78, XVI 56, 71, &c. [ON. *sam-r*.]
- Samon**, *n.* salmon, XIII a 64. [OFr. *sammon*.]
- Sample**, *n.* illustration, parable, VI 139. [Shortened from OFr. *essample*.] *See* Ensample.
- Sand**, *n.* sand, shore; *bi see and bi sand*, everywhere, XVII 75. [OE. *sānd*.]
- Sang**, **Santis**. *See* Song(e), Seynte.
- Sap**, *n.* sap, XIV c 90. [OE. *sæp*.]
- Saphire**, *n.* sapphire, IX 115, 116 (*see* Loupe), 122. [OFr. *safir*.]
- Sapience**, *n.* Wisdom; personif. of the 'sapiential' books (Proverbs, Ecclesiastes, Canticles, Wisdom, Ecclesiasticus), VIII a 231 (the ref. is to Prov. xx. 4). [L. *sapientia*.]
- Sare**. *See* Soie.
- Sarri**, *adj.* ? vigorous, XIV c 90. [OFr. *serré*; *see* note.]
- Sarteyne**; **Sat**. *See* Cerleyne; *Sitte*(n).
- Sauce**, *n.* sauce, VIII a 259. [OFr. *sauce*.]
- Saue**, **Saf**, *adj.* safe; *a saue*, have safe, save, I 127 (*see* Habbenn); *vochen saf*, VIII b 51, *see* Vouche-saf. [OFr. *sauf*, *sauve* (fem.).]
- Saue**, **Saf**, **Sayf** (XVII), *prep.* save, except, IX 174, 228, XVII 106; *saue þat* (conj.), V 161. [OFr. *sauf*.]
- Saue**, **Safe** (XVII), *v.* to preserve, keep safe, V 5 (*subj.*), 71, XV i 19, XVII 309, 517, &c.; rescue, bring to salvation, XI a 38, b 305, XVI 108, &c. **Sauynge**, *n.* preservation, XI b 304. [OFr. *sa(u)ver*.]
- Saufly**, *adv.* safely, XII b 174. [From *Saue*, *adj.*]
- Saugh**. *See* Se(n).
- Saul(e)**, **Saull**, **Sawl(e)**, **Soule**, *n.* soul, IV a 24, 32, 61, VIII a 81, XVI 272, XVII 390, &c.; *distrib. sg.* (*see* Herte), XI b 250; **Soule**, *gen. sg.* I 212. [OE. *sāwol*.]
- Sauour** (*to*), *n.* savour, IX 153; relish (for), XI b 254. [OFr. *savour*.]
- Sauoure**, *v.* to give a savour to, VIII a 259. [OFr. *savourer*.]
- Sauter**, **Sawter**, *n.* the Psalter,

# GLOSSARY

- one's way, V 15, 93. [OE. *scūfan*.]
- Schranke, *pa. t. sg.* shrank; flinched, winced, V 199, 304; *schrank to*, penetrated into, V 245. [OE. *scrincan*.]
- Schrifte, *n.* in *do thi schrifte*, made your confession, XII *introd.* [OE. *script*.]
- Schuldereȝ, -es, *n. pl.* shoulders, V 199, 246, 250. [OE. *sculdor*.]
- S(o)hul-. See Schal.
- Schunt, *n.* a sudden jerk and swerve, V 200. See next.
- Schunt, *v.* to flinch; *pa. t. v* 212. [Prob. rel. to OE. *scurian*.]
- Schust. See Schal.
- Science, *n.* knowledge, learning, IX 77. [Ofr. *science*.]
- Sclauain, Sclauin, *n.* a pilgrim's mantle, II 228, 343. [Ofr. *esclavine*.]
- Sclaundre(n), *v.* to scandalize, XI b 242. [Ofr. *esclandrere*.]
- Scole, *n.* school, VIII b 37, XIII b 17. [OE. *scōl*.]
- Score, *n.* score, twenty, XIII a 20, 21, &c. [ON. *skor*, notch, twenty.]
- Scornes, *n. pl.* taunts, XIV c 102. [Ofr. (*e*)*scarn*; see *N.E.D.*]
- Scottes, Skottes, *n. pl.* Scots, XIII b 3, XIV a 1, &c.; Skot, *sg.* XIV a 33. [OE. *Scottas*.]
- Scoumfited, *pp.* defeated, XIV c 60. [ME. (*dis*)*scomfite(n)*, formed on Ofr. *desconfit*, *pp.*]
- Soowtes, *n. pl.* jutting rocks, V 99. [ON. *skúti*.]
- Scrippe, *n.* pilgrim's wallet (for food), VIII a 63. [Ofr. *escreppe*; ON. *skreppa*.]
- Se. See Sec.
- Se(n), See(n), Seo (XV b), *v.* to see, perceive, I 149, II 11, 462, VIII b 93, IX 225, XV b 17, &c.; Sep, 3 *sg.* II 251, 321. Sagh, *pa. t. sg.* I 175; Say, I 174; Saugh, IX 169; Saw, X 161, &c.; Seȝ(e), V 96, 102, &c.; Seigh, VIII a 231; Seize, II 147, &c.; Seih, XV a 6; Siz(e) (riming *heize*), II 355; Sth, Syh, XII a 139, 146, &c.; Saugh, *pl.* IX 226; Saw(e), I 221, X 13; See, VII 57; Segh, VII 22; Seize, II 592. Iseȝe, -seye, -seize, *pp.* XIV c 8, 16, 88, &c.; Yseye, XIII a 16, 18; Seȝe, Seyȝe, XIV c 24, 32, &c.; Seun, in *wolden be seun*, would like to appear, XI a 51; Seon(e), Sene, (properly *adj.*; see *Ysene*), seen, visible, plain, IV a 33, VII 182, IX 102, XII a 196, XIV a 3, b 79, XVI 67, &c. [OE. *seon*; *se(a)h*, *sæh*; *sāwon*, *sēgon*; (*ge*)*-sewen*, *segen*; *ge-sēne*, *adj.* (late *pp.*).]
- Seasonable, *adj.* opportune, favourable, VII 128. [Ofr. *seisonable*.] See Sesoun.
- Seche, *v.* to seek, V 101, IX 108, &c.; to visit, II 432; to try, XII b 177; *intr.* to go (to), see the *pp.*; for *to seche*, absent, lacking, XII a 37; Sekeȝ, *imper. pl.* XIV d 15; Soght, *pa. t.* IV a 39; Soȝt, Soght, *pp.* VII 54, XIV b 50, XVII 157; *so watȝ* ... *her answer soȝt*, such was the answer they found (to give), VI 158; *were soght to*, had got to, VII 168. [OE. *secan*, *sōhte*.]
- Secound, Secunde, *adj.* second, XI a 54, XIII a 9, b 32. [Ofr. *secund*.]
- Seote, *n.* sect, IX 289. [Ofr. *secte*.]
- Securly. See Sikerlich.
- Sed, *n.* seed, XII a 81. [OE. *sēd*, *sēd*.]
- Sedgeyng, *n.* telling, narrating (as a 'Segger', *q.v.*), Introduction xxxiii.
- See, *n.* sea, IX 9, XII a 25, XIV c 34, &c.; Se, VII 125, X 11, XIII a 28, &c.; Sea, VII 143, &c.; beȝo(w)nde *pe see*, in foreign lands, I 252, IX 76, 128, 271; *bi see and bi sand*, on *se* and *bi side*, on sea and land, everywhere, XVII 75, 542. [OE. *sē*.]
- Seede, XVI 48. A *pa. t.* is perh. concealed by corruption: ?seeded, was born (from



# GLOSSARY

- Sed**; cf. *my moder of whom I dede sede*, Cov. Myst. 393; *1 dede*, died (from Deye, *g.v.*).
- Seek**; **See(n)**; **Seere**. See **Sike**; **Se(n)**; **Ser(e)**.
- Sege**, *n.* siege, X 1, XIV *b* heading. [Ofr. *s(s)ege*.]
- Segge**, *n.* man, v. 339. [OE. *seccg*.]
- Seggers**, *n. pl.* (professional) story-tellers, I *introd.* [From ME. *segge(n)* to tell (see **Seie**); cf. OE. *seccend*, and *Disour*.]
- Segh**, **Sej(e)**. See **Se(n)**.
- Sei(e)**, **Seye(n)**, **Sein**, **Seyn(e)**, &c. *v.* to say, tell, mention, I 254, VIII *a* 123, 279, IX 76, 134, XI *a* 34, *b* 8, XII *a* 27, XIV *c* 9, &c.; *herd seye*, heard men relate, IX 221; **Say(n)**, **Sai(e)**, IV *a* 74, VII 182, XIV *b* heading, XVI 169, XVII 382, &c.; **Zigge**, in *yhyerde sigge of*, heard it said by, III 49. **Seist**, 2 *sg. pres.* VIII *a* 226; **Sais**, **Says**, VI 49, XVI 60, &c.; **Seyt**, 3 *sg.* II 556; **Seip**, &c., I 97, VIII *a* 246, &c.; **Saytz**, VI 97, 141; **Zayp**, III 48; **Sais**, *pl.* XVI 108; **Seith**, *imper. pl.* XIV *d* 13. **Seyd(e)**, **Sayd(e)**, &c., *pa. t.* I 78, II 188, &c.; **Zayde**, **Zede**, III 12, 28; **Seyd**, **Saide**, *pp.* I 108, IX 297 (aforesaid), &c.; *pat is sone saide*, that is easily said, easier said than done, XVI 205. [OE. *seccan* (*segh*); *sægde*, *sæde*.] See **Aboueseyd**, **Forseyde**.
- Seigh**, **Seize**, **Seih**, &c. See **Se(n)**.
- Seynge**, *n.* saying, assertion, XI *b* 12, 222. [From **Sei(e)**.]
- Selle**, **Saile**, **Sayle**, *v.* to sail, VII 128, XII *a* 31, XIV *c* 33. [OE. *segl(i)an*.] See **Sayll**.
- Seyll**; **Seymland**. See **Sele**; **Semmland**.
- Seynt(e)**, **Saint**, **Saynt(e)**, *adj.* holy, I 246, XV *d* 5; **Saint**, I 34, III *introd.* 3, VIII *a* 3, XIV *d* 1, &c.; *n.* saint, XI *b* 87, 95, &c.; **Sant**, XVII 555; **Sauynt**, III *introd.*; **Sent**, XV *i* 7, 11. [Ofr. *saint*.]
- Seyntewarie**, *n.* sanctuary, VIII *b* 83. [Ofr. *saintuaire*.]
- Seyr**, see **Ser(e)**; **Seist**, **Seyt**, **Seip**, &c., see **Sei(e)**; **Seko**, see **Sike**; **Sekop**, see **Seche**.
- Selde(n)**, *adv.* seldom, VI 20, XIV *c* 8, 40, &c. [OE. *seldan*.]
- Sele**, **Seyll** (XVII), *n.* happiness, prosperity, v 341, 354 (see note), XVII 301. [OE. *sæl*.]
- Self(e)**, **Selue**, **Seluen**, **Zelue** (III), *adj.* same, very, II 341, v 79; *þe burne seluen*, *Troy selfe*, the knight himself, *Troy itself*, v 309, VII 63; *quasi-sb.* self, person, v 88, 233; *þe ilke selue þet*, the very one who, III 27 (see note); see the personal prons. [OE. *self(a)*.]
- Selle**, *n.* prison-cell, XVI 342. [Ofr. *celle*.]
- Selle(n)**, **Sell**, *v.* to sell, IV *a* 46, VIII *a* 264, IX 113, &c.; **Sulle**, XV *g* 19, 20, 22; **Soldæ**, *pa. t.* XVI 147; **Sold**, **Isold**, *pp.* in *boght and sold*, *iboust ant isold*, XII *b* 153, XV *g* 26; *to selle*, for sale, VIII *a* 301. [OE. *sellan* (late WS. *syllan*).]
- Selly**, *adj.* strange, curious, v 102. [OE. *sel(d)-lic*.]
- Seluer**. See **Siluer**.
- Sembland**, **Seymland**, *n.* looks, countenance. XIV *b* 79, XVII 211. [Ofr. *semblant*.]
- Seme(n)**, *v.* to beseech, suit, xv *b* 33; to seem fitting, XI *a* 6; to seem, appear, IV *b* 50, VIII *b* 27, 94, XI *b* 288, &c. [ON. *sóma* (*sæmdr*, *pa. t. subj.*); cf. next.]
- Semly**, *adj.* seemly, fair, II 411, XIV *b* 28, xv *b* 26; **Semlokest**, *superl.* xv *c* 6. [ON. *sóm-r* + OE. *-lic*, *-lucost*; cf. ON. *sæmli-gr*.]
- Sen**. See **Sipen**, **Se(n)**.
- Sendal**, *n.* a kind of thin rich silk, VIII *a* 11. [Ofr. *cendal*.]
- Sende**, *v.* to send, I 51, VIII *a* 132, &c.; **Sende**, *pa. t.* v 294; **Sent** (*after*), sent (for), II 424; sent

# GLOSSARY

- word, VIII *a* 321; Zente, III 23, 37; Send(e), Sent, *pp.* I 92, XVI 56, 398, XVII 254, &c.; Yzent, III 14, 30. [OE. *sēdan*.]
- Sent. See Seynt(e).
- Sentence, -ense, *n.* (considered) opinion, authoritative pronouncement, XI *b* 264; passages from (authoritative) writings, XI *a* 27; (subject) matter, XI *a* 30; meaning, sense (opp. to words), XI *b* 134, 143, 174; *in his sentence*, as follows, XI *a* 55. [OFr. *sentence*.]
- Septentrion, *n.* North, IX 31. [OFr. *septentrion*.]
- Serche, *v.* to search; to inquire (of), VII 24; Cerohed, *pp.* explored, IX 310. [OFr. *cerchier*.] See Encerche.
- Ser(e), Seere, Seyr (XVII), *adj.* special, XVI 41, 387, 398; various, different, manifold, IV *b* 42, 60, X 44, 152, XVI 122, 294; *into seyr countre*, abroad, XVII 487; *fele sere*, many and various (women), V 349. [ON. *sér*, dat. sg., for (by) itself; separately.]
- Serely, *adv.* individually, differently, IV *b* 60. [ON. *sér-liga*, apart.]
- Sergont, Ser(g)ant, *n.* servitor, III 11; man-at-arms, XIV *b* 28. [OFr. *serjant*.]
- Serymonyes, *n. pl.* ceremonies, XI *b* 202. [OFr. *cerimonie*.]
- Serpent(e), *n.* serpent, IX 203, XII *b* 72, 126. [OFr. *serpent*.]
- Seruaunt(e), -ant, *n.* servant, V 71, XI *b* 170, XVI 65, XVII 65, &c.; Seruand, XVII 110; Seruants, *pl.* VIII *a* 252. [OFr. *servant*.]
- Serue(n), *v.*<sup>1</sup> to serve, be servant to, do one's duty to, VIII *b* 65, 70, XI *b* 178, XII *a* 189; deal with, treat, XVI 206; (without obj.) to serve mass, VIII *b* 12. [OFr. *servir*.]
- Serue(n), *v.*<sup>2</sup> to deserve, VI 193 (or 'served', from prec.); Yserued, *pp.* VIII *a* 81. [Shortened from Deserven, *q. v.*]
- Seruyce, -ys(e), Service, *n.* service, IV *b* 37, XI *b* 181, XII *b* 122; church-service, I 81, XI *b* 174. [Late OE. *serfise* from OFr. *service*.]
- Sese, *v.* to seize, V 339; *sased in*, seized in, put in legal possession of, VI 57. [OFr. *seisir*.]
- Sesoun, *n.* season, time, V 17. [OFr. *se(s)son*.]
- Sesse. See Cesse.
- Sete, *n.* seat, throne, XIV *c* 86. [ON. *setti*.]
- Sete(n); Sep; Sepen, Seppe(n), &c. See Sitte(n); Se(n); Sipe(n).
- Sett(e), Set, *v.* to set; Yset, *pp.* XIII *a* 12. To seat, VIII *a* 48; *set in sete*, enthroned, XIV *c* 86; *reft. to sit*, I 200, II 69, XVII 340; to set, put, place, IV *b* 23, V 162, X 48, 62, XVI 140, 387, &c.; to set up, erect, I 91, 180; fix (time), XII *a* 35; to cause to be, make, XVI 204, 205; to value, XII *b* 149; *set(te) at*, set, value at (the rate of), VIII *a* 162, *b* 101, XVII 364. *Sette aboute*, occupied with, XI *b* 115; *sett a crie on*, appealed to, II 511 (see Crien, *v.*); *set his entant (apon)*, determined (on), X 184; *settes* (I sg.) *my ioy . . . when*, account it happiness when, IV *a* 30; *settis no store bi*, has no regard for, XVII 92; *set till*, trained on, X 81; *set vp*, to open, X 185. [OE. *settan*.]
- Settel, *n.* throne, IV *a* 9. [OE. *setl*.]
- Seuen(e), *adj.* seven, IV *b* 53, XVII 13, &c.; see Psalme, Starne. [OE. *seofon*.]
- Seuenyst (Seuenistes, &c.), *n.* seven nights, a sennight, week, X *v* 3, 6. [OE. *seofon niht* (pl.); see Appendix, p. 278.]
- Seuered, *pa. t. intr.* severed, was cut (or *trans.* with omitted *he*), V 244. [OFr. *seu(e)rer*.]
- Seun, Sewingly. See Se(n); Suc(n).

# GLOSSARY

**Sex, Six, *adj.*** six, IX 106 (*see* Squared), XVI 39, XVII 57, &c.; **Sexti**, sixty, II 90, 304. [OE. *sex*, *sextig*.]  
**Sh-**. *See* Sch- (except as below).  
**Shaltow**; **Shep**; **Sheld**. *See* Schal; Scheep; Schylde.  
**Sheues**, *n. pl.* sheaves, VIII a 135, b 14. [OE. *schaf*.]  
**Shlepe**. *See* Slep(e), *n.*  
**Shon(e)**, *n. pl.* shoes, VIII b 18, XVII 353 (*see* Cloute). [OE. *sc(e)ð*, late gen. pl. *scēðna*.]  
**Shotton**; **Showr**. *See* Schote; Schour.  
**Shrewe**, *n.* a bad man, evil-doer, VII 183, VIII a 153. [OE. *scriawa*, shrew-mouse; *see* N.E.D.]  
**Sybbe**, *adj.* related, akin, IV b 22. [OE. *sibb*.]  
**Sio**; **Sich(e)**; **Sicht**. *See* Swilke; Swiche; Sight.  
**Side**, **Syde** (**Siddis**, *pl.*), *n.* side, II 156, V 112, IX 69, XVII 542 (shore; *see* See), &c.; *bi* (at) ... *side*, (orig. with intervening *gen.*) beside, II 66, V 76, 93; *on the see syde*, in the direction of the sea, IX 177; *in (on) no syde*, in no direction, V 102, IX 164, 192; *in on syde*, in one respect, XIII b 35; *on alle siddis*, in all respects, XI b 238; *quasi-adj.* lying on either side, XIII b 55. [OE. *sīde*.]  
**Sygh(e)**, *v.* to sigh, IV a 69, 85; *trans.* to lament, regret, IV a 59. [Alteration of OE. *scan*, M.E. *siken*, aided by M.E. *pa. t. sihte*.]  
**Sight**, **Sigt**, **Syght(e)**, **Sygt**, **Sicht** (x), *n.* sight, view, II 334, IV b 50, X 192, XV i 16, XVII 555, &c.; *at a syght*, at one view, XVII 469; *be sight*, by sight, XVI 229; *to sight*, to look upon, XVI 90; *with sight*, by looking (reading), VII 24. [OE. *ge-siht*, *-siht*.]  
**Signe**, **Syngne** (v), *n.* sign, token, evidence, V 96, XI a 3, XVI 19, 41, &c. [Ofr. *signe*.]  
**Siȝe**. *See* Se(n).

**Sih, Syh**. *See* Se(n).  
**Sike**, *adj.* sick, ailing, morbid, XI b 242; **Seek**, XV a 2; **Søke**, XVII 61. [OE. *sēoc*, *sēc*.]  
**Sykel**, *n.* sickle, VIII b 23. [OE. *sicol*.]  
**Sikenesse**, **Syke**, *n.* sickness, disease, VIII a 122, 254. [OE. *sē(o)c-nes*.]  
**Siker**, **Syker**, *adj.* safe, sure, secure, II 35, VIII b 40, XI a 238, XIV c 49, 55. [OE. *sicor*.]  
**Sikerlich**, **Securly**, *adv.* certainly, II 571, XVII 38, 372. [From prec.]  
**Sikernesse**, *n.* security, XII b 40. [As prec.]  
**Silke**, *n.* silk, VIII a 11. [OE. *seolc*; *silcen*, *adj.*.]  
**Siluer**, **Syluer**, **Seluer**, **Zeluer** (III), *n.* silver, money, II 150, III 5, VIII a 186, b 76, XV g 4, &c. [OE. *seolfor*, *silfor*, &c.]  
**Symented**, *pp.* cemented, IX 233. [Ofr. *cimenter*.]  
**Symonye**, *n.* simony, XI b 98. [Ofr. *simonie*.]  
**Symple**, **Simple**, *adj.* simple, ignorant, XII b 95, XVII 173. [Ofr. *simple*.]  
**Syn(e)**. *See* Synn(e), **Sipen**.  
**Synder**, *adv.* in *in synder*, asunder, XIV c 31. [OE. *synder-*; *see* Sonder.]  
**Syndry**, *adj.* sundry, various, x 3, 9, 152. [OE. *syndrig*.] *See* Sondri.  
**Synful**, **Synffull**, *adj.* sinful, XI b 105, 133, &c.; *synffull care*, the woe due to sin, XVI 292. [OE. *synn-ful*.]  
**Synge(n)**, **Sing(g)e**, *v.* to sing, I 14, 56, II 68, VIII b 72, XV a 7, b 6, &c.; **Sinkestou**, *singest thou*, XV a 17. **Songen**, *pa. t. pl.* VIII a 109; **Sung(g)e**, I 57, 66, 168; **Songen**, *pp.* XI b 133, 135, 143; **Syngynge**, *n.* I 5. [OE. *singan*.]  
**Synglerty**, *n.* uniqueness, VI 69. [Ofr. *sengliertit*.]  
**Syngne**. *See* Signe.  
**Singular**, *adj.* individual; unusual,

# GLOSSARY

- irregular, XI *b* 101; Singularly, *adv.* uniquely, solely, XI *a* 52. [OFr. *singular*.]
- Synke, *v.* to sink, XVI 348; Sonkyn, *pp.* having sunk, VII 161. [OE. *sincan*.]
- Sinkestou. See Synge(n).
- Synn(e), Syn(e), Zen (III), *n.* sin, III *introd.*, IV *a* 7, *b* 16, 76, VI 250, IX 324, &c.; Syn, *gen. sg.* (before *sake*), XVII 88. [OE. *synn* (Kt. *senn*).]
- Synn(e), Syn, *v.* to sin, XI *b* 28, 144, XVII 37, 49. [From prec.]
- Synnelees, *adj.* without sinning, VIII *a* 226. [OE. *synn-lēas*.]
- Sir(e), Syr(e), Sohir (X), *n.* lord, master, XIV *b* 69, XVI 117; sire, father, XVI 254; *oure syre*, the master of our house, XVII 396; (as polite form of address) sir, II 131, 431, XIV *c* 105, XVII 294, &c.; *sir swete*, my good sir, v 169; (pref. to names and titles) Sir; *e.g.* of knights, v 50, x 36, &c.; but used also of kings, II 24, XIV *a* 9, *b* 32, &c.; ecclesiastics, I 201, XI *b* 176; and generally, II 512, VIII *a* 262, *b* 55, XVI 169. [OFr. *sire*.]
- Syster; Sitē. See Suster; Citē.
- Sythe, Sype, *n.* scythe, v 134, VIII *b* 23. [OE. *sigþe*.]
- Sithes, *n. pl.* times, IX 244. [OE. *sīþ*.] See Oftesithes.
- Sitte(n), Sytt, Sit, *v.* to sit, sit at table, v 42, VIII *a* 262, XV *g* 25, XVII 247, &c.; *I sit not dry*, it isn't dry where I sit, XVII 370; to dwell, remain, IV *a* 64, XVI 272, 342; Sitt, 3 *sg. pres.* (OE. *sitt*), II 443; Saat, *pa. t. sg.* XI *b* 57; Sat, II 42, 519, &c.; Sete, II 413, 580; Sete(n), *pl.* II 276, 395, VIII *a* 109, XV *g* 24, &c.; Sete, *pp.* seated, II 520; Sittyng, *n.* XI *b* 58. [OE. *sittan*.]
- Sitthenes, *adv.* afterwards, VIII *a* 65. [OE. *sīþan* + *adv. -es*.] See Sīþen.
- Sīþen, Sythen, &c. *adv.* after that, afterwards, next, then, since, IV *a* 59, 85, v 153, VII 66, &c.; Seppe(n), I 248, II 162, 587, &c.; Septhe, XIII *b* 27; Syne, x 22, 35, &c.; *ay syne*, ever since, XVI 223; *or syne*, ere long, XVII 228. [OE. *sīþa(n)*, *seoppan*; ON. *sīþan*.]
- Sīþen, Syþen, *conj.* after, when, since, seeing that, v 26, 326, XI *a* 35, &c.; Sytthen, VIII *b* 41; Sith, Sīþ, VIII *b* 74, XI *b* 8, &c.; *sith þat*, IX 176; Sep(p)en, I 116, II 121, 469; *seþþen þat*, II 425; Supthe, XIII *b* 19; Syn, VI 159, VII 29, &c.; *syn þat*, v 252; Sen, XVI 169, 254, &c. [As prec.]
- Sk-. See also Sc-.
- Skayned (of), *pp.* grazed (by), v 99 (see note). [ON. *skeina*.]
- Skant, *n.* little, XVII 198. [ON. *skam(m)-t*, neut. adj.]
- Skelp, *n.* a smack, XVII 323. [Unknown.]
- Skewe, Skwe (v), *n.* cloud, v 99, VII 132, 136. [ON. *ský*, earlier \**skiuw*-.]
- Skyfte, *v.* to apportion, arrange, VI 209. [ON. *skifta*.]
- Skill, *n.* discernment, reason; *as it is skill*, as is reasonable, XVII 334. [ON. *skil*.]
- Skipte, *pa. t.* leapt, XII *b* 61. [Obscure.]
- Skyre, *adj.* bright, VII 136. [ON. *skir-r*.] See Scere, Schyre.
- Skirmyt, *pa. t.* skirmished; darted to and fro, VII 136. [OFr. *eskirmir*.]
- Sklayre, *n.* veil, VIII *a* 7. [MLG. *slcier*.]
- Skryke, *v.* to shriek, XVII 232. [?OE. \**scric*(*z*)an; cf. ON. *skrækja*.]
- Skunnyrrit, *pa. t.* shrank, were dismayed, x 59. [Obscure; ?cf. Schunt, and OE. *scunian*.]
- Skweȝ. See Skewe.
- Slade, *n.* valley, v 79. [OE. *slād*.]
- Slayn. See Slo.
- Slake, *v.* to slacken, die down, XIII *a* 4. [OE. *slacian*.]

# GLOSSARY

- Slang**, *pa. t. pl.* *slung*, X 53;  
**Slongyn**, *pp.* VII 165. [ON. *slungva*.]  
**Sle**, *adj.* cunning, X 15; working in secret, IV a 10 (*see* note). [ON. *slæg-r*.] *See* Slyght.  
**Slep(e)**, **Sleep**, **Shlepe**, *n.* sleep, XI b 219, XII a 81, 88, XV g 14, &c.; (personified) XII a 47, 89, &c.; *on slepe*, asleep, II 72; *slydyn vppon shlepe*, fallen into oblivion, or fallen asleep, dead, VII 6. [OE. *slēp*, *slāp*.]  
**Slepe(n)**, *v.* to sleep, II 407, 456, XII a 141, XV a 3, &c.; *refl.* in *slep þou þe*, go to sleep, XV g 13; *go slepe*, go to sleep, VIII a 296; **Slepe**, *pa. t.* II 75, 134, 402; **Slepte**, I 159, 243. [OE. *slēpan*, *slāpan*, *str.* and *wk.*]  
**Slepi**, *adj.* sleepy, drowsy, XII a 91, 104, 109. [OE. in *un-slēpig*.]  
**Sleuthe**, **Sloth**, *n.* sloth, VIII a 137, XVII 53. [OE. *slāwþ*.] *See* Slowe.  
**Sliche**, mud VII 165. [OE. \**slīc*.]  
**Slydyn**, *pp.* slipped; fallen, VII 6. [OE. *slidan*.]  
**Slyght**, *n.* skill, XVII 137. [ON. *slægð*.] *See* Sle.  
**Slike**, **Slyke**, *adj.* such, XIV b 35; *none slyke*, (that) no one (is) like her, XVII 233. [ON. *slīk-r*.] *See* Swilke.  
**Slip**, *v.*; *slip this spyndill*, strip, spin off all that is on this spindle, XVII 364. [Cf. MLG. *slippen*; ON. *slēppa*.]  
**Sliper**, *adj.* slippery, untrustworthy, XIV c 5. [OE. *slīpor*.]  
**Slytting**, *adj.* harsh, piercing, XIII b 59. [OE. *slutan*, *†slittan*.]  
**Slo**, *v.* to slay, II 332; **Slowe**, *pa. t.* XVI 306; **Slogh**, XIV a 3; **Slou3**, II 313, XIV c 45; **Slayn**, *pp.* XVII 307, 546. [OE. *slān*; ON. *slā*.]  
**Slouer**, *n.* slime, ooze, VII 165. [Cf. ME. *slober(e)n*, *v.*, and similar forms in Du., Fris.]  
**Sloken**, *v.* to extinguish, IV a 6. [ON. *slökna*, *intr.*]  
**Slombrende**, *pres. p.* slumbering, drowsy, XII a 106. [OE. \**slāmerian*; cf. *slāma*.]  
**Slomeryng**, *n.* slumber, sleep, VII 6. [As *prec.*]  
**Slongyn**. *See* Slang.  
**Slowe**, **Slou3**, *adj.* sluggish, slothful, XI b 219; dull (unfeeling or spiritless), XIV c 103. [OE. *slāw*.]  
**Sluche**, *n.* erroneous reading for *sllicche*, VII 165.  
**Smal(e)**, *adj.* small, slender, fine, II 109, IX 46, XI b 138, XIII a 30, &c.; *adv.* fine, in small pieces, II 538, XI b 177, XIV d 9, &c. [OE. *smāl*; *smale*, *adv.*]  
**Smateryd**, *pp.* be-grimed, XV h 1. [Cf. ME. *smoter-lich*, *bi-smoteren*.]  
**Smekyd**, (*pp.*) *adj.* smoky, smoke-blackened, XV h 1. [OE. *smē(o)can*.]  
**Smertly**, *adv.* suddenly, swiftly, X 83, 91, 168. [ME. *smert*, sharp; cf. OE. *smært*.]  
**Smeþes**, *n. pl.* smiths, XV h 1. [OE. *smīþ*.]  
**Smyle**, *v.* to smile, XVII 215. [! OE. \**smīlian*, *rel.* to MHG. *smielen*, Sw. *smila*, &c.]  
**Smyte**, **Smytte**, *v.* to smite, V 192, XVII 215, 218, 220; to rebuke, IV b 76; **Smytte**, *pp.* XVI 338. [OE. *smītan*, *smear*.]  
**Smope**, *adj.* smooth, level, II 353. [OE. *smōþ*.]  
**Snaw(e)**, **Snogh** (I), **Snowe**, snow, I 162, V 20, 166, 247, XVI 89; *snowe-white*, II 145. [OE. *snāw*; *snāw-hwīt*.]  
**Snewe**, *v.* to snow, II 247. [OE. *snīwan*, \**snēowan*.]  
**Snyrt**, *pa. t.* touched, grazed, V 244. [Cf. ON. *snerta*, *str.*]  
**So**, **Soo** (XVI), **Sa** (IV, X), *adv.* (i) *Demonstr.* so, thus, in this (that) way, I 90, 150, IV a 20, XVI 206, &c.; (in adjurations, &c.; cf. As) so, II 532, VI 127, &c.; in like manner, the same, V 213, XV b 22 (*or as, rel.*), XVI 373, XVII 391, &c.; so, to such a degree, &c., II 39, IX 11, 202,

# GLOSSARY

- XVI 99, XVII 357**; (intensifying *adjs.* and *advs.*) **I 28, VI 20, X 133, &c.**; (before *adjs.* without *a*) such (a), **II 148, 426, IX 159, X 47, &c.**; *neuer sa*, (n)ever so, **IV a 75**; (giving indef. sense to relatives, *q.v.*) so ever, **II 340, IV a 71, VI 206, &c.**; *so . . . till þat*, so that, until, **IX 223, 229, 231**; *so as*, (in so far) as, **XII a 126, 174, 177, &c.**; *so þat*, so long as, provided, **XI b 223**. (ii) *Relative as*, **II 112, VIII a 215, XV b 33, c 30, g 14**; *as . . . so*, as . . . as, **II 352**; *so may be*, may be, **VIII b 34**; *by so*, provided that, **VIII b 40**. [OE. *swā*.] See **As(e)**, **Swa**.
- Sobre**, *adj.* earnest, serious, **VI 31, 172**. [OFr. *sobre*.] See **Vnsobér**.
- Socour(e)**, *n.* succour, help, **XII b 17, XVII 157, 254**. [OFr. *sucurs*, infl. by related verb; see **Succur**.]
- Sod**, *n.* sod, clod, **XVII 58**. [MLG., MDu. *sode*.]
- Sodeinli**, **Sodonly**. See **Soudein**.
- Soferan**, *n.* sovereign lord, **XVII 92**; **Souereynes**, superiors, **VIII a 74**. [OFr. *soverain*.]
- Softé**, *adj.* soft, tender, gentle, **VII 130, XII a 181**; *adv.* softly, gently, **XII a 93, b 89**; **Softly**, *adv.* **II 300**. [OE. *sōfte*, *adj.* and *adv.*]
- Sogat**, *adv.* in this way, **XIV b 96**. [So + Gate, *n.*<sup>2</sup>] See **Pusgate**.
- Soght**, **Sozt**; **Soyne**. See **Seche**; **Sone**, *adv.*
- Solo(u)rne**, *v.* to dwell, **II 47, XVI 221**; stay, **V 341**. [OFr. *so-journer*.]
- Solace**, **Solas**, *n.* consolation, solace, **IX 316, XVI 28, 41, 46**; enjoyment, **VII 22, IX 276**; *solace make*, amuse themselves, **I introd.**; joy, **XVI 387, 398, 407**. [OFr. *solas*.]
- Solas**, *v.* to delight, **II 383**. [OFr. *solacier*.]
- Sole**, *n.* (level) place, **XVII 391**. [OFr. *sole*.]
- Solempne**, *adj.* awe-inspiring, **XVI 355**. [OFr. *solem(p)ne*.]
- Solitarie**, *adj.* solitary, **\*XI b 36** (MS. *solarie*). [L. *solitarius*.]
- Solowe**, *v.* to be soiled, sullied, **I 165, 237**. [OE. *\*solgian*, cf. *solian*.]
- Som(e)**, **Somme**, **Sum(me)**, **Zome** (III), *adj.* some, (a) certain, **V 51, VI 68, VII 33, IX 119, XVI 19, XVII 157, &c.**; *pron. sg.* one, **I 135**; some, (a) part, **II 516, XI a 56, &c.**; *pl.* some, **II 5, III 2, VI 148, VIII a 9, &c.**; **Sum time**, **Som tyme**, &c., *adv.* once (upon a time), **II 31, XIII b 5, XIV c 17, 43, d 1**; sometimes, **VIII b 49, IX 47, 240, XIV a 32**. [OE. *sum*.]
- Somdel(l)**, *adv.* somewhat, **IX 13, XIII b 27**. [OE. *sume dæle*.]
- Somer**, *n.* summer, **II 257, 352**; **Somourgames**, summer-games, **I 1**. [OE. *sumor*.]
- Somyn**. See **Sam(e)**, *adv.*
- Somwhat**, *adv.* somewhat, a little, **VIII a 257, XIII b 6**. [OE. *sum + hwæt* indef.]
- Son**. See **Sonne**.
- Son(e)**, *adv.* at once, straightway, **I 69, II 71, XIV b 7, XV a 16, XVII 353, &c.**; soon, **II 153, XVI 205** (see **Seie**), &c.; **Soyn(e)**, **X 70, XVII 21, 28, 189**; **Sunner**, *compar.* **I 10**; *conj.* as soon as, **XV a 11** (cf. *sone so*, **XV g 14**). [OE. *sōna*.] See **Eftsone(3)**.
- Sonder**, **Sundyr**, **Swndir**, *adv.* in *in sonder*, &c., asunder, **X 106, XVII 407** (cf. ON. *i sundr*); **Sundyrlepys**, *adv.* separately, (corruptly) in *wyth s. l.*, **I 234** (see **Lepys**, and note). [OE. *sundor*, *on-sundran*, *sundor-lēpes*.] See **Asunder**, **Synder**.
- Sondre**, **Sundir**, *v.* to disperse, **VII 143**; *intr.* to separate, **XVI 240**. [OE. (*ā*)-*sundrian*.]
- Sondri**, *adj.* (with *sg.*) sundry, **XII introd.**, **b 185**. [OE. *syn-drig* under influence of *sundor*.] See **Syndry**.
- Sone**, *n.* son, **I 46, VIII a 74, b 76, &c.**; **Sonne**, **XVI 241, XVII**

# GLOSSARY

- 141; Sun, XIV b 70, 92. [OE. *sunna*.]
- Song(e), Songge, Sang (IV), *n.* song, singing, I 66, 168, IV a 24, VII 104, XI b 1, 112, &c. [OE. *sāng, sōng*.]
- Songen; Sonkyn. *See* Synge(n); Synke.
- Sonne, *n.* sun, sunlight, II 152, VI 170, XII a 66, &c.; Son, XVII 6, 354, 453; Sunne, V 17, VI 159, &c.; Sun, VII 101, &c. [OE. *sunna*.]
- Sonne(s); Soo; Soon. *See* Sone; So; Soun.
- Sopers, *n. pl.* soap-dealers, VIII b 76. [From OE. *sāpe*, soap.]
- Sopertyme, *n.* supper-time, VIII a 260. [OFr. *so(u)per* + OE. *timia*.]
- Sore, Sare, *adj.* sore; in pain, XVI 204, 205; grievous, V 48, X 51; *n.* wound, V 278 (*see* Rof, and note); pain, grief, II 263, 560, XV c 33; *adv.* sore(ly), bitterly, exceedingly, I 88, IV a 59, VI 190, X 141, XIV b 60, &c. [OE. *sār*, *n.* and *adj.*; *sāre*, *adv.*]
- Sori, Sory, *adj.* woeful, wretched, I 123, II 458 (note), XVII 61, 211, 264. [OE. *sārig*.]
- Sorȝe, *n.* sorrow, pain, V 315, 347; Sorow(e), Sorwe, I 210, IV a 66, IX 84, XV h 21, &c. [OE. *sorg*.]
- Sorowand (of), *pres. p.* sorrowing (for), IV b 80. [OE. *sorgian*.]
- Sort, *n.* company, VII 168; kind, XII a 173. [OFr. *sorte*.]
- Soster. *See* Suster.
- Soth(e), Sop(e), Suth (XIV b), *adj.* true, VI 122, VII 11, XI a 51, b 58, &c.; *n.* (the) truth, VII 36, VIII a 124, IX 247, XIV b 58, &c.; *in soth to me*, IX 100 (*see* note); *the soth for to knaw*, to tell the truth, XVII 246; *for sope*, &c., (OE. *for sōp*) for a fact, with certainty, IV a 74, V 26, 291, VIII b 3; indeed, certainly, II 12, V 234, 339, VIII b 90, &c.; *adv.* actually, certainly, I 24, V 42. [OE. *sōp*, *adj.* and *n.*; *sōpe*, *adv.*] *See* Suthfast.
- Sothful, *adj.* truthful, VI 138. [OE. *sōp* + *full*.]
- Sothlê, Sothly, *adv.* truly, V 294, XVII 496. [OE. *sōp-lic*.]
- Soudain, *adj.* sudden, XII b 6; Sodeinli, Sodonly, Suddan(d)ly, *adv.* suddenly, VII 130, X 179, 184, XII b 61. [OFr. *soudain*.]
- Souereynes; Soule. *See* Soferan; Saul(e).
- Soun, Soon (XIII), *n.* sound, II 272, 436, XII a 119; voice, VI 172; pronunciation, XIII b 44, 46. [OFr. *soun*; OE. *sōn*.]
- Sounde, *adj.* unharmed, safe, II 592; Soundly, *adv.* without mishap, VII 128. [OE. *gesund, gesünd-lic*.]
- Sounyng, *n.* pronunciation, XIII b 52. [From ME. *sounn*(n), OFr. *souner*.]
- Soupe, *v.* to sup, VIII a 211. [OFr. *souper*.]
- Soup, Southe, *n.* and *adj.* south, IX 8, XIII b 53, 64, XVII 477. [OE. *sūþ*, *adv.*]
- Souperon, *adj.* southern, XIII b 10, 56, 60. [OE. *sūperne*.]
- Sow, *n.* a sow; a movable structure with a strong roof, X 5 (note), 29, 109, &c. [OE. *sugu*; cf. Med.L. *sūs, scrōfa*, in this sense.]
- Sowe, *v.*<sup>1</sup> to sew, VIII a 9, 11. [OE. *sōw(i)an*.]
- Sowe(n), *v.*<sup>2</sup> to sow, VIII a 26, 65, 67; Sowen, *pp.* VIII a 5. [OE. *sāwan*.]
- Sownd, *v.* to sound (for depth), XVII 438. [OFr. *sonder*; cf. OE. *sund-līne*.]
- Spac, *adj.* quick; *adv.* in also spac, straightway, II 343 (*see* Also). [Cf. ME. *sprac-liche*, mod. dial. *sprack* (1 rel. to ON. *spark-r, språk-r*); but *see* N.E.D.]
- Space, *n.* space; place, XVI 110; space of time, while, XVII 337.

# GLOSSARY

- in þat (this) space*, then (now), VI 78, XVII 552. [OFr. (e)space.]
- Spak(e)**; **Spar**, *v.* See **Speke(n)**; **Spere**.
- Spar**, *n.* piece of timber, XVII 130. [MLG., MDu. *spar(re)*, OFr. *esparre*.]
- Spare**, *v.* to abstain from; *trans.* to spare, XVII 379; *intr.* to hesitate to, XIV b 13; to desist, stop, XIV b 23; **Spard**, *pa. t.* in *no sp. noþer stub no ston* (cf. *sparedede he neyþer tos ne heles*, Havelok 808), stopped for nothing, went as fast as he could, II 346. [OE. *sparian*.]
- Sparke**, *n.* spark, XII a 69. OE. *spearca*.]
- Spec**. See **Speke(n)**.
- Speche**, *n.* speech, talk(ing), language, what is said, VI 40, VII 34, XII b 212, XIII b 4, &c. [OE. *sp(r)æc*.]
- Special(l)**, *adj.* special, IX 296, XVI 110; *in special*, especially, particularly, in detail, XII a 110, 135, &c.; **Speoialych**, **Speoaly**, **Speoial(l)y**, especially, particularly, I 13, V 25, XI a 37, XIII b 58. [OFr. (e)special.]
- Spede**, *n.* prosperity; (cause of) success, assct, XIV c 15. [OE. *spēd*.]
- Spede**, *v. intr.* to succeed, prosper, fare, I 110, VIII a 46; **Spedde**, *pa. t.* XII b 106; *all ill mot þou spede*, curse you, XVI 139; *trans.* to speed, make prosperous, V 52, VI 127; to further, V 148; *God spede*, God speed thee (as greeting), XVII 190. [OE. *spēdan*.]
- Speke(n)**, *v.* to speak, talk, tell, say, II 138, V 234, IX 212, XI b 256, XIII b 8, XVII 206 (as *fut.*) &c.; **Spak(e)**, *pa. t. sg.* I 225, XII a 100, &c.; *als I spake*, according to my word, XVI 28; **Spec**, XV g 2, 28, 29; **Speke**, II 324, VI 78; **Spak**, *pl.* I 200; **Speke**, *pp.* XII b 99; **Spoke(n)**, I 100, IX 135, &c.; **Spekyng**, *n.* speaking, conversing, XI b 121, 160. [OE. *sp(r)ecan*.]
- Spelle**, *n.* tale, speech, talking, V 116 (see *Deme*), VI 3, XV h 8; gospel, III 50. [OE. *spell*.]
- Spelle**, *v.* to tell, declare, V 72, XV h 8. [OE. *spellian*.]
- Spend(e)**, *v.* to dispense, XVI 28; to spend, VIII b 28, 73; use (up), XVII 130; lose (life), V 45; *spende aboute*, spend on, XI b 236; **Spent**, **Yspent**, *pp.* ended, dead, II 199, 215. [OE. *spēndan*.]
- Spendere**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> dispenser, steward, III 22, 24, 28. [Shortened from *Desspendoure*, *g.v.*]
- Spendour**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> spender, spend-thrift, VIII b 28. [From *Spende*.]
- Spennefote**, *adv.* striking out with the feet, V 248. [Stem of OE. *spinnan*, kick + *fote*; cf. MDu. *spinnevoeten*, Fris. *spinsfoetsie*.]
- Sper(e)**, *n.* spear, V 75, X 138, XIV b 13; *spere lenþe*, spear's length, V 248. [OE. *spere*.]
- Spere**, **Spar**, *v.* to bar, shut, XVI 139; *out to spar*, to keep out, XVII 128; **Sperde**, *pp.* shut up, XVI 110. [OE. *ge-sparrian*; MDu. *sperren*.]
- Sperhauke**, *n.* sparrowhawk, VIII a 190. [OE. *spear-hafoc*.] See *Haukin*.
- Spices**, *n. pl.* spices, IX 158. [OFr. *espice*.]
- Spie**, **Spy**, *v.* to spy; *spyde with*, detected in, XVII 544; to search, enquire (after), V 25 (cf. *Sir Gaw. 901*). [OFr. (e)spier.] See *Aspien*.
- Spyll**, **Spill**, *v.* to destroy, waste, IV a 32, XIV a 33. [OE. *spil-lan*.]
- Spille-tyme**, *n.* idler, VIII b 28. [Prec. + OE. *tīma*.]
- Spyndill**, *n.* spindle, XVII 364. [OE. *spīn*; OFris., MDu. *spindel*.]
- Spyn(ne)**, *v.* to spin, VIII a 13, XVII 238, 359, 361; **Span**, *pa. t. sg.* XIV *introd.*; **Spon**, *pp.* XVII 337. [OE. *spinnan*.]



# GLOSSARY

- Spyryt, Spirit(e), n.** spirit, IX 85, XI b 39, XIII a 2. [OFr. (e)*spirit*.]
- Spyttyn, pres. pl.** spit, XV h 8. [OE. *spitt(i)an*.]
- Spitus, Spytus, adj.** ill-tempered, XVII 416; cruel, XVII 455. [Shortened from OFr. *despitous*.]
- Spoke(n); Spon.** See *Speke(n)*; *Spy(n)e*.
- Spornande, pres. p.** stumbling, VI 3. [OE. *spornan*.]
- Sprai, Spray, n.** (leafy) spray, XV a 1, c 2, &c. [! OE. \**spræg* (cf. *spræc*).]
- Sprauly, pres. pl.** sprawl, move in ungainly fashion, XV h 8. [OE. *sprawlitan*, move convulsively.]
- Sprede(n), v.** to spread, unfold; *intr.* II 67, IX 217; *Spradde, pa. t. (trans.)* XII a 176; *Sprad, pp.* outspread, XII a 156. [OE. *sprædan*.]
- Spring(e), Spryng, Sprinke, to** spring; sprout, II 67, XV a 1, b 9, c 2, &c.; *con spryng*, was born, VI 93; *Sprang, pa. t. sg.* rose, broke (of day), VII 167; *Yspronge, pp.* scattered, XIII a 19. [OE. *springan*.]
- Spryng, n.** sunrise, early morning, IV a 94. [From prec. (cf. VII 167); cf. OE. *up-spring*.]
- Sprit, pa. t. sprang, v** 248. [! OE. *spryttan*, to sprout; cf. senses of *springan*.]
- Spurye, v.** to enquire (after), V 25. [OE. *spyrian* (*æfter*).]
- Square, adj.** square; of regular geometric shape, IX 55, 105; Squared, in *six* (&c.) *squared*, with six (&c.) regular facets, IX 106; Squareness, geometric, crystalline, shape, IX 68. [OFr. *esquar(r)e, n.*; *esquarré, adj.*; *esquarrer, v.*]
- Squier, n.** squire, II 86. [OFr. (e)*squier*.]
- Sserte, Ssewep, Ssolde.** See Schert, Schewe, Schal.
- Staby, v.** to make steadfast, IV a 27. [OFr. (e)*stabilir*.]
- Stabynea, n.** steadfastness, constancy, IV a 42, b 46. [From next.]
- Stable, adj.** steadfast, VI 237, XI b 119. [OFr. (e)*stable*.]
- Stad, Sted(de), pp.** placed, set; *stad, strally stad, hard sted*, hard put to it, sore bested, VII 156, X 145, XVII 199; *stad with*, furnished with, V 69; see note XVI 40. [ON. *stebja, pp. stadd-r*.]
- Staf, n.** staff, stick, XII b 55, XVII 381; *Stauē (dat.)*, V 69. [OE. *stæf*.]
- Staffing, n.** hitting (with a staff); beating, X 193. [From prec.]
- Stage, n.** stage; degree of advancement, VI 50; *the hihe stage*, the high places (of the gods), XII a 51. [OFr. (e)*stage*.]
- Stalke, v.** to stalk, stride, V 162. [OE. in *be-stealcian, stealcung*.]
- Stall, n. (distrib. sg.)** place, station, XVII 345. [OE. *stall*.] See *Stold*.
- Stalward, -worþ, adj.** valiant, strong, II 27, IV a 48, X 6; *Stalworthly, adv.* valiantly, XIV b 86. [OE. *stælwyrþe*.]
- Stande(n), Stant; Stane, &c.** See *Stonde*; *Ston(e)*.
- Stane-still, adj.** perfectly silent, XIV a 32. [OE. *stān + stille*.] See *Still(e)*, *Ston(e)*.
- Stark, adj.** stiff, XVII 268; *stark ded*, stiff in death, XII a 156; hard, XV h 14; strong, X 31; *Starkast, superl.* X 105. [OE. *stearc*.]
- Starne, Sterne, n.** star, XVII 8; *the seven starnes*, the Seven Stars, usually the Pleiades (cf. OE. *seofon stæran, seofon-stierre*), but here the seven 'planets' (Jupiter, Mars, Mercury, Moon, Saturn, Sun, Venus), XVII 423 (cf. 345). [ON. *stjarna*, earlier \**stern-*.]
- Start, Sterte(n), v.** to start; finch, V 218; *pa. t. sprang*, XII a 143, 152. [OE. *stytian* (once), \**stertan*.]

# GLOSSARY

**State**, *n.* state, position; in a higher state, at a greater height, XVII 443. [OFr. *estat*; L. *status*.] See As(s)ate.

**Statut**, *n.* decree, ordinance, VIII a 315, XI b 105. [OFr. *statut*, L. *statutum*.]

**Staue**; **Sted**. See **Staf**; **Stad**.

**Sted(e)**, **Stedde**, **Steed(e)** *n.*<sup>1</sup> place, I 15, IV a 46, V 145, XVI 40 (see note), &c.; in his (other) stede, here, elsewhere, V 255, XII b 177; town (or distrib. sg. posts), X 117; stead, in in mi stede, in stede of, II 207, VIII a 63; pl. estates, II 161. [OE. *stede*.] See **Stude**.

**Stede**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> steed, II 145. [OE. *stēda*.]

**Stedfastly**, *adv.* steadfastly, IV a 90. [OE. *stede-fast*, *adj.*]

**Steem**, *n.* esteem (of men), Introduction, xxxiii. [OFr. *estime*.]

**Stoke**, *v.* to fasten, shut, &c.; **Stoken**, *pp.* shut, XVI 193; *stoken vp*, hidden away, VII 11; *haf*; *stoken me his steuen*, has 'stuck me with' this tryst, imposed it on me, V 126. [OE. in *be-stecan*; see *N.E.D.* s.v. *Steek*.]

**Stele**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> stem; shaft, handle, V 162. [OE. *stela*.]

**Stele**, **Steill**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> steel, X 122; *trew as stele*, XVII 120. [OE. *stēle*.]

**Stele**, *v.* to steal, XIV b 14; **Stole**, *pp.* II 491. [OE. *stelan*.]

**Stelyd**, *pp.* made of steel, XV h 14. [OE. *stēled*.]

**Stende**, *pa. t. subj.* should stone, xv g 8. [OE. *stēnan*.]

**Stere**, **Steer(e)**, *v.* to steer, XIV c 26, XVII 175. [OE. *stēoran*.]

**Stereman**, *n.* steersman, captain, XVII 427. [OE. *stēor-mann*.]

**Steren**. See **Sturne**.

**Stere-tre**, *n.* tiller, XVII 433. [OE. *stēor + trēo*.]

**Steryd**, see **Siire(n)**; **Sterne**, see **Starne**, **Sturne**; **Sterte(n)**, see **Start**.

**Stenen**, **Stevyn**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> voice, V 268, XVII 72. [OE. *stefn*, fem.]

**Stenen**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> tryst, appointed meeting, V 126, 145, 170. [OE. *stefn*, masc., time; ON. *stefna*, tryst.]

**Steward**, *n.* steward, master of (king's) household, II 205, 495, &c.; cf. X 36, 171. [OE. (late 11th c.) *sti-ward*.]

**Stie**, *v.* to mount, XI b 123. [OE. *stigan*.]

**Stif(fe)**, *adj.* unyielding, dauntless, V 31, 301, XIV c 20. [OE. *stif*.]

**Stiztel**, **Styztel**, *v.* to control, govern; *stizle*, is master, V 145; *sturn... to stiztel*, ill to deal with (or harsh in his rule), V 69; *refl.* in *styztel þe vpon*, limit yourself to, V 184. [Cf. OE. *stihtan*.]

**Stik**, *v.* to thrust through, XIV b 14. [OE. *stician*.]

**Still**, *v.* to quieten, XVII 217. [OE. *stillan*.]

**Still(e)**, **Styll(e)**, **Styl**, *adj.* still; motionless, I 196, II 117, V 184; quiet, silent, I 265, II 443, 525, XII a 83, XV g 10, 32, &c.; inactive, XI b 37; calm, II 103; *holde me stille*, hold my peace, IX 279; *style as þe ston*, still as (a) stone, firm as a rock, V 225, XVII 525; perfectly quiet, XVII 406; *adv.* quietly, XV b 21; without contention, V 317; secretly, II 567; perpetually, ever, IV a 42, XVI 168. See **Loud(e)**. [OE. *stille*.]

**Stynk**, *v.* to stink; *to thou stynk*, until you stink, XVII 381; **Stynkyng**, *pres. p.* disgusting, XI b 99. [OE. *stincan*.]

**Stynt**, *v. trans.* to stop, check, X 65, 105; **Stint**, *pp.* ceased, II 447. [OE. (*ā*-) *stynian*.]

**Stire(n)**, **Stir(e)**, **Styr(e)**, *v. trans. and intr.* to stir, move, I 197, XVII 366; to toss, VII 141; to rouse, incite, induce, XI b 39, 93, 129, 310, XVII 37, &c.; **Steryd**, *pa. t.* I 197. [OE. *styrian*.]

# GLOSSARY

**Stith(e)**, *adj.* stout, doughty, VII 7; violent, VII 141, 156; *quasi-sb.* doughty men, VII 21. [OE. *stīþ*.]

**Stod(e)**; **Stoken**. See **Stonde**; **Steke**.

**Stoking**, *n.* stabbing, X 193. [Ofr. *estoquer*; MLG. *stoken*.]

**Stok(ke)**, *n.* stem, tree-trunk, I 121, XIV c 82; block, XIV e 1; anvil, XV h 14; *by stok oþer ston*, anywhere, VI 20; *noupur stok nor strete* (rime-substitute for *ston*), nothing, XIV c 62; *cf.* **Stub(he)**. [OE. *stocc*.]

**Stold**, *pp.* fixed, XVII 525 (for \***Stald**; see note). [OE. *stalian*.]

**Stole**. See **Stele**, *v.*

**Ston(e)**, **Stoon**, **Stane** (x), *n.* stone, rock, precious stone, II 151, IX 88, X 54, 83, XI b 40, XII b 130, XIII a 53, XV g 12, &c.; stone floor, ground, II 197, V 162; *trew . . . as ston in the wall*, XVII 515; for other phr. see **Still(e)**, **Stok(ke)**, **Stub(he)**; *cf.* **Stane-still**. [OE. *stān*.]

**Stony**, *adj.* of stone, XIII a 5. [OE. *stānig*.]

**Stonde**, **Stand(e)**, *v.*; **Stant**, 3 *sg. pres.* XII a 74, &c.; **Stont**, II 556; **Stod(e)**, *pa. t.* I 74, II 391, V 301, &c.; **Stood**, XIII a 32; **Stude**, X 196; **Standen**, *pp.* VI 159. To stand, I 8, V 184, VI 154, &c.; *up him stod*, stood up, XV g 27, 29 (see **He**, *masc.*); to stand firm, endure, remain, IV a 42, X 196, XII a 188, b 221, XIV d 4; *to stonde for*, stand up for, XI a 66; *stonde þe a strok*, stand a blow from you, V 218; to stand still, I 64, 169; *lete . . . stonde*, left, VIII a 106; to be, XII a 165, XVII 416; *how that it stod(e)*, how it had been settled, XII b 202; how matters stood, XII a 150; *how so ever it standis*, whatever the circumstances, XVII 210; *to stonde in*, consist of, XI a 55, 60; *upon hem stant*,

is based on, consists of, these, XII a 127. [OE. *stāndan*, *stōndan*.]

**Store**, *n.* store, stock, in *settis no store bi*, has no regard for, XVII 92. [Ofr. (e) *stor*.]

**Storyis**, **Stories**, *n. pl.* stories, VII 11, 21, X *introd.* [Ofr. (e) *storie*.]

**Storke**, *n.* stork, IV b 47; see **Strucyo**. [OE. *storc*.]

**Stounde**, *n.* space of time; *in þat stounde*, thereupon, II 550. [OE. *stūnd*.]

**Stoupe**, *v.* to stoop, VIII b 24. [OE. *stūpian*.]

**Stour(e)**, *n.* conflict, battle, VII 7, 28, XIV c 20, XVI 130. [Ofr. (e) *stour*.]

**Stout(e)**, *adj.* proud, II 293; fierce, II 184, XIV a 13, XVII 304, 347; *adv.* stoutly, II 360; **Stoutly**, *adv.* boldly, X 60. [Ofr. (e) *stout*.]

**Strak**; **Straught** (**Strauhte**). See **Strok(e)**; **Strecche**.

**Strange**, **Straunge**, *adj.* foreign, outlandish, strange, IX 274, 311, XII a 13, XIII b 14, 40, &c.; **Strangelych**, *adv.* in a foreign tongue, XIII b 62. [Ofr. (e) *strange*.]

**Strangere**, Introduction xv; ? *n.* stranger, foreigner, as name of (unknown) variety of stanza; ? *adj. compar.* stranger (metre; *i.e.* than 'rime couée'). [Ofr. *estrangier*, or *estrangle*.]

**Stratly**, *adv.* straitly; *stratly stail*, hard put to it, X 145; *ferd . . . stratly with*, pressed sorely on, X 172. [From **Streyte**.]

**Strecche**, **Strecche**, *v.* to stretch; *intr.* extend, IX 30, 180; to direct one's course, go, II 341; **Strauhte**, *pa. t.* (refl.) in *strauhte him to*, made for, XII b 93; **Straught**, *pp.* departed, VII 11; see **Streght**. [OE. *streccan*; *stræhte*, *strehhte*.]

**Stream**, **Strem**, *n.* stream, XIII a 17, 37, XV b 21. [OE. *strēam*.]

# GLOSSARY

- Streight**, *adj.* straight; *streight vp.* sheer, IX 197. [Pp. of Strecche.]
- Streyt(e)**, *adj.* narrow, IX 205; *adv.* closely, IX 229. [Ofr. (e)*streit*.] See Straty.
- Strenghe**, *n.* strength, fortitude, IV b 56, 73. [OE. *strēngu*.]
- Strenght**, **Strengthe**; **Strinth**, **Strynth** (x); *n.* strength, force, IX 71, 199, X 187, 195, XIII b 65; *full strenght*, † in full measure, fully, XVII 261. [OE. *strengþ(u)*.]
- Streny** (*hem*), *v. refl.* to exert (themselves), VI 191. [Ofr. (e)*streindre*, (e)*streign*-.]
- Stret(e)**, *n.* street, II 509, XIV a 25, c 62 (see Stokke), XV g 5. [OE. *strēt*, *strēt*.]
- Streunyn**. See Struye.
- Stryde3**, 3 *sg. pres.* strides, V 164. [OE. *strīdan*.]
- Strye**. See Struye.
- Strif**, **Stryf(fe)**, *n.* strife, quarrel, VII 28, IX 83, XVII 400; *withoute stryf*, unresisting, V 255. [Ofr. (e)*strif*.] See Stryne.
- Stryke(n)**, **Strik(e)**, *v. trans.* to strike, V 31, 237, X 139, XV h 14, XVII 231 (*subj.*), &c.; *intr.* to glide, flow, II 252, XV b 21; *stryke3*, shall come (*i. e.* for his reward), VI 210. [OE. *strīcan*.]
- Strinth**, **Strynth**. See Strenght.
- Strype**, *n.* stance, firm position of the feet, V 237 (cf. *stryþþe*, Sir Gaw. 846). [† Cf. OE. *stride*, *stride*.]
- Stryue**, **Stryfe**, *v.* to strive; *stryue ageines*, with, rebel against, disobey, VIII a 315, XVII 107; **Streunyn**, *pp.* striven, XIV b 86. [Ofr. (e)*striver*.]
- Strok(e)**, **Strak** (x), *n.* blow, stroke, V 184, 255, X 105, XVII 382, &c. [OE. \**strāc*, rel. to *strīcan*, **Stryken**.]
- Stronde**, *n.* sea-shore, XII a 134. [OE. *strānd*.]
- Strong(e)**, *adj.* strong, valiant, VI 171, VII 7, IX 92, XVI 130, &c.; violent, XIII a 7, 42; severe, IX 204; *adv.* severely, VI 116 (see Enduir, and note); **Strongly**, *adv.* vigorously, IX 231. [OE. *strāng*, *strōng*; *strānge*, *strānglice*, *adv.*]
- Strowed**, *pp.* strewn, XII a 96. [OE. *strōwian*.]
- Strucyo**, *n.* ostrich (wrongly explained as 'Storke'), IV b 47. [L. *struthio*, ostrich, stork.]
- Struye**, *v.* to destroy, VIII a 29; **Strye**, V 126. [Shortened from Ofr. *destrui-re*; with vowel of *strye* cf. Nye, Byled.] See Distroie.
- Strumpatis**, *n. pl.* harlots, XI b 176. [Obscure.]
- Stub**(be), *n.* tree-trunk, stump, V 225; *noþer stub no ston*, nothing, II 346 (cf. Stokke). [OE. *stybb*, *stubb*.]
- Stude**, *n.* place, XV g 28. [OE. *styde*.] See Sted(e).
- Stude**. See Stonde.
- Study**, **Studie**, *n.* deep thought, V 301; study, XI b 227. [Ofr. (e)*studie*.]
- Studie**, *v.* to study, XI b 112, 135, &c.; *subj. pl.* let (many) study, XI a 46; **Studiynge**, &c., *n.* XI b 230, 293, &c. [Ofr. (e)*studier*.] See Vnstudied.
- Stuf**, *v.* to furnish, provision, XVII 155; *refl.* to gorge, glut (oneself), XVII 85. [Ofr. *estofer*, to furnish; † infl. by *estoffer*, to choke.]
- Sturdy**, *adj.* obstinate, X 194; **Sturdely**, *adv.* resolutely, X 45. [Ofr. (e)*stourdi*.]
- Sturn(e)**, *adj.* grim, V 31, 68 (see Stijtel); **Storen**, XIV a 13; **Sterneliche**, *adv.* grimly, VIII a 315. [OE. *stýrne*, \**stlörne*.]
- Subleocoun** (*of*), *n.* subjection (to), IX 218, 219. [Ofr. *subjection*.]
- Substance**, *n.*: *þat God comaundid Himself to þe s. þerof*, of which God gave Himself to be the substance, XI b 223. [Ofr. *substance*.]
- Succour**, *v.* to bring help, X 39. [Ofr. *succur-re*.] See Socour(e).

# GLOSSARY

**Such(e); Suddan(d)ly.** See Swiche; Sondein.

**Sue(n), v.** to follow, VII 24, XI a 38, b 65, &c.; *Suiende, pres. p.* XII a 122; *Sewyngly, adv.* in *seye jou* s., go on to tell you, IX 134. [OFr. *suir, scwir.*]

**Suete.** See Swete, *adj.*

**Suffise (to), v.** to be sufficient (for), IX 270; to be able, capable, XII a 177 (with pleon. *maí*). [OFr. *suffire, suffis-*.]

**Suffre, Suffer, v.** to endure, suffer, bear, I 34, II 264, IV a 88, IX 7, &c.; permit, let, VIII a 74, 174, XVI 378; *Ysuffred, pp.* II 559. [OFr. *suffrir.*]

**Suffrance, n.** sufferance (of God), VIII a 138. [OFr. *suffrance.*]

**Suiende.** See Sue(n).

**Suir, adj.** sure, XIV c 39; *Sure, adv.* securely, well, XVII 282. [OFr. *s(e)ur.*]

**Suld(e); Sulle; Sum(me).** See Schal; Selle(n); Som(e).

**Summor, n.** (main) beam, X 104. [OFr. *som(er), sumer.*]

**Sumoun, v.** to summon; *mad sumoun*, made (men) summon (them), VI 179. [OFr. *sumuner.*]

**Sun; Sundir; Sung(g)e; Sun(ne); Sunner.** See Sone, n.; Sonder; Syng(e); Sonne; Sone, *adv.*

**Supplantoreȝ, n. pl.** usurpers, VI 80. [OFr. *sousplanteor*, L. *supplantator.*]

**Suppos(e), v.** to imagine, XVII 221; *suppos that*, even supposing that, X *introd.* [OFr. *supposer.*]

**Surfait, n.** surfeit, excess (personified), VIII a 262. [OFr. *surfait*.]

**Sustenance, n.** sustenance, livelihood, XI b 297. [OFr. *sustena(u)nce.*]

**Suster, n.** sister, I 36; *Soster, xv g 7, 10; Syster, -yr*, I 112, 126. [OE. *s(w)uster, swoster*; ON. *systir.*]

**Sutelté, n.** cunning, skill in invention, X 74. [OFr. *s(e)utilité.*]

**Suth; Supthe.** See Soth(e); Siben Suthfast, *adj.* true, X *introd.*

[OE. *sōþ-fast.*] See Soth(e).

**Suthfastnes, n.** truth, X *introd.* [OE. *sōþfast-nes.*]

**Swa, Zuo (III), adv.** demonstr. thus, so, in this way, III 17, 39, IV b 19, 45, X 13; thereupon, III 28; therefore, III 36; in the same way, IV b 49; so mightily, X 144; *swa þat, zuo þet*, so that, III 18, X 155, 157. [OE. *swā.*] See So.

**Swage, v.** to become assuaged; to grow less, XIV c 111. [Shortened from OFr. *asouagier.*]

**Swalpryt, pa. t.** floundered, VII 162. [? Only recorded here; cf. Du. *xwalpen*; G. (dial.) *schwalpen.*]

**Swange.** See Swynke.

**Swappit, pa. t.** let fly, X 83, 91, 99. [? Altered form of OE. *swāpan.*]

**Swarte, adj.** black, XV h 1. [OE. *swarti.*]

**Swat.** See Swete, *v.*

**Swavnanð, pres. p.** swooning, X 56 (*v.r.* swonande). [Not a possible Scottish form of Swone, *q.v.* Perh. scribal corruption of *swalmand*, or *swemand*; see *N.E.D.*, s.vv. *Swalm, Swcam.*]

**Swech.** See Swiche.

**Sweng, n.** labour, VI 215. [OE. (*ge-*) *swenc*, -*swinc*, occas. -*swing.*] See Swynke.

**Swerd, Sworde (V), n.** sword, II 295, V 251, XIV b 13, 61, XVII 103. [OE. *swæord, swurd*, &c.]

**Swere, v.** to swear, take one's oath, V 54, VIII b 59, XII b 165, XVII 227, &c.; *Swor, pa. t.* XII b 200; *Swoir*, X 73; *Swore, pp.* XII b 44. [OE. *swerian.*] See Forsworn.

**Swete, adj.** sweet, II 414, 442, IV a 73, V 169 (see *Sire*), XV f 1, &c.; *Suete*, XV b 5; *swete wille*, good pleasure, II 384; (*þat*) *swete*, (that) sweet one, IV a 78, XV f 7; *Swettere, compar. (adv.)* VIII a 211;

# GLOSSARY

- Suetest, Swettest, superl.** IV a 53, Introduction xii. [OE. *swēte*; compar. *swētra*.] See Swote.
- Swete, v.** to sweat, IX 96; (joined with allit. *swynke* or its translation *trauayle*), VIII a 26, 122, b 59, XIV c 94, XVII 195; Swat, *pa. t.* VI 226. [OE. *swētan*, *pa. t.* *swētte*.]
- Swetnesse, Swettnes, n.** sweetness, IV a 89, b 44. [OE. *swētnes*.]
- Swene, n.** dream, IX 83, XII a 49, 97, 127, 147. [OE. *swefn*.]
- Swiche, Swych(e), adj.** such, I 2, 92, II 198, 317, &c.; Swech, XV h 3; Sich(e), XI a 41, b 159, XVII 400, &c.; Such(e), II 46, IX 227, &c.; *swych, such, such a*, I 79, XII a 86; *swiche a*, what a!, II 505; *swech . . . a*, such a, XV h 16; *suche*, of like kind, XII a 82; *pron. pl.* VIII a 33, 213; *alle swyche* (with sg. verb), everything of the kind, I 9. [OE. *swelc, swilc, swylc, swulc*.] See Swilke, Slike.
- Swyft, Swifte, adj.** swift, VI 211, XIV c 65; Swiftenes, *n.* swiftness, swift passing, VII 12. [OE. *swift, swift-nes*.]
- Swikele, adj.** treacherous, XV g 7. [OE. *swicol*.]
- Swilke, Swylk(e), adj.** of this kind, such, IV a 35, XVI 38, 116; *Sio*, X 40, 66, 74, 103, 135; *pron. pl.* such folk, IV b 25. [Northern form of Swiche, *q.v.*]
- Swym, n.** dimness, oblivion, VII 12. [OE. *swima, swoon*.]
- Swimme, to swim; Swim-mende, pres. p.** XII a 170, 172; Swam, *pa. t.* VII 162. [OE. *swimman*.]
- Swyn, n. pl.** swine, VIII b 19. [OE. *swin*.]
- Swyngyng, n.** swinging, strokes, VII 162. [OE. *swingan*.]
- Swynke, n.** toil; *in sudore* (L.) and *swynke* (var. on usual *swete* and *swink*), VIII a 229. [OE. (*ge-*)*swinc*.] See Sweng.
- Swynke, v.** to toil (freq. allit. with *swete*), VIII a 26, 122, 188, 210, b 59, XVII 195; Swange, *pa. t. pl.* VI 226. [OE. *swincan*, and occas. in same sense *swingan*.]
- Swire, Swyre, n.** neck, XIV b 68 (*distrib. sg.*; see Herte), XV c 27. [OE. *swira*.]
- Swipe, Swype, Swith, adv.** very, II 118; exceedingly, II 472; (very) quickly, I 106, II 474, V 191, XIV b 51; also *swipe, as swype*, at once, I 111, II 574 (see Also, Ase). [OE. *swipe*.]
- Swndir, Swoir.** See Sonder; Swere.
- Swolowet, pp.** swallowed, VII 12. [OE. *sw(eo)lgan*.]
- Swon, n.** swan, XV c 27. [OE. *swan, swon*.]
- Swone, n.** swoon, in *fal yn a swone*, fallen in a swoon, I 195 (note); orig. false analysis of *fallyn aswone*, fallen swooning (*cf.* II 549). [OE. *ge-swōgen*, ME. (*y*)*swowen*, &c., pp.] See Aswone.
- Swone, v.** to swoon, II 197. [ME. *swō(w)nen*, from prec.]
- Swor(e).** See Swere.
- Swot(e), adj.** pleasant, sweet, XV a 13, 18. [OE. *swōt*.] See Swete, *adj.*
- Ta.** See Take(n).
- Tabernacle, n.** high-seat under a canopy, II 412. [OFr. *tabernacle*.]
- Tabourer, n.** player on the tabour, II 521. [From next.]
- Tabure, Tabour, n.** tabour, small drum, I 6, II 301. [OFr. *tabour*.]
- Tache, v.** to fasten, V 108; *fig.*, to set, implant, VI 104. [Shortened from OFr. *atachier*.]
- Tagt.** See Teche(n).
- Tagyld, pp.** entangled, encumbered, IV b 62. [Obscure; appar. peculiar to Rolle.]
- Taille, n.** tail, XVI 159 (see Top). [OE. *tægl*.]

# GLOSSARY

**Tayll.** See Tale.

**Takelles**, *n. pl.* tackle, gear, VII 148. [MLG. *takel*.]

**Take(n)**, **Tak**, **Ta** (v, x), *v.* (i) to catch, capture, VII 121, IX 243, X 71, XIII a 38, &c.; seize, fall upon, VIII a 138, 258; get, VI 192, VIII a 133, &c.; take, II 74, V 289, IX 123, X 130 (see Hond), 143, XIV d 6, &c.; see also **In(e)**, **Mynde**, **Reward(e)**, &c.; pick (up), II 550, XII b 136; assume, XII a 114; choose, VIII b 83, XI b 76, &c.; accept, receive, XI b 268, XVI 331; (ii) to commit, entrust, see pp.; (iii) to make, XVII 137, 272. **Takth**, 3 *sg. pres.* XII b 136; **Tas**, V 237; **Tot3**, goes, VI 153 (cf. Nyme; see note). **Tok(e)**, **Took**, *pa. t.* I 136, II 19, 64, V 175 (2 *sg.*), XI b 273, XIV c 45, &c. **Take**, *pp.* XI b 271; *hath take*, has been stricken with, XII a 11; **Takyne**, X 71; **Tane**, X 19, XVI 172 (entrusted); *hase tane*, has (got), IV a 53; **Tone**, committed, V 91 (see VI 153, note); **Itake**, **Ytake**, XIII a 38, XV g 15. [ON. *taka*.]

**Tald(e)**. See Telle.

**Tale**, **Tayll** (XVII), *n.* tale, story; talk; word(s), what one has said, I 247, V 56, VI 230, XII b 88, XVI 273, XVII 315, &c.; upon the tale, immed. after their talk, XII b 147; *pl.* idle tales, VIII a 52, 54; see Telle, and next. [OE. *talu*.]

**Talk**, *v.* to talk; speak of, V 304; with cognate obj. in *talk þe tale*, hold the converse, V 65. [Prob. OE. \**talcian*, rel. to prec.]

**Talouns**, *n. pl.* talons, IX 254. [Ofr. *taloun*.]

**Tane**. See Take(n).

**Tappe**, *n.* tap, knock, V 289. [Echoic; cf. Ofr. *tap*; Ofr. *taper*, *v.*]

**Targe**, *n.* (small) shield, XIV c 55. [Ofr. *targe*.]

**Tary(e)**, **Tarie**, *v.* to harass;

*trans.* to hinder, delay, keep (waiting), IX 111, XVII 236; *intr.* for *rest*. to be troubled (or as next, but cf. Tene, *v.*), XVII 210; to linger, tarry, XII b 28, XVII 244, 497, 499; **Taryy-(i)ng**, *n.* delay, XVII 377, 475. [OE. *tergan*, &c. annoy; Ofr. *tarier*, torment; the sense-development is curious.]

**Tas**. See Take(n).

**Tasse**, *n.* pile, XII b 22. [Ofr. *tas*.]

**Tast(e)**, *v.* to test; to sound (water), XVII 448; to experience, XVI 358. [Ofr. *taster*.]

**Taterynge**, *n.* tearing (long notes) to fragments (cf. *smale brekyngs*, 138), or babbling, singing without regard to the sense, XI b 159. [ME. *tateren* (i) to tear torags; cf. ON. *töturr*, tatters: (ii) to babble; cf. MDu. MLG. *tateren*, babble.]

**Tauzte(n)**, **Tauhte**. See Teche(n).

**Taxoure**, *n.* assessor, VIII a 40. [Ofr. *taxour*.]

**Te**, *prep.* in for *to* (with infin.), to, xv b 30, c 18. [Unaccented reduction of *To*.]

**Te**, *v.* to draw; *intr.* to go, II 212, 290, 318; **Tep**, *pres. pl.* draw near, II 274. [OE. *tēon*.]

**Te**. See *pe def. art.*; *pou*.

**Teche(n)**, *v.* to teach, show (the way), direct, \*IV b 60 (see note), V 7, VIII a 6, 76, XI b 5, &c.; **Tazt**, *pa. t.* V 311; **Tauzt(e)**, VIII a 202, 296, XI a 20, b 12, &c.; **Tauhte**, VIII b 5; **Tauzt(e)**, *pp.* VIII a 23, XI a 6, &c.; **Ytauzt**, XIII b 21; **Techinge**, -yng, *n.* teaching, XI a 56, b 121, XIII b 30, &c. [OE. *tēcan*, *tēhte*, *tāhte*.]

**Teyn**. See Tene, *n.* and *v.*

**Tell(e)**, **Tel**, *v.* to enumerate, recount, II 263, 373, XV c 26; to account, consider, I 19; to tell, relate, mention (foll. by *dat.* without *to*), I 22, 58, II 115, V 62, XVII 164, &c.; *herd slike tales tell*, heard such tales told,

# GLOSSARY

- XIV *b* 35; to recite, V 120.  
 Telp, 3 *sg. pres.* III 38; Talde,  
*pa. t.* IV *a* 84; Told(e), I 262,  
 II 86, &c.; Toolde, XI *a* 65;  
 Tald(e), *pp.* IV *a* 50, X 140;  
 Told(e), XII *a* 147, XVI 149,  
 &c.; Ytold (*of*), highly thought  
 (*of*), XIII *b* 25. [OE. *tellan*;  
*pa. t. tálde.*]  
**Teme**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> team (for ploughing),  
 VIII *a* 128. [OE. *tēam.*]  
**Teme**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> theme, subject, VIII *a* 23.  
 [OFr. *tesme*, \**teme*; L. *thema.*]  
**Teme(n)** (*to*), *v.* to be attached  
 (in loyalty to), belong, VI 100.  
 [OE. *tēman*, appeal (to an  
 authority).]  
**Temporal**, *adj.* temporal, XI *b*  
 140, 272. [L. *temporalis.*]  
**Tempest(e)**, *n.* storm, tempest,  
 VII 103, XII *a* 137, &c.; *gen. sg.*  
 (before *sake*; see XVII 88, note),  
 I 177. [OFr. *tempeste.*]  
**Tempre**, *v.* to tune, II 437, 526.  
 [OE. *temprian*, from L. *tem-  
 perāre.*]  
**Tenaunt**, *n.* tenant, VIII *a* 39.  
 [OFr. *tenant.*]  
**Tendre**, **Tender**, *adj.* soft, IX 39,  
 40; tender, VI 52; Tenderly,  
*adv.* tenderly, IV *a* 87. [OFr.  
*tendre.*]  
**Ten(e)**, *adj.* ten, II 99, 183, &c.  
 [OE. *tēn(e).*]  
**Tene**, **Teyn** (XVII), *n.* suffering,  
 grief, IV *a* 36, *b* 28, VII 81, VIII *a*  
 127, XVII 533; anger, VIII *a*  
 111; injury, in *in tene*, wrong-  
 fully, VII 178; as *adj.* dismal,  
 ill, V 7. [OE. *tēna.*]  
**Tene**, **Teyn** (XVII), *v. trans.* to  
 injure, VIII *a* 39; *intr.* to feel  
 grief, XVII 210. [OE. *tēnan*,  
*tēonian.*]  
**Tent**, *adj.* tenth, XVII 478. [ME.  
*tende*, *tend(e)*, *tent* (*cf.* Fift);  
 ON. *tíundi.*]  
**Tente** (*on*), *n.* notice (*of*), VI 27.  
 [Shortened from OFr. *atente.*]  
**Tent(e)**, *v.* to look after, XVI 172,  
 XVII 433; tent (*to*, *hedir*), pay  
 attention (to, to me), XVII 291,  
 421. [From prec.]  
**Teornep.** See Turne.  
**Ter**, *n.* tar, X 19; Tar, XVII 127,  
 282. [OE. *te(o)ru.*]  
**Teres**, *n. pl.* tears, II 327. [OE.  
*tēar.*]  
**Terme**, *n.* appointed period, VI  
 143. [OFr. *terme.*]  
**Testament**, *n.* testament, will,  
 III 33, 35, XII *introd.* [L. *tes-  
 tamentum.*]  
**Tēp**, *n. pl.* teeth, II 539. [OE.  
*tēþ*, *pl.*]  
**Tēp.** See Te, *v.*  
**Tethee**, *adj.* touchy, irritable,  
 XVII 186. [Obscure; see  
*N.E.D.*, s.v. *Teethy.*]  
**Text**, *n.* text; words or account  
 of the original authority, VII 51  
 (*cf.* Destr. Troy 407). [OFr.  
*texte.*]  
**Th.** See þ.  
**Tyde**, *n.* time; *þat yche tyde*, at the  
 same time, together, I 208; (*at*,  
*in*) *þat tyde*, then, thereupon, V  
 18, 100, XVII 39; *þis tyde*, now,  
 XVI 184, 215. [OE. *tīd.*]  
**Tide**, *v.* to happen, befall; *tide*  
*wat bitide*, come what may, II  
 339; Tīd(e), *pa. t.* VII 81; *þat*  
*tīd for to*, chanced to, did, VII  
 178. [OE. *tīdan.*]  
**Tydely**, *adv.* quickly, XVII 291.  
 [ON. *tīð-liga*, with ME. *ðl > dl.*]  
 See Tyte.  
**Tiding**, **Tydinge**, **Tythyng**  
 (XVII), *n.* (piece of) news,  
 tidings, II 97, XII *a* 36; *pl.* news,  
 II 487; *newe tydynges*, *ty-  
 thyngis*, IX 278, XVII 199. [OE.  
*tīdwng*; ON. *tīðindi.*]  
**Tyðe**, **Tye**, *v.* to tie, XVII 225;  
 as an allit. synonym of Tache  
 (*q.v.*), VI 104. [OE. *tēgan.*]  
**Tyzt**, *pp.* come, arrived, VI 143.  
 [ME. *tihten*; OE. *tyhtan*, draw.  
*Cf.* Te, *v.*]  
**Tyyl**, *n.* brick, XIII *a* 25. [OE.  
*tīgele.*]  
**Til**, **Tyl**, **Till(e)**, *conj.* until, VII  
 167, VIII *b* 38, XII *a* 150, XVI 24,  
 &c. [From next.]  
**Til**, **Till(e)**, **Tyl(l)**, *prep.* (in  
 Northern texts synon. and inter-



# GLOSSARY

- changeable with *To*; *not* with *To-* *prefix*, as scribal error at *x* 75), *to*, towards, into, up to, *iv* a 6, 18, 33, *x* 26, 81, *xiv* b 72, *xvi* 32, &c.; (postponed) *iv* a 30, *x* 77, *xvi* 393; with *infin.* *x* 4, 14, &c. (and *see* *For*); *for*, *iv* a 93, *b* 25; *until*, *i* 185, *ii* 75, *iv* a 35, &c.; *till* *pat*, *tyl* . . . *pat*, *until* (*conj.*), *vi* 188, *ix* 224, 229, *xiv* c 98, &c. [OE. (rare *Nth.*) *till*; ON. *til*.] *See* *Intil*, *par(e)*.
- Tyl**, *v.* to entice, *i* 50. [Cf. OE. *be-tillan*, *for-tyllan*.]
- Tilye**, *v.* to labour for, earn, *viii* a 229; to till, *viii* a 232. [OE. *tilian*.]
- Tyme**, *Time*, time, period, season, occasion, *i* 142, *vi* 143, *vii* 19, *viii* b 106, *xii* a 27, &c.; *whan tyme is*, when it is (the) time, *viii* a 11, 72; (life)time, day, *i* 27, *vii* 8, *viii* b 107, &c.; *pl.* periods, hours, *viii* b 107; *any tyme*, at any time, *iv* b 44; *at his tyme*, (for) now, *v* 23, *ix* 270; *for þe tyme*, for the time being, *xi* b 128; *fram tyme þat*, from the time (*conj.*), *xiii* b 21; *in tyme*, opportunely, *xvi* 149; *many tyme*, often, *ix* 44; *see* *Heigh*, *Olte(n)*, *Som(c)*, &c. [OE. *tīma*.]
- Tymed**, *pp.* timed, *v* 173. [From *prec.*]
- Timliohe**, *adj.* temporal, *iii* 1, 60. [OE. *tīm-līc*.]
- Tyne**, *v.* to lose, *iv* a 52; *to tyne*, for nothing, in vain, *xvii* 441; *Tynde*, *Tynt*, *pp.* *vii* 103, *viii* b 97. [ON. *tyna*.]
- Tyrantis**, *n. pl.* tyrants, *xvi* 311. [OFr. *tyrant*.]
- Tired**, *pa. t.* attired, *ii* 586. [Shortened from *Atire*, *q.v.*]
- Tyste**, *vi* 100. Usually interpreted as *tytse* (*see* *App.*, p. 278), tight, close; this is not else recorded until early *Mn.E.* (where it is obscure alteration of *ME.* *þiȝt*, ON. \**þétt*, *þétt-r*). *Read* *Tryste*, *q.v.*
- Tyte**, *adv.* quickly, *xvi* 333; as *tyte*, at once, *xvii* 219. [ON. *titt*, neut. of *tīð-r*.] *See* *Tydely*.
- Tythe**, *n.* tenth part, tithe, *viii* a 86. [OE. *tī(o)gopa*, &c., tenth.]
- Tythingis**. *See* *Tiding*.
- To**, *adv.* too, *i* 108, *ii* 335, *v* 232, *vi* 121, *viii* a 260, *b* 23, 24, *ix* 267, *xiv* a 2, *b* 91. [OE. *tō*; orig. same word as *To*, *prep.*]
- To**, *conj.* till, *xvii* 241, 381, 499; *cf.* *Til*. [From next; *cf.* OE. *tō-þæs-þe*.]
- To**, *prep.* to, *i* 9, &c.; (postponed) *ii* 119, 517; *to him* was, he had, *xi* b 285-6; (hunt) after, *viii* a 30, 31; at, *ii* 441, 579, *v* 265, *vii* 85, *xvii* 343 (*see* *Bihold*); *to my hend*, in, under, my hands, *xvii* 255; in, according to, *xvii* 28; (turn) into, *iv* a 94, *b* 26; on, on to, *ii* 549, *v* 264, *vi* 74, *vii* 174, *viii* a 66, *ix* 182; up to, *iii* 56; until, *xi* b 25; towards, with regard to, *vi* 108 (*see* *Fare*, *v.*); against, *xi* b 111; for, *ii* 485, *vi* 147, *viii* b 14, *xi* b 56, 59, *xvii* 109, &c.; *you to*, for yourselves, *xiv* d 7; *to me* (*ix* 100), *see* note; for, by way of, as, in, *vii* 70, *ix* 150, *xi* b 223, *xii* a 3; *see* *Mede*; *to plesynge* (&c.) *of*, so as to please, &c., *ix* 333, *xi* b 108, &c. *Adv.* to it, on, *xi* b 200; *go to*, get along, *xvii* 236; *þat . . . to*, to which, *i* 33, *v* 29; *to and fro*, *xvii* 111. [OE. *tō*.] *See* *Te*, *par(e)*.
- To**. *See* *Tuo*.
- To-broke**, *v. intr.* to burst, break, *iv* a 78; *subj. sg.* in *þin herte þe* (dat.) *tobreke*, may your heart be stricken with remorse (or literally break) within you, *xv* g 10. [OE. *tō-brecan*.]
- To-ohine**, *pp.* cracked; all to-chine, all scarred, *ii* 262. [OE. *tō-cinan*.]
- To-dele**, *v.* to divide, *xiii* a 55. [OE. *tō-dēlian*.]
- To-dryue**, *v.* to dispel, destroy; *subj. sg.* *xv* h 16. [OE. *tō-dryfan*.]

# GLOSSARY

**To-for(e)**, *adv.* before, XII a 188; *nou tofore*, just now, XII b 43; *prep.* before, in front of, XII b 131, XIII a 43, b 26. [OE. *tō-foran*.]

**To-frusohyt**, *pa. t.* smashed to pieces, \*X 75 (Ms. till frusche; see Til). [OE. *tō-* + OFr. *fruisier*.]

**Tojere**, *adv.* this year; *nojt tojere*, not for a long time yet, VI 228. [OE. *tō gēare*.]

**To-gidro**, -gider(e), -gyd(e)re, *adv.* together, II 121, IX 173, 253, XI b 9, XV h 9, &c.; **To-gedre**; -geder, -yr, -ur, I 229, VII 131, IX 53, XIV c 29, &c. [OE. *tō-gædere*.]

**Togideres**, *adv.* together, VIII a 175. [Prec. + *adv.* -es.]

**Tojt**, *adj.* taut, firmly bound; *made hit tojt*, I made a compact of it, VI 162. *Maken hit tough(e)*, is a fixed expr. = raise objections, make conditions (see forms and senses in *N.E.D.*, s.v. *Tough*); but this would require *ne* for *and*. [OE. \**toht*, rel. to *tēon*, draw.]

**Toiper**. See **Tojer**.

**Tok(e)**, **Token**. See **Take(n)**.

**Token**, -yn, **Tokne**, *n.* token; sign, omen, XII a 149, XVII 471, 517; memento, V 330. [OE. *tācn*.]

**Tokynyng**, *n.* indication, proof, XVII 476. [OE. *tācnung*.]

**Told(e)**. See **Telle**.

**Tole**, *n.* weapon, V 192, XVI 179. [OE. *tōl*.]

**Tolled**, *pa. t.* enticed, I 53. [OE. \**tollian*, rel. to *Tyl*, *v.*]

**Tom(e)**, **Tume** (x), *n.* leisure, opportunity, VII 43, X 143; time, VI 225. [ON. *tóm*.]

**Tomorwe**, *adv.* to-morrow, II 165, XII b 170. [OE. *tō morgen*.]

**Ton**, *pron.* in *þe ton*, the one, XI b 27, 104. [False division of *þet on*; on *þet* see *þe*, *def. art.*] See **On(e)**, **Tojer**.

**Tone**. See **Take(n)**.

**Tong(e)**, **Tung(e)**, *n.* tongue,

II 222, IV a 89, XVII 398 (*distrib. sg.*; see *Herte*); speech, language, I 58, VIII a 52, XI a 7, XIII b 2, &c.; *hold þi tong*, XVII 217; (*spekyng*) *in tonge*, (words) on tongue, on our tongues, XI b 121. [OE. *tūnge*.]

**Toolde**. See **Telle**.

**Top**, **Toppe**, *n.* hair on the crown of the head, XV g 16; top, XVII 469; (of a ship = *Topcastell*), XVII 271; *fro topp* to *taille*, from top to bottom, beginning to end, XVI 159. [OE. *topp*.]

**Topcastell**, *n.* fighting top, embattled platform at mast-top for archers, &c., VII 148, X 121. [Prec. + *Castell*, *q. v.*]

**To-rett**, *pa. t.* rent in pieces, II 81 (riming *witt*). [OE. *tō* + ME. *ritten*, OE. \**rittan*.]

**Torfer**, *n.* hardship, VII 81. [ON. *tor-færi*.]

**Torne**. See **Turne**.

**To-rochit**, *pp.* torn to shreds, VII 147. [OE. *tō-* + \**ryccan*, pull (see *Ryched*).]

**Totj**. See **Take(n)**.

**Tojer**, -ir, **Toiper**, **Touper**, *adj.* and *pron.* in *þe tojer*, &c., the other, I 181, VII 63, IX 4, X *introd.*, XI b 104. [False division (not merely in spelling—see *allit.* at VII 63) of *þet oþer*; see *þe*, *def. art.*] See **Ojer(e)**, **Ton**.

**To-prete**, *v.* to menace, XIV c 102. [OE. *tō-* + *prættian*.]

**To-tore**, **To-torn**, *pp.* torn (to pieces), II 106, 171, 173, 538. [OE. *tō-teran*, *pp.* *tō-toren*.]

**Tou**, **Tow**. See **Pou**.

**Touche**, **Toche**, **Toweh**, *v.* to touch, reach, affect, \*IV b 60 (note), XV h 18 (note), XVII 462; *toucheth to*, joins on to, IX 182; *touche of*, touch on, treat of, IX 282, XII a 90. [OFr. *toucher*.]

**Toumbe**, *n.* tomb, I 243. [OFr. *tumba*.]

**Toun(e)**, **Tounne**, **Town(e)**, *n.* town, I 32, II 588, VII 112,

# GLOSSARY

- 121, X 12, 46, XIV a 7, b 83, XVII 539, &c.; *out of toun*, out of the town (*or* from the society of men; *see* below), II 236; *to toun*, to town, XII b 27; *þe tounes ende*, end of the main street, outskirts of the town, II 481, 564; the dwellings of men, the world, XV b 1, c 28 (cf. OE. *lencen gāþ to tūne*); *in ilke a toun*, among all men, XVI 253. [OE. *tūn*.]
- Tour**, **Towre**, *n.* tower, II 159, 245, 359, XVII 349; (of a ship = Castell), XIV c 18. [Late OE. *tūr* from OFr. *tour*.]
- Tourne(s)**. *See* Turne.
- Touper**. *See* Toþer.
- Toward(e)**, *prep.* towards, in the direction of, IX 31, 71, 136, &c.; *me towarde*, to me, VI 78; with regard to, in the eyes of, XII a 17; **Towards**, *prep.* towards, IX 225. [OE. *tō-weard*, -weardes.]
- Towch(ith)**. *See* Touche.
- Tray**, *n.* misery, XVII 533. [OE. *traga*.]
- Trayne**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> stratagem, guile, VII 94, XVI 9. [OFr. *traine*.]
- Trayne**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> error for *tayner*, burrow, fox's earth, IX 222. [OFr. *taignere*.]
- Trayst**, *adj.* faithful, IV a 41. [ON. *traust-r*, infl. by next.] *See* Tryste, Trystyly.
- Traist(e)**, **Traste** (*on, to*), *v.* to trust (in), rely (on), IV a 68, XVI 179; *tru for to traist*, to be relied on, trustworthy, VII 17 (cf. XVII 515). [ON. *treysta*.] *See* Trist.
- Traytoure**, *n.* traitor, XVI 150. [OFr. *traître*, acc. sg. *traitour*.]
- Transforme**, *v.* transform, XII a 123; *of that he hadde be transformed*, from that (into which) he had been changed, XII a 20. [OFr. *transformer*.]
- Translate**, *v.* to translate, VII 71, XI a 17, 19, 26; **Translating**, *n.* XI a 43. [OFr. *translater*.]
- Trantis**, *n. pl.* tricks, XVI 159. [? Cf. MDu. *trant*, step.]
- Traste**. *See* Traist(e).
- Trauail(le)**, **Trauayl(e)**, **Trauelle**, **Trauel**, &c., *n.* labour, toil, I 206, IV a 3, b 8, XI b 227, XII b 197; *trauel and tene*, toil and trouble, IV a 36, VIII a 127; affliction, I 204; travel, journey, V 173. [OFr. *travail(le)*.]
- Trauail(l)e**, **Trauayl(l)e**, **Traual(e)**, **Trauele(n)**, *v.* to toil, labour, IV b 11, VI 190, VIII a 133, X 142, XI a 17, 49, XII b 140, XIV c 94; travel, XIII b 40; *trans.* subject to hardship, IX 272; afflict, IX 93; **Trauaillynge** (*in*), *n.* assiduity (*in*), VIII a 244. [OFr. *travailler*.]
- Traues**, *v.* to thwart; 3 *sg. pres.* XVI 150. [OFr. *traverser*.]
- Traw(e)**; **Trawpe**. *See* Trow(e); Treuthe.
- Tre**, **Tree**, *n.* tree, II 268, 508, XII a 74, XVII 34, &c.; wood, XIII a 44; piece of timber, XVII 253; cross, IV a 86; **Trees**, *pl.* VII 103, &c.; **Treis**, logs, X 21; **Tren**, trees, XIII a 51, 53; pieces of wood, XIII a 44. [OE. *tréo*.]
- Treble**, *n.* †treble note, XV b 18. [OFr. *treble*.]
- Trechery(e)**, *n.* treachery, II 7, V 315. [OFr. *trecherie*.]
- Treson**, *n.*; *do him tr.*, work treason against him, XIV b 38. [OFr. *traison*, Afr. *treson*.]
- Tresour**, **Tresowre**, *n.* treasure, VII 121, XI b 283. [OFr. *tresor*.]
- Trete**, *v.* to treat, consider, XIV c 14. [OFr. *traïtier*, *trelier*.]
- Tretys**, *n.* treatise, IX 290. [Afr. *trētis*.]
- Treuthe**; **Trouthe**, **Trowthe**, XII; **Trawpe**, V, VI; **Truth(e)**, VII; *n.* truth, VII 42, 51, 94; (personified) VIII a 16, 39, &c.; fidelity, XII a 164; faith, (plighted) word, troth, V 219, VIII a 35, XII b 164, 203; compact, V 280; honesty, VIII a 70, 90; equity, VI 135. [OE. *trēowþ*.] *See* Vntrawþe.

# GLOSSARY

- Trew(e)**; **Treue**, XI *b* 51; **Tru**, VII 17; **Truee**, V 173; **Trwe**, V 286, VI 61; *adj.* faithful, loyal, II 554, IV *a* 41, XI *b* 51, XII *a* 195, XV *a* 21, &c.; *trusty*, honest, V 173, 286; (vaguely, as compliment), II 23; *true*, truthful, VIII *a* 52, IX 298, XI *a* 27, *b* 71, 121, XVI 273, &c.; *true* (in fact), VI 61, XVII 201; **Trwe**, *adv.* loyally VI 100; *honestly*, V 286. [OE. (*gē*)-*trēowe*.] See **Vntrewe**.
- Trewe**, *n.* *truce*, VIII *a* 326. [OE. *trēow*.] See **Truse**.
- Trew(e)ly**, **Treuly** (IX), **Trw(e)ly** (V), *adv.* loyally, faithfully, V 280; *correctly*, *rightly*, VIII *a* 23, XI *a* 37; *indeed*, IX 247; *confidently*, IV *a* 68, V 44, XVI 95. [OE. *trēow-līce*.]
- Trowman**, *n.* *honest fellow*; (as name), XIV *d* 6, 16.
- Tribute**, *n.* *tribute*, IX 190. [OFr. *tribut*, L. *tribūtum*.]
- Trist**, *pp.* *proved* (*true*), VII 17. [OFr. *trier*.]
- Trifuls**, *n. pl.* *nonsense*, *foolish lies*, VII 43. [Cf. OFr. *trufle*.]
- Trinité**, **Trynyté**, -*tee*, -*ty*, *n.* (the) *Trinity*, IX 338, XVII 30, 83, 169, &c. [OFr. *trinité*.]
- Trist**, **Tryst**, **Trust**, *v.* *to trust*, XVII 505; *trew for to trist*, *to be relied on*, *trusty*, XVII 515 (cf. VII 17); *trust ye non other*, *believe nothing else*, VII 42 (cf. *Deme*); *perto ȝe tryst*, *be sure of that*, V 257. [OE. \**trīstian*, or ON. \**trysta*, *rel.* *to Traist(e)*; cf. MHG. *trūst*.]
- Tryste**, *adj.* *trusty*; *adv.* *faithfully*, *in true and tryste*, \*VI 100 (MS. *tyste*). [Related to *Traiste* as *prec.*]
- Trystyly**, *adv.* *faithfully*, V 280. [From ME. *tristi*, &c., extended from *prec.*]
- Trompour**, *n.* *trumpeter*, II 521. [OFr. *trompour*.] See **Trunpes**.
- Trosse**. See **Trusse**.
- Troteuale**, *n.* *idle tale*, I 257. [Unknown (used several times by Manning); ? cf. *walk(e)rot*, Piers Pl. B XXI, 146.]
- Trouble**, *adj.* *muddy*, *not clear*, IX 12, 34, 104. [OFr. *trouble*.]
- Trouthe**, **Trowthe**. See **Treuthe**.
- Trow(e)**, *v.* *to believe* (in), *be sure*, *think*, I 23, II 429, V 137, IX 151, XI *a* 31, XIII *b* 60, XVI 95, &c.; **Traw(e)**, VI 127, XVII 45, 244, &c.; \***Trod**, *pp.* I 254 (MS. *trowed*; *riming God—see etym.* and *note*); *trowe þe . . . of*, *trust you in*, V 170; (with double obj.) *trowe me þat*, *believe me in that*, V 44. [OE. *trēowan*, *trūwian*, and *perh.* OEast Scand. *trōa* (I 254).]
- Tru(ee)**; **Truth(e)**. See **Trew(e)**; **Trenthe**.
- Trunpes**, *n. pl.* *trumpets*, II 301. [OFr. *trumpes*.] See **Trompour**.
- Trus**, *v.*; *trus sam*, *pack up*, XVII 316. [OFr. *tro(u)sser*.] See **Vntrusse**.
- Truse**, *n.* *truce*, VII 94. [Orig. *pl.*; OE. *trēow*, and \**trēows* (cf. *trēowsian*).] See **Trewe**.
- Trusse**, **Trosse**, *n.* *bundle*, XII *b* 30, 104, 120. [OFr. *tro(u)sse*.]
- Trust**. See **Trist**.
- Trwe**, **Trw(e)ly**. See **Trew**.
- Tuaye**, **Twey(n)**, *adj.* *two*, I 41, III 10, XIII *b* 16, XV *h* 18. [OE. *twēgen*, *masc.*] See **Tuo**.
- Tulk(e)**, *n.* *man*, V 65, VII 63. [? Cf. ON. *túlk-r*, *spokesman*.]
- Tume**; **Tunge**. See **Tom(e)**; **Tong(e)**.
- Tuo**, *adj.* (orig. *fem.* and *neut.* of *Tuaye*, and still so distinguished in use in III), *two*, II 83, III 12, XII *a* 29, 136, 180; **Two**, V 284, &c.; **Twa**, IV *b* 14; **To**, II 64, III, 135; *in two*, (broken) *in two*, XVII 412; *oone or two*, *one or two*, *several*, XVII 133, 484. [OE. *twā*.] See **Ato**.
- Turments**, *v.* *to torment*, *persecute*, XVI 312. [OFr. *turmenter*.]
- Turmentis**, *n. pl.* *torments*, XVI 358. [OFr. *turment*.]

# GLOSSARY

**Turn(e)**; **Teorne**, XIII a 53; **Torne**, IV a 44 (*see note*), XII *passim*; **Tourne**, IV a 3, v 7; *v. trans.* to turn, IX 73, XIII a 32; *turned into*, diverted to, XI a 229; with (*in*)*til*, (*in*)*to*, change, turn (into), IV a 94, b 26, VIII b 107, XII a 168, XIII a 43, &c.; pervert, VII 42, XVI 332; translate, XI a 36; *refl.* turn, IV b 37; *intr.* turn (back), IV b 83, XII a 33, b 142; *turne untill*, turn upon, XVII 218; *turne to*, return upon, IX 87; pass, proceed (to), v 7, XIV a heading; (with *til*, *into*) change, turn (into), IV a 72, XIII a 30, 53; *turneth to ben*, turns, becomes, IX 23. **Yturnd** (*to*), inclined to, fond of, XIII b 64; **Turnyng**, *n.* translating, XI a 44. [OE. *tūrnian*, *tūman*; OFr. *to(u)rner*.]

**Turtill**, *n.* turtle-dove, XVII 506. [OE. *turtile*.]

**Twa**; **Twey(n)**. *See* **Tuo**; **Tuaye**.

**Twelue**, *adj.* twelve, I 30. [OE. *twelf(e)*.]

**Tweluemonth(e)**, **Twelmonyp**, *n.* twelvemonth, year, I 97; *quasi-adv.* a year ago, v 175; *pat tweluemonth*, all that year, I 103; (*at þe*) *tweluemonth ende*, at the end of a year, I 95, 187. [OE. *twelf mōn(a)þ*, *pl.*]

**Twyneth**, 3 *sg. pres.* twines, joins, xv h 18 (*see note*). [ME. *twinen*; ? from OE. *twīn*, *twine*, *n.*]

**Twynkelyng**, *n.* twinkling, in *yn tw. of an ye*, I 192. [OE. *twincian*.]

**Twyn(ne)**, *v. intr.* separate, part, IV a 19, XVI 278. [Cf. OE. (*ge*-)*twinn*, double.] *See* **Atwynne**.

**Twyya**, *adv.* twice, I 182; for the second time, XVII 362. [OE. *twi(g)a + adv. -es*.]

**Twynys**, *n. gen. sg.* tun's, great cask's, x 26. [OE. *tunne*.]

**pa3(e)**, **pau** (xv), *conj.* (with *subj.*) though, even if, III 40,

v 44, 68, vi 8, xv g 30; if, that (after 'no wonder'), v 239, 346. [OE. unacc. form *þak*, or ON. \**þoh*; *see* **Pogh**, **þei**.]

**Pai**, **pay**, **þei**, **þey**, *adj. pl.* those, x 25, 27, 135; *pron. pl.* those, IX 128, 149, 216 (second), x 13, 68, &c.; they, I 32, II 32, 523, IV b 8, VIII a 144, XVII 24, &c.; *alle þay*, all of them, v 357, IX 104. *Acc. and dat.* (to, for) them, those: **paym(e)**, IV b 2, 19, 23, 37, &c.; **pam(e)**, IV b 25, x 13, XIV b 14, &c.; *refl.* (to, for) themselves, IV b 20, 37, 39, x 3, 41, &c.; **pamselfe**, *acc.* themselves, IV b 12. *Poss. adj. (gen. pl.)*, their: **pair(e)**, IV a 61, b 14, 19, x 28, &c.; **par(e)**, IV a 59, x 78, XVI 18, 310, &c.; **þeire**, **þeyre**, IV b 27, 41; **þer(e)**, VII 9, XI a 1, XVI 20, 30, &c. [ON. *þei-r*, *þeim* (*dat.*), *þeira*.] *See* **Hi**, *pron. pl.*

**Thair**. *See* **þar(e)**, *adv.*

**þan(e)**. *See* **þanne**, *conj.*; **þat**; **þe**, *def. art.*

**þank**, *n.* favour, XI b 167. [OE. *þanc*.]

**Thank(e)**, *v.* to thank, XVI 381, XVII 172, &c.; **þonk(k)e**, II 472, v 340, XII b 135; **Thankynge**, *n.* IX 334. [OE. *þancian*, *þoncian*.]

**þan(ne)**, *adv.* then, thereupon, afterwards, in that case, consequently, I 224, III 7, VII 169, VIII a 34, XI b 16, 150, &c.; **þen(e)**, v 131, 191, 227, &c.; **þenn(e)**, v 78, 92, 268, 321, &c.; or *than*, or else, x 51. [OE. *þonne*, *þanne*, *þænne*.]

**þan(ne)**, **þane**, **þen(n)**, *conj.* than, I II, IV b 82, v 32, VI 195, IX 249, XVII 13, &c.; nor, XVII 108 (*see note*), 535. [As. *prec.*]

**Thapparence** = **þe** + **Apparence**. **þar**, 3 *sg. pres. need*, v 287; *impers. in þow* (*acc.*) **þar**, you need, I 132. [OE. *þearf*.]

**þar(e)**, **Thair**, *adv.* there, IV b 39, v 105, x 31, 156, XIII a 10, &c.; *anticipatory* IV a 70, 89, &c.; *rel.*

# GLOSSARY

(in cases) where, when, IV a 1, 41, 82, XIII a 4; combined with *prep.* or *adv.*, there-, it, them: Tharat, x 182, 186, &c.; *par(e)*-for(e), on that account, &c., I 88, 254, xv f 6, &c.; *par*-fram, (after *pat* rel.) from, XIII a 37; *par(e)*in, *par*ynne, IV a 26, x 128, XIII a 38; *par(e)*-of, IV b 57, x 23; Thartill, to it, x 48; *parto*, IV a 68, x \*97, 181; Tharwith, thereby, \*IV b 63. [OE. *pær*, *pār(a)*; and prob. unaccented *pær*, *para*.] See *per(e)*, *por*.

**par(e).** See *pai*.

**pat, pet** (III), *conj.* (i) With *indic.* that, I 30, II 333, III 5, &c.; so that (of result), II 439, v 246, xv b 12, &c.; until, II 76; after *Sw* (So), *Swy*ch, &c., *passim*; (with *neg.*), without (with *vbl. sb.*), I 156, 197, &c. (ii) With *subj.* that, to (with *inf.*; *esp.* after verbs of commanding, desiring, purposing, &c.), II 534, III 7, 37, XI b 217, XIV c 99, &c.; loosely connected with what precedes, VIII a 11 (note), 52, XI b 247; lest (after 'fear'), XI a 61, xvii 184, 372, &c.; so that (of purpose), in order that, lest (with *neg.*), I 220, IV a 22, b 13, XVI 199, 399, &c.; see *Forbede*. So that, in order that, XII a 19, &c.; *wende* . . . *pat*, go . . . and, VIII a 271. *Indef.* where, if, IV b 75, 83, &c. (iii) Forming conjunctions with preps. and advs. (orig. a pro-nominal use as in OE. *for þam þe*), see the preps. &c.; subjoined to other conjs. (as *þif*, &c.), see the conjs.; or to rel. and interrog. advs. (see *pat*, rel.), as *whan that*, when, IX 22, &c.; hence used to obviate repetition of a conj., in *whan (that)* . . . and *that*, when . . . and when, XII a 36, b 155-6, 180-2; similarly pleonastic in *þe more þat*, the more, XI b 114. [OE. *pæt*, *pætte*.]

**pat, pet, demonstr. adi.** (i) As

*def. art.* (orig. *neut.*), see *pe*. (ii) *Emphatic* that, I 93, 108, &c.; the same, that very, I 95, 190, 226, &c. *pane*, acc. sg. *masc.* that, III 9. For *pl.* see *po*, *pos*. [See next.]

**pat, pet** (III), *pron.* that, it, the same, II 131, 543, III 56, v 44, XIII b 49, &c.; even that, VIII a 306; *am I that*, is it I (you mean), xv g 27; that is *myne*, there's one from me, xvii 226; *that withoute*, what is outside, XII a 73; *quasi-adv.* (at) that, too, xvii 146; as regards that, xvii 524 (see *Bold*). **pan, dat.** sg. in *after (bi) þan*, after (by) that, II 553, 597; see *Bi*, *Wip*. [OE. *pæt* (Kt. *pet*), *neut.*; *pane*, acc. *masc.*; *pām*, *dat.*]

**pat, pet** (III), *rel. pron. indecl.* that, which, who(m), I 11, 16, 47, III 17, &c.; for whom, XIV a 32 (see *Betre*; but here *pat* is *perh.* already felt as *nom.*); a thing which, XI b 26, &c.; *þat þat*, that which, what, IV b 65, IX 70, &c.; *þat at*, VI 176; *if* . . . *þat*, VIII a 242, &c.; (elliptically) *þat*, that which, I 178, 180, II 516, xvii 164, &c.; he who, v 196; him that, VIII a 114; those whom, xv 18; *same þat*, just what, xvi 71, &c.; (loosely, or with ellipse of prep.) *þat*, to whom, VI 64, xv i 4; (as that) in which, I 188; (from that) in which, IX 320; that into which, XII a 20. Supplemented by pers. prons., as *þat* . . . *hym*, whom, v 37; *þat* . . . *hit*, which, I 185, IV a 36, v 127, IX 6, x 6; *þat þai*, which, XIV b 76; *that* . . . *tham* *ilkane*, x 160 (see note); similarly, *þat* . . . *þat tyde* (= then), when, v 17; *þat* . . . *þerof*, of which, XI b 222-3; cf. XIII a 36-7. For use with separated preps. and advs. (as, *þat* . . . *of*, of whom, VI 65) see the preps., &c.; note *þat* . . . *after*, that after which, VII 20, *same þat* . . . *fro*, same as that from which,

# GLOSSARY

- ix 230.** Subjoined to other relatives, and indir. interrogatives, *see* Hou, Whan, What, &c.; *cf.* *pat, conj.* [Substitution of prec. for OE. *þe*; *þat*, that which, may in part repres. OE. *þæt-þe, þætte*.] *See* App., p. 289.
- patow**, = *þat þou*, that thou, II 165, 454, 471; *cf.* *þat tou*, XV g 9. *See* *þou*.
- pau.** *See* *pa3(e)*.
- þe**, *adv.*; *demonstr.* (by) so much, for that, the, V 300, VIII b 100; (pleonastic), VIII a 112; *the wars I thee see*, so much the worse for seeing you, XVII 191; *rel.* by which, in *þe better*, (so) that . . . better, VIII a 46, XVII 175; *correl.* in *þe . . . þe* (. . . *þe*), the . . . the, I 255, VI 240 (*see* note). [OE. *þy, þē*.] *See* Forþi.
- þe**, *def. art.* the, I 8, \*XVI 170 (MS. 3c), &c.; *generic*, IX 109, &c.; *see* Whiche, Whilke, Who. *Tē*, in *an te*, and the, XV e 19; *Th-* (before vowels), XII a 127, b 191, 211. **þane**, *acc. sg. masc.* III 10, 14, 59; *þat, þet, neut. sg.* III 41, 44, 46, 57; with French *masc.* III 46; before vowels and merging into *þat demonstr.*, I 43; *esp.* in *þat yche, ilk(e)*, the same, &c., I 208, V 65, &c.; but *þe ilke*, *masc.* and *fem.*, III 27, 45; *þat o(n)*, the one, V 244, 344, IX 176, XV h 7; *þat oper(e)*, the other, V 72, 169, 200, 344, XII a 118, XV h 7; *see* Ich, Ilke, Ton, Toþer, &c. [OE. *se* (late *þe*). &c.]
- The**, *v.* to prosper, in *as euer myght I the*, so may I prosper, on my life, XVII 328. [OE. *þēon*.]
- þe**, *The(e)*. *See* *þou*.
- þede**, *n.* (folk), land, II 475, 194, 535, VI 123. [OE. *þēod*.]
- þedyr**, -ur, &c. *See* *þider*.
- þeeues**, *n. pl.* thieves, VIII b 17; **þeuys**, XI b 176; **þieues**, III 18. [OE. *þēof* (Kt. *þiof*).]
- þel**, **þey**, *conj.* though, even if, II 173, 247, 433, XIII a 32; **þey3**, **Theigh**, VIII a 220, XIII b 9. [OE. */ð(a)h*.] *See* *pogh*.
- þeire**; **þeise**. *See* *þai*; **þes**. **Themperour** = **þe** + **Emperour**.
- þen(e)**, **penn(e)**. *See* **þan(ne)**, *adv.*, *conj.*
- þenche**, **þenk(en)**, *v.* to think, I 221, II 373, XI b 253, &c.; **þinke**, **Thynk(e)**, II 44, IV a 78, VII 30, &c.; **þo3te**, **Thoghte**, *pa. t.* III 57, XII a 11, &c.; **Thought**, x 28, &c.; **þou3te**, **Thoughte**, VIII a 293, IX 167; **Thought**, **þou3t**, *pp.* II 390, XIV b 53, &c.; to consider, XVI 3; *þ. on (vpon)*, think, be mindful, of, IV a 78, 95, V 329, VI 10, &c.; intend to, be resolved to, VII 30, x 79; expect to, XII a 28; *þ. to (for to, till)*, expect to, VIII a 293, x 28, XIV b 36, &c.; conceive, imagine, II 373, 390, XVII 286, &c.; **Thynkyng**, *n.* IV b 68. [OE. *þencan, þēhte*.] *See* **þinke**.
- þenne**, *adv.* thence, I 153. [Cf. OE. *þanone*.] *See* **þine**.
- þens**, *adv.* thence, in *from þens*, IX 259, XVII 548. [Prec. + *adv. -es*.]
- þer(e)**, *adv. demonstr.* there, I 98, II 189, III 42, &c.; *correl.* in *þere . . . where*, where, IX 222; *indef.* (unaccented; *see* **þyr**), II 10, 39, XII a 75, &c.; *rel.* where, when, I 154, V 8, 52, 329, VIII a 240, XII a 141, &c.; equiv. to *neut. pron.* it, that, them, and occas. *rel.* which: **þer(e)about(e)n**, (round) about it, IX 156, \*XI b 232; **þerafter**, afterwards, V 350, VIII a 108, &c.; according to it, XI b 244; **þerap(p)on**, on it, &c., VII 75, XVII 282; **þerate**, there, II 380, VI 154; **þerby(e)**, by that means, XI a 13, XVI 161; on that account, XIII b 35; according to it, XVI 322; **þer(e)for(e)**, **þeruore**, &c., on that account, I 71, III 41, V 211 (pleonastic), 289, XVII 20, &c.; on account

# GLOSSARY

of which, XVI 167; because, IX 108 (note); *perfro*, XVI 295; *ther* . . . *fro*, whence, XIII a 33; *perin(ne)*, -ynne, II 278, V 106, XIII a 16, &c.; *rel.* wherein, II 413; *Ther(e)myd(d)e*, there-with, VIII a 69, 151; *per(e)of*, *per(e)offe*, of it, from it, &c., III 20, IV a 39, VIII a 191, IX 6, &c.; *rel.* of which, XIII a 31; *see* *pat*, *rel.*; *peron*, of it, VI 27; *perto*, to it (that), V 257, XVII 385; at it, XIII a 48; for it, XI b 254; in addition, XII b 200; (after *rel.*) to, XI b 246, XIII a 37; *per vnder*, underneath (them), V 11; *perupon*, at it, XII b 162; *per(e)with*, by that means, VIII a 95, 102, &c.; with it (after *Part*, v.), VII 96. [OE. *þær*, *þær*.] *See* *Par(e)* *pyr*, *Pore*. *per(e)*. *See* *pai*; *Thire*. *perewhiles*, *adv.* in the meantime, VIII a 8. [OE. (*on*) *þære hwile* + *adv. -es*.] *See* *Perwhile*. *perk*, *adj.* dark, II 370. [OE. \**þeorc* (*þeorcung* = *deorcung*); *see* Kluge, *Urgerm.* § 37 d.] *perwhile*, *conj.* while, VIII a 156; *see* *While*. [OE. *on þære hwile þe*.] *See* *perewhiles*. *pes*, *demonstr. adj.* (and *pron.*) *sg.* this, VIII b 78, XV i 18; *pis(ē)*, *pys(se)*, I 20, II 47, VI 10, 173, &c.; *phis*, XVI 61; *this*, this woman, XVII 403; *peise*, *pl.* these, IX 117, 318; *pes*, VIII b 42, XI a 61, &c.; *pron.* v 354, VII 50, &c.; *pese*, I 43, 47, &c.; *pis*, *pys*, II 13, 340, VI 145 (note), XVII 445, &c.; *pise*, *pysse*, III 59, V 355, XVII 181, &c.; *puse*, VIII b 70. [OE. *þes*, *þeos*, *þis*; *see* *N.E.D.*] *pet*. *See* *pat*; *pe*, *def. art.* *peuys*. *See* *peuces*. *pi*, *py*. *See* *Forpi*, *Pou*. *Thioke*, *adj.* dense, pouring (rain), VII 107, 132. [OE. *þicce*.] *pider*, *adv.* thither, II 316, 318, &c.; *pedyr*, *Thedir*, -ur, I 43, VII 88, XVII 312, &c. [OE. *þider*.]

*pyderward*, *Thederward*, *adv.* thither, in that direction, XIII a 33, XVII 245. [OE. *þider-w(e)ard*.] *pieues*. *See* *peuces*. *Thilke*, *adj.* that (same), XII b 59, 205, 220; *pulke*, those, XIII a 2. [OE. *þyle*, such; treated in sense as a contraction of *pe* + *ilk(e)*, *q.v.*] *Thine*, *adv.* thence, in *fra thine furth*, thenceforward, X 130. [Obscure red. of ME. *þepen* (cf. ON. *þaðan*); cf. *sine* from *siþ(þ)en*, *seþen*.] *pin(e)*, *pyn(e)*. *See* *pou*. *ping(e)*, *pyng*, *pynk* (VI), *n.* thing, II 33, IV a 29, &c.; *al þat þing*, everything there, II 417; *al this thyng*, all this, XVII 154. *Na thyng*, no *þing* (*þynk*, &c.), nothing, anything (with *neg.*), II 172, IV a 6, VI 136, 227, IX 275, &c.; as *adv.* no whit, in no way, I 67, II 39, v 168, XVII 289; *na kyn thing*, no whit, X 59; *for no þing*, for any (other) cause, II 98. *ping*, &c., *pl.* things, affairs, matters, I 7, II 4, 218, 297, XI b 249; *al(le) þing*, &c. (constr. as *sg.* or *pl.*) everything, II 11, IV a 68, VIII a 203, IX 239, XIV c 2, XVII 73, &c.; all things, XV c 6; *bi al þing*, by every token, II 321, 375; *þinges*, *Thynge3*, &c., II 496, IV b 62, &c.; compositions, tasks, XIII b 19. [OE. *þing*.] *pink(e)*, *pynk(e)*, *penk(e)*, *v.* to seem to (with *dat. pron.*), II 442; *pynkke3*, thou seemest, v 294; *impers.* in *me þinkeþ*, *thynkys me*, &c., it seems to me, VIII b 55, XIV c 28, XVII 511, &c.; endingless form in, *me (him, vs) þink*, &c., it seems to me, I think, &c., II 375, IV a 10, 12, v 41, VI 192, 230, XVII 399, &c.; *þynk me*, XVII 255; with *nom. pron.* in *thou thynk*, (it) seems good to you, XVII 196, 379. *þo3t*,



# GLOSSARY

- Thought(e)**, *pa. t.* (it) seemed to, v 95, XII b 74, XVII 82, 425; with *nom. pron.* in *þey þoȝt*, they thought good, I 87. [OE. *þyncan*, *þūhte*. The endingless forms prob. arose in *1 sg.* by confusion with *þenche*, *q.v.*; but cf. ON. *þykki mtr.*]
- þyr**, *adv. indef.* there I 170. [Reduced unaccented form of *þer(e)*; *y* repres. obscure vowel, as (*e.g.*) in *þedyr*, 171.]
- Thire**, *adj.* and *pron. pl.* these, IV b 55, 59; *þer*, XVI 97, 399. [Obscure; usually Northern.]
- Thirté**. See *Pritti*.
- þis(e)**, *þys(æ)*, &c. See *þes*.
- þiself(ſ)e**, **þiselue(n)**. See *pou*.
- þo**, *demonstr. adj. pl.* those, v 130, VII 113, VIII b 5, IX 33, &c.; *pron.* they, those, &c. II 575 (second), VI 197, VIII a 155, IX 48, XV b 23, XVI 279, XVII 228. [OE. *þā*.] See *þat*.
- þo**, *adv.* then, thereupon, II 49, 117, III 12, VIII a 22, XII a 6, &c.; in addition, more, in *þo fyue*, five (times) more, VI 91; *rel.* when, III 3, 32, 44, 54, 56. [OE. *þā*.]
- þof**, *conj.* though, even if, IV a 12, 75, VII 29. [As next, with alteration of final spirant; cf. *pouþ*; *Rof*.]
- þogh**, *conj.* though, (even) if, IX 207, XII a 187, &c.; *þogh þat*, though, I 224; *pou*, XV f 8; *þouȝ*, *pough*, IX 139, XIV c 37, &c.; *þowȝ*, *þowgh*, VIII a 36, 40, &c. [ON. *þó*, earlier \**þoh*.] See *þaȝe*, *þei*, *Allthough*.
- þoȝt(e)**, **Thought(e)**. See *þenche*, *þinke*, *þonȝt*.
- þolian**, **þole**, *v.* to endure, IV a 14, v 351, XV c 33; *tholid . . . for to be*, suffered myself to be, XVI 3. [OE. *þolian*.]
- þoner**; **þonk(k)e**. See *pundyr*; *þanke*.
- þore**, *adv.* there, then, I 96, 175, v 288, VI 202. [OE. *þāra*.] See *þar(e)*.
- þorgh**, *prep.* through; through-
- out, over; because of, out of; by (means of): IX 87, XV i 3, &c.; *Þoro*, XVII 278; *þorw*, VIII a 20, XIV c 19, &c.; *Þorwgh*, VIII a 320; *þourgh*, VIII a 320; *Throu*, x 15; *Throughe*, VII 16, 92; *Puroh*, II 237, &c.; *þurȝ*, v 83, VI 53, &c.; *þurgh(e)*, I 186, IV b 71, VII 103, &c.; *adv.* through, IX 224. [OE. *þurh*, *þorh*.]
- þorghout**, *prep.* throughout, IX 217; *Thurghout*, *adv.* in every detail, XII b 219. [OE. *þurh-ūt*.]
- þorsday**, *æ.* Thursday, XV g 1 [OE. *þóresdæg*, from ON. *þórsdag-r*.] See *Scere*.
- þos**, *pron. pl.* those, VI 155; *Those*, XVII 45, &c. [OE. *þās*.] See *þat*.
- þou**, *pron.* thou, you, I 130, II 108, &c.; *þow(e)*, IV a 22, v 256, XVI 242, &c.; *pu*, VII 94; *Tou*, *Tow* (after closely connected words ending in *d*, *t*, *s*), II 452, XV a 17, g 9; see also *artow*, *canstow*, *hadestow*, *neltow*, *salow*, *shaltow*, *þatow*, *wiltow*, *wolte* (with further reduction).
- þe**, **The(e)**, **Te** (after *is*), *acc.* thee, you, II 116, XVII 118, 407, &c.; *dat.* (to, for) thee, II 132, v 175, 218, 291, XV g 10, &c.; concerning thee, XV g 28; *what is te*, *what þe is*, what is the matter with thee, II 102, 115; *for the*, as far as you are concerned, XVII 193; *refl.* (to, for) thyself, yourself, v 184, 229 (first), 289, VIII a 32, 223, XV f 13, XVII 224, &c. **þi**, **þy**; **þin**, **þyn(e)** (usually before vowels); *poss. adj.* thy, your, I 125, II 105, v 235, VI 207, &c.; (*objective*) of thee, VIII a 27, XV g 31, &c.; **þine**, **þyne**, *oblique* and *pl.* II 109, XV c 23, &c.; *pron.* belonging to thee, XVI 221; thy folk, XVI 252. **þiselffe**, **-selue**; **þyseluen**, **-self(e)**, *nom.* (thou) thyself, XVI 206, 261, 299; *refl.* thyself, v 73, VI 113, XVI 350, &c. [OE. *þū*, *-tū*; *þē*; *þin*.]

# GLOSSARY

**pou, pouz, pough.** See *pogh*.  
**Thoucht, pouzt(e), &c.** See *penche*.

**pouzt, n.** thought, mind, imagination, II 373; *pozte*, VI 164, see *Dede*; *Thoght(e)*, IV a 5, b 23, XVII 156, &c. [OE. (*ge-*)-*þōht*.]

**pourgh.** See *porgh*.

**pousand(e), -end, -ond; pou-sond; Thowsande; n. sg. and pl.** thousand, III 30, 34, VIII a 185, XI b 279, XIII b 31, XVI 39, &c. [OE. *þūsend*.]

**Thousandfold, adj.; many thousandfold, in many thousands,** XII a 97. [OE. *þūsend-fāld*.]

**poup, conj.** though, even if, XI b 190. [As *pogh*, with alteration of final spirant; cf. *Pof*.]

**pow(e); powz, &c.** See *pou; pogh*.

**Thrall, n.** slave; predic. as *adj.* in bondage, subject, XVI 134. [OE. *þræll*, from ON. *þræl-l*.]

**pre(e), adj.** three, I 196, II 70, IX 244, &c.; *pri*, III 6, 15; *pre* (*squared*), IX 106; a *pre*. in three, XIII b 49. [OE. *þrēo*, fem., neut.; *þrē(e)*, masc.]

**prepe, n.** contest, V 329. [Cf. OE. *þrēapian*, v.]

**presch, v.** to thrash; smite, V 232. [OE. *þerscan*, late *þrescan*.]

**prestelcoo, n.** (male) throstle, song-thrush, XV b 7. [OE. *þrosile* + *cocc*; on form see *N.E.D.*, s. v. *Throstle*.]

**prete, v.** to threaten, V 232, XIV a 31; to wrangle, VI 201; *refl.* in *him þreteþ*, wrangles, chides, XV b 7 (note). [OE. *þrēatian*; ? ON. *þrēta* (in sense 'wrangle').]

**Threting, n.** threatening (language), XIV a 30. [OE. *þrēatung*.]

**Thretty.** See *Pritti*.

**prewe, pa. t.; ouer . . . prewe,** overturned, II 578. [OE. *þrāwan*, twist; pa. t. *þrēow*.]

**pri.** See *Pre(e)*.

**prid(de), pry(d)(de), adj.** third, III 10, IX 30, XII a 122, &c.

**Thirde, Thyrd(e), IV b 6, XVI 31; at þe þrid, on the third occasion, V 288; þe þryd(de) tyme, for the third time, I 142, XII b 81, XVII 460.** [OE. *þridða*, late Nth. *þirda*.]

**prien, adv.** thrice, XV g 33. [OE. *þri(g)a*.] See *Pryys*.

**Thrife, Thryfe.** See *prue*.

**Thryft, n.** prosperity; in oath *by my thryft = as euer myght I thrife* (see *The, prue*), XVII 218. [ON. *þrift*.]

**Thrifty, adj.** prosperous; goodly, fine, VII 158. [From prec.]

**pryys, adv.** thrice, I 182. [OE. *þri(g)a* + adv. -es.] See *Prien*.

**prynge, v.** to press; *intr.* make one's way, V 329; *Thringand, pres. p.* pressing, X 166. [OE. *þringan*.]

**pritti, adj.** thirty, XV g 4, 15, 21; **Thretty, VII 158; Thirtē, Thyrty, XVII 125, 260.** [OE. *þrit(t)ig*.]

**prinaund, pres. p.** prosperous; goodly, noble, VII 158. [From next.] Cf. *Thrifty*.

**prue, Thrife, Thryfe, v.** to prosper; *I may not thryfe, I can ill bear it, or may scarcely recover, XVII 414; in oaths: so mot þou prue, as euer myght I thrife, &c., so may you (I) prosper, on your (my) life, II 532, XVII 191, 243 (cf. *The, v.*). [ON. *þrif-a-sk*.]*

**pro, adj.** fierce, V 232. [ON. *þrá-r*, stubborn.]

**Throu, Throughe.** See *porgh*.

**prowe, n.** time, moment, XII b 59; a *prowe*, for a time, I *introd.*, V 151. [OE. *þrāg*.]

**prublet, pa. t.** crowded, gathered (*intr.*), VII 132. [Obscure. In *N.E.D.* as var. of *Trouble*, grow dark; but cf. *Purity*, 504, 879.]

**pu; pulke.** See *pou; Thilke*.

**pundyr, n.** thunder(storm), I 166; *Thonder, VII 132, XVII 346.* [OE. *þunor*.]

**puroh, purz, &c.** See *porgh*.

# GLOSSARY

**pus**, *adv.* thus, so, I 37, XI b 270, XII a 88, XVI 283, &c.; therefore, XI a 40 [OE. *pus*.]

**pus(e)**. See *Pes*.

**pusgate**, *adv.* in this way, VIII b 53. [Pus + Gate, *n.*<sup>2</sup>] See *Sogat*.

**U-, V-**; for init. *u, v* (in III) see also *F*.

**Vayn(e)**, *adj.* frivolous, vain, worthless, IV b 28; *Veyn*, XI b 104, 124, 137, &c.; *yn veyn*, in *vayn*, in vain, I 178, XVII 360. [OFR. *vain*.]

**Vale**, *n.* vale, V 203 (see *Ilil*). [OFR. *val*.]

**Valay**, *Valeye*, *n.* valley, V 77, 177. IX 195, XI b 155. [OFR. *valle*.]

**Vald**; **Vall**. See *Wille, v.*; *Wal*.

**Value**, *n.* value, X 132. [OFR. *value*.]

**Vanyté**, *n.* frivolity, vanity, vain thing, IV b 13, 52, XI b 181, 219, XIV c 3. [OFR. *vanité*.]

**Vapnys**; **Var**. See *Weppen*; *Was*.

**Vauntwarde**, *n.* vanguard, VIII b 60. [ONFr. *avant-wards*.]

**Vch(cu)**. See *Ich(on)*.

**Velany**. See *Vylany*.

**Vedde**. See *Fede*.

**Veyn**. See *Fayn(e)*.

**Venge (on)**, *v.* to take vengeance (on); *it schal ben venged* . . . so, such vengeance shall be taken, XII b 100. [OFR. *venger*.]

**Venia(u)n(e)**, **Vengaunce**, *n.* vengeance, punishment, I 92, 129, VIII a 138, XI b 49, XVII 55, &c. [OFR. *venjanee*.]

**Venym(e)**, *n.* poison, IV b 86, IX 94. [OFR. *venim*.]

**Venymous**, *adj.* poisonous, IX 203. [OFR. *venimous*.]

**Ver(r)ay**, *adj.* true, IX 65, XVII 1; *adv.* truly, very, XVII 198;

**Verayly**, *adv.* truly. V 177 [OF. *verai*.]

**Verament**, *adv.* assuredly, XVII 6. [OFR. *verement, verainent*.]

**Verce**, *n.* verse, VI 233. [OE. *fers*; OFr. *vers*.]

**Verrit (for)**, *pp.* averred, declared (to be), VII 49. [Shortened from OFr. *averer*.]

**Verst**. See *Furst*.

**Vertu(e)**, *n.* power, peculiar property, quality, IX 67, 70, 74, XII b 175, XV i 3, &c.; virtue, IV b 16, V 307; *kyng of vertues*, XVI 128 (see note). [OFR. *vertu*.]

**Vortuous**, **Virtuus**, *adj.* in possession of its proper qualities, IX 126; virtuous, VII 49. [OFR. *vertuous*.]

**Ves**. See *Was*.

**Vessel(l)**, *n.* vessel, I 218, (ship) XVII 327. [OFR. *vessel*.]

**Vggely**, **Vgly**, *adj.* forbidding, horrible, V 11, 122, XVI 101. [ON. *ugg-ligr*.]

**Vgsom**, *adj.* horrible, VII 133. [Cf. ON. *uggsam-ligr*.]

**Victorye (of)**, *n.* victory (over), IX 81, XI b 153. [OFR. *victorie*.]

**Vif(tene)**, &c. See *Fyuc*, *Fysteyn*.

**Vylany**, **Velany**, *n.* unknighly conduct, V 307; ignominy, shameful fate, XVII 67. [OFR. *vilanie*.]

**Vile**, *adj.* worthless, IV b 12; miserable, II 548. [OFR. *vil*.]

**Vilté**, *n.* vileness, IV b 77. [OFR. *villt*.]

**Vyndland**, *pres. p.* turning over and over, X 129. [Cf. ON. *vindla*, wind.]

**Vyne**, *n.* vineyard, VI 142, 161, &c.; vine, IX 158. [OFR. *vi(g)ne*.]

**Violastres**, *n. pl.* as supposed name of a kind of diamonds of inferior lustre; due to mistransl. of French *violastres* (*adj. pl.*), purplish, IX 97 (note).

**Vyolentlych**, *adv.* violently, XIII a 33. [From OFr. *violent*.]

**Vyolet**, **Violet(te)**, *n.* violet (flower), IX 99, XV e 13; (colour), IX 98; see IX 97 note. [OFR. *violet(te)*.]

**Vyrayne**, *n.* Virgin, virgin, I 86, 240, &c. [OFR. *virgine*.]

# GLOSSARY

**Vyrgynflour**, *n.* perfect maidenhood, VI 66. [Prec. + Flour.]

**Virtuus**. See Vertuous.

**Visage**, *n.* face, II 80. [OFr. *visage*.]

**Vyse**, *n.* vice, V 307. [OFr. *vice*.]

**Vitayll**, *n.* victuals, provisions, XVII 155. [OFr. *vitaille*.]

**Vithall**, -in. See Withal, -inne.

**Vmbethought** (*hym*), *pa. t.* be-thought (him), reflected, X 179. [OE. \**ymb(e)-þencan* (cf. *ymbþanc*); but prefix is influenced by ON. *umb*.]

**Vmbreide** (*of*), *pa. t. subj.* reproached (with), XII b 98. [OE. *þp-geþregdan*, upbraid, with prefix assimilated to ME. *umb(e)* as in prec.]

**Vnable**, *adj.* incapable, IX 313; impossible, VII 46. [OE. *un-* + OFr. *hable*.] See Able.

**Vnablen**, *v.* to render incapable, XI b 109, 117. [From prec.]

**Vnbarred**, *pp.* unbarred, V 2. [OE. *on-(un-)* + OFr. *barrer*.] See Bard, Barres.

**Vnbynde**, *v.* to unbind, release, XVI 8; **Vnbounde**, *pp.* I 218. [OE. *on-blindian*, late *un-blindian*.]

**Vablendyde**, *adj.* unpolluted, IV b 16. [From *pp.* of *Blende*, *q.v.*]

**Vncessantl6**, *adv.* unceasingly, XVII 147. [From OFr. *incessant*.]

**Vnclene**, *adj.* impure, IV b 17. [OE. *un-clāne*.]

**Vncoupe**, **Vnknowthe**, *adj.* strange, unknown, II 535, VII 146. [OE. *un-cūþ*.]

**Vncrowned**, *adj.* without the tonsure, lay, VIII b 66. See Crownede.

**Vndede**. See Vndo.

**Vnder**, -ur, *prep.* under, II 70, IX 179, XIII a 15; (postponed) V 250; see Gore, Heuenryche; *adv.* underneath, XVII 409; in reality (opposed to appearance on surface), VII 18, XIV a 18; see *þere*. [OE. *under*.]

**Vnder**, *n.* 'the third hour', about the middle of the morning, VI 153. [OE. *undern*.] See Vnder-tide.

**Vnderzete**, *pa. t. pl.* perceived, II 576. [OE. *under-getan*, *pa. t. pl.* -*gē(a)ton*.]

**Vnderlynge**, *n.* inferior, VIII a 47. [OE. *underling*.]

**Vndernome**, *pp.* taken in (mentally), realized, II 320. [OE. *underniman*, *pp.* -*numen*.] See Nym(e).

**Vnderstonde**, **Vndirstand(e)**, &c., *v.* to understand; comprehend, I 12, IV b 76, IX 214, XI b 117, XIII b 55, &c.; learn, be told, I 26, II 215, IX 187, &c.; *underst. bi*, intend (to be understood) by, XI a 9; *vnderst. of priere of holy lif*, mean by 'prayer' (that consisting in) holy living, XI b 82; **Vnderstod**, *pa. t.* XII b 36, 88, &c. [OE. *understāndan*, -*stōndan*.]

**Vnderstondyng(e)**, -standyng, &c., *n.* comprehension, XI b 134; intelligence, IV b 49, 56, 65; *of kynde vnderst.*, it stands to ordinary reason, naturally, VIII b 58. [OE. *under-stānding*.]

**Vndertake**, *v.* to undertake, XIV c 52; warrant, XVII 274; **Vndertake**, *pp.* XII a 52. [OE. *under-* + ON. *taka*.]

**Vndertide**, **Vndrentide**, *n.* (orig.) mid-morning, (*esp.* as time for a rest from work), but often vaguely applied and appar. nearly equiv. to 'noon', II 65, 76, 133, 181, 282; *shep her undertides*, were taking a noon-tide sleep, II 402. [OE. *undern-tīd*.] See Vnder, *n.*

**Vndisposid (to)**, *adj.* indisposed, disinclined (to), XI b 135. [From OFr. *disposer*.]

**Vndo**, *v.* to undo, open, XVI 182; **Vndede**, *pa. t.* II 385. [OE. *on-dōn*, *un-dōn*.] See Do(n).

**Vnglad**, *adj.* in misery, XVII 22. [OE. *un-glad*.]

**Vnit6**, *n.* coherence of mind,

# GLOSSARY

- sanity († but this sense unexampled), VIII *b* 10. [OFr. *unilt*, unity.]
- Vnkept**, *adj.* not kept, broken, XI *b* 233. See *Kepe*.
- Vnkinde**, **Vnkuynde**, *adj.* unnatural (in conduct, &c.); disloyal, XIV *c* 103; hard hearted, XII *b* 1, 220, 224. [OE. *un-(ge)cýnde*.]
- Vnkindenesse**, **Vnkyndnes**, *n.* unnatural conduct, XII *b* 205, XVII 12. [From prec.]
- Vnknowpe**. See *Vncoupe*.
- Vnlokynne**, *pp.* opened, XVI 197. [OE. *on-lūcan*, *un-*; *pp.*-*locen*.] See *Loke*, *pp.*
- Vnmanerly**, *adv.* discourteously, V 271. [From ME. *maner-ly*, formed on *Maner(e)*, *q.v.*]
- Vnnepe**, *adv.* with difficulty, hardly, II 221, 416, XIII *b* 60, XIV *c* 4. [OE. *un-ēape*.]
- Vnoccupied**, *adj.* unoccupied, XI *b* 127. See *Occupied*.
- Vnreso(u)nable**, *adj.* unreasonable, VI 230, VIII *a* 145. [From OFr. *resonable*.; See *Resonable*.]
- Vnrid**, *adj.* hard, cruel, XVII 40. [OE. *un-gerýde*, rough.]
- Vnryghtwysely**, *adv.* unrighteously; more than is right, IV *b* 24. [OE. *un-rihtwīs-līce*.]
- Vnschape**, *adj.* formless, XIII *b* 59. [OE. *un-gescapen*, unformed.]
- Vnschette**, *v.* to open, XII *a* 71. [OE. *on-(un)-* + *scyttan* (Kt. *\*sceltan*).]
- Vnsobere**, *adj.* violent, VII 143; **Vnsoberly**, *adv.* violently, VII 130. [From OFr. *sobre*.] See *Sobre*.
- Vnsoght**, *adj.* unexpiated, not atoned for, XVII 97. [ME. *un-sa(u)ght*, from ON. *ú-sáttir* (older *\*un-sáht-*); cf. OE. *un-seht*. The orig. rimes were prob. *naght*, *saght*, *uraght*; see *Werche*.]
- Vnstudied**, *adj.* not studied, XI *b* 165, 332. See *Studie*.
- Vntil(1)**, *prep.* to, XII *a* 132, XVI 370, XVII 218 (see *Turne*); until, XVI 52. [As next with subst. of interchangeable *til*.]
- Vnto**; **Vntew**, XVII 505; *prep.* to, I 111, II 186, XII *a* 25, XVI 319, XVII 241; towards, for, XVI 246; up to, until, I 95, VII 95, IX 328. [? OE. *\*untō*; cf. OS. *untō*, *prep.*; Goth. *untē*, conj.]
- Vnto**, *conj.* until, I 68. [As prec.] See *To*, *conj.*
- Vntrawpe**, *n.* perfidy, V 315 [OE. *un-trēowþ*.] See *Treuthe*.
- Vntrow(e)**, *adj.* inaccurate, untrue, VII 47, XI *a* 43. [OE. *un-trēowe*.] See *Trew(e)*.
- Vntroweliere**, *adv. compar.* less accurately, XI *a* 59. [OE. *un-trēow-līce*.]
- Vntrusse**, *v.* to unload, XII *b* 52. [OE. *on-(un)-* + OFr. *trusser*.] See *Trus*.
- Vnwar**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) unawares, XII *b* 9. [OE. *unwær*, *adj.* and *adv.*] See *War(e)*.
- Vnworthi**, *adj.* unworthy, IX 308. [Extended from OE. *un-weorþ(e)*.] See *Worpy*.
- Vochen saf**. See *Vouchesaf*.
- Voided**, *pp.* 'cleared out', been dismissed, II 574. [OFr. (*a*)-*voder*.]
- Vois**, *n.* voice, XII *a* 119, *b* 31, &c.; **Voyco**, **Voloe**, XVI 73, 79. [OFr. *vois*.]
- Vol(u)eld**. See *Ful(fillen)*.
- Vorbisne(n)**, *n. pl.* examples, illustrations, III 2, 59. [OE. *for(e)-bisen*.]
- Vore-zyede**, **Vornede**. See *For-eyde*.
- Vouche-saf**, **Vowch-sayf**, *v.* to vouchsafe, deign, IX 330, XVII 172; **Vochen saf**, *pres. pl.* guarantee (*sc. me*), VIII *b* 51. [OFr. *vo(u)cher sauf*.]
- Voundit**. See *Woundit*.
- Vousour**, *n.* vaulting, II 363. [OFr. *vousure*.]
- Vp**, **Vpp(e)**, *adv.* up, I 300, II 96, V 11, XVI 113, &c.; open, X

# GLOSSARY

- 185; (open) wide, XVI 122, 194; *vp wiþ*, up with, lift up, hold high, XIV c 99. [OE. *ūþ*, *uþþ(e)*.]
- Vpcaste**, *pa. t.* lifted up, XII a 106. [OE. *uþ(p)* + ON. *kasta*.] See Cast(e).
- Vpdrawe**, *pp.* drawn up, XII b 64. [OE. *uþ(p)* + *dragan*.]
- Vplondysch**, *Oplondysch*, *adj.* rustic, XIII b 23, 50. [Cf. OE. *ūþ-lendisc*.]
- Vp(p)on**; **Vpo**, XV g 4; **Opan**, II 506; **Opon**, II 72, &c.; **Apon**, IV a 86, X 123, &c.; *prep.* (i) (up)on, V 134, VIII a 135, IX 33, X 183, XII a 126 (see *Stonde*), XIII a 12, &c.; (post-poned) II 500, 506; (of *time*) I 29, &c.; immediately after, XII b 147; (commenting) on, XI b 20; *upon this matiere*, on this business, XII a 45. (ii) in, VI 185, X 66, XII *introd.*, a 175; (believe) in, XV g 9; into, VII 6, 140; (iii) to, V 184 (see *Stiztel*); (iv) (think) of, V 329, VI 10. See *Grounde*, *Half*, *Out(e)*, *þer(e)*, &c. [OE. *uþ(p)-on*.]
- Vpon**, *adv.* on; *dede upon*, put on, XII a 53. [As *prec.*]
- Vpperight**, *adv.* (straight) up, XVI 394. [OE. *ūþ-rihte*.]
- Vprise**, *v.* to rise up, XVI 31 (see *prec.*). [OE. *uþ(p) ā-risan*.]
- Vpward**, *adv.* in the upper part, IX 246. [OE. *ūþ-weard*.]
- Vr(e)**; **Vrn**; **Vrþe**. See *We*; *Eorne*; *Erþe*.
- Vs**. See *He*, *We*.
- Vsage**, *n.* usage, XIII b 17. [OFr. *usage*.]
- Vse**, **Vss(e)**, *n.* usc, XIII a 1; usage, ritual, XI b 189, 196, &c. (see note, XI b 183). [OFr. *us*, L. *usus*.]
- Vse**, *v.* to use, practise, have dealings with, V 38, 358, XIII b 14, XIV a 30; *Y-vsæd*, *pp.* XIII b 26. [OFr. *user*.]
- Vtmaat**, *adj.* outermost, II 357. [OE. *ūt(e)mest*.]
- Vttiremoste**, *adj.* extreme, furthest, XVI 232 (see *Ende*). [Formed on ME. *utter(e)*, OE. *ūttra*, on anal. of *prec.*]
- Vus**. See *We*.
- Wa(a)**. See *Wo*.
- Wack(e)net**, *pa. t.* and *pp.* awoke, (was) aroused, VII 105, 110. [OE. *wæcn(i)an*.] See *Wake*.
- Wage**, *v.* to undertake, guarantee, pay (hire), &c.; *intr.* or *absol.* ? (used for) securely continue, or ? bring reward, VI 56. [ONFr. *wager*.]
- Wagh(e)**, **Wawe**, **Wawgh(e)**, *n.* wave, water (of the sea), VII 140, XII a 157, XIV c 33, XVII 426, &c. [ON. *vdg-r*.]
- Wai**, **Way**, *interj.* woe! II 234, 546; *wai es him*, unhappy is one (who), XV a 9. [ON. *wei*.] See *We*, *interj.*; *Wo*.
- Way(o)**, **Wey(e)**, **Weie**, **We(x)**, *n.* way, course, manner, distance, &c., II 476, VII 144, VIII a 6, IX 220, X 85, XII a 16, XVI 74, &c.; *all way*, *all weys*, continually, XVII 500; always, IX 212, 277; *by þe way of*, see *Right*, *n.*; *in þe weye*, on (by) the way, IV b 41; *in ich ways*, in every way, II 158 (see note); *adv.* away, in *do way*, have done, enough, II 226. [OE. *weg*.] See *Alway*, *Awai*, *Heigh*.
- Waik**, *adj.* weak, VIII b 23. [ON. *veik-r*.]
- Waillo**, *v.* to bewail, VIII a 308. [ON. \**veila* (cf. ON. *væla*, Swed. *veila*).]
- Wayte**, *v.* to look, V 95, 221. [ONFr. *wait(i)er*.]
- Wake**, *v.* to lie awake, keep vigil, IV b 49, XV c 21; *trans.* to arouse, kindle, XVII 89. [OE. *wacian*, *intr.*] See *A-*, *Forwake*.
- Wal**, **Wall**, *n.* wall, II 357, XI b 40, XIII a 24, XVII 515 (see *Ston*), &c.; **Vall**, X 131. [OE. *wall*.]
- Wald(e)**. See *Wille*, *v.*
- Wale**, *v.* to choose; *to wam* (to

# GLOSSARY

- he chosen), conspicuous, excellent, VII 8. [ON. *wal*, n.; *velja* (pa. t. *valdi*), v.]
- Walk(e)**, *v.* to walk, wander, V 110, VI 39, XII b 21, XVI 53, 333; *walkes wide*, is spread abroad, XIV b 29 (see *Word*): *Ywalked*, pp. XIII a 16. [OE. *walc(e)an*, roll, go to and fro.]
- Wallande**, *pres. p.* welling, bubbling, VI 5. [OE. *wallan*.]
- Walschmen**, *n. pl.* Welchmen, XIII b 3. [OE. *wēlisc*, *wēlisc* + *mann*.]
- Walt**, *v.* to roll; *trans. pa. t.* rolled, VII 140 (*rel. to blast* omitted); *intr. infin.* totter (and fall), VII 138; *pa. t.* was tossed, VII 144 (*rel. to navy* omitted). [OE. (Nth.) *wælla*.]
- Wan**, See *Wanne*, *Wynne*(n).
- Wan(e)**, *v.* to decrease, subside, XVII 450, 458, 493. [OE. *wanian*.]
- Wane**, *n.* dwelling-place (translating Latin *mansio*), in *I ne wate na better wane*, IV a 55. [?ON. *ván*, expectation.] See *Wones*.
- Wandren**, *v.* to wander, VIII a 297. [OE. *wandrian*.]
- Wandreth**, *n.* trouble, distress, IV a 19, XVII 40. [ON. *vandræði*.]
- Waning**, *n.* curtailment, VI 198 (see *3ete*, *v.*). [OE. *wanung*.]
- Wan(ne)**, *Won* (xv), *adj.* gloomy, VII 140; sickly, wan, II 108, IV a 10, XV c 22. [OE. *wann*, *wonn*, dark.]
- Wanne**. See *Whan*, *Wynne*(n).
- Want**, *n.* lack (*esp.* of food), XVII 194. [ON. *vant*, neut. *adj.*] See *Wonte*.
- Wap**, *n.* a blow, V 181. [Cf. ME. *wappen*, w(h)op, beat; echoic.]
- Wapin**. See *Weppen*.
- War (with)**, *v. imper.* guard (against), beware (of), XIV a 6. [OE. *warian*, refl.]
- War(e)**, *adj.* in *be war (of)*, be on one's guard (against), beware (of), take care, V 320, XI b 217, 311, XIV d 4; *be war or ye be wo*, look before you leap, XIV d 11 (see *Wo*). [OE. *wær*.] See *Vnwar*.
- War(e)**. See *Was*.
- Ward(e)**, *n.* custody, XVI 222; post (in the defence), X 35. [OE. *wearð*.]
- Warda(i)ne**, *n.* warden, commander of the garrison, X 146, 169, XIV b 83. [ONFr. *warden*.]
- Ware**, *adj.* XVI 154; see *Werre*, and note.
- Ware**, *v.* to lay out, spend, VII 19; *Waret*, pp. given (in exchange), dealt, V 276 [OE. *warian* (recorded once as 'treat with') *rel. to waru*, wares.]
- Wary**, *v.* to curse, XVII 208; *Wery*, XIV a 23. [OE. *wærgan*, *wergan*.]
- Wark**, *v.* to feel pain, ache, XVII 269. [OE. *wærcan*; cf. ON. *verkja*.]
- Wark(e)**; **Ward**. See *Werk(e)*; *World(e)*.
- Warn(e)**, *v.* to warn, inform, VIII a 125, 158, 316, 321, XVII 124; forewarn, XVII 110. [OE. *war(e)nian*.]
- Warnist**, *pp.* furnished, manned, X 121. [ONFr. *warnir*, *warniss-*.]
- Warp**, *v.* to cast; offer, V 185. [OE. *weorpan*; ON. *varpa*.]
- Wars**; **Warth**. See *Wors*; *Worþe*, *v.*
- Was**, *pa. t. sg.* was, I 28, &c.; have been, VIII a 160; 2 *sg.* XVII 120; *Wes*, X 15, 32; *Wat3*, V 1, VI 4, &c.; 2 *sg.* V 326, VI 12, &c.; *Wes*, III 16, X 2, XV g 1, &c.; *subj.* was, were, might (would, &c.) be, *Var*, X 38; *War(e)*, IV a 19, 23, &c.; *Weor*, XIV c 89; *Wer(e)*, I 92, II 108, IV a 75, XV g 8, XVI 199, &c. *Pl. ind.* and *subj.* *War(e)*, X 10, XIV b 93, &c.; *Weir*, X 137; *Wer(e)*, *Weren*, *Weryn*, *Wern(e)*,

# GLOSSARY

- I 41, II 18, III 58, V 354, VI 18, 225, &c.; Wore, I 114, VI 214, \*XVI 17 (note). [OE. *was* (*wes*), *wæron*, &c.; ON. pl. *várum*, &c.] See Nas.
- Wasche, *v. intr.* to wash, XIII a 25. [OE. *wascan*.]
- Waste, *n.* wild, uninhabited place, v 30. [ONFr. *wast*; OE. *wæste*.] See Wysty.
- Waste(n), *v. trans.* to waste, VII a 127, 155; *intr.* XIV c 2. [ONFr. *waster*.]
- Wastour(e), *n.* waster, despoiler, rogue, VIII a 29, 124, 146, &c. [ONFr. *wastur*.]
- Wat; Wate; Wat3. See What(e); Wite(n); Was.
- Watches, *n. pl.* watches; watchmen, XVI 140. [OE. *wæcce*.]
- Wape, *n.* peril, v 287; Woþe, VI 15; Woth, XVII 416. [ON. *vði*.]
- Wathe, *n.* (something gained in) hunting, XVII 486; *cf.* Fee. *n.* [ON. *veð-r*.]
- Watter; Watur, -er; *n.* water (sea, lake, flood), v 163, VII 119, VIII a 318, &c.; Watres, *pl.* IX 12, 243. [OE. *wæter*.]
- Watered, *pa. t. intr.* watered, VIII a 168. [OE. *wæterian*, trans.]
- Wawe, Wawghes. See Wagh(e).
- Waxe(n), Wax, *v.* to increase, grow, become, XV b 15, 32, c 22, XVII 60, 179; Wexe(n), Wex, II 62, IX 22, 95, XVI 344, &c.; Wax, *pa. t.* I 237; Wex, VI 178. [OE. *we(a)can*.]
- We, *interj.* (of grief, consternation, surprise, &c.) alas, ah, &c.; II 176, v 117, XVI 139, 149, 301, XVII 217, 238; *we* loo, v 140. [OE. *wā* (*lā*).] See Wai, Wo.
- We, *pron. pl.* we, I 64, &c. *Acc.* and *dat.* (to, for) us, Hus, XVII 46; Ous, II 167, 604, VIII b 92, &c.; Vs, IV a 7, VII 32, &c.; *us must*, see Mot(e); Vus, v 174, VI 94, &c.; *vus þynk vus oþe*, see Owe, þinke; Vs self, *reþ.* ourselves, XI b 157; Our(e), Owr(e), *poss. adj.* our, I 203, III 29, IV a 16, 55, XV g 26, &c.; Vr(e), XIV c 15, 84, XV g 1, 24; *oure one*, alone by ourselves, v 177 (see note); Oure, *pron.* ours, XI b \*128, 129; Ouris, x 88. [OE. *wē, ūs, āre*.]
- We. See Way(e).
- Wecht, *n.* weight, x 101. [ON. *vētt-r*, earlier \**weht*-.]
- Wedde, *n.* pledge, in *leide* to *wedde*, pledged, assigned as security, mortgaged, VIII b 77. [OE. *wedd*; *leggan to wedde*.]
- Wede, *n.* garment, article of attire, II 146, v 290; *wight in wede*, valiant (in arms), XIV b 5. [OE. *wæd*, *ge-wæde*.]
- Weder, -ir, -ur, *n.* weather, II 269, XVII 470; foul weather, storm, VII 114, VIII a 320, XIV c 35, XVII 451. [OE. *weder*.]
- Wedes, *n. pl.* weeds (plants), VIII a 105. [OE. *wēod*.]
- Wedmen, *n. pl.* wedded folk, XVII 400. [OE. *wedd + mann*.] See Wedde, Yweddede.
- Wedows; Wees, Wegh(es); Weete; Weie, Wey(e); Weyn; Weir. See Wodewe; Wy3e; Wete; Way(e); Wene(n); Was.
- Wel(e), Well(e), Weyl (I), Weill (X), *adv.* well, I 110, II 136, x 12, XIV d 2, &c.; very, II 309, 345, XIII a 26, XIV c 39, &c.; *wel riȝt*, *wel sone*, &c. at once, II 71, 270, x 70; fully, quite, I 254, II 553, &c.; (*esp.* with numbers) II 183, IX 199, XIV b 42, &c.; (with *compar.*) a good deal, much, II 464, x 10, XVI 334; without disadvantage, IV b 31; easily, VIII a 47, XVII 5, &c.; *predic.* good, X v 7, &c.; prosperous, VIII a 271; *well were he*, happy were he who, XVII 339; *well is vs*, happy are we, XVII 459; *wel worth þe*, may it go well with thee, v 59; *wale wurth þe while*, happy the occasion, XIV a 5,



# GLOSSARY

- See*; cf. **Wo**. [OE. *wū*.] *See* **Welneȝ**.
- Wela**, *adv.* very, in *wela wyll* (*see* **Wylle**), v 16. [OE. *wel* + *lā* (intensive).]
- Weloom**, **Welcum**, **Wolcome**, *adj.* welcome, II 433, v 172, VIII b 52; *as interj.* VI 39. [OE. *wil-cuma* infl. by *wel-* (*-cwīme*); cf. ON. *wel-kominn*.]
- Welde**, *v.* to possess, IV a 20. [OE. (*ge-*)*weldan*.]
- Wele**, **Weole**, *n.* (usually allit. with **Wo**, *q.v.*) happiness, prosperity, wealth, II 5, IV a 2, b 74, v 66, VI 34; *worldes wele*, good things of this world, wealth, IV a 28, XIV b 16; *wunne we(o)le*, wealth of joy, XV b \*11 (MS. *wynter*), 35. [OE. *we(o)la*.]
- Weleful**, *adj.* prosperous, XIV b 17. [Prec. + OE. *full*.]
- Wel-fare**, *n.* welfare, easy life, VIII b 8. [Wel + Fare, *n.*]
- Welkyn**, *n.* sky, VII 138. [OE. *wolcen*, *weolcn*.]
- Well(e)**, *n.* spring, fount, VI 5, IX 5, XIII a 1, &c.; *fig.* XIV c 108. [OE. *well(a)*.]
- Welle-spring**, *n.* spring, XV e 16. [Cf. OE. *well(e)-spring*.]
- Well-wirkand**, *adj.* righteous in deeds, XVII 120. [Cf. OE. *wel-wyrrende*.] *See* **Werche**.
- Welneȝ**, **Welnyȝ**, **Welnygh**. *adv.* almost, VI 168, XIII b 4; *welnygh now*, but a moment ago, VI 221. [OE. *wel-nā(a)h*.] *See* **Wel(e)**. *adv.*; **Nȝ**.
- Welth(e)**, *n.* happiness, IV a 32, XVI 324. [Extended from **Wele** with abstract *-þ*.]
- Wen**, *n.* blemish, diseased growth; *fig.* III *introd.* [OE. *wenn*, tumour.]
- Wende**, *v. trans.* to turn, v 84; *intr.* to turn (and toss), XV c 21; to return, I 199; go, come, I 94, II 427, VIII a 6; depart, VIII a 67, 79, 271; *refl.* go, II 475; 501; **Went(e)**, *pa. t.* I 113; **Wende**, I \*189 (*see note*), II 65, 185, &c.; **Went(e)**, *pp.* gone, departed, I 93, VIII a 198, &c.; *is went*, went, x 178; **Ywent**, come about, III *introd.* [OE. *wendan*.]
- Wene(n)**, to think, imagine, expect, IV a 35, v 336, VIII a 242, XI b 72, &c.; **Weyn**, XVII 444, 535; **Wende**, *pa. t.* I 110, 127, XII b 66. [OE. *wēnan*.] *See* **Awenden**.
- Wenges**; **Wen-e**. *See* **Wyng**; **Whan(ne)**.
- Wente**, *n.* turn(ing), XII b 6. [From **Wende**, *v.*]
- Weole**; **Weor**. *See* **Wele**; **Was**.
- Wepe**, *n.* weeping, in *w. and wo*, II 195, 234. [OE. *wēpp*, assimilated to stem of next.]
- Wepe**, **Weepe**, *v.* to weep, II 118, XIII a 32, XIV b 60, XV f 6; **Wepte**, *pa. t. sg.* I 174; **Wepe**, *pl.* II 591; **Wepeing**, **Wep-ying(e)**, *n.* II 219, IV a 32, XI b 155, &c. [OE. *wēpan*; *pa. t.* *wēop* (ONth. *wēpde*).]
- Weppen**, *n.* weapon, v 154; **Wapin**, XIV b 15; **Vapnys**, *pl.* x 190. [OE. *wēpn*; ON. *vāpn*.]
- Wer(e)**, *n.* war, VII 8, 88, XIV b 15; **Werre**, IX 81, XIV c 70. [ONFr. *werre*.]
- Wer(e)**, **Weryn**, &c. *See* **Was**.
- Werby**. *See* **Wher(e)**, *adv.*
- Werohe**, *v.* to work, labour; make: bring about, cause; act, do; I 90, 218, VIII a 297; **Werke**, XVI 334; **Wirk(e)**, XIV b 20, XVI 265, XVII 116; **Wyrk(e)**, VI 176, XVII 262; **Woroh(e)**, v 28, VI 151, VIII a 8, b 25, &c.; **Werkis**, 2 *sg.* XVI 264; **Wroȝt(e)**, **Wrought**, *pa. t.* I 65, 168, v 293, VI 165, XVII 4 (2 *sg.*), &c.; **Wrouȝte**, VIII a 103, 243 (*subj.*), &c.; **Wrouhte**, VIII b 87 (*subj.*); **Wroȝt**, **Wrought**, *pp.* v 276, VII 58, &c.; **Wrouȝt**, II 374, VIII a 308; **Wrought**, \*XVII 98 (MS. *wrought*; *see* **Vnsoght**); *let God worche*, let God do as He wills (compare the phrases under

# GLOSSARY

- Yworth**, v 140. [OE. *wyrcan*; *pa. t. workte* (*warkte, wrohte*); with *er* forms cf. Scherte, Werse, and see App. p. 280.]
- Were**, v<sup>1</sup> to ward (off), I 167. [OE. *werian*.<sup>1</sup>]
- Were**, v<sup>2</sup> to wear (clothes), v 290; **Ywerd**, pp. II 241. [OE. *werian*.<sup>2</sup>]
- Were**, v<sup>3</sup> to wear (out), decay, XIV c 2; *till hit be wered out*, until the present state has passed away, VIII b 85. [A sense-development of the prec. (cf. OE. *for-wered*, worn out); but the infl. of forms of quite distinct origin, such as OE. *for-weren*, *-woren*, worn out, decayed, (*for*;*weornian*, decay, was perh. ultimately responsible.)]
- Wery**. See Wary, v.
- Wery**, adj. weary, XI b 135, XIII a 48, XV c 30. [OE. *wërig*.]
- Werynes**, n. weariness, I 156, XIII a 49. [OE. *wërig-nes*.]
- Werk(e)**, **Wark(e)**, n. work; labour, VI 239, VIII a 191, &c.; fabric, II 374; *werkis*, works, fortress, XVI 191; action, deed, IV a 65, 84, VII 58, XI b 106, &c.; task, VIII b 56, XVII 130, 244, 255, &c.; written work, VII 4, 55; in *sg.* deeds, doings, dealings, &c., II 317, V 299, XVI 17, 200. [OE. *we(o)rc*.]
- Werke**. See Werche.
- Werkman**, **Workeman**, labourer, craftsman, VIII a 308, b 25; **Werk(e)men**, pl. VI 147, VIII a 53, IX 119, &c.; *my werkemen*, doers of my will, XVI 17. [OE. *we(o)rc-mann*.]
- Werldes**; **Wern(e)**. See World; Was.
- Wernyng**, n. refusal, v 185. [From OE. *wërnian*.]
- Werre**, adj. and adv. compar. in worse plight, worse, XVI \*154 (MS. ware; see note), 334 [ON. *verri*; adv. *verr*.] See Wors(e).
- Werre**; **Werre** (**Werst**); **Wes**. See Wer(e); Wors(e); Was.
- West(e)**, adv. and n. west, VII 105, XVI 333. [OE. *west*, adv.]
- Wete**, adj. and n. wet, II 80, VII 110, XIV c 30. [OE. *wēt*; *wēta*, n.]
- Wete**, **Weete**, v. to wet, IX 62, XIII a 34. [OE. *wētan*.]
- Weper**. See Wheper, conj.<sup>1</sup>
- Weue(n)**, v. to weave; pp. **Wouen**, woven, v 290. [OE. *wefan*, pp. *wefen*; cf. ON. pp. (*v*)*ofinn*.]
- Weued**, pa. t. presented, v 291 (see note). [OE. *wēfan*.]
- Wexe(n)**. See Wax(e)n.
- Wha(m)**. See Who.
- Whan(ne)**, adv. interrog. and rel. when, I 104, 161, v 163, IX 19, XI a 8, &c.; *whan that*, when, IX 22, XII a 28, 155, &c. (see *pat*); **Huanne**, III 27, 31; **Quen**, v 206, 247, VI 18; **Quhen**, x 40, 171; **Wanne**, VIII b 1, 52, &c.; **Wenne**, VIII b 7; **When**, I 221, &c.; **Whon**, XIV c 110. [OE. *hwonne*, *hwanne*, *hwænne*.]
- Whar(e)**, **Hwar**, adv. interrog. and rel. where, XIV a 7, xv a 6, XVI 294; (with *subj.*) wherever, II 170; **Quhar**, to the place where, x 18; *quhar at*, *quhar that*, where, x 38 (see *At rel.*), 149. As *neut. pron.* in: **Whar(e)fore**, for what (which) reason, IV b 33, XIII a 13. [OE. *hwær*, *hwāra*, and prob. unacc. *hwær*, *hwara*.] See **Nowhar(e)**; **Wher(e)**, adv.; cf. *par(e)*.
- Wharred**, pa. t. whirred, v 135. [Echoic.]
- What(e)**, **Wat**, **Quat** (v, vi), *pron. interrog.* what, II 102, XI b 195, xv e 8, XVII 163, &c.; *indir.* I 56, IV b 65, v III, VIII b 38, &c.; *indef.* (with *subj.*) whatever, II 339, 450, 467; approaching *rel.* XII b 142 (cf. VIII a 242), XVI 174 (see note and App. p. 289); *exclam.* what!, XVI 101; lo! v 133-6; *quat so*, whatsoever, VI 206; *what with . . . and* (as Mn.E

# GLOSSARY

- idlom), XVII 214. *Adj. interrog.* what, VI 115, &c.; *indir.* VI 32, VII 83, &c.; *indef.* (with *subj.*) whatever, VI 163; *exclam.* what I, II 234; *loke what*, see Loke; *what man* (*þing*), who, what, II 421, 116, &c.; *what* . . . *þat*, what, VII 92; whatever, XII a 115, XIII a 58 (with *subj.*). [OE. *hwæt*.]
- Wheder; Whedir.** See **Wheper**; **Whider**.
- Whelp**, *n.* whelp, pup, XIV b 78. [OE. *hwelp*.]
- Wher(e)**, **Quere** (VI), *adv. interrog.* and *rel.* where, whither, II 194, VI 16, XVI 272, 377, wherever (with *subj.*), XVI 402; *wher(e) þat*, (to the place) where, IX 184, XII a 59, 153, &c.; in a case where, when, XII b 139; wherever, IX 177. As *neut. pron.* in: **Werby**, **Wherby**, on account of which, VIII b 35; by which, XII b 55; **Wherfore**, wherefore; why, IX 176, &c.; and so, V 210, IX 135, 202, &c.; **Wher(e)of**, **Huerof**, (out) of which, III 2, 8, IX 153, 238, XII b 120, &c.; on account of which, XII a 10, 38, 71, 190, b 159, &c.; concerning which, II 16, XII b 212, &c.; *wherof that*, whereby, wherefore, XII a 116, 140, b 222; **Whereon**, in which, II 267. [OE. *hwær*, *hwēr*.] See **Whar(e)**.
- Wher(e)**, *conj.*, *interrog.* (introd. a direct question), XI b 64, 171, 197, 266, 274; (*indir.*) whether, XI a 51, b 207. [Reduction of **Wheper**<sup>1</sup>, *g.v.*]
- Whestones**, *n. pl.* whetstones, XIII a 45. [OE. *hwet-stān*.]
- Whete**, *n.* wheat, VIII a 9, 33, 299; *adj.* wheaten, VIII a 131. [OE. *hwæte*; *adj.* *hwæten*.]
- Wheper**, **Whethire**, **Wheder** (XVII), **Weper** (VI), *conj.*<sup>1</sup> *interrog.* with *ind.* or *subj.*; (introd. a direct question) V 118, VI 205; (*indir.*) whether, XVII 363; (alternative condition
- whethire* . . . or, whether . . . or, IV b 76; **Quepersœuer**, (with *subj.*) whether, VI 246. [OE. *hwæper*.] See **Wher(e)**, *conj.*
- Wheper**, *conj.*<sup>2</sup> however, (and) yet, VI 221. [OE. *hwæpere*.]
- Whette**, *pa. t.* ground; made a grinding noise, V 135; **Quet-tyng**, *n.* sharpening, grinding, V 152 (note). [OE. *hwettan*.]
- Whi**, **Why**, **Hwi**, *adv. interrog.* why, I 64, II 332, XV a 17, XVII 294, &c.; *for whi*, XVII 14, 518; **Quy**, VI 201; **Wi**, XV g 25; **Wy**, VI 173, 204; *indirect* in *þe cause why*, the reason why, XIII b 66; *exclam.* why then, V 232. [OE. *hwī*.]
- Which(e)**, **Wiche**, *interrog. adj.* which, what, II 494, &c.; *pron.* which, who, VIII a 126, &c.; *rel. adj.* in *the whiche*, which, IX 2; *pron.* who, which, XII a 52, 61, 111, &c.; *the which(e)* (*wiche*), which, whom, VIII b 31, IX 276, 298, XII a 35, &c.; *the whiche þat*, who(m), IX 190, 337; *of the whiche* . . . *offe*, of which, IX 24; *as he which*, &c., see note XII a 23. See App., p. 289. [OE. *hwilc*.] See **Whilke**.
- Whider**, **Whedir** (XVII), *adv. interrog.* whither, II 128, 288, 296, XIV a 21, XVII 313; *indef.* whithersoever, II 129, 130; **Whider** so, (with *subj.*) whithersoever, II 340. [OE. *hwider*.]
- Whyyt**, *adj.* white, XIII a 31; **Whyte**, **White**, II 105, XVI 89, &c.; **Quyte**, **Quite**, V 20, 296; **Whittore**, *compar.* XV c 27. [OE. *hwīt*; *compar.* *hwīttra*.]
- Whil(e)**, **Whyl(e)**, **Wyl**, **Quhill** (X), *conj.* while, I 8, VII 56, XIV c 29, 36, &c.; until, VI 168, X 32, 67, 197; *quhill þat*, until, \*X 63. [OE. *þā hwile þe*; see next.]
- While**, **Whyle**, **Wyle**, *n.* time, while, V 301, XIV a 5 (see **Wel**).

# GLOSSARY

- 23, &c.; *by wyle*, from time to time, II 8; *eny wyle*, for any length of time, VIII b 25; *þat ilke while . . . þerwhile*, while (*conj.*), VIII a 155-6; *þe while*, while (*conj.*), VIII a 58, 283. [OE. *hwil*.] See *Hondqwile*, *Operwhile*, *þerewhiles*, &c.
- Whyte**, *adv.* for a while, XV c 33. [OE. *hwile*, *hwilum*.]
- Whiles**; **Whils**, **Whyls**; **Qwiles** (VII); *conj.* while, VII 39, VIII a 314, XVI 55, XVII 397. [Extended from *While*, *conj.*, with *adv. -es*.]
- Whilke**, **Wylke**, *rel. pron.* which, XVI 14; *þe wylke*, which, IV b 30. [OE. *hwilc*.] See *Which(e)*.
- Whilom**, **Whilum**, *adv.* once, formerly, XII a 179, b 2, XIV b 5. [OE. *hwilum*.]
- Whyne**, *v.* to scream, XVII 229. [OE. *hwīnan*.]
- Whyp**, *n.* whip, XVII 378. [Obscure.]
- Whyrlande**, *pres. p.* whirling, V 154. [OE. *hwyr(t)lian*; ON. *hvirfla*.]
- White**, **Whittore**. See *Whyyt*.
- Who**, **Wha** (IV), **Quo** (VI), *pron. interrog.* who, II 263, IV a 14, VI 67, &c.; *who is*, who is it, XVII 295; *indef.* I 50, &c.; *indef.* in *who that*, whoever, if any one, XII b 24. *Obl. case*: **Wham**, *interrog.* whom, II 128; **Quom**, **Whom(e)**, *rel.* VI 93, IX 77, XVI 82, &c.; **Whos**, *gen. sg. rel.* whose, I 91, XII b 79; *the whos*, whose, XII a 113. **Whassa**, **Whoso** (*euer*), *indef.* whoever, I 2, IV a 71, VIII a 67, &c.; *but whoso*, unless one VIII a 1. [OE. *hwā*, *dat. hwām*.]
- Whon**. See *Whan(ne)*.
- Wi**, **Wy**. See *Whi*.
- Wycohe**, *n.* wizard, IX 85. [OE. *wicca*.]
- Wiche**; **Wicht**. See *Which(e)*; *Wight*, *adj.*
- Wid**. See *With*.
- Widder**, *v.* to wither, XVII 63. [OE. \**widr(s)an*, *expose*, *be exposed*, to the weather.]
- Wyde**, **Wide**, *adj.* wide, spacious, II 365, XVII 541; *adv.* wide open, X 185; *far and wide*, XIV b 29. [OE. *wīd*; *adv. wīd(e)*.]
- Wydwes**. See *Wodewe*.
- Wif(e)**, **Wyl**, **Wiif** (II), *n.* wife, II 178, V 283, XII a 3, XVII 106, &c.; **Wyue**, *dat. sg.* III 52; **Wiues**, **Wyues**, **Wifis**, *pl.* II 399, VIII a 13, XVII 144, &c. [OE. *wīf*.]
- Wyfman**, *n.* woman, III 30, 31, 36; **Wymman**, III 23; **Wimon**, XV g 7; **Wom(m)an**, II 211, XI b 61, &c.; **Wymmen(e)**, *pl.* IV b 54, V 347, XV b 32, c 11, &c.; **Wommen**, I 53, VIII a 8, &c.; **Women(e)**, IV b 42, XVII 208. [OE. *wīf-mann*, *wimman*.]
- Wight**, **Wyht**, **Wicht** (x), *adj.* valiant, X 122, 148, XIV b 5 (see *Wede*); *adv.* quickly, straightway, XV b 36. [ON. *víg-r*, *neut. víg-t*.]
- Wight**, **Wyght**, *n.* creature, person, VIII a 243, XVII 47, &c.: **Wy3te**, VI 134; **Wiht**, XII b 77; **Wytes**, *pl.* XV i 19. [OE. *wiht*.]
- Wy3e**, **Wegh**, *n.* knight, man, V 6, 30, VII 19, &c.; *vocative*, Sir (knight), &c., V 23, 59, 172; **Wy3e3**, **Weghes**, **Wees**, *pl.* VI 219, VII 23, 55. [OE. *wiga*, *warrior*.]
- Wiztliche**, *adv.* vigorously, VIII a 21. [From *Wight*, *adj.*]
- Wiif**. See *Wif*.
- Wyke**, *n.* week, VIII a 253. [OE. *wice*.] See *Woke*.
- Wikid**, **Wikked**, **Wykked**, **Wioked**, *adj.* bad, evil, wicked, IV a 65, VIII a 1, 29, IX 85, XVI 234, &c. [Extended from (*obscore*) ME. *wikke*, bad; cf. *Wrecched*.]
- Wil**, **Wyl(e)**. See *Whil(e)*; *Wille*, *n.* and *v.*
- Wild**. See *Wille*, *v.*
- Wild(e)**, **Wylde**, *adj.* wild, II

# GLOSSARY

- 214, 257, v 95, &c.: unruly, self-willed, in *þof he wer neuer sa wylde*, however sinful were his life, iv a 75. [OE. *wilde*.] See Wylle, *adj.*
- Wildernes, -nisse, n.** wilderness, II 212, 560. [OE. *wildernes* (in Sweet).]
- Wiles, Wyles, n. pl.** wiles, v 347, 352, xiv b 55. [OE. *wig(e)l* coalescing with ONFr. *\*wile* (OFr. *guile*); see Napier, *O. E. Glosses*, p. 159 (note).] See Gile, Biwyled.
- Wylyde, adj.** 1 guileful, v 299. [From prec.]
- Wylke.** See Whilke.
- Will(e), Wyll(e), Wil, Wyl, n.** pleasure, desire, will, intent, purpose, I 49, II 224, 345, 568, iv a 29, v 90, x 47, xi b 7, xv b 34, c 3, &c.; good will, favour, v 319; *at his owen w.*, at his pleasure, II 271; *at my (his) wille*, subject to my (his) will, viii a 200, xiv b 56; *wif wille*, joyously, xv b 15; *with my wille*, with my consent, xvi 297; *lightnes of w.*, levity, vii 15; *swete w.*, good pleasure, II 384. [OE. *ge-will, willa*.]
- Wylle, adj.** bewildering, wandering (path), v 16. [ON. *vill-r*.] See Wild(e).
- Wille, v.** desire, wish, be willing; be likely, wont; intend, will, &c., and as auxil. of *fut.* I and 3 *sg. pres.* Wil, Wyl, I 10, v 89, 147, viii a 24, 39, ix 252, &c.; **Will(e), Wyll, III 2, iv a 31, 52, &c.**; **Wol(e), II 24, ix 279, xi a 48, &c.**; **Woll(e), viii b 40, xv c 17, xvi 7, &c.**; 2 *sg. Wil, Wyl(1), iv a 4, 17, 88, viii a 222, &c.*; **Wylt, v 73. Wolt, viii a 271, xii b 42, xv g 33**; (with suffixed pron.) **Wiltou, -ow, II 128, xiv a 21, &c.**: (further reduced) **Wolte, xv g 19, 22**; *pl. Wyl, Wil(1), I 259, iv b 2, ix 118, &c.*; **Wol, Wole(n), viii b 85, ix 64, xi b 64, 161, xiii b 23, &c.**; **Wolle, xvi 240** (rime-
- fille*); *wiltow or neltow*, whether you are willing or not, viii a 149 (cf. II 154); (without expressed infin.) **will go (come), v 64, xvii 504**; *wilt thou so*, you'll do that, will you? xvii 226. *Pa. t.* desired, wished, **was willing**; was likely, used; intended, **would**; *subj.* **would** (be willing), **would** (should) like, could wish, &c.; as auxil. of *condit.* or *pa. t. subj.* **would**, should, &c.: **Vald, x 79**; **Wald(e), iv a 39, x 21, xiv b 12, &c.**; **Wild, I introd. (? ON *vilda*)**; **Wold(e), I 185** (rime *colde*), II 188, 279, III 37, iv b 25, v 28, vi 30, viii a 201, xi a 51, xiv c 20, xvi 253, xvii 47, &c.; **Wulde, I 47, 90, 171**; 2 *sg. Wold(e), Wolde3, -est, II 454, v 59, vi 50, xvi 362, xvii 172, &c.*; **wold awede**, was hketogo mad (or was going mad) II 87; **wold ich nold ich**, whether I would or no, II 154 (cf. viii a 149); (without expressed infin.) **wold vp (in)**, desired to rise (enter), II 96, 378; **whider pai wold**, where they were going to, II 296; **walde away**, would depart, iv a 75. [OE. *willan, wyllan*; *pa. t. wolve, wolve.*] See Ichil, Ichulle.
- Wilnest, 2 sg. pres. desirest, viii a 256.** [OE. *wilnian*.]
- Wymman, Wimon, &c.** See Wyfman.
- Wind(e), Wynd(e), Wynt, n.** wind, breath, iv b 5, vii 116, xiii a 8, xiv a 33, c 35, &c.; **Wynd blast**, blast of wind, xvii 355. [OE. *wind*.]
- Wyndo(w, n.** window, xvii 136, 280. [ON. *vind-auga*.]
- Wyne, n.** wine, iv a 51 (footnote). [OE. *win*.]
- Wyng, Weng, n.** wing, iv b 6, 48 ix 257, xii a 176, &c. [ON. *væng-r*.]
- Wynke, n.** a wink (of sleep), I 159. [From OE. *winician, v*.]
- Wynne, Wyn, n.** gain, profit,

# GLOSSARY

- v 352; *hym to mekill wyn*, to his great profit, XVII 109. [OE. (*ge-winn*).]
- Wynne(n)**, **Winne**, **Wyn**, *v.* to win; **Wan(ne)**, *pa. t. sg.* VIII a 90, XVI 9, &c.; *pl.* VII 174; **Wonne(n)**, *pp.* V 23, VI 157, &c.; **Wonen**, V 347, VII 169; **Won**, IV a 40, &c.; **Ywon**, II 561: *trans.* to procure (with toil), VIII a 21, 127; to win (in contest, &c.), win over, IV a 8, 20, XIV b 16, 56, XVI 9, &c.; to earn, VI 219, VIII a 90, XVI 230, &c.; to gain, get, XVI 132, XVII 363, &c.; to (manage to) bring, get, IV a 40, V 23, 347, VII 174: *wynne* (away), rescue, II 561, XVI 18, 171, 266, 406; *intr.* to labour profitably, earn (something), VIII a 155, 316, XII b 37; to win one's way, get (to), V 163; get (away, from), escape, XVII 24, 549, &c.; (*were*) *wonen of*, had escaped, VII 169; *wyn to end*, succeed in completing, XVII 130; to go, come, V 147, VI 157 [OE. *ge-winnan* and ON. *vinna*]
- Wynnynge**, *n.* gain, profit, VIII b 102. [From prec.; ON. *vinning-r.*]
- Wynt**. See **Wind(e)**.
- Wynter**, **Wintur**, -*er*, *n.* winter, II 259, VII 100; as *adj.* XV b 8, II (see note); **Winter-schours**, -*tyde*, winter storms, winter time, II 59, XIV b 26. [OE. *winter*; *winter-scūr*, -*tīd*.]
- Wypped**, *pa. t.* sent flying, V 181. [Cf. Fris., Du., L.G. *wippen*.]
- Wyrde**, *n.* fate, V 66, 350 (cf. 217); *wyrdes*, chances, VIII b 102. [OE. *wýrd*.]
- Wyre**, *v.* to turn; throw, X 112. [OFr. *vīrer*.]
- Wirk(e)**, **Wyrk(e)**, &c. See **Werche**.
- Wis(e)**, **Wys(e)**, *adj.* wise, IV a 2, VII 31, XI b 250, XII b 222, &c. [OE. *wis*.]
- Wys(e)dome**, **Wisdome**, *n.* wisdom, IV b 56, 68, VIII a 53; piece of wisdom, VIII a 206. [OE. *wis-dōm*.]
- Wyse**, **Wise**, *n.* manner, fashion, guise, \*II 158 (note), V 124, VII 65, 77, VIII a 59, XVI 25; *in many wise*, in many ways, XII a 39; *in no(ne) wise*, at all, VIII a 300, IX 283; *in the wise as*, just as, XII a 101; *other wise many fold*, in many another fashion, XVII 54. [OE. *wīse*.]
- Wish**, *n.* desire, will, XVII 4. [Stem of OE. *wýscan*, *v.*]
- Wysli**, **Wysely**, *adv.* thoughtfully, carefully, XIV c 14, XVII 435. [OE. *wis-līce*.]
- Wisse**, **Wysshe**, *v.* to guide, direct, VII 4 (note); *wissed hym bettere*, directed him (to do) better, VIII a 158. [OE. *wissian*.]
- Wist(e)**, &c. See **Wite(n)**, *v.*<sup>1</sup>
- Wysty**, *adj.* lonely, deserted, V 121. [OE. *wīstig*; for vowel cf. *Ryste*, and see *Morsbach*, *M.E. Gram.*, § 109.]
- Wit**, **Witt(e)**, **Wyt**, **Wytt(e)**, *n. sg.* mind, senses, wits, II 82, III 46 (*dat.*), XII b 137, XVI 344, &c.; wisdom, XI a 10; intelligence, discernment, understanding, I 11, VII 4, VIII a 53, XI a 12, 32 (1 interpretation), 52, XII b 198, &c.; sense, meaning, XI a 6, 47, 53, &c.; *pl.* intelligence, II 38, XI b 113; senses, wits, XII a 158; *fyue wyttez*, five senses, V 125. *Bi my wytte (wit)*, as I think, v 28, XVII 452; *do . . . his wit*, apply his mind, XI b 6; *gode wytt*, sound mind, IX 83; *Kynde Witt*, (natural) good sense, VIII a 243. [OE. *witt*.]
- Wit**, **Wyt**. See **With**.
- Wite(n)**, **Wyte**, **Witte**, *v.*<sup>1</sup> to know, learn, be aware, I 38, VIII a 204, XI b 82, XII a 43, &c.; **Wate**, I and 3 *sg. pres.* IV a 16, VI 142, XVII 444, &c.; **Woot**, XI a 43, 50; **Wote**, I 38, VIII a 124, XVII 313, &c.; see *Ichot*, *Not*; **Wost**, 2 *sg.* VI 51; **Wote**, XVI 222; **Wate**.

# GLOSSARY

- pl.* I *introd.*; **Wyte**, I 250; **Wotte**, XVI 171. **Wist(e)**, **Wyst(e)**, *pa. t.* I 160, II 194, III 27, 45, VII 23, XV *g* II (*subj.*), &c.; would know (*subj.*), IX 184; *see* Nist. *Don to wyte*, inform, II 2; *We wille 3e witte*, we intend that you should know (*i.e.* have full warning of the rescue of the souls), XVI 176; *witte þou wele*, be assured, XVI 305. [OE. *witan*; *wāt* pret. pres.; *wiste*, &c.] *See* Wyte.
- Wite**, *v.*<sup>2</sup> to guard, keep, II 206, XV *f* 13. [OE. *witian*, but in ME. the senses and forms due to OE. *witan* (str.), *witan* (pret. pres.), and *witian* (wk.) were confused.]
- Wyte**, *v.*<sup>3</sup> fade, vanish, IV *a* 34. [OE. *ge-witan*.]
- Wyter**, *adj.* wise, XV *c* 25. [Late OE. *witter*, from (ON) *vittr*.]
- Wytterliche**, *adv.* clearly, VIII *b* 38. [From prec. in ME. sense 'plain'.]
- Wytes**. *See* Wight, *n.*
- With**, **Wyp**, **Wid** (XV *g*), **Wit** (VIII *b* 6), **Wyt** (XV *d* 6), &c., *prep.* with, against, XIV *b* 36, XVII 138, &c.; (meet) with, II 510, VIII *b* 6, XV *g* 7; (together) with, among, I 54, 133 (*see* Wo), II 84, IV *a* 4 (*see* Beste), 5, XV *g* 30, &c.; *es noghte with*, does not associate with, IV *b* 2; at, XII *a* 142; *with bat*, thereupon, VIII *a* 239; *with (instr.)* II 106, IV *b* 62, XV *g* 8, 29, &c.; by (means, reason of), II 404, VII 142, XVI 160, 297, &c.; by (*agent*), V 348, 351, 358, VII 53, &c. *With al*, entirely, VIII *a* 76 (OE. *mid alle*); *with all this*, meanwhile, X 114; *wyth lyttel*, with little result, VI 215; *what with . . . and with*, what with . . . and. XVII 214. *Bowes . . . to schote with arrowes* (to shoot arrows with) is normal ME. order, IX 256; *cf.* VIII *a* 259, 290, &c. [OE. *wiþ* blended with *mid* (*miþ*)] *See* *par(e)*, *per(e)*.
- Withal**, **Vithall**, *adv.* withal, X 9; *forth withal*, straightway, XII *b* 82, 129. [OE. *mid alle*; *see* prec.]
- Withdrawe**, *v.* to withdraw; *intr.* retire, VIII *a* 324; *pp.* rest (from her), XII *a* 158. [OE. *wiþ + dragan*.] *See* Draw(e).
- Wythhalde**, *v.* to hold back, V 200; **Withhelde**, **Wythhyldē**, *pa. t.* V 100, 223, &c. [OE. *wiþ + haldan*.] *See* Holde(n).
- Within(ne)**, **Wipynne**, **Vithin** (X), &c., *adv.* inside, IX 141, X 13, 70, XIII *a* 16, XV *i* 2, &c.; in (his) heart, V 302; *prep.* within, in, VI 80, &c.; (freq. postponed) IV *a* 38, 40, XVI 282, &c.; (of time) XII *a* 29. [OE. *wiþ-innan*.]
- Without(e)**, -outten, -owte(n), out, &c., *adv.* outside, X 68, XV *i* 2, XVII 127, &c.; *prep.* without, II 460, IV *a* 96, VI 30, XVI 300, XVII 149, &c.; *see* Ende, Lees, Nay, No, &c. [OE. *wiþ-utan*.]
- Withtakand**, *pres. p.* reprehending, IV *b* 9. [OE. *wiþ- + ON. taka*.] *See* Take(n).
- Witnesse**, *v.* to testify, VIII *b* 91. [From Wittenesse.]
- Wit-sunday**, *n.* Whitsunday (with pun on *Wit*), XI *a* 12. [OE. *se hwita sunnan-dæg*.]
- Witt(e)**, &c. *See* Wit, Wite(n).
- Wittenesse**, *n.* witness, testimony, XVI 279; *see* Drawe. [OE. *ge-witnes*.]
- Wyues**, **Wiues**. *See* Wif.
- Wlaffyng**, *n.* stammering, indistinct utterance, XIII *b* 14. [OE. *wlaffian*.]
- Wlytep**, *pres. pl.* pipe, warble, XV *b* 11. [Imit. of sound, or corrupt for ? *wrytleþ*; *cf.* OE. *writian*, warble, ME. *writelinge*, *n.*]
- Wo**, *n.* woe, grief, pain, sorrow, &c., I 168, II 5, XV *b* 8, XVI 40, &c.; **Woo(e)**, XVI 18, 300,

# GLOSSARY

- &c.**; **Wa(a)**, IV *a* 23, XVI 406, &c.; *wo was wyth (hym)*, (he) was grieved, I 132; *me is wo*, woe is me, unhappy am I, II 331, 542; (with *nom. pron.*) *or ye be wo*, ere you are in trouble, XIV *d* 11 (*see* Ware, *adj.*); *with (moche) wo*, (very) painfully, VII 169, XII *a* 105; *wepe and wo*, II 195, 234; *for wels ne wa(a)*, on no account, IV *a* 2, *b* 74; *worþe hit wele oþer wo*, whatever happens, V 66 (*see* Worþe, *v.*). [OE. *wā*.]
- Wod(e)**, *n.* wood(land), I 62, II 237, V 16, 84, &c.; trees, XV *b* 14; wood, fuel, XII *b* 113, 123, &c.; *to wode*, into the woods, XII *b* 5. [OE. *wudu*.]
- Wode**, **Woode** (XVI), *adj.* mad, furious, II 394, V 221, XII *a* 138, XV *g* 17, XVI 344, XVII 426. [OE. *wōd*.] *See* Awede.
- Wodehed**, *n.* madness, recklessness, I 31. [OE. *wōd* + *\*-hædu*.]
- Wodeness**, *n.* fury, VII 138. [OE. *wōd-nes*.]
- Woderoue**, *n.* woodruff, XV *b* 9. [OE. *wudu-rofe*.]
- Wodewe**, *n.* widow, III 23; **Wydwes**, *pl.* VIII *a* 13; **Wewdows**, XVII 389. [OE. *wuduwe*, *wid(e)we*.]
- Wogh**, *n.* evil, misery, XVII 533. [OE. *wōh*.]
- Woke**, *n.* week, XIII *a* 28. [OE. *wucu*.] *See* Wyke.
- Wol(e)**, **Wold(e)**, **Woll(e)**. *See* Wille, *v.*
- Woolome**. *See* Welcom.
- Wolle**, *n.* wool, VIII *a* 13, IX 142, 238, 239. [OE. *wull(e)*.]
- Wolt(e)**. *See* Wille, *v.*
- Wolues**, *n. pl.* wolves, II 539; **Wolues-kynnes**, of wolf's kind, wolvis, VIII *a* 154. [OE. *wulf*; *wulfes* (gen. sg.) + *cynnes*.] *See* Kyn.
- Wombe**, *n.* belly, VIII *a* 168, *b* 54; *distrib. sg.* (*see* Herte) VIII *a* 209, 253; **womb**, XI *b* 30. [OE. *wāmb*, *wōmb*.]
- Wom(m)an**, &c. *See* Wyfman.
- Won**. *See* Wan(ne), Wynne(n).
- Won(e)**, *v.* to dwell, abide, V 30, VI 44, XII *a* 191, XIII *b* 5, 7, XIV *a* 23, &c.; **Wonne**, XVI 15, 235, 379, &c.; **Wonyd**, *pp.* dwelt, V 46; **Wont**, accustomed, VIII *a* 160, XII *a* 179. [OE. (*ge*)-*wunian*, dwell, be accustomed.] *See* Ywon(ed); **Wones**, *n. pl.*
- Wonder**, -ur; **Wounder** (XV *b*); **Wunder**, -yr: (i) *n.* wonder, amazement, (a) marvel, IV *a* 85, XIII *b* 42, XVII 265, &c.; miraculous deed, I 102; *mans wonder*, amazement of mankind, monster, XVII 408; *spake of hem wonder*, spoke wonderingly of them, I 225; **Wondres**, *pl.* marvels, XIII *a* 6; (ii) *adj.* (orig. loose compound), marvellous, XIII *a* 31, XVII 496; (iii) *adv.* (*cf.* OE. *wundrum*), marvellously, II 104, 356, V 132, XIII *a* 10, XV *b* 32, &c. [OF. *wundor*, *wúndor*.] *See* Wundied.
- Wonderfol**, **Wondirful**(1), *adj.* wonderful, IX 144, 266, XIII *a* 7. [OE. *wundor-ful*.]
- Wonderli**, **Wonderlyoh**, *adv.* marvellously, XII *a* 54, XIII *a* 14. [OE. *wundor-lice*.]
- Wondringe**, *n.* wonder, XII *b* 213. [OE. *wundrung*.]
- Woned**, I 189 ? read *wende*, went; *see* note.
- Wonen**. *See* Wynne(n).
- Wones**, **Wone3**, *n. pl.* halls, II 365; (with *sg. sense*) dwelling, V 130, 332. [? ON. *ván*, expectation, occas. used as 'place where one may be expected to be' (*cf.* Norweg. *von*, expectation, haunts of game); but the word was infl. by assoc. with **Wone**, dwell (*q.v.*), with which it was often joined in allit. ME. rimes all require *wōn* or *wān*.] *See* Wane, *n.*
- Wonges**, *n. pl.* cheeks, XV *c* 22 [OE. *wāng*, *wōng*.]
- Wonne(n)**. *See* Wynne(n), **Won(e)**.



# GLOSSARY

**Wonte**, *v.* to be lacking; *yow* (dat.) *wonted*, you lacked, V 298; *þef me ſhal wonte*, if I do not have, XV b 34. [ON. *wanta*.]

**Woo(e)**; **Woode**; **Woot**. See **Wo**; **Wode**, *adj.*; **Wite(n)**, *v.*<sup>1</sup>

**Worcinge**, - *yng*, *n.* working, operation, IX 56; *wondur w.*, miraculous property, XIII a 32. [OE. *wyrung*.] See **Werche**.

**Word(e)**, **Woord**, **Wurde** (I), *n.* word, I 108, II 139, 222, V 305, XI a 10, XVII 380, &c.; plighted word, II 468; fame, in *þe word of him walkes ful wide*, his fame is spread abroad, XIV b 29; *worship and wordes*, obsequious words, VII 174. [OE. *wórd*.]

**Wore**, *n.* troubled pool, XV c 30 (note). [OE. *wār* (in doubtful gloss), turing, muddy water (see Napier, *O.E. Glosses*, p. 49 (note); but cf. OE. *wārig*, ME. *wōri*, muddy).]

**Wore**; **Workis**; **Workeman**. See **Was**; **Werche**; **Werkman**.

**World(e)**, *n.* world, earth, men, I 225, II 41, IX 72, &c.; **Warld**, II 403, XVII 70, 303; *warld so wide*, XVII 541; **Werld**, XIV b 16; *in world, of the w.*, on earth, XV c 25, IX 183; *werldes, worldes*, (gen.) of the world, worldly, in *worldes reches*, IV b 61; *worldes wele*, see **Wele**, *n.* [OE. *w(e)rold*.]

**Worldly**, *adj.* worldly, secular, temporal, XI b 2, 55, 96, 140, &c. [OE. *worold-lic*.]

**Worm**, *n.* snake, worm, II 252, IV b 27, XII b 195, XV b 31. [OE. *wyrm*.]

**Worschipe**, **Worschyp**, *n.* honour, VI 34, 119, IX 109, 333; **Worship**, VII 174; **Worshyp**, VIII b 79; **Warschyp**, I 91. [OE. *w(e)orþ*-, *wurþ-scipe*.]

**Worship(e)**, *v.* to honour, worship, VIII a 95, XI b 168; **Warschyppeþ**, *imp. pl.* I 84. [From *prec.*]

**Wors(e)**, *adj. compar.* worse. XI b

75, XIII a 59, XVI 320, &c.; **Wers(e)**, XVI 200; *neuer him nas wers*, never had he been more unhappy, II 98; **Wars**, *adv.* in the wars, so much the worse that, XVII 191 (see **þe**, *adv.*). **Werst**, *adj. superl.* worst, meanest, II 367; **Worst**, V 30. [OE. *wyrsa*, *wyrsta*; with *er-* forms cf. **Werche**, **Scherte**.] See **Weite**.

**Worst**. See **Worþe**, *v.*

**Wortes**, *n.* vegetables, VIII a 303. [OE. *wyrt*.]

**Worþe**, **Wrþe**, *adj.* worth, VI 91; worthy, in *þou were wrþe*, you would be worthy, you deserve, XV g 8 (cf. **Worþy**). [OE. *weorþe*, *wyrþe*.]

**Worþe**, *v.* to come to pass, become, be, and *auxil* of *passive* (esp. with *ful* sense); **Worst**, 2 *sg. pres.* wilt be, II 170, 174; **Worþn**, 3 *sg.* will be, VIII a 48; will come to pass, VIII a 156; **Worþe**, **Worþ**, **Wurth**, *subj. pres. be*, let there be, V 306, VI 2; *worþe hit wele oþer wo*, come weal or woe, V 66 (see **Wo**); *wel worth þe*, may it go well with thee, V 59; *wele wurth þe while*, good luck to the time, happy the occasion, XIV a 5, &c. (see **Wel**). **Warth**, *pa. t. sg.* in *hym warth*, accrued to him, VIII b 102; **Worþed**, *subj.* would fare, V 28; **Worþen**, *pp.* in *is w. to*, has turned to, is become (one of), VI 34. [OE. *weorþan*, *wurþan*.] See **Yworth**.

**Worpy**, **Worþi**, *adj.* merited, just, XVI 324; worthy, deserving (constr. *to* and *infin.*), IV b 10, IX 172, XVI 132; *w. to reherse*, worth repeating, XI a 4; *were w. (be)*, deserve (to be), XVI 357, XVII 200 (*were* is *subj.*; cf. **Worþe**, *adj.*); worthy (of honour), worshipful, VI 134, IX 269, XI a 25, XII a 165, XVII 19; *worþiest (of)*, most worshipful (in), XVII 489. **Worþtier**, *compar. adv.* more honourably, VIII a 48; **Worþili**, *adv.* honour-

# GLOSSARY

- ably, XIV c 67. [OE. *wyrþig*, merited.] See Vnworthi.
- Wost, Wot(t)e. See Wite(n), v.<sup>1</sup>
- Woth, Wope. See Wape, n.<sup>1</sup>
- Wou, *adv.* how (is it that), why, xv g 25. [OE. *hū*, !infl. by *hwȳ*, &c.] See Hou.
- Wouen. See Weue(n).
- Wounde, n. pl. wounds, II 393; Woundis, x 51. [OE. *wund*.]
- Wounder. See Wonder.
- Woundit, *pp.* wounded, x 141, 154; Voundit, x 63. [OE. *wundian*.]
- Wowes, Wowep, *pres. pl.* woo, make love, xv b 19, 31. [OE. *wōgian*.]
- Wowyng, n. love-making, love-suit, v 293, 299, xv c 29. [From *prec.*]
- Wrake, n. injury, xvii 138. [OE. *wracu*.]
- Wrang(e), *adj.* and *adv.* wrong, unjust(ly), vi 128, xvi 264, 265, 305, xvii 188. [Late OE. *wrang*, from ON. *\*wrang-*, OIcel. *rang-r*.]
- Wrappe, v. to wrap, xv f 10. [Obscure; !cf. ME. (*w*)*lappen*, wrap.]
- Wrastlynges, n. pl. wrestling-matches, II. [OE. *wræstlung*.]
- Wrath, v. to anger; to *wrath hym* (refl.), to become enraged, viii a 146; Wrathed, *pp.* wronged, brought to grief, v 352. [From next.] See Wrethe.
- Wrappe, Wrathpe, n. anger, xi b 94; offence, vi 2. [OE. *wrāþo*, anger, injury.] See Wrop, Wreth.
- Wreched, *adj.* afflicted, troubled, ix 317; Wrechidnes, n. misery, iv b 29. [From next.]
- Wreche, n. unhappy one, II \*333 (MS. *wroche*), 544; Wretche, xiv a 21, 23. [OE. *wrecca*.]
- Wreke, n. vengeance, xvi 191. [OE. *wracu* or *wrāc*, infl. by next.]
- Wreke, *pp.* revenged, xv g 11; Wroken, Wrokin, (banished), removed, vi 15; revenged, xiv a 4, 5, xvi 199. [OE. *wreccan*, expel, punish.] See Awreke.
- Wreth, n. anger, iv a 75. [OE. *wrāþo*, *wrāþpo*.] See Wrappe.
- Wrethe, v. to anger, offend, iv b 85. [Cf. OE. *ge-wrāþan*, refl., to be enraged.] See Wrath.
- Wryȝt, n. carpenter, I 176; Write, xvi 230. [OE. *wryhta*, *wryhta*.]
- Wrighty, n. carpentry, xvii 250. [Prec. + OFr. *-(e)rie*.]
- Wryng(e), v. to wring; wring (the hands), iv a 65, xvii 211; Wronge, *pa. t. sg.* wrung, twisted and pinched, viii a 168. [OE. *wringan*.]
- Writ(e), Writt(e), Wryt, n. writing, III 36 (*dat. sg.*); Scripture, I 12, iv b 76, xi a 10, b 23, &c. [OE. *writ*.]
- Write, Wryte, v. to write, viii a 79, b 72, ix 122; Wrote, *pa. t. sg.* I 247; *pl.* vii 58; Writen, *pa. t. pl.* xi a 23; Write(n), Wryte(n), *pp.* I 37, 40, iv a 2, vii 31, ix 318 (see Putte), xii a 1, &c.; Ywryte, Ywrite, II i, 13, III *introd.*, 33; Wrytyng(e), n. vii 23, xi b 305. [OE. *writan*.]
- Write. See Wryȝt.
- Wrip, 3 *sg. pres.* covers, II 244. [OE. *writon*, 3 *sg. wrip*.]
- Wrype(n), v. to twist; bind, vi 151; turn aside (from the just course) vi 128. [OE. *wripān*.]
- Wro, n. nook, corner, v 154. [ON. *\*wrd*, OIcel. *rd*.]
- Wroȝt(e); Wroken; Wronge. See Werche; Wreke; Wryng(e).
- Wrote, v. to root in the earth, II 255. [OE. *wrotan*.]
- Wrop(e), Wroth, *adj.* angry, at variance, II 122, vi 19, xv f 7, xvii 36, &c.; make *hym* (refl.) *wroth*, become angry, I 10. [OE. *wrāþ*.] See Wrappe.
- Wropely, *adj.* fiercely, v 221; Wropeloker, *compar.* more severely, v 276. [OE. *wrāþ-lic*, *-lucor*.]
- Wrouȝte(n), Wrouhte. See Werche.

# GLOSSARY

**Wrpe.** See **Worpe**, *adj.*

**Wruxled**, *pp.* in *wr. in grene*, 'changed into, turned, green, v 123; but 'adorned' is usually assumed here and for *wruxled*, Purity 1381. [OE. *wrixl(i)an*, (ex)change. A sense 'adorned' might be derived from an (unrecorded) earlier sense, 'turn, wind round' (? rel. to *wrōn*, *wrigels*), or perh. from OE. *wrixlan* (*blōm*), change colours, exhibit varied hues.]

**Wulde.** See **Wille**, *v.*

**Wundred**, *pa. t.* wondered, I 114. [OE. *wundrian*.] See **Wonder**.

**Wunne**, *n.* joy; *gen sg* in *wunne wele* (*weole*), wealth of joy, xv b \*11 (MS. *wyunter*), 35. [OE. *wynn*.]

**Wurde**; **Wurschyp**; **Wurth**. See **Word(e)**; **Worschip(e)**; **Worpe**, *v.*

**Y-**; see also 3, I. For past participles in *y-* not entered below see the verbs concerned.

**Yaf.** See **ȝeue**.

**Y-arched**, *pp.* in *y-arched of gold*, built of gold in the shape of an arch, II 362. [OFr. *archer*, *v.*]

**Yarn.** See **Lorne**.

**Ybilt**, *pp.* 'lodged, II 483 (MS.; see note); see **bilt**. [See *N.E.D.* s.vv. *Build*, *Built*.]

**Ybore**, -born; **Ybounde**. See **Ber(e)**; **Bynde**.

**Yclongen**. See **Clinge**.

**Yclosed**, *pp.* enclosed, XIII a 24, 40. [ME. *clösen*, from *Clos*, *q. v.*]

**Ycore** (orig. *pp.* of *Chese*, *q. v.*), chosen, excellent; as mere intensive rime-tag, II 105, 148. [OE. *ge-coren*.]

**Ydel**, **Ydill** (IV), **Hydel** (VIII), *adj.* unemployed, idle, IV b 1, VI 154, 155, VIII b 27, &c.; slothful, IV b 9, XI b 219. [OE. *idel*.]

**Ydelnesse**, **Ydyllnes** (IV), *n.* lack of (useful) employment, idleness, IV b 7, XI b 64, 127, 197. [OE. *idel-nes*.]

**Ydronke**. See **Drynke(n)**.

**Ye** (= *ȝe*). See **Eȝe**.

**Yeaf**, **ȝeaf**. See **ȝeue**.

**ȝei**, *adv.* yes indeed, XVII 370, 458; oh yes (ironic), XVII 353. [Reduction of a reiteration *ȝe-ȝe*, or assimilated to ME. *nei*, nay; see *N.E.D.* s.v. *ȝea*.] See 3a, 3e.

**ȝelp**, *n.* boast(ing), XVII 321. [OE. *gelp*.]

**ȝendles**; **ȝer(e)**. See **Endles**; **ȝeer**.

**ȝfere**, *adv.* in *al ȝfere*, all together, II 223. [Orig. *ȝfere(n)*, OE. *ge-feran*, pl., (as) companions. See **Fere**, *n.*]

**ȝfet**; **ȝfouȝte**; **ȝfounde**; **ȝȝe**; **ȝȝurned**. See **Fecche**; **Fight**; **Fynde(n)**; **Eȝe**; **ȝerne**.

**ȝgraced**, *pp.* thanked, VIII a 118. [OFr. *gracier*.]

**ȝhad**; **ȝhe(n)**. See **Habbe(n)**; **Eȝe**.

**ȝhere**, *v.* to hear, II 420; **ȝherd**, *pa. t.* II 528; **ȝhyerde**, III 49. [OE. *ge-hēran*.] See **Here**.

**ȝhyȝt**, *pp.* (adorned), arranged, XIII a 1. [ME. *hihten*, prob. from OE. *hyht*, pleasure (*hyhtlic* pleasant).]

**ȝhis**, *adv.* yes, XVI 61 (MS.). [OE. *grise*.]

**ȝhonged**; **ȝhiif**. See **Hange**; **ȝef**.

**ȝlofde**, *pa. t.* believed, III 36. [OE. *ge-lēfan*.] See **Beleue**; **Leue**, *v.*]

**ȝloft**; **ȝlent**. See **Leue**, *v.*]; **Lende**.

**ȝlet**, *n.* hindrance; *ȝif þou makest ous ȝlet* if you offer any resistance to us, II 169. [Not recorded elsewhere; usual ME. form is *Lette*, *q. v.* Other MSS. read *ony let*.]

**ȝlokked**, *pp.* locked up, IX 174. [ME. *lok(e)ren*, from *lok*, OE. *loc*, *n.*; cf. ON. *loka*, *v.*] See **Loke**, *pp.*; **Vnlokynne**.

**ȝlond**, *n.* island, XIII a 20, b 2, 44. [OE. *ig-lānd*.]

**ȝlore**; **ȝmad**. See **Lese**, *v.*]; **Maken**.

**ȝmaymed**, *pp.* maimed, VIII b 35. [OFr. *m(ah)ainier*, &c.

# GLOSSARY

- cf. *meshaim*, *mayhem*, &c., n.]
- Ymake**, *adj.* becoming, comely, xv c 16. [OE. *ge-mæc*.]
- Ymarked**, *pp.* marked out, appointed, II 548. [OE. *mearcian*.]
- Ympe**, *Impe*, *n.* sapling, scion, xiv c 83, 89, 98. [OE. *impa*, shoot, graft.]
- Ympe-tre**, *n.* orchard-tree, II 70, 166, 186, 407, 456. [Prec. + *tréo*.]
- Ynence**, *prep.* towards, \*IV b 22 (MS. *yuesche*). [OE. *onef(e)n*, *onemn* + adv. *-es*.]
- Yno3**: **Ynough**, *adj.* enough, XII b 123; **Ynow3**, XI b 190, 192; **Ynowþ3**, XI b 149; **Inogh**, abundant, much, xv a 15; **Innoghe**, *pl.* many, in abundance, v 55; **Anou3**, *adv.* II 62, **Enogh**, XVII 532, **Inoghe**, VI 252; **Ynough**, XII b 74; **Yno3** (*of*), abundance (*of*), III 8; **Ynoh**, very, xv c 13. [OE. *ge-nōg*, *ge-nōh*.] See **Ynow(e)**.
- Ynome**. See **Nyme**.
- Ynow(e)**, *adj.* enough; as *sh*, IX 160, 282, XIV d 13; **Ynowe**, **Enew**, *pl.* in abundance, great numbers, XI b 284, x 7; **Ynow**, *adv.* enough, XIII b 8; very, IX 4. [OE. *ge-nōg*, oblique forms of *ge-nōh*.] See **Yno3**.
- Yond**, *adj.*; as *pron.* that (over there), XVII 453. [OE. *geond*, thither; cf. Goth. *jaind*.]
- Yone**, *adj.* that (over there), XVI 340; **Jon**, v 76. [OE. (once) *geon*, cf. Goth. *jain-s*. See *N.E.D.*, s.v. *Yon*.]
- You(e)**, **Yow**. See **3e**, *pron.*
- Ypoorisie**, hypocrisy, XI b 12. [Ofr. *ipocrisie*.]
- Ypooritis**, *n. pl.* hypocrites, XI b 7, 44, 56, 72, &c. [Ofr. *ipocrite*.]
- Yre**, *n.*<sup>1</sup> iron, XIII a 44; **Yrne**, v 199; **Yrnes**, *pl.* irons (supporting injured leg), VIII a 130. [OE. *īron*.] See **Irnebandis**.
- Yre**, **Ire**, *n.*<sup>2</sup> anger, XVII 51; *in hor gret yre*, so as greatly to anger them, VII 181. [Ofr. *īrs*.]
- Yrokked**, *pp.* rocked, XIII b 22. [OE. (late) *roccian*.]
- Y-se**, *v.* to see, II 530; **Yse3**, *pa. t. sg.* III 35, 41, 56; **Ysei3e**, *pa. t. pl.* II 328; for *pp.* see **Se(n)**. [OE. *ge-sēon*.]
- Yseye**, **Ysei3e**. See **Se(n)**, and *prec.*
- Ysene**, *adj.* visible, II 354. [OE. *ge-sēne*.] See **Se(n)**.
- Ysode**, *pp.* boiled, XIII a 30. [OE. *sōpan*, *pp. ge-soden*.]
- Yspent**; **Yspronge**; **Ytau3t**. See **Spend(e)**; **Springe**; **Tech(e)n**.
- Ythes**, *n. pl.* waves, VII 106. [OE. *ȝþ*.]
- Ytold**. See **Telle**.
- Ytui3t**, *pp.* snatched, II 192. [Cf. *Ol. twiccian*.]
- Yuel(e)**, *adj.* evil, wicked, IX 237; difficult, VIII a 50; **Euyll**, evil, IX 83. [OE. *ȳfel*, *adj.*.]
- Yuel**, *n.* evil, wrong, VIII *introd.*, a 220; **Euel(l)**, IV a 76, IX 338, xv g 28. [OE. *ȳfel*, *n.*.]
- Yvsed**. See **Vse**.
- Yweddade**, *pp.* (lawfully) married, VIII b 68. [OE. *weddian*, to betroth.]. See **Wedmen**.
- Ywent**; **Ywerd**. See **Wende**; **Were**, *v.*<sup>2</sup>
- Ywyte**, *pres. subj. pl.* understand, III *introd.* [OE. *ge- + witan*.] See **Wite(n)**.
- Ywon**, *adj.* accustomed, II 317. [OE. *ge-wuna*.]
- Ywon**, *pp.* See **Wynne(n)**.
- Ywoned**, *pp.* accustomed, III 55, XIII b 37. [OE. *ge-wunian*.]
- Yworth**, **Aworthe**, *v.* to be, go on as before, in *late God yworth*, *late þow G. aworthe*, meddle not with God, it is God's affair, VIII a 76, 220. [OE. *ge-weorþan*.] See **Worþe**, *v.*
- Y-yeue**; **Y-yolde**. See **3ene**; **3elke(n)**.
- Yzede**; **Yze3**; **Ysent**. See **Scie**; **Y-se**; **Sende**.
- Zayde**, **Zayþ**, **Zede**, **Zigge**. See **Sei(e)**.
- Zelue**, **Zeluor**, **Zen**, **Zente**, **Zome**, **Zuo**. See **Self**, **Seluer**, **Syn(e)**, **Sende**, **Som(e)**, **Swa**.





# I

## ROBERT MANNYNG OF BRUNNE'S HANDLYNG SYNNE

A.D. 1303

What is known of Robert Mannyng of Brunne is derived from his own works. In the Prologue to *Handlyng Synne* he writes :

To alle Crystyn men vndir sunne,  
And to gode men of Brunne,  
And speciali, alle be name,  
Þe felaushepe of Symprynghame,  
Robert of Brunne greteþ þow  
In al godenesse þat may to prow ;  
Of Brunne wake yn Kesteuene,  
Syxe myle besyde Sympryngham euene,  
Y dwelled yn þe pryorye  
Fyftene þere yn cumpanye. . . .

And in the Introduction to his *Chronicle* :

Of Brunne I am ; if any me blame,  
Robert Mannyng is my name ;  
Blissed be he of God of heuene  
Þat me Robert with gude wille neuene !  
In þe third Edwardes tyme was I,  
When I wrote alle þis story,  
In þe hous of Sixille I was a throwe ;  
Danþ Robert of Malton, þat þe know,  
Did it wryte for felawes sake  
When þai wild solace make.

From these passages it appears that he was born in Brunne, the modern Bourn, in Lincolnshire ; and that he belonged to the Gilbertine Order. Sempringham was the head-quarters of the Order, and the dependent priory of Sixhill was near by. It has been suggested, without much evidence, that he was a lay brother, and not a full canon.

## 2 I. ROBERT MANNYNG OF BRUNNE

His *Chronicle of England* was completed in 1338. It falls into two parts, distinguished by a change of metre and source. The first, edited by Furnivall in the Rolls Series (2 vols. 1887), extends from the Flood to A.D. 689, and is based on Wace's *Brut*, the French source of Layamon's *Brut*. The second part, edited by Hearne, 2 vols., Oxford 1725, extends from A.D. 689 to the death of Edward I, and is based on the French *Chronicle* of a contemporary, who is sometimes called Pierre de Langtoft, sometimes Piers of Bridlington, because he was a native of Langtoft in Yorkshire, and a canon of the Austin priory at Bridlington in the same county. Mannyng's *Chronicle* has no great historical value, and its chief literary interest lies in the references to current traditions and popular stories.

*Handlyng Synne* is a much more valuable work. It was begun in 1303:

Dane Felyp was mayster þat tyme  
 þat y began þys Englyssh ryme ;  
 þe 3eres of grace fyl þan to be  
 A þousynd and þre hundred and þre.  
 In þat tyme turnede y þys  
 On Englyssh tunge out of Frankys  
 Of a boke as y fonde ynne,  
 Men clepyn þe boke 'Handlyng Synne'.

The source was again a French work written by a contemporary Northerner—William of Wadington's *Manuel de Pechiez*. The popularity of such treatises on the Sins may be judged from the number of works modelled upon them: e.g. the *Ayenbyte of Inuuyt*, Gower's *Confessio Amantis*, and Chaucer's *Parson's Tale*. Their purpose was, as Robert explains, to enable a reader to examine his conscience systematically and constantly, and so to guard himself against vice.

Two complete MSS. of *Handlyng Synne* are known: British Museum MS. Harley 1701 (about 1350–75), and MS. Bodley 415, of a slightly later date. An important fragment is in the library of Dulwich College. The whole text, with the French source, has been edited by Furnivall for the Roxburghe Club, and later for the Early English Text Society. It treats, with the usual wealth of classification, of the Commandments, the Sins, the Sacraments, the Requisites and Graces of Shrift. But such



a bald summary gives no idea of the richness and variety of its content. For Mannyng, anticipating Gower, saw the opportunities that the illustrative stories offered to his special gifts, and spared no pains in their telling. A few examples are added from his own knowledge. More often he expands Wadington's outlines, as in the tale of the Dancers of Colbek. Here the French source is brief and colourless. But the English translator had found a fuller Latin version—clearly the same as that printed from Bodleian MS. Rawlinson C 938 in the preface to Furnivall's Roxburghe Club edition—and from it he produced the well-rounded and lively rendering given below.

Robert knew that a work designed to turn 'lewde men' from the ale-house to the contemplation of their sins must grip their attention; and in the art of linking good teaching with entertainment he is a master. He has the gift of conveying to his audience his own enjoyment of a good story. His loose-knit conversational style would stand the test of reading aloud to simple folk, and he allows no literary affectations, no forced metres or verbiage, to darken his meaning :

Haf I alle in myn Inglis layd  
 In symple speche as I couthe,  
 Dat is lightest in mannes mouthe.  
 I mad noght for no disours,  
 Ne for no seggers, no harpours,  
 But for þe luf of symple men  
 Dat strange Inglis can not ken;  
 For many it ere þat strange Inglis  
 In ryme wate neuer what it is,  
 And bot þai wist what it mente,  
 Ellis me thoght it were alle schente.  
 (*Chronicle*, ll. 73 ff.)

The simple form reflects the writer's frankness and directness. He points a moral fearlessly, but without harshness or self-righteousness. And the range of his sympathies and interests makes *Handlyng Synne* the best picture of English life before Langland and Chaucer.

## THE DANCERS OF COLBEK

MS. Harley 1701 (about A.D. 1375); ed. Furnivall, ll. 8987 ff.

KAROLLES, wrastlynges, or somour games, 1  
 Whoso euer haunteþ any swyche shames  
 Yn cherche, oþer yn chercheþerd,  
 Of sacrylage he may be aferd ;  
 Or entyrludes, or syngynge, 5  
 Or tabure bete, or oþer pypyng—  
 Alle swyche þyng forbodyn es  
 Whyle þe prest stondeþ at messe.  
 Alle swyche to euery gode preste ys lothe,  
 And sunner wyl he make hym wroth 10  
 Ðan he wyl, þat haþ no wyt,  
 Ne vndyrstondeþ nat Holy Wryt.  
 And specyaly at hygh tymes  
 Karolles to synge and rede rymys  
 Noght yn none holy stedes, 15  
 Ðat myȝt dysturble þe prestes bedes,  
 Or ȝyf he were yn orysun  
 Or any ouþer deuocyun :  
 Sacrylage ys alle hyt tolde,  
 Þys and many oþer folde. 20  
 But for to leue yn cherche for to daunce,  
 Y shal ȝow telle a ful grete chaunce,  
 And y trow þe most þat fel  
 Ys soþe as y ȝow telle ;  
 And fyl þys chaunce yn þys londe, 25  
 Yn Ingland, as y vndyrstonde,  
 Yn a kynges tyme þat hyght Edward  
 Fyl þys chau(n)ce þat was so hard.

21 for (2nd) om. MS. Bodley 415. 24 Ys as soþ as þe gospel MS. Bodley.

Hyt was vppon a Crystemesse nyzt  
 þat twelue folys a karolle dyzt, 30  
 Yn wodehed, as hyt were yn cuntek,  
 þey come to a tounne men calle Colbek.  
 þe cherche of þe tounne þat þey to come  
 Ys of Seynt Magne, þat suffred martyrdome ;  
 Of Seynt Bukcestre hyt ys also, 35  
 Seynt Magnes suster, þat þey come to.  
 Here names of alle þus fonde y wryte,  
 And as y wote now shul 3e wyte :  
 Here lodesman, þat made hem glew,  
 þus ys wryte, he hyzte Gerlew. 40  
 Twey maydens were yn here coueyne,  
 Mayden Merswynde and Wybessyne.  
 Alle þese come þedyr for þat enchesone  
 Of þe prestes doghtyr of þe tounne.  
 þe prest hyzt Robert, as y kan ame ; 45  
 A3one hyght hys sone by name ;  
 Hys doghter, þat þese men wulde haue,  
 þus ys wryte, þat she hyzt Aue.  
 Echoune consented to o wyl  
 Who shuld go Aue oute to tyl, 50  
 þey graunted echone out to sende  
 Boþe Wybessyne and Merswynde.  
 þese wommen 3ede and tolled here oute  
 Wyþ hem to karolle þe cherche aboute.  
 Beu(u)ne ordeyned here karollyng ; 55  
 Gerlew endyted what þey shuld syng.  
 þys ys þe karolle þat þey sunge,  
 As telleþ þe Latyn tunge :  
 ‘ *Equitabat Beuo per siluam frondosam,*  
*Ducebat secum Merswyndam formosam.* 60  
*Quid stamus ? cur non imus ?*

‘ By þe leued wode rode Beuolyne,

Wyþ hym he ledde feyre Merswyne.  
 Why stonde we? why go we noght?'  
 þys ys þe karolle þat Grysly wroght; 65  
 þys songe sunge þey yn þe chercheþerd—  
 Of foly were þey no þyng aferd—  
 Vnto þe matynes were alle done,  
 And þe messe shuld bygynne sone.  
 Þe preste hym reuest to begynne messe, 70  
 And þey ne left þerfore neuer þe lesse,  
 But daunsed furþe as þey bygan,  
 For alle þe messe þey ne blan.  
 Þe preste, þat stode at þe autere,  
 And herd here noyse and here bere, 75  
 Fro þe auter down he nam,  
 And to þe cherche porche he cam,  
 And seyð 'On Goddes behalue, y þow forbede  
 þat ȝe no lenger do swych dede,  
 But comeþ yn on feyre manere 80  
 Goddes seruyse for to here,  
 And doþ at Crystyn mennys lawe;  
 Karolleþ no more, for Crystys awe!  
 Wurschyppeþ Hym with alle þoure myȝt  
 þat of þe Vyrgyne was bore þys nyȝt.' 85  
 For alle hys byddyng lefte þey noȝt,  
 But daunsed furþ, as þey þoȝt.  
 Þe preste þarefor was sore agreued;  
 He preyð God þæt he on beleuyð,  
 And for Seynt Magne, þat he wulde so werche— 90  
 Yn whos wurschyp sette was þe cherche—  
 þat swych a veniaunce were on hem sent,  
 Are þey oute of þat stede were went,  
 þat <þey> myȝt euer ryȝt so wende

Vnto þat tyme tweluemonth ende; 95  
 (Yn þe Latyne þat y fonde þore  
 He seyþ nat 'tweluemonth' but 'euermore';)  
 He cursed hem þere alsaume  
 As þey karoled on here gaume.

As sone as þe preste hadde so spoke 100  
 Euery hand yn ouþer so fast was loke  
 Þat no man myȝt with no wundyr  
 Þat tweluemo(n)þe parte hem asundyr.

Þe preste ȝede yn, whan þys was done,  
 And commaunded hys sone Aȝone 105  
 Þat (he) shulde go swyþe aftyr Aue,  
 Oute of þat karolle algate to haue.  
 But al to late þat wurde was seyð,  
 For on hem alle was þe veniaunce leyð.

Aȝone wende weyl for to spede; 110  
 Vnto þe karolle as swyþe he ȝede,  
 Hys systyr by þe arme he hente,  
 And þe arme fro þe body wente.  
 Men wundred alle þat þere wore,  
 And merueyle mowe ȝe here more, 115  
 For, seþen he had þe arme yn hand,  
 Þe body ȝede surþ karoland,  
 And noþer (þe) body ne þe arme  
 Bledde neuer blode, colde ne warme,  
 But was as drye, with al þe haunche, 120  
 As of a stok were ryue a braunche.

Aȝone to hys fadyr went,  
 And broght hym a sory present:  
 'Loke, fadyr,' he seyð, 'and haue hyt here,  
 Þe arme of þy doghtyr dere, 125  
 Þat was myn owne systyr Aue,  
 Þat y wende y myȝt a saue.

Þy cursyng now sene hyt ys  
 Wyth veniaunce on þy owne flesssh.  
 Fellyche þou cursedest, and ouer sone ; 130  
 Þou askedest veniaunce,—þou hast þy bone.'

3ow þar nat aske 3yf þere was wo  
 Wyth þe preste, and wyth many mo.  
 Þe prest, þat cursed for þat daunce,  
 On some of hys fyl harde chaunce. 135

He toke hys doghtyr arme forlorn  
 And byryed hyt on þe morn ;  
 Þe nexte day þe arme of Aue  
 He fonde hyt lyggyng aboute þe graue.  
 He byryed (hyt) on anouþer day, 140  
 And eft aboute þe graue hyt lay.

Þe þrydde tyme he byryed hyt,  
 And eft was hyt kast oute of þe pyt.  
 Þe prest wulde byrye hyt no more,  
 He dredde þe veniaunce ferly sore ; 145  
 Ynto þe cherche he bare þe arme,  
 For drede and doute of more harme,  
 He ordeyned hyt for to be  
 Þat euery man myzt wyth ye hyt se.

Þese men þat 3ede so karolland, 150  
 Alle þat 3ere, hand yn hand,  
 Þey neuer oute of þat stede 3ede,  
 Ne none myzt hem þenne lede.

Þere þe cursyng fyrst bygan,  
 Yn þat place aboute þey ran, 155  
 Þat neuer ne felte þey no werynes  
 As many þbodies for goyng dost,  
 Ne mete ete, ne drank drynke,  
 Ne slepte onely alepy wynke.

136-7 forlorū . . . morū *MS.* 140 hyt] *so MS. Boaley: om. MS Harley.*

Nyzt ne day þey wyst of none, 160  
 Whan hyt was come, whan hyt was gone;  
 Frost ne snogh, hayle ne reyne,  
 Of colde ne hete, felte þey no peyne;  
 Heere ne nayles neuer grewe,  
 Ne solowed cloþes, ne turned hewe; 165  
 Þundyr ne lyztynyng dyd hem no dere,  
 Goddys mercy ded hyt fro hem were;—  
 But sungge þat songge þat þe wo wrozt:  
 ‘Why stonde we? why go we nozt?’

What man shuld þyr be yn þys lyue 170  
 þat ne wulde hyt see and þedyr dryue?  
 Þe Emperoure Henry come fro Rome  
 For to see þys hard dome.  
 Whan he hem say, he wepte sore  
 For þe myschefe þat he sagh þore. 175  
 He ded come wryztes for to make  
 Coueryng ouer hem, for tempest sake.  
 But þat þey wroght hyt was yn veyn,  
 For hyt come to no certeyn,  
 For þat þey sette on oo day 180  
 On þe touþer downe hyt lay.  
 Ones, twyys, þryys, þus þey wrozt,  
 And alle here makying was for nozt.  
 Myght no coueryng hyle hem fro colde  
 Tyl tyme of mercy þat Cryst hyt wolde. 185

Tyme of grace fyl þurgh Hys myzt  
 At þe tweluemonth ende, on þe 3ole nyzt.  
 Þe same oure þat þe prest hem banned,  
 Þe same oure atwynne þey twned†;  
 þat houre þat he cursed hem ynne, 190  
 Þe same oure þey 3ede atwynne,  
 And as yn twynkelyng of an ye

Ynto þe cherche gun þey flye,  
 And on þe pauement þey fyl alle downe  
 As þey had be dede, or fal yn a swone. 195

Þre days styl þey lay echone,  
 Þat none steryd oper flesshe or bone,  
 And at þe þre days ende  
 To lyfe God graunted hem to wende.  
 Þey sette hem vpp and spak apert 200  
 To þe parysshe prest, syre Robert :  
 'Þou art ensample and enchesun  
 Of oure long confusyun ;  
 Þou maker art of oure trauayle,  
 Þat ys to many grete meruayle, 205  
 And þy traueyle shalt þou sone ende,  
 For to þy long home sone shalt þou wende.'

Alle þey ryse þat yche tyde  
 But Aue,—she lay dede besyde.  
 Grete sorowe had here fadyr, here broþer ; 210  
 Merueyle and drede had alle ouþer ;  
 Y trow no drede of soule dede,  
 But with pyne was broght þe body dede.  
 Þe fyrst man was þe fadyr, þe prest,  
 Þat deyð aftyr þe doȝtyr nest. 215  
 Þys yche arme þat was of Aue,  
 Þat none myȝt leye yn graue,  
 Þe Emperoure dyd a vessel werche  
 To do hyt yn, and hange yn þe cherche,  
 Þat alle men myȝt se hyt and knawe, 220  
 And þenk on þe chaunce when men hyt sawe.

Þese men þat hadde go þus karolland  
 Alle þe ȝere, fast hand yn hand,  
 Þogh þat þey were þan asunder  
 ȝyt alle þe worlde spake of hem wunder. 225



Dat same hoppyng þat þey fyrst ȝede,  
 Þat daunce ȝede þey þurgh land and lede,  
 And, as þey ne myȝt fyrst be vnbounde,  
 So este togedyr myȝt þey neuer be founde,  
 Ne myȝt þey neuer come aȝeyn 230  
 Togedyr to oo stede certeyn.

Foure ȝede to þe courte of Rome,  
 And euer hoppyng aboute þey nome,  
 †Wyth sundyr lepyst† come þey þedyr,  
 But þey come neuer este togedyr. 235  
 Here cloþes ne roted, ne nayles grewe,  
 Ne heere ne wax, ne solowed hewe,  
 Ne neuer hadde þey amendement,  
 Þat we herde, at any corseynt,  
 But at þe vyrgyne Seynt Edyght, 240  
 Þere was he botened, Seynt Teodryght,  
 On oure Lady day, yn lenten tyde,  
 As he slepte here toumbe besyde.  
 Þere he had hys medycyne  
 At Seynt Edyght, þe holy vyrgyne. 245

Brunyng þe bysshope of seynt Tolous  
 Wrote þys tale so merueylous;  
 Sepþe was hys name of more renoun,  
 Men called hym þe pope Leoun.  
 Þys at þe court of Rome þey wyte, 250  
 And yn þe kronykeles hyt ys wryte  
 Yn many stedys bezounde þe see,  
 More þan ys yn þys cuntré.  
 Þarfor men seye, an weyl ys trowed,  
 ‘Þe nere þe cherche, þe fyrþer fro God’. 255  
 So fare men here by þys tale,  
 Some holde hyt but a troteuale,

227 ȝede] wente *MS. Bodley.*  
 neuer togedyr *MS. Bodley.*

229 togedyr . . . neuer] myȝt þey  
 241 Seynt *om. MS. Bodley.*

Yn oþer stedys hyt ys ful dere  
And for grete merueyle þey wyl hyt here.  
A tale hyt ys of feyre shewyng, 260  
Ensamble and drede aȝens cursyng.  
Þys tale y tolde ȝow to <make> ȝow aferde  
Yn cherche to karolle, or yn chercheȝerde,  
Namely aȝens þe prestys wylle :  
Leueþ whan he byddeþ ȝow be styлле. 265

## II

### SIR ORFEO

*Sir Orfeo* is found in three MSS.: (1) the Auchinleck MS. (1325-1350), a famous Middle English miscellany now in the Advocates' Library, Edinburgh; (2) British Museum MS. Harley 3810 (fifteenth century); (3) Bodleian MS. Ashmole 61 (fifteenth century). Our text follows the Auchinleck MS., with ll. 1-24 and ll. 33-46 supplied from the Harleian MS. A. J. Bliss, *Sir Orfeo*, Oxford 1954, prints all the texts.

The story appears to have been translated from a French source into South-Western English at the beginning of the fourteenth century. It belongs to a group of 'lays' which claim to derive from Brittany, e.g. *Lai le Freine*, which has the same opening lines (1-22); *Emaré*; and Chaucer's *Franklin's Tale*.

The story of Orpheus and Eurydice was known to the Middle Ages chiefly from Ovid (*Metamorphoses* x) and from Virgil (*Georgics* iv). King Alfred's rendering of it in his *Boethius* is one of his best prose passages, despite the crude moralizing which makes Orpheus's backward glance at Eurydice before she is safe from Hades a symbol of the backslider's longing for his old sins. The Middle English poet has a lighter and daintier touch. The Greek myth is almost lost in a tale of fairyland, the earliest English romance of the kind; and to provide the appropriate happy ending, Sir Orfeo is made successful in his attempt to rescue Heurodis. The adaptation of the classical subject to a mediaeval setting is thorough. An amusing instance is the attempt in the Auchinleck MS. to give the poem an English interest by the unconvincing assurance that *Traciens* (which from 'Thracian' had come to mean 'Thrace') was the old name of Winchester (ll. 49-50). Probably we have in this MS. a copy of the rendering given by some minstrel at Winchester.

(W~~e~~ redyn ofte and fynde ywryte,  
 As clerkes don us to wyte,  
 The layes that ben of harpyng  
 Ben yfounde of frely thing.  
 Sum ben of wele, and sum of wo, 5  
 And sum of ioy and merthe also ;  
 Sum of trechery, and sum of gyle,  
 And sum of happes þat fallen by whyle ;  
 Sum of bourdys, and sum of rybaudry,  
 And sum þer ben of the feyré. 10  
 Of alle þing þat men may se,  
 Moost o loue forsoþe þey be.  
 In Brytayn þis layes arne ywryte,  
 Furst yfounde and forþe ygete,  
 Of adventures þat fillen by dayes, 15  
 Wherof Brytouns made her layes.  
 When þey myght owher heryn  
 Of adventures þat þer weryn,  
 Þey toke her harpys wiþ game,  
 Maden layes and ȝaf it name. 20  
 Of adventures þat han befallē  
 Y can sum telle, but nouȝt all.  
 Herken, lordyngys þat ben trewe,  
 And y wol ȝou telle of Sir Orphewe.)  
 Orfeo was a king, 25  
 In Ingland an heiȝe lording,  
 A stalworþ man and hardi bo,  
 Large and curteys he was also.  
 His fader was comen of King Pluto,  
 And his moder of King Iuno, 30  
 Þat sum time were as godes yhold,  
 For auentours þat þai dede and told.

ll. 1-24 from *Harl. 3810*: *em. MS.*      ll. 7-8 follow ll. 9-10 in  
*Harl.* 13 o loue] to lowe *Harl.* 26 In Ingland] And in his tyme *Harl.*

<Orpheo most of ony þing  
 Louede þe gle of harpyng;  
 Syker was euery gode harpoure  
 Of hym to haue moche honoure.  
 Hymself loued for to harpe,  
 And layde þeron his wittes scharpe.  
 He lernyd so, þer noþing was  
 A better harper in no plas;  
 In þe world was neuer man born  
 þat ones Orpheo sat byforn,  
 And he myȝt of his harpyng here,  
 He schulde pinke þat he were  
 In one of þe ioyes of Paradys,  
 Suche ioy and melody in his harpyng is.)  
 Þis king soiournd in Traciens,  
 þat was a cité of noble defens;  
 For Winchester was cleped þo  
 Traciens wipouten no.  
 Þe king hadde a quen of priis,  
 þat was ycleped Dame Herodis,  
 Þe fairest leuedi, for þe nones,  
 þat miȝt gon on bodi and bones,  
 Ful of loue and of godenisse;  
 Ac no man may telle hir fairnise.  
 Bifel so in þe comessing of May,  
 When miri and hot is þe day,  
 And oway beþ winter-schours,  
 And eueri feld is ful of flours,  
 And blosme breme on eueri bouȝ  
 Oueral wexeþ miri anouȝ,  
 Þis ich quen, Dame Heurodis,  
 Tok to maidens of priis,

33-46 from *Harl. 3810*: om. *MS.*49-50 om. *Harl.*, *Ashm.*51 þe king] He *Harl.*: And *Ashm.*

And went in an vndrentide 65  
 To play bi an orchard side,  
 To se þe floures sprede and spring.  
 And to here þe foules sing.

þai sett hem down al þre  
 Vnder a fair ympe-tre, 70  
 And wel sone þis fair quene  
 Fel on slepe opon þe grene.

þe maidens durst hir nouzt awake,  
 Bot lete hir ligge and rest take.  
 So sche slepe til afternone, 75  
 þat vndertide was al ydone.

Ac as sone as sche gan awake,  
 Sche crid and loþli bere gan make,  
 Sche froted hir honden and hir fet,  
 And crached hir visage, it bled wete ; 80

Hir riche robe hye al torett,  
 And was reuey(se)d out of hir witt.  
 þe two maidens hir biside

No durst wiþ hir no leng abide,  
 Bot ourn to þe palays ful riȝt, 85

And told boþe squier and kniȝt  
 þat her quen awede wold,  
 And bad hem go and hir athold.

Kniȝtes vrn, and leuedis also,  
 Damisels sexti and mo, 90

In þe orchard to þe quen hye come,  
 And her vp in her armes nome,  
 And brouȝt hir to bed atte last,  
 And held hir þere fine fast ;

Ac euer sche held in o cri, 95  
 And wold vp and owy.

When Orfeo herd þat tiding,

Neuer him nas wers for no þing.  
 He come wiþ kniztes tene  
 To chaumber riȝt bifor þe quene, 100  
 And biheld, and seyð wiþ grete pité:  
 'O lef liif, what is te,  
 Þat euer ȝete hast ben so stille,  
 And now gredest wonder schille?  
 Þi bodi, þat was so white ycore, 105  
 Wiþ þine nailes is al totore.  
 Allas! þi rode, þat was so red,  
 Is al wan as þou were ded;  
 And also þine fingres smale  
 Beþ al blodi and al pale. 110  
 Allas! þi louesom eyȝen to  
 Lokeþ so man doþ on his fo.  
 A! dame, ich biseche merci.  
 Lete ben al þis reweful cri,  
 And tel me what þe is, and hou, 115  
 And what þing may þe help now.'  
 Þo lay sche stille atte last,  
 And gan to wepe swiþe fast,  
 And seyð þus þe king to:  
 'Allas! mi lord, Sir Orfeo, 120  
 Seppen we first togider were,  
 Ones wroþ neuer we nere,  
 Bot euer ich haue yloued þe  
 As mi liif, and so þou me.  
 Ac now we mot delen ato; 125  
 Do þi best, for y mot go.'  
 'Allas!' quap he, 'forlorn icham.  
 Whider wiltow go, and to wham?  
 Whider þou gost, ichil wiþ þe,  
 And whider y go, þou schalt wiþ me.' 130  
 'Nay, nay, sir, þat nouȝt nis;

Ichil þe telle al hou it is :  
 As ich lay þis vndertide,  
 And slepe vnder our orchard-side,  
 Þer come to me to fair kniztes 135  
 Wele y-armed al to riztes,  
 And bad me comen an heizing,  
 And speke wiþ her lord þe king.  
 And ich answerd at wordes bold,  
 Y n(o) durst nouzt, no y nold. 140  
 Þai priked ozain as þai mizt driue ;  
 Þo com her king also bliue,  
 Wiþ an hundred kniztes and mo,  
 And damisels an hundred also,  
 Al on snowe-white stedes ; 145  
 As white as milke were her wedes :  
 Y no seiþe neuer ȝete bifore  
 So fair creatours ycore.  
 Þe king hadde a croun on hed,  
 It nas of siluer, no of gold red, 150  
 Ac it was of a precious ston,  
 As briȝt as þe sonne it schon.  
 And as son as he to me cam,  
 Wold ich, nold ich, he me nam,  
 And made me wiþ him ride 155  
 Opon a palfray, bi his side,  
 And brouȝt me to his palays,  
 Wele atird in ich ways,  
 And schewed me castels and tours,  
 Riuers, forestes, friþ wiþ flours, 160  
 And his riche stedes ichon ;  
 And seþþen me brouȝt ozain hom  
 Into our owhen orchard,  
 And said to me þus afterward :  
 "Loke, dame, to-morwe þatow be 165



Riȝt here vnder þis ympe-tre,  
 And þan þou schalt wiþ ous go,  
 And liue wiþ ous euermo ;  
 And ȝif þou makest ous ylet,  
 Whar þou be, þou worst yfet, 170  
 And totore þine limes al,  
 þat noþing help þe no schal ;  
 And þei þou best so totorn,  
 ȝete þou worst wiþ ous yborn.”’

When King Orfeo herd þis cas, 175  
 ‘O we !’ quap he, ‘allas, alas !  
 Leuer me were to lete mi liif,  
 þan þus to lese þe quen mi wiif !’  
 He asked conseyl at ich man,  
 Ac no man him help no can. 180

Amorwe þe vndertide is come,  
 And Orfeo haþ his armes ynome,  
 And wele ten hundred kniȝtes wiþ him  
 Ich y-armed stout and grim ;  
 And wiþ þe quen wenten he 185  
 Riȝt vnto þat ympe-tre.  
 þai made scheltrom in ich a side,  
 And sayd þai wold þere abide,  
 And dye þer euerichon,  
 Er þe quen schuld fram hem gon. 190  
 Ac ȝete amiddes hem ful riȝt  
 þe quen was oway ytuȝt,  
 Wiþ fairi forþ ynome ;

Men wist neuer wher sche was bcome. 195  
 þo was þer criing, wepe and wo.  
 þe king into his chaumber is go,  
 And oft swoned opon þe ston,  
 And made swiche diol and swiche mon  
 þat neiȝe his liif was yspent :

Þer was non amendement. 200  
 He cleped togider his barouns,  
 Erls, lordes of renouns;  
 And when þai al ycomen were,  
 ‘Lordinges,’ he said, ‘bifor ȝou here  
 Ich ordainy min heiȝe steward 205  
 To wite mi kingdom afterward;  
 In mi stede ben he schal,  
 To kepe mi londes ouer al.  
 For, now ichaue mi quen ylore,  
 Þe fairest leuedi þat euer was bore, 210  
 Neuer eft y nil no woman se.  
 Into wildernes ichil te,  
 And liue þer euermore  
 Wiþ wilde bestes in holtes hore.  
 And when ȝe vnderstond þat y be spent, 215  
 Make ȝou þan a parlement,  
 And chese ȝou a newe king.  
 Now doþ ȝour best wiþ al mi þing.’  
 Þo was þer wepeing in þe halle,  
 And grete cri among hem alle; 220  
 Vnneþe miȝt old or ȝong  
 For wepeing speke a word wiþ tong.  
 Þai kneled adoun al yfere,  
 And praid him, ȝif his wille were,  
 Þat he no schuld nouȝt fram hem go. 225  
 ‘Do way!’ quap he, ‘it schal be so.’  
 Al his kingdom he forsoke;  
 Bot a sclauin on him he toke;  
 He no hadde kirtel no hode,  
 Schert, (no) no noþer gode. 230  
 Bot his harp he tok algate,  
 And dede him barfot out atte ȝate;

No man most wiþ him go.

O way ! what þer was wepe and wo,  
When he, þat hadde ben king wiþ croun, 235  
Went so pouerlich out of toun !

Þurch wode and ouer heþ  
Into þe wildernes he geþ.  
Noþing he fint þat him is ays,  
Bot euer he liueþ in gret malais. 240

He þat hadde ywerd þe fowe and griis,  
And on bed þe purper biis,  
Now on hard heþe he liþ,  
Wiþ leues and gresse he him wriþ.  
He þat hadde had castels and tours, 245

Riuer, forest, friþ wiþ flours,  
Now, þei it comenci to snewe and frese,  
Þis king mot make his bed in mese.  
He þat had yhad kniztes of priis  
Bifor him kneland, and leuedis, 250  
Now seþ he noþing þat him likeþ,  
Bot wilde wormes bi him strikeþ.

He þat had yhad plenté  
Of mete and drink, of ich deynté,  
Now may he al day digge and wrote 255  
Er he finde his fille of rote.

In somer he liueþ bi wild frut  
And berien bot gode lite ;  
In winter may he noþing finde  
Bot rote, grases, and þe rinde. 260

Al his bodi was oway duine  
For missays, and al tochine.  
Lord ! who may telle þe sore  
Þis king sufferd ten ȝere and more ?  
His here of his berd, blac and rowe, 265  
To his girdelstede was growe.

His harp, whereon was al his gle,  
 He hidde in an holwe tre ;  
 And, when þe weder was clere and briȝt,  
 He toke his harp to him wel riȝt, 270  
 And harped at his owen wille.  
 Into alle þe wode þe soun gan schille,  
 Þat alle þe wilde bestes þat þer beþ  
 For ioie abouten him þai teþ ;  
 And alle þe foules þat þer were 275  
 Come and sete on ich a brere,  
 To here his harping afine,  
 So miche melody was þerin ;  
 And when he his harping lete wold,  
 No best bi him abide nold. 280  
 He miȝt se him bisides  
 Oft in hot vndertides  
 Þe king o fairy wiþ his rout  
 Com to hunt him al about,  
 Wiþ dim cri and bloweing ; 285  
 And houndes also wiþ him berking ;  
 Ac no best þai no nome,  
 No neuer he nist whider þai bicomē.  
 And oþer while he miȝt him se  
 As a gret ost bi him te 290  
 Wele atourned ten hundred kniȝtes,  
 Ich y-armed to his riȝtes,  
 Of cuntenaunce stout and fers,  
 Wiþ mani desplaid baners,  
 And ich his swerd ydrawe hold, 295  
 Ac neuer he nist whider þai wold.  
 And oþer while he seiȝe oþer þing :  
 Kniȝtes and leuedis com daunceing  
 In queynt atire, giscely,  
 Queynt pas and softly ; 300

Tabours and trunpes ȝede hem bi,  
And al maner menstraci.

And on a day he seiȝe him biside  
Sexti leuedis on hors ride,

Gentil and iolif as brid on ris,— 305

Nouȝt o man amonges hem ȝer nis.

And ich a faucoun on hond bere,

And riden on haukin bi o riwere.

Of game ȝai founde wel gode haunt,

Maulardes, hayroun, and cormeraunt; 310

ȝe foules of ȝe water ariseȝ,

ȝe faucouns hem wele deuseȝ;

Ich faucoun his pray slouȝ.

ȝat seiȝe Orfeo, and louȝ:

'Parfay!' quap he, 'ȝer is fair game, 315

ȝider ichil, bi Godes name!

Ich was ywon swiche werk to se.'

He aros, and ȝider gan te.

To a leuedi he was ycome,

Biheld, and haȝ wele vndernome, 320

And seȝ bi al ȝing ȝat it is

His owen quen, Dam Heurodis.

ȝern he biheld hir, and sche him eke,

Ac noiȝer to oȝer a word no speke.

For messais ȝat sche on him seiȝe, 325

ȝat had ben so riche and so heiȝe,

ȝe teres fel out of her eiȝe.

ȝe oȝer leuedis ȝis yseiȝe,

And maked hir oway to ride,

Sche most wiȝ him no lenger abide. 330

'Allas!' quap he, 'now me is wo.

Whi nil deȝ now me slo?

Allas! wreche, ȝat y no miȝt

333 wreche] wroche MS.

Dye now after þis sizt!  
 Allas! to long last mi liif, 335  
 When y no dar nougt wiþ mi wiif,  
 No hye to me, o word speke.  
 Allas! whi nil min hert breke?  
 Parfay! ' quap he, ' tide wat bitide,  
 Whider so þis leuedis ride, 340  
 þe selue way ichil streche;  
 Of liif no dep̄ me no reche.'

His sclauain he dede on also spac,  
 And henge his harp opon his bac,  
 And had wel gode wil to gon,— 345  
 He no spard noþer stub no ston.  
 In at a roche þe leuedis rideþ,  
 And he after, and nougt abideþ.

When he was in þe roche ygo  
 Wele þre mile oþer mo, 350  
 He com into a fair cuntray,  
 As bryȝt so sonne on somers day,  
 Smoþe and plain and al grene,  
 Hille no dale nas þer non ysene.  
 Amidde þe lond a castel he siȝe, 355  
 Riche and real, and wonder heiȝe.  
 Al þe vtmast wal  
 Was clere and schine as cristal;  
 An hundred tours þer were about,  
 Degiselich, and bataild stout; 360  
 þe butras com out of þe diche,  
 Of rede gold y-arched riche;  
 þe vousour was anow(rn)ed al  
 Of ich maner diuers aumal.  
 Wiþin þer wer wide wones 365  
 Al of precious stones.  
 þe werst piler on to biholde

Was al of burnist gold.

Al þat lond was euer list,

For when it schuld be þerk and nist,

370

þe riche stones list gonne,

As briȝt as doȝ at none þe sonne.

No man may telle, no þenche in þouȝt,

þe riche werk þat þer was wrouȝt;

Bi al þing him þink þat it is

375

þe proude court of Paradis.

In þis castel þe leuedis alist;

He wold in after, ȝif he miȝt.

Orfeo knokkeȝ atte gate,

þe porter was redi þerate,

380

And asked what he wold haue ydo.

‘Parfay!’ quap he, ‘icham a minstrel, lo!’

To solas þi lord wiȝ mi gle,

ȝif his swete wille be.’

þe porter vndede þe ȝate anon,

385

And lete him into þe castel gon.

þan he gan bihold about al,

And seiȝe ȝfulȝ liggeand wiȝin þe wal

Of folk þat were þider ybrouȝt,

And þouȝt dede, and nare nouȝt.

390

Sum stode wiȝouten hade,

And sum non armes nade,

And sum þurch þe bodi hadde wounde,

And sum lay wode, ybounde,

And sum armed on hors sete,

395

And sum astrangled as þai ete,

And sum were in water adreynt,

And sum wiȝ fire al forschreynt;

Wiues þer lay on childbedde,

Sum ded, and sum awedde;

400

And wonder fele þer lay bisides.

Riȝt as þai slepe her vnder tides.  
 Eche was þus in þis warld ynome,  
 Wiþ fairi þider ycome.  
 Þer he seiȝe his owen wiif, 405  
 Dame Heurodis, his lēf liif,  
 Slepe vnder an ympe-tre :  
 Bi her cloþes he knewe þat it was he.

And when he hadde bihold þis meruails alle,  
 He went into þe kinges halle. 410  
 Þan seiȝe he þer a semly siȝt,  
 A tabernacle blisseful and briȝt,  
 Þerin her maister king sete,  
 And her quen fair and swete.  
 Her crounes, her cloþes, schine so briȝt, 415  
 Þat vnneþe bihold he hem miȝt.

When he hadde biholden al þat þing,  
 He kneled adoun bifor þe king.  
 'O lord,' he seyð, 'ȝif it þi wille were,  
 Mi menstraci þou schust yhere.' 420  
 Þe king answerd : 'What man artow,  
 Þat art hider ycomen now ?  
 Ich, no non þat is wiþ me,  
 No sent neuer after þe ;  
 Seþþen þat ich here regni gan, 425  
 Y no fond neuer so folehardi man  
 Þat hider to ous durst wende,  
 Bot þat ichim wald ofsende.'  
 'Lord,' quap he, 'trowe ful wel,  
 Y nam bot a pouer menstrel ; 430  
 And, sir, it is þe maner of ous  
 To seche mani a lordes hous ;  
 Þei we nouȝt welcom no be,  
 ȝete we mot proferi forþ our gle.'



Bifor þe king he sat adoun, 435  
 And tok his harp so miri of soun,  
 And tempref his harp, as he wele can,  
 And blisseful notes he þer gan,  
 Þat al þat in þe palays were  
 Com to him for to here, 440  
 And liggef adoun to his fete,  
 Hem þenkeþ his melody so swete.  
 Þe king herkneþ and sitt ful stille,  
 To here his gle he haþ gode wille ;  
 Gode bourde he hadde of his gle, 445  
 Þe riche quen also hadde he.

When he hadde stint his harping,  
 Þan seyð to him þe king :  
 'Menstrel, me likeþ wele þi gle.  
 Now aske of me what it be, 450  
 Largelich ichil þe pay.  
 Now speke, and tow miȝt asay.'  
 'Sir,' he seyð, 'ich biseche þe  
 Þatow woldest ȝiue me  
 Þat ich leuedi, briȝt qn ble, 455  
 Þat slepeþ vnder þe ympe-tre.'  
 'Nay,' quaf þe king, 'þat nouȝt nere I  
 A sori couple of ȝou it were,  
 For þou art lene, rowe, and blac,  
 And sche is lousesum, wiþouten lac ; 460  
 A loþlich þing it were forþi  
 To sen hir in þi compayni.'

'O sir,' he seyð, 'gentil king,  
 ȝete were it a wele fouler þing  
 To here a lesing of þi mouþe, 465  
 So, sir, as ȝe seyð nouþe,  
 What ich wold aski, haue y schold,  
 And nedes þou most þi word hold.'

þe king seyð : ' Seppen it is so,  
Take hir bi þe hond, and go ; 470  
Of hir ichil þatow be blipe.'

He kneled adoun, and þonked him swiþe ;  
His wiif he tok bi þe hond,  
And dede him swiþe out of þat lond,  
And went him out of þat þede, — 475  
Riȝt as he come þe way he ȝede.

So long he haþ þe way ynome,  
To Winchester he is ycome,  
þat was his owhen cité ;  
Ac no man knewe þat it was he. 480

No forþer þan þe tounes ende  
For knoweleche <he> no durst wende,  
Bot wiþ a begger y<n> bilt ful narwe,  
þer he tok his herbarwe,  
To him and to his owhen wiif, 485

As a minstrel of pouer liif,  
And asked tidinges of þat lond,  
And who þe kingdom held in hond.  
þe pouer begger in his cote  
Told him euerich a grot : 490

Hou her quen was stole owy  
Ten ȝer gon wiþ fairy ;  
And hou her king en exile ȝede,  
Bot no man nist in wiche þede ;  
And hou þe steward þe lond gan hold ; 495  
And oper mani þinges him told.

Amorwe, oȝain nonetide,  
He maked his wiif þer abide ;  
þe beggers cloþes he borwed anon,  
And heng his harp his rigge opon, 500  
And went him into þat cité,

þat men miȝt him bihold and se.  
 Erls and barouns bold,  
 Buriays and leuedis him gun bihold.  
 'Lo,' þai seyð, 'swiche a man!  
 Hou long þe here hongep him opan!  
 Lo, hou his berd hongep to his kne!  
 He is yclongen also a tre!'

505

And as he ȝede in þe strete,  
 Wiþ his steward he gan mete,  
 And loude he sett on him a crie:  
 'Sir steward,' he seyð, 'merci!  
 Icham an harpour of heþenisse;  
 Help me now in þis destresse!  
 Þe steward seyð: 'Com wiþ me, come;  
 Of þat ichaue þou schalt haue some.  
 Euerich gode harpour is welcom me to,  
 For mi lordes loue Sir Orfeo.'

510

515

In þe castel þe steward sat atte mete,  
 And mani lording was bi him sete.  
 þer were trompours and tabourers,  
 Harpours fele, and crouders.  
 Miche melody þai maked alle,  
 And Orfeo sat stille in þe halle,  
 And herknep. When þai ben al stille,  
 He toke his harp and tempred schille,  
 Þe bliðfulest notes he harped þere  
 þat euer ani man yherd wiþ ere;  
 Ich man liked wele his gle.

520

525

Þe steward biheld and gan yse,  
 And knewe þe harp als bliue.  
 'Menstrel,' he seyð, 'so mot þou þriue,  
 Where hadestow þis harp, and hou?  
 Y pray þat þou me telle now.'  
 'Lord,' quap he, 'in vncouþe þede,

530

535

Purch a wildernes as y ȝede,  
 þer y founde in a dale  
 Wiþ lyouns a man totorn smale,  
 And wolues him frete wiþ teþ so scharp.  
 Bi him y fond þis ich harp ; 540  
 Wele ten ȝere it is ygo.'

'O,' quap þe steward, 'now me is wo !  
 þat was mi lord Sir Orfeo.  
 Allas ! wreche, what schal y do,  
 þat haue swiche a lord ylore ? 545  
 A way ! þat ich was ybore !  
 þat him was so hard grace yȝarked,  
 And so vile deþ ymarked !'  
 Adoun he fel aswon to grounde.  
 His barouns him tok vp in þat stounde, 550  
 And telleþ him hou it geþ—  
 It nis no bot of manes deþ.

King Orfeo knewe wele bi þan  
 His steward was a trewe man  
 And loued him as he auȝt to do, 555  
 And stont vp and seyt þus : 'Lo,  
 Steward, herkne now þis þing :  
 ȝif ich were Orfeo þe king,  
 And hadde ysuffred ful ȝore  
 In wildernisse miche sore, 560  
 And hadde ywon mi quen owy  
 Out of þe lond of fairy,  
 And hadde ybrouȝt þe leuedi hende  
 Riȝt here to þe tounes ende,  
 And wiþ a begger her in ynome, 565  
 And were miself hider ycome  
 Pouerlich to þe, þus stille,  
 For to asay þi gode wille,  
 And ich founde þe þus trewe,  
 Dou no schust it neuer rewe : 570

Sikerlich, for loue or ay,  
 Þou schust be king after mi day.  
 And ȝif þou of mi deþ hadest ben bliþe,  
 Þou schust haue voided also swiþe.'

Do al þo þat þerin sete 575

þat it was King Orfeo vnderȝete,  
 And þe steward him wele knewe;  
 Ouer and ouer þe bord he þrewe,  
 And fel adoun to his fet;

So dede euerich lord þat þer sete, 580

And al þai seyð at o criing :

'ȝe beþ our lord, sir, and our king!'

Glad þai were of his liue.

To chaumber þai ladde him als biliue,

And baped him, and schaued his berd, 585

And tired him as a king apert.

And seþþen wiþ gret processiouun

þai brouȝt þe quen into þe toun,

Wiþ al maner menstraci.

Lord ! þer was grete melody ! 590

For ioie þai wepe wiþ her eize

þat hem so sounde ycomen seiȝe.

Now King Orfeo newe coround is,

And his quen Dame Heurodis,

And liued long afterward ; 595

And seþþen was king þe steward.

Harpours in Bretaine after þan

Herd hou þis meruaile bigan,

And made herof a lay of gode likeing,

And nempned it after þe king ; 600

þat lay 'Orfeo' is yhote,

Gode is þe lay, swete is þe note.

þus com Sir Orfeo out of his care.

God graunt ous alle wele to fare.

### III

## MICHAEL OF NORTHGATE'S AYENBYTE OF INWYT

A.D. 1340.

Michael of Northgate was a monk of St. Augustine's, Canterbury. From a library catalogue of the monastery it appears that he was a lover of books, for he is named as the donor of twenty-five MSS., a considerable collection for those days. Their titles show a taste not merely for religious works, but for science—mathematics, chemistry, medicine, as they were known at the time. Four of these MSS. have been traced, and one of them, British Museum MS. Arundel 57, is Michael's autograph copy of the *Ayenbyte*. On folio 2 of the MS. are the words: *þis boc is Dan Michelis of Northgate, yawrite an Englis of his oþene band, þet batte 'Ayenbyte of Inwyt'; and is of the boc-bouse of Saynt Austines of Canterberi, mid þe lettres .CC.* 'CC.' is the press-mark given in the catalogue. A note at the end of the text shows that it was finished on October 27, 1340:

*Ymende þet þis boc is wolueld ine þe eue of þe holy apostles Symon an Iudas [i.e. Oct. 27] of ane broþer of the cloystre of Sauynt Austin of Canterberi, in the yeare of oure Lbordes beringe 1340.*

The *Ayenbyte* has been edited for the Early English Text Society by R. Morris. The title means literally 'Remorse of Conscience', but from the contents of the work it would appear that the writer meant rather 'Stimulus to the Conscience', or 'Prick of Conscience'. It is in fact a translation from the French *Somme des Vices et des Vertues*, compiled by Friar Lorens in 1279 for King Philip le Hardi, and long held to be the main source of Chaucer's *Parson's Tale*. Caxton rendered the *Somme* into English prose as *The Royal Book*. It treats of the Commandments, the Creed, the Seven Deadly Sins, the Seven Petitions of the Paternoster, and the Seven Gifts of the Holy Spirit.

Dan Michael's purpose is stated in some doggerel lines at the end:

Nou ich wille þet ye ywyte  
Hou hit is ywent  
Þet þis boc is ywrite  
Mid Engliss of Kent.  
Þis boc is ymad uor lewede men,  
Vor uader, and uor moder, and uor oþer ken,  
Ham uor to berþe uram alle manyere zen,  
Þet ine hare inwyte ne bleue no uoul wen.

His translation is inaccurate, and sometimes unintelligible, and the treatment is so barren of interest that the work seems to have fallen flat even in its own day, when the popular appetite for edification was keen and unspoiled. But if its literary merit is slight, linguistically it is one of the most important works in Middle English. It provides a long prose text, exactly dated and exactly localized; we have the author's autograph copy to work from; and the dialect is well distinguished. These circumstances, unique in Middle English, make it possible to study the Kentish dialect of the mid-fourteenth century under ideal conditions.

### HOW MERCY INCREASES TEMPORAL GOODS.

Hou Merci multipliþ þe timliche guodes, hyerof we habbeþ uele uayre uorbisnen, huerof ich wille hier zome telle. Me ret of Saint Germain of Aucerre þet, þo he com uram Rome, ate outguoinge of Melane, he acsede at onen of his diaknen yef he hedde eny zeluer, and he ansuerede þet 5 he ne hedde bote þri pans, uor Say(n)t Germain hit hedde al yeue to pouren. Þanne he him het þet he his ssolde yeue to þe poure, uor God hedde ynoȝ of guode, huerof he hise uedde uor þane day. Þe dyacne mid greate pine and mid greate grochinge yeaf þe tuaye pans, and ofhild þane þridde. Þe 10 sergont of ane riche kniȝte him broȝte ane his lhordes haf tuo hondred pans. Þo clepede he his dyacne, and him zede þet he hedde benome þe poure ane peny, and yef he hedde yeue þane þridde peny to þe poure, þe kniȝt him hedde yzent þri hondred pans.

Efterward me ret ine þe lyue of Ion þe Amoner, þet wes  
 zuo ycleped uor þe greate elmesses þet he dede: A riche  
 ientilman wes yrobbed of þieues, zuo þet him naȝt ne blefte.  
 He him com to playni to þe uorzede manne, and he him  
 20 zede his cas. He hedde greate reuþe þerof, and het his  
 desspendoure þet he him yeaue uyftene pond of gold. Þe  
 spendere, be his couaytise, ne yeaþ bote vyf. An haste a  
 gentil wymman wodewe zente to þe uore-zyede Ion uif  
 hondred pond of gold. Þo he clepede his spendere, and him  
 25 acsede hou moche he hedde yyeue to þe kniȝte. He ansuerede  
 'vyftene pond.' Þe holy man ansuerede þet 'nay, he ne  
 hedde bote vyf'; and huanne he hit wiste þe ilke zelue þet  
 his hedde onderuonge, zuo zayde to his spendere þet yef he  
 hedde yyeue þe viſtene pond þet he hedde yhote, oure Lhord  
 30 him hede yzent be þe guode wyfman a þouzond and vyf  
 hondred pond. And huanne he acsede ate guode wyfman,  
 þo he hedde hiſe ycleped, hou moche hi hedde him ylete, hi  
 andzuerede þet uerſt hi hedde ywrite ine hare testament þet  
 hi him let a þouſend and vyf hondred pond. Ac hi lokede  
 35 efterward ine hare testament, and hi yzeȝ þe þouſend pond  
 defaced of hire write, and zuo yleſde þe guode wyfman þet  
 God wolde þet hi ne zente bote viſ hondred.

Efterward Saint Gregori telþ þet Saint Boniface uram þet  
 he wes child he wes zuo piteuous þet he yaþ ofte his kertel  
 40 and hiſ ſſerte to þe poure uor God, þaȝ hiſ moder him byete  
 ofte þeruore. Þanne bevil þet þet child yzeȝ manie poure þet  
 hedden mezeyſe. He aspide þet hiſ moder nes naȝt þer.  
 An haste he yarn to þe gerniere, and al þet hiſ moder hedde  
 ygadered uor to paſi þet yer he hit yaþ þe poure. And þo  
 45 hiſ moder com, and wyſte þe ilke dede, hy wes al out of hare  
 wytte. Þet child bed oure Lhorde, and þet gernier wes an  
 haste al uol.

Efterward þer wes a poure man, aſe me zayþ, þet hedde  
 ane cou; and yhyerde zigge of hiſ preſte ine hiſ prechinge



þet God zede ine his spelle þet God wolde yelde an hondred- 50  
 uald al þet me yeaue uor him. Þe guode man, mid þe rede  
 of his wyue, yeaþ his cou to his preste, þet wes riche. Þe  
 prest his nom bleþeliche, and hise zente to þe opren þet he  
 hedde. Þo hit com to euen, þe guode mannes cou com hom  
 to his house ase hi wes ywoned, and ledde mid hare alle þe 55  
 prestes ken, al to an hondred. Þo þe guode man yzeþ þet,  
 he þohte þet þet wes þet word of þe Godspelle þet he hedde  
 yyolde; and him hi weren yloked beuore his bissoppe aye  
 þane prest. Þise uorbisne sseweþ wel þet merci is guod  
 chapuare, uor hi deþ wexe þe timliche guodes. 60

## IV

### RICHARD ROLLE OF HAMPOLE

D. 1349.

Richard Rolle was born at Thornton-le-Dale, near Pickering, in Yorkshire. He was sent to Oxford, already a formidable rival to the University of Paris; but the severer studies were evidently uncongenial to his impulsive temperament. He returned home without taking orders, improvised for himself a hermit's dress, and fled into solitude. His piety attracted the favour of Sir John and Lady Dalton, who gave him a cell on their estate. Here, in meditation, he developed his mystical religion. He did not immure himself, or cut himself off from human companionship. For a time he lived near Anderby, where was the cell of the recluse Margaret Kirkby, to whom he addressed his *Form of Perfect Living*. Another important work, *Ego Dormio et Cor Meum Vigilat*, was written for a nun of Yedingham (Yorks.). Towards the end of his life he lived in close friendship with the nuns of Hampole, and for one of them he wrote his *Commandment of Love to God*. At Hampole he died in 1349, the year of the Black Death. By the devout he was regarded as a saint, and had his commemoration day, his office, and his miracles; but he was never canonized.

He wrote both in Latin and in English, and it is not always easy to distinguish his work from that of his many followers and imitators. The writings attributed to him are edited by C. Horstmann, *Yorkshire Writers*, 2 vols., London 1895-6. Besides the prose works noted above, he wrote, at the request of Margaret Kirkby, a *Commentary on the Psalms* (ed. Bramley, Oxford 1884), based on the Latin of Peter Lombard. A long didactic poem in Northern English, the *Prick of Conscience*, has been attributed to

him from Lydgate's time onwards ; but his authorship has recently been questioned, chiefly on the ground that the poem is without a spark of inspiration. It is not certain that he wrote *Love is Life*, which is included here because it expresses in characteristic language his central belief in the personal bond, the burning love, between God and man. The first prose selection shows that he did not disdain the examples from natural history that were so popular in the sermons of the time. The second is chapter xi of the *Form of Perfect Living*, which is found as a separate extract from an early date.

With Rolle began a movement of devotional piety, which, as might be expected from its strong appeal to the emotions, was taken up first among religious women ; and signs of a striving for effect in his style suggest that the hermit was not indifferent to the admiration of his followers. He brings to his teaching more heart than mind. He escapes the problems of the world, which seemed so insistent to his contemporaries, by denying the world's claims. His ideas and temperament are diametrically opposed to those of the other great figure in the religious life of fourteenth-century England—Wiclif, the schoolman, politician, reformer, controversialist. Yet they have in common a sincerity and directness of belief that brushes aside conventions, and an enthusiasm that made them leaders in an age when the Church as a whole suffered from apathy.

#### A. LOVE IS LIFE.

Cambridge University Library MS. DD. 5. 64. III (about 1400) f. 38 a.

<L>uf es lyf þat lastes ay, þar it in Criste es feste,  
 For wele ne wa it chaunge may, als wryten has men wyseste.  
 Þe nyght it tournes intil þe day, þi trauel intyll reste ;  
 If þou wil luf þus as I say, þou may be wyth þe beste.

Lufe es thoght wyth grete desyre of a fayre louyng ; 5  
 Lufe I lyken til a fyre þat sloken may na thyng ;  
 Lufe vs clenses of oure syn ; luf vs bote sall bryng ;  
 Lufe þe Keynges hert may wyn ; lufe of ioi may syng.

38 IV. RICHARD ROLLE OF HAMPOLE

þe settel of lufe es lyft hee, for intil heuen it ranne ;  
 Me thynk in erth it es sle, þat makes men pale and wanne ; 10  
 þe bede of blysse it gase ful nee, I tel þe as I kanne :  
 Þof vs thynk þe way be dreggh, luf copuls God and manne.

Lufe es hatter þen þe cole ; lufe may nane beswyke.  
 þe flawme of lufe wha myght it thole, if it war ay ilyke ? 14  
 Luf vs comfortes, and mase in qwart, and lyftes tyl heuenryke ;  
 Luf rauysches Cryste intyl owr hert ; I wate na lust it lyke.

Lere to luf, if þou wyl lyfe when þou sall hethen fare ;  
 All þi thoght til Hym þou gyf þat may þe kepe fra kare :  
 Loke þi hert fra Hym noght twyn, if þou in wandreth ware ;  
 Sa þou may Hym welde and wyn, and luf Hym euermare. 20

Iesu, þat me lyfe hase lent, intil þi lufe me bryng !  
 Take til þe al myne entent, þat þow be my ȝhernyng.  
 Wa fra me away war went, and comne war my couaytyng,  
 If þat my sawle had herd and hent þe sang of þi louyng,

þi lufe es ay lastand, fra þat we may it fele ; 25  
 Þarein make me byrnand, þat na thyng gar it kele.  
 My thoght take into þi hand, and stabyl it ylk a dele,  
 þat I be noght heldand to luf þis worldes wele.

If I lufe any erthly thyng þat payes to my wyll,  
 And settes my ioy and my lykyng when it may comm me tyll,  
 I mai drede of partyng, þat wyll be hate and yll : 31  
 For al my welth es bot wepyng when pyne mi saule sal spyll.

þe ioy þat men hase sene es lyckend tyl þe haye,  
 þat now es fayre and grene, and now wytes awaye.  
 Swylk es þis worlde, I wene, and bees till Domesdaye, 35  
 All in trauel and tene, fle þat na man it maye.

If þou luf in all þi thoght, and hate þe fylth of syn,  
 And gyf Hym þi sawle þat it boght, þat He þe dwell within,  
 Als Crist þi sawle hase soght, and þerof walde noght blyn,  
 Sa þou sal to blys be broght, and heuen won within. 40

þe kynd of luf es þis, þar it es trayst and trew,  
 To stand styll in stabylnes, and chaunge it for na new.  
 þe lyfe þat lufe myght fynd, or euer in hert it knew,  
 Fra kare it tornes þat kyend, and lendes in myrth and glew.

For now, lufe þow, I rede, Cryste, as I þe tell, 45  
 And with aungels take þi stede: þat ioy loke þou noght sell!  
 In erth þow hate, I rede, all þat þi lufe may fell,  
 For luf es stalworth as þe dede, luf es hard as hell.

Luf es a lyght byrthen; lufe gladdes ȝong and alde;  
 Lufe es withowten pyne, as lofers hase me talde; 50  
 Lufe es a gastly wyne, þat makes men bygge and balde;  
 Of lufe sal he na thyng tyne þat hit in hert will halde.

Lufe es þe swetest thyng þat man in erth hase tane;  
 Lufe es Goddes derlyng; lufe byndes blode and bane.  
 In lufe be owre lykyng, I ne wate na better wane, 55  
 For me and my lufyng lufe makes bath be ane.

Bot fleschly lufe sal fare as dose þe flowre in May,  
 And lastand be na mare þan ane houre of a day,  
 And sythen syghe ful sare þar lust, þar pryde, þar play,  
 When þai er casten in kare til pyne þat lastes ay. 60

When þair bodys lyse in syn, þair sawls mai qwake and drede,  
 For vp sal ryse al men, and answer for þair dede.  
 If þai be fonden in syn, als now þair lyfe þai lede,  
 Þai sal sytt hel within, and myrknes hafe to mede.

Riche men þair hend sal wryng, and wicked werkes sal by 65  
 In flawme of fyre, bath knyght and keyng, with sorowschamfully.  
 If þou wil lufe, þan may þou syng til Cryst in melody;  
 þe lufe of Hym ouercoms al thyng, þarto þou traiste trewly.

45 For now] Forþi *MS. Lambeth 853*. 51 wyne]—wynne *MS.*  
 65 hend] handes *MS.*, apparently altered from hend.

(I) sygh and sob, bath day and nyght, for ane sa fayre of hew!  
 þar es na thyng my hert mai light, bot lufe þat es ay new. 70  
 Wha sa had Hym in his syght, or in his hert Hym knew,  
 His mournyng turned til ioy ful bryght, his sang intil glew.

In myrth he lyfes, nyght and day, þat lufes þat swete chylde;  
 It es Iesu, forsoth I say, of al mekest and mylde.  
 Wreth fra hym walde al away, þof he wer neuer sa wylde, 75  
 He þat in hert lufed Hym þat day fra euel He wil hym schylde.

Of Iesu mast lyst me speke, þat al my bale may bete;  
 Me thynk my hert may al tobreke when I thynk on þat swete;  
 In lufe lacyd He hase my thoght, þat I sal neuer forgete. 79  
 Ful dere me thynk He hase me boght with blodi hende and fete.

For luf my hert es bowne to brest, when I þat faire behalde;  
 Lufe es fair þare it es fest, þat neuer will be calde;  
 Lufe vs reues þe nyght-rest, in grace it makes vs balde;  
 Of al warkes luf es þe best, als haly men me talde.

Na wonder gyf I syghand be, and sithen in sorow be sette: 85  
 Iesu was nayled apon þe tre, and al blody forbette.  
 To thynk on Hym es grete pyté—how tenderly He grette—  
 Þis hase He sufferde, man, for þe, if þat þou syn wyll lette.

þare es na tonge in erth may tell of lufe þe swetnesse.  
 þat stedfastly in lufe kan dwell, his ioy es endlesse. 90  
 God schylde þat he sulde til hell, þat lufes and langand es,  
 Or euer his enmys sulde hym qwell, or make his luf be lesse.

Iesu es lufe þat lastes ay, til Hym es owre langyng;  
 Iesu þe nyght turnes to þe day, þe dawyng intil spryng.  
 Iesu, thynk on vs now and ay, for þe we halde oure keyng; 95  
 Iesu, gyf vs grace, as þou wel may, to luf þe withowten endyng.

## B. THE NATURE OF THE BEE.

(The Thornton MS. (before 1450); ed. Horstmann, vol. i, p. 193.)

*Moralia Ricardi Heremite de Natura Apis.*

THE bee has thre kyndis. Ane es þat scho es neuer ydill, and scho es noghte with thaym þat will noghte wyrke, bot castys thaym owte, and puttes thaym awaye. Anothire es þat when scho flyes scho takes erthe in hyr fette, þat scho be noghte lyghtly ouerheghede in the ayere of wynde. The 5 thyrd es þat scho kepes clene and bryghte hire wynges.

Thus ryghtwyse men þat lufes God are neuer in ydylles. For owthyre þay ere in trauayle, prayand, or thynkande, or redande, or othere gude doande; or withtakand ydill mene, and schewand thaym worthy to be put fra þe ryste of heuene, 10 for þay will noghte trauayle here.

Þay take erthe, þat es, þay halde þamselfe vile and erthely, that thay be noghte blawene with þe wynde of vanyté and of pryde. Thay kepe thaire wynges clene, that es, þe twa commandementes of charyté þay fulfill in gud concyens, and 15 thay hafe othyre vertus, vnblendyde with þe fylthe of syne and vnclene luste.

Arestotill sais þat þe bees are feghtande agaynes hym þat will drawe þaire hony fra thayme. Swa sulde we do agaynes deuells, þat afforces thame to reue fra vs þe hony of poure 20 lyfe and of grace. For many are, þat neuer kane halde þe ordyre of lufe ynence þaire frendys, sybbe or fremmede. Bot outhire þay lufe þaym ouer mekill, settand thaire thoghte vnryghtwysely on thaym, or þay luf thayme ouer lyttill, yf þay doo noghte all as þey wolde till þame. Swylke kane 25 noghte fyghte for thaire hony, forthy þe deuelle turnes it to wormes, and makes þeire saules oftesythes full bitter in

22 ynence] ynesche MS. 23 mekill] MS follows with: or that lufe þame ouer lyttill, caught up from below.

#### 42 IV. RICHARD ROLLE OF HAMPOLE

angwys, and tene, and besynes of vayne thoghtes, and oper  
wrechidnes. For thay are so heuy in erthely frenchype þat  
30 þay may noghte flee intill þe lufe of Iesu Criste, in þe wylke  
þay moghte wele forgaa þe lufe of all creaturs lyfande in  
erthe.

Wharefore, accordandly, Arystotill sais þat some fowheles  
are of gude flyghyng, þat passes fra a lande to anothire.  
35 Some are of ill flyghyng, for heuynes of body, and for(pi)  
þaire neste es noghte ferre fra þe erthe. Thus es it of  
thayme þat turnes þame to Godes seruys. Some are of gude  
flyeghyng, for thay flye fra erthe to heuene, and rystes  
thayme thare in thoghte, and are fedde in delite of Goddes  
40 lufe, and has thoghte of na lufe of þe worlde. Some are þat  
kan noghte flyghe fra þis lande, bot in þe waye late theyre herte  
ryste, and delytes þaym in sere lufes of mene and womene,  
als þay come and gaa, nowe ane and nowe anothire. And in  
Iesu Criste þay kan fynde na swettnes; or if þay any tyme  
45 fele oghte, it es swa lyttill and swa schorte, for othire thoghtes  
þat are in thayme, þat it brynges thaym till na stabylnes.

(F)or þay are lyke till a fowle þat es callede struycy or storke,  
þat has wenges, and it may noghte flye for charge of body.  
Swa þay hafe vndirstandyng, and fastes, and wakes, and  
50 semes haly to mens syghte; bot thay may noghte flye to lufe  
and contemplacyone of God, þay are so chargede wyth othyre  
affeccyons and othire vanytés.

#### THE SEVEN GIFTS OF THE HOLY GHOST.

(Chap. xi of *The Form of Perfect Living*; ed. Horstmann, vol. I,  
p. 196.)

Þx seuene gyftes of þe Haly Gaste, þat ere gyfene to men  
and wymmene þat er ordaynede to þe ioye of heuene, and  
55 ledys theire lyfe in this worlde reghtwysely. Thire are thay:—  
Wyssdome, Undyrstandyng, Counsayle, Strenghe, Connyng,



Peté, the Drede of God. Begynne we at Consaile, for þareof es myster at the begynnyng of oure werkes, þat vs myslyke noghte aftyward. With thire seuene gyftes þe Haly Gaste teches sere mene serely. 60

Consaile es doynge awaye of worldes reches, and of all delytes of all thynges þat mane may be tagyld with, in thoghte or dede, and þarwith drawynge intill contemplacyone of Gode.

Undyrstandynge es to knawe whate es to doo, and whate 65 es to lefe, and þat that sall be gyffene, to gyffe it to thaym þat has nede, noghte till oþer þat has na myster.

Wysedome es forgetynge of erthely thynges and thynkyng of heuen, with discrecyone of all mens dedys. In þis gyfte schynes contemplacyone, þat es, Saynt Austyne says, a gastely 70 dede of fleschely affeccyones, thurghe þe ioye of a raysede thoghte.

Strenghe es lastynge to fullfill gude purpose, þat it be noghte lefte, for wele ne for waa.

Peté es þat a man be mylde, and gaynesay noghte Haly 75 Writte whene it smyttes his synnys, whethire he vndyrstand it or noghte; bot in all his myghte purge he þe vilté of syne in hyme and oþer.

Connynge es þat makes a man of gude (hope), noghte ruysand hyme of his reghtewysnes, bot sorowand of his 80 synnys, and þat man gedyrs erthely gude anely to the honour of God, and prow to oþer mene þane hymselfe.

The Drede of God es þat we turne noghte agayne till oure syne thurghe any ill eggyng. And þan es drede perfite in vs and gastely, when we drede to wrethe God in þe leste syne 85 þat we kane knawe, and flese it als venyme.

60 teches] towches *Cambridge MS. DD. 5. 64.* 63 þar] þat *MS. Thornton.* 69 mens] so *Cambridge MS. DD. 5. 64* = mens *MS. Thornton.* 79 hope] from *Cambridge MS. DD. 5. 64* : om. *MS. Thornton.* 84 þan] *Cambridge MS. DD. 5. 64* : þen *MS. Arundel 507* : þat *MS. Thornton.*


## V

# SIR GAWAYNE AND THE GRENE KNIGHT

ABOUT 1350-75.

*Sir Gawayne* has been admirably edited by Sir F. Madden for the Bannatyne Club, 1839; by R. Morris for the Early English Text Society; and in a useful students' edition by E. V. Gordon and J. R. R. Tolkien, Oxford 1925. It is found in British Museum MS. Nero A X, together with three other alliterative poems, named from their first words *Pearl*, *Patience*, and *Cleanness*. *Pearl* supplies the next specimen; *Patience* exemplifies the virtue by the trials of Jonah; *Cleanness* teaches purity of life from Scriptural stories. All these poems are in the same handwriting; all are in a West-Midland dialect; all appear to be of the same age; and none is without literary merit. For these reasons, which are good but not conclusive, they are assumed to be by the same author. Attempts to identify this author have been unsuccessful.

The story runs as follows :

King Arthur is making his Christmas feast with his court at Camelot. On New Year's Day he declares that he will not eat until he has seen or heard some marvel. The first course of the feast is barely served when a tall knight, clad all in green, with green hair, and a green horse to match, rides into the hall. He carries a holly bough and a huge axe, and tauntingly invites any knight to strike him a blow with the axe, on condition that he will stand  return blow on the same day a year hence. Gawayne accepts the challenge and strikes off the Green Knight's head. The Green Knight gathers up his head, gives Gawayne an appointment for next New Year's Day at the Green Chapel, and rides off.

The year passes, and Gawayne, despite the fears of the court, sets out in quest of the Green Chapel. On Christmas Eve he

## SIR GAWAYNE AND THE GRENE KNIGHT 45

arrives at a splendid castle, and finding that the Green Chapel is close at hand, accepts an invitation to stay and rest until New Year's Day. On each of three days the knight of the castle goes hunting, and persuades Gawayne to rest at home. They make an agreement that each shall give the other whatever he gets. The lady of the castle makes love to Gawayne, and kisses him once on the first day, twice on the second day, thrice on the third day; and on the third day she gives him her girdle, which he accepts because it has the magic power of preserving the wearer from wounds. Each evening he duly gives the kisses to the knight, and receives in return the spoils of the hunting of deer and boar and fox. But he conceals the girdle.

The extract begins with Gawayne preparing on New Year's morning to stand the return blow at the Green Chapel.

The poem ends by the Green Knight revealing that he is himself the lord of the castle; that he went to Arthur's court at the suggestion of Morgan la Fay; that he had urged his wife to make love to Gawayne and try his virtue; and that he would not have harmed him at all, if he had not committed the slight fault of concealing the girdle. Gawayne returns to the court, bearing the girdle as a sign of his shame, and tells his story. The knights of the court agree in future to wear a bright green belt for Gawayne's sake.

*Sir Gawayne* is admittedly the best of the alliterative romances. It must have come down to us practically as it was written by the poet, for it is free from the flatness and conventional phrasing which is characteristic of romances that have passed through many popular recensions. The descriptions of nature, of armour and dresses, the hunting scenes, and the love making, are all excellently done; and the poet shows the same richness of imagination and skill in producing pictorial effects that are so noticeable in *Pearl*. He has too a quiet humour that recalls Chaucer in some of his moods.

## THE TESTING OF SIR GAWAYNE.

British Museum MS. Nero A X (about 1400); ed. R. Morris, ll. 2069 ff.

Facsimile of MS. ed. Sir Israel Gollancz, E. E. T. S. 1924.

THE brygge wat3 brayde doun, and þe brode 3ate3  
 Vnbarred and born open vpon boþe halue.  
 De burne blessed hym bilyue, and þe brede3 passed ;  
 Prayses þe porter bifore þe prynce kneled,  
 Gef hym God and goud day, þat Gawayn He saue, 5  
 And went on his way with his wy3e one,  
 þat schulde teche hym to tourne to þat tene place  
 þer þe ruful race he schulde resayue.  
 þay bo3en bi bonkke3 þer bo3e3 ar bare ;  
 þay clomben bi clyffe3 þer clenge3 þe colde. 10  
 þe heuen wat3 vp halt, bot vgly þer vnder,—  
 Mist mugged on þe mor, malt on þe mounte3,  
 Vch hille hade a hatte, a myst-hakel huge.  
 Broke3 byled and breke bi bonkke3 aboute,  
 Schyre schaterande on schore3, þer þay doun schowued. 15  
 Wela wylle wat3 þe way þer þay bi wod schulden,  
 Til hit wat3 sone sesoun þat þe sunne ryses  
 þat tyde.  
 þay were on a hille ful hy3e,  
 þe quyte snaw lay bisyde ; 20  
 þe burne þat rod hym by  
 Bede his mayster abide.  
 ‘For I haf wonnen yow hider, wy3e, at þis tyme,  
 And now nar 3e not fer fro þat note place  
 þat 3e han spied and spured so specially after. 25  
 Bot I schal say yow for soþe, syþen I yow knowe,  
 And 3e ar a lede vpon lyue þat I wel louy,  
 Wolde 3e worch bi my wytte, 3e worþed þe better.  
 þe place þat 3e prece to ful perelous is halden.  
 þer wone3 a wy3e in þat waste, þe worst vpon erþe, 30

# SIR GAWAYNE AND THE GRENE KNIGHT 47

For he is stiffe and sturne, and to strike louies,  
 And more he is þen any mon vpon myddelerde,  
 And his body bigger þen þe best fowre  
 þat ar in Arpureȝ hous, Hestor, oþer oþer.  
 He cheuez þat chaunce at þe chapel grene, 35  
 þer passes non bi þat place so proude in his armes  
 þat he ne dynges hym to deþe with dynt of his honde;  
 For he is a mon methles, and mercy non vses,  
 For be hit chorle oþer chaplayn þat bi þe chapel rydes,  
 Monk oþer masse-prest, oþer any mon elles, 40  
 Hym þynk as queme hym to quelle as quyk go hymselfuen.  
 Forþy I say þe, as soþe as ȝe in sadel sitte,  
 Com ȝe þere, ȝe be kyllid, may þe, knyȝt, rede—  
 Trawe ȝe me þat trwely—þaȝ ȝe had twenty lyues  
 to spende. 45

He hatȝ wonyd here ful ȝore,  
 On bent much baret bende,  
 Aȝayn his dyntes sore  
 ȝe may not yow defende.

‘Forþy, goude Sir Gawayn, let þe gome one, 50  
 And gotȝ away sum oþer gate, vpon Goddeȝ halue!  
 Cayres bi sum oþer kyth, þer Kryst mot yow spede,  
 And I schal hyȝ me hom aȝayn, and hete yow fyrre  
 þat I schal swere bi God and alle His gode halȝes,  
 As help me God and þe halydam, and oþes innoghe, 55  
 þat I schal lelly yow layne, and lance neuer tale  
 þat euer ȝe fondet to fle for freke þat I wist.’  
 ‘Grant merci,’ quod Gawayn, and gruchyng he sayde:  
 ‘Wel worth þe, wyȝe, þat woldeȝ my gode,  
 And þat lelly me layne I leue wel þou woldeȝ. 60  
 Bot helde þou hit neuer so holde, and I here passed,  
 Founded for ferde for to fle, in fourme þat þou telleȝ,  
 I were a knyȝt kowarde, I myȝt not be excused.

# 48 V. SIR GAWAYNE AND THE GRENE KNIGHT

Bot I wyl to þe chapel, for chaunce þat may falle,  
And talk wyth þat ilk tulk þe tale þat me lyste, 65  
Worþe hit wele oþer wo, as þe wyrde lykeþ  
hit hafe.

þaȝe he be a sturn knape  
To stiztel, and stad with staue,  
Ful wel con Dryȝtyn schape 70  
His seruaunteȝ for to saue.'

'Mary !' quod þat oþer mon, 'now þou so much spelles  
þat þou wylt þyn awen nye nyme to þyseluen,  
And þe lyst lese þy lyf, þe lette I ne kepe.  
Haf here þi helme on þy hede, þi spere in þi honde, 75  
And ryde me doun þis ilk rake bi ȝon rokke syde  
Til þou be broȝt to þe boȝem of þe brem valay.  
þenne loke a littel on þe launde, on þi lyfte honde,  
And þou schal se in þat slade þe self chapel,  
And þe borelych burne on bent þat hit kepeȝ. 80  
Now fareȝ wel, on Godeȝ half! Gawayn þe noble ;  
For alle þe golde vpon grounde I nolde go wyth þe,  
Ne bere þe selazschip þurȝ þis fryth on fote fyrre.'  
Bi þat þe wyȝe in þe wod wendeȝ his brydel,  
Hit þe hors with þe heleȝ as harde as he myȝt, 85  
Lepeȝ hym ouer þe launde, and leueȝ þe knyȝt þere  
al one.

'Bi Goddeȝ self !' quod Gawayn,  
'I wyl nauper grete ne grone ;  
To Goddeȝ wylle I am ful bayn, 90  
And to Hym I haf me tone.'

Thenne gyredeȝ he to Gryngolet, and gedereȝ þe rake,  
Schowueȝ in bi a schore at a schaze syde,  
Rideȝ þurȝ þe roȝe bonk ryȝt to þe dale ;  
And þenne he wayted hym aboute, and wylde hit hym þoȝt,  
And seȝe no syngne of resette bisydeȝ nowhere, 96

Bot hyȝe bonkkeȝ and brent vpon boȝe halue,  
 And ruȝe knokled knarreȝ with knorned stoneȝ;  
 Þe skweȝ of þe scowtes skayned hym þoȝt.  
 Þenne he houted, and wythhylde his hors at þat tyde, 100  
 And ofte chaunged his cher þe chapel to seche:  
 He seȝ non suche in no syde, and selly hym þoȝt  
 Sone, a lyttel on a launde, a lawe as hit we⟨re⟩,  
 A balȝ berȝ bi a bonke, þe brymme bysyde,  
 Bi a forȝ of a flode þat ferked þare; 105  
 Þe borne blubred þerinne as hit boyled hade.  
 Þe knyȝt kacheȝ his caple, and com to þe lawe,  
 Lizteȝ doun luflyly, and at a lynde tacheȝ  
 Þe rayne and his riche with a roȝe braunche.  
 Þenne he boȝeȝ to þe berȝe, aboute hit he walkeȝ, 110  
 Debatande with hymself quat hit be myȝt.  
 Hit hade a hole on þe ende and on ayȝer syde,  
 And ouergrowen with gresse in glodes aywhere,  
 And al watȝ holȝ inwith, nobot an olde caue,  
 Or a creuisse of an olde cragge, he couȝe hit noȝt deme 115  
 with spelle.  
 'We! Lorde,' quod þe gentyle knyȝt,  
 'Wheȝer þis be þe grene chapelle?  
 He⟨re⟩ myȝt aboute mydnyȝt  
 Þe dele his matynnes telle! 120  
 'Now iwysse,' quod Wowayn, 'wysty is here;  
 Þis oritore is vgly, with erbeȝ ouergrowen;  
 Wel bisemeȝ þe wyȝe wruxled in grene  
 Dele here his deuocioun on þe deueleȝ wyse.  
 Now I fele hit is þe fende, in my fyue wytteȝ, 125  
 þat hatȝ stoken me þis steuen to strye me here.  
 Þis is a chapel of meschaunce, þat chekke hit bytyde!  
 Hit is þe corsesdest kyrk þat euer I com innel!  
 With heȝe helme on his hede, his launce in his honde,  
 He romeȝ vp to þe rokke of þo roȝ woneȝ. 130

## 50 V. SIR GAWAYNE AND THE GRENE KNIGHT

þene herde he, of þat hyȝe hil, in a harde roche,  
 Biȝonde þe broke, in a bonk, a wonder breme noyse.  
 Quat! hit clatered in þe clyff, as hit cleue schulde,  
 As one vpon a gryndelston hade grounden a syȝe;  
 What! hit wharred and whette, as water at a mulne; 135  
 What! hit rusched and ronge, rawȝe to here.  
 þenne 'Bi Godde!' quod Gawayn, 'þat gere as I trowe  
 Is ryched at þe reuerence me, renk, to mete  
 bi rote.

Let God worche, we loo!  
 Hit helppeȝ me not a mote. 140  
 My lif þaȝ I forgoo,  
 Drede dotȝ me no lote.'

Thenne þe knyȝt con calle ful hyȝe:  
 'Who stiȝtleȝ in þis sted, me steuen to holde? 145  
 For now is gode Gawayn goande ryȝt here.  
 If any wyȝe oȝt wyl, wyne hider fast,  
 Oȝer now oȝer neuer, his nedeȝ to spede.'  
 'Abyde,' quod on on þe bonke abouen ouer his hede,  
 'And þou schal haf al in hast þat I þe hyȝt ones.' 150  
 ȝet he rusched on þat rurde rapely a þrowe,  
 And wyth quetting awharf, er he wolde lyȝt;  
 And syȝen he keuereȝ bi a cragge, and comeȝ of a hole,  
 Whyrlande out of a wro wyth a felle weppen,  
 A Deneȝ ax nwe dyȝt, þe dynt with <t>o ȝelde, 155  
 With a borelych bytte bende by þe halme,  
 Fyled in a fylor, fowre fote large,—  
 Hit watȝ no lasse bi þat lace þat lemed ful bryȝt,—  
 And þe gome in þe grene gered as fyrst,  
 Boȝe þe lyre and þe leggeȝ, lokkeȝ and berde, 160  
 Saue þat fayre on his fote he foundeȝ on þe erȝe,  
 Sette þe stele to þe stone, and stalked bysyde.  
 Whan he wan to þe watter, þer he wade nolde,



He hypped ouer on hys ax, and orpedly strydeȝ,  
 Bremly broȝe on a bent þat brode watȝ aboute, 165  
 on snawe.

Sir Gawayn þe knyȝt con mete,  
 He ne lutte hym no þyng lowe;  
 þat oȝer sayde 'Now, sir swete,  
 Of steuen mon may þe trowe. 170

'Gawayn,' quod þat grene gome, 'God þe mot loke!  
 Iwysse þou art welcom, wyȝe, to my place,  
 And þou hatȝ tyled þi trauayl as truee mon schulde,  
 And þou knoweȝ þe couenaunteȝ kest vus bytwene:  
 At þis tyme twelmonyth þou toke þat þe falled, 175  
 And I schulde at þis nwe ȝere ȝeȝply þe quyte.  
 And we ar in þis valay verayly oure one;  
 Here ar no renkes vs to rydde, rele as vus likeȝ.  
 Haf þy helme of þy hede, and haf here þy pay.  
 Busk no more debate þen I þe bede þenne 180  
 When þou wypped of my hede at a wap one.'  
 'Nay, bi God' quod Gawayn, 'þat me gost lante!  
 I schal gruch þe no grwe for grem þat falleȝ.  
 Bot styȝtel þe vpon on strok, and I schal stonde styлле  
 And warp þe no wernyng to worch as þe lykeȝ, 185  
 nowhare.'

He lened with þe nek, and lutte,  
 And schewed þat schyre al bare,  
 And lette as he noȝt dutte;  
 For drede he wolde not dare. 190

Then þe gome in þe grene grayȝed hym swyȝe,  
 Gedereȝ vp hys grymme tole Gawayn to smyte;  
 With alle þe bur in his body he ber hit on lofte,  
 Munt as maȝtyly as marre hym he wolde:  
 Hade hit dryuen adoun as dreȝ as he atled, 195  
 þer hade ben ded of his dynt þat doȝty watȝ euer.

172 welcom] welcon *MS.*

179 þy (1st)] þy þy *MS.*

## 52 V. SIR GAWAYNE AND THE GRENE KNIGHT

Bot Gawayn on þat giserne glyfte hym bysyde,  
 As hit com glydande adoun on glode hym to schende,  
 And schranke a lytel with þe schulderes for þe scharp yrne.  
 Þat oþer schalk wyth a schunt þe schene wyththaldez, 200  
 And þenne repreued he þe prynce with mony prowde wordez :  
 'Þou art not Gawayn,' quod þe gome, 'þat is so goud  
 halden,

þat neuer arȝed for no here, by hylle ne be vale,  
 And now þou fles for ferde er þou fele harmez !  
 Such cowardise of þat knyȝt cowþe I neuer here. 205  
 Nawþer fyked I ne flaȝe, freke, quen þou myntest,  
 Ne kest no kaulacion, in kyngeȝ hous Arthor.  
 My hede flaȝ to my fote, and ȝet flaȝ I neuer ;  
 And þou, er any harme hent, arȝez in hert ;  
 Wherefore þe better burne me burde be called 210  
 þerfore.'

Quod Gawayn 'I schunt oneȝ,  
 And so wyl I no more ;  
 Bot þaȝ my hede falle on þe stoneȝ,  
 I con not hit restore. 215

Bot busk, burne, bi þi fayth ! and bryng me to þe poynt.  
 Dele to me my destiné, and do hit out of honde,  
 For I schal stonde þe a strok, and start no more  
 Til þyn ax haue me hitte : haf here my trawþe.'  
 'Haf at þe þenne !' quod þat oþer, and heuez hit alofte, 220  
 And waytez as wroþely as he wode were.  
 He myntez at hym maȝtyly, bot not þe mon ryuez,  
 Withhelde heterly h(i)s honde, er hit hurt myȝt.  
 Gawayn grayþely hit bydez, and glent with no membre,  
 Bot stode styлле as þe ston, oþer a stubbe auþer 225  
 þat rapeled is in roché grounde with roteȝ a hundreth.  
 Þen muryly este con he mele, þe mon in þe grene :  
 'So now þou hatȝ þi hert holle, hitte me bihou(e)s.  
 Halde þe now þe hyȝe hode þat Arþur þe raȝt,

And kepe þy kanel at þis kest, ȝif hit keuer may.' 230

Gawayn ful gryndelly with greme þenne sayde :

'Wy ! þresch on, þou þro mon, þou þreteȝ to longe.

I hope þat þi hert arȝe wyth þyn awen seluen.'

'For soþe,' quod þat oþer freke, 'so felly þou spekeȝ,

I wyl no lenger on lyte lette þin ernde 235  
riȝt nowe.'

þenne tas he hym stryȝe to stryke,

And frounses boþe lyppe and browe.

No meruayle þaȝ hym myslyke

þat hoped of no rescowe. 240

He lyftes lyȝtly his lome, and let hit doun fayre,

With þe barbe of þe bitte bi þe bare nek,

þaȝ he homered heterly, hurt hym no more,

Bot snyrt hym on þat on syde, þat seuered þe hyde ;

þe scharp schrank to þe flesche þurȝ þe schyre grece 245

þat þe schene blod ouer his schulderes schot to þe erþe,

And quen þe burne seȝ þe blode blenk on þe snawe,

He sprit forth spenne fote more þen a spere lenþe,

Hent heterly his helme, and on his hed cast,

Schot with his schuldereȝ his fayre schelde vnder, 250

Braydeȝ out a bryȝt sworde, and bremely he spekeȝ ;—

Neuer syn þat he watȝ burne borne of his moder

Watȝ he neuer in þis worlde wyȝe half so blyþe—

'Blynne, burne, of þy bur, bede me no mo !

I haf a stroke in þis stede withoute stryf hent, 255

And if þow recheȝ me any mo, I redyly schal quyte,

And ȝelde ȝederly aȝayn—and þerto ȝe tryst—

and foo.

Bot on stroke here me falleȝ—

þe couenaunt schop ryȝt so 260

〈Schapen〉 in Arþureȝ halleȝ—

And þerfore, hende, now hoo !'

## 54 V. SIR GAWAYNE AND THE GRENE KNIGHT

The hæl heldet hym fro, and on his ax rested,  
 Sette þe schaft vpon schore, and to þe scharp lened,  
 And loked to þe leude þat on þe launde ȝede, 265  
 How þat doȝty, dredles, deruely þer stondeȝ  
 Armed, ful aȝlez: in hert hit hym lykeȝ.  
 Þenn he meleȝ muryly wyth a much steuen,  
 And wyth a ry(n)kande rurde he to þe renk sayde:  
 'Bolde burne, on þis bent be not so gryndel. 270  
 No mon here vnmanerly þe mysboden habbe(ȝ)  
 Ne kyd, bot as couenaunde at kynges kort schaped.  
 I hyȝt þe a strok and þou hit hatȝ; halde þe wel payed.  
 I relece þe of þe remnaunt of ryȝtes alle oþer.  
 Iif I deliuer had bene, a boffet paraunter 275  
 I couȝe wroþeloker haf waret,—to þe haf wroȝt anger.  
 Fyrst I mansed þe muryly with a mynt one,  
 And roue þe wyth no rof sore, with ryȝt I þe profered  
 For þe forwarde þat we fest in þe fyrst nyȝt,  
 And þou trystly þe trawþe and trwly me haldeȝ, 280  
 Al þe gayne þow me gef, as god mon schulde.  
 Þat oþer munt for þe morne, mon, I þe profered,  
 Þou kyssedes my clere wyf, þe cosseȝ me raȝteȝ.  
 For boȝe two here I þe bede bot two bare myntes  
 boute scape. 285  
 Trwe mon trwe restore,  
 Þenne þar mon drede no waȝe.  
 At þe þrid þou fayled þore,  
 And þerfor þat tappe ta þe.  
 For hit is my wede þat þou wereȝ, þat ilke wouen girdel, 290  
 Myn owen wyf hit þe weued, I wot wel forsoȝe.  
 Now know I wel þy cosses, and þy costes als,  
 And þe wowyng of my wyf: I wroȝt hit myseluen.  
 I sende hir to asay þe, and sothly me þynkkeȝ  
 On þe fautlest freke þat euer on fote ȝede. 295  
 As perle bi þe quite pese is of prys more,

So is Gawayn, in god fayth, bi oþer gay knyȝteȝ.  
 Bot here yow lakked a lyttel, sir, and lewte yow wonted ;  
 Bot þat watȝ for no wylyde werke, ne wowyng nauþer,  
 Bot for ȝe lufed your lyf ; þe lasse I yow blame.' 300  
 Þat oþer stif mon in study stod a gret whyle,  
 So agreued for greme he gryed withinne ;  
 Alle þe blode of his brest blende in his face,  
 Þat al he schrank for schome þat þe schalk talked.  
 Þe forme worde vpon folde þat þe freke meled : 305  
 'Corsed worth cowarddyse and couetyse boþe !  
 In yow is vylany and vyse þat vertue disstryeȝ.'  
 Þenne he kaȝt to þe knot, and þe kest lawseȝ,  
 Brayde broþely þe belt to þe burne seluen :  
 'Lo ! þer þe falssyng ! foule mot hit falle ! 310  
 For care of þy knokke cowardyse me taȝt  
 To acorde me with couetyse, my kynde to forsake,  
 Þat is larges and lewte þat longeȝ to knyȝteȝ.  
 Now am I fawty and falce, and ferde haf ben euer  
 Of trecherye and vntrawþe : boþe bityde sorȝe 315  
 and care !  
 I biknowe yow, knyȝt, here styлле,  
 Al fawty is my fare ;  
 Leteȝ me ouertake your wyлле  
 And efte I schal be ware.' 320  
 Thenn loȝe þat oþer leude, and lufflyly sayde :  
 'I halde hit hardily hole, þe harme þat I hade.  
 Þou art confessed so clene, beknownen of þy mysses,  
 And hatȝ þe penaunce apert of þe poynt of myn egge,  
 I halde þe polysed of þat plyȝt, and pured as clene 325  
 As þou hadeȝ neuer forfeȝed syþen þou watȝ fyrst borne ;  
 And I gif þe, sir, þe gurdel þat is golde-hemmed,  
 For hit is grene as my goun. Sir Gawayne, ȝe maye  
 þenk vpon þis ilke þrepe, þer þou forth þryngeȝ  
 322 hardily] hardilyly MS.

# 56 V. SIR GAWAYNE AND THE GRENE KNIGHT

Among prynces of prys; and þis a pure token 330  
 Of þe chaunce at þe grene chapel of cheualrous knyȝteȝ.  
 And ȝe schal in þis nwe ȝer aȝayn to my woneȝ,  
 And we schyn reuel þe remnaunt of þis ryche fest  
 ful bene.'

þer laȝed hym fast þe lord, 335  
 And sayde ' With my wyf, I wene,  
 We schal yow wel acorde,  
 þat watȝ your enmy kene.'

'Nay, for soȝe,' quod þe segge, and sesed hys helme,  
 And hatȝ hit of hendely, and þe haȝel þonkkeȝ, 340  
 'I haf soiornd sadly; sele yow bytyde!

And He ȝelde hit yow ȝare þat ȝarkkeȝ al menskes!  
 And comaundeȝ me to þat cortays, your comlych fere,  
 Boȝe þat on and þat oȝer myn honoured ladyeȝ,  
 þat þus hor knyȝt wyth hor kest han koyntly bigyled. 345  
 Bot hit is no ferly þaȝ a fole madde,

And þurȝ wyles of wymmen be wonen to sorȝe,  
 For so watȝ Adam in erde with one bygyled,  
 And Salamon with fele sere, and Samson eftsoneȝ  
 Dalyda dalt hym hys wyrde, and Dauyth þerafter 350  
 Watȝ blended with Barsabe, þat much bale þoled.

Now þese were wrathed wyth her wyles, hit were a wyne  
 huge

To luf hom wel, and leue hem not, a leude þat coupe.  
 For þes wer forne þe freest, þat folȝed alle þe sele  
 Excellently of alle þyse oȝer vnder heuenryche 355  
 þat mused;

And alle þay were biwyled  
 With wymmen þat þay vsed.  
 þaȝ I be now bigyled,  
 Me þink me burde be excused.' 360

## VI

### THE PEARL

ABOUT 1375.

The facts leading to the presumption that *Pearl* and *Sir Gawayne* are by the same author have been mentioned in the prefatory note to *Sir Gawayne*. But the poems are markedly different in subject and tone. *Pearl*, like Chaucer's *Death of Blanche the Duchess*, is an elegy cast in the vision form made popular by the *Roman de la Rose*. The subject is a little girl, who died before she was two years old, and the treatment is deeply religious. Her death is symbolized as the loss of a pearl without spot, that slipped from its owner's hand through the grass into the earth.

On a festival day in August, the poet, while mourning his loss, falls asleep on his child's grave. His spirit passes to a land of flowers and rich fruits, where birds of flaming hues sing incomparably, where the cliffs are of crystal and beryl, and a river runs in a bed of gleaming jewels. On the other side of the river, which is lovelier still, sits a maiden dressed all in white, with coronet and ornaments of pearl. The poet recognizes his lost child, but cannot call to her for wonder and dread, until she rises and salutes him. He complains that since her loss he has been a joyless jeweller. She rebukes him gently; she is not lost, but made safe and beautiful for ever. Overjoyed, he says he will cross the river and live with her in this paradise; but she warns him against such presumption, for since Adam's fall the river may be crossed only by the way of death. He is in despair to think that now that his Pearl is found, he must still live joyless, apart from her; but he is bidden to resign himself to God's will and mercy, because rebellion will avail him nothing.

At this point begins the argument on salvation by grace or salvation by works which is here reprinted.

The maiden then continues the discussion, explaining that 'the innocent are ay safe by right', and that only those who come as little children can win the bliss sought by the man who sold his all for a matchless pearl.

Next the poet asks whence her beauty comes, and what her office is. She replies that she is one of the brides of Christ, whom St. John in the Apocalypse saw arrayed for the bridal in the New Jerusalem. He asks to see their mansions, and by special grace is allowed to view the holy city from without. He sees it as St. John saw it, gleaming with gold, with its pillars of precious stone, its gates of pearl; its streets lighted by a divine radiance, so that there is no need of moon or sun. There is no church or chapel or temple there: God himself is the minister, and Christ is the sacrifice. Mortal eye could not bear the splendour, and he stood 'as styll as dased quayle'. At evening came the procession of the virgin brides of Christ, each bearing on her breast the pearl of perfect happiness. The Lamb leads them, in pearl-white robes, his side bleeding, his face rapt; while elders make obeisance, and angels sing songs of joy as He nears the throne of God.

Suddenly the poet sees his Pearl among her companions. Overcome with longing and delight, he tries to cross the river, only to wake in the garden where he fell asleep. Henceforth he is resigned to the pleasure of the Prince of Heaven.

The reader will be able to judge the author's poetical gift from the selection, which has been chosen as one of the less ornate passages. Even here the form distracts attention from the matter by its elaborateness. A difficult rime scheme is superimposed on the alliterative line; stanza is interlinked with stanza; each group of five stanzas is distinguished by a similar refrain, and bound to the preceding and following groups by repetition in the first and last lines. So too the close of the poem echoes the beginning. With such intricacy of plan, it is not surprising that the rime is sometimes forced, and the sense strained or obscure. It is rather a matter for wonder that, in so long a work, the author was able to maintain his marvellous technique without completely sacrificing poetry to metrical gymnastics.



The highly wrought, almost overwrought, effect is heightened when the poem is read as a whole. If *Piers Plowman* gives a realistic picture of the drabness of mediaeval life, *Pearl*, more especially in the early stanzas, shows a richness of imagery and a luxuriance in light and colour that seem scarcely English. Yet they have their parallels in the decorative art of the time—the elaborate carving in wood and stone; the rich colouring of tapestries, of illuminated books and painted glass; the designs of the jewellers, goldsmiths, and silversmiths, which even the notaries who made the old inventories cannot pass without a word of admiration. The *Pearl* reminds us of the tribute due to the artists and craftsmen of the fourteenth century.

The edition by E. V. Gordon, Oxford 1953, is handy. The minor edition by Sir I. Gollancz, 1921, includes a translation.

## THE PEARL, ll. 361–612.

(MS. Cotton Nero A X (about 1400).)

THEÑNE demed I to þat damyselle :

‘ Ne worþe no wrathþe vnto my Lorde,

If rapely <1> raue, spornande in spelle ;

My herte watȝ al wyth mysse remorde,

As wallande water gotȝ out of welle. 5

I do me ay in Hys myserecorde ;

Rebuke me neuer wyth wordeȝ felle,

Þaȝ I forloyne, my dere endorde,

Bot kȝpeȝ me kyndely your coumforde,

Pytosly þenkande vpon þysse : 10

Of care and me ȝe made acorde,

Þat er watȝ grounde of alle my blysse.

‘ My blysse, my bale, ȝe han ben boþe,

Bot much þe bygger ȝet watȝ my mon ;

Fro þou watȝ wroken fro vch a woþe, 15

I wyste neuer quere my perle watȝ gon.

9 kȝpeȝ] lyþeȝ MS

Now I hit se, now leþeȝ my loþe;  
 And, quen we departed, we wern at on;  
 God forbede we be now wroþe,  
 We meten so selden by stok oþer ston. 20  
 Þaȝ cortaysly ȝe carp con,  
 I am bot mol and maȝereȝ mysse;  
 Bot Crystes mersy, and Mary, and Ion,  
 Þise arn þe grounde of alle my blysse.

‘In blysse I se þe blyþely blent, 25  
 And I a man al mornyf mate;  
 ȝe take þeron ful lyttel tente,  
 Þaȝ I hente ofte harmeȝ hate.  
 Bot now I am here in your presente,  
 I wolde bysech, wythouten debate, 30  
 ȝe wolde me say in sobre asente  
 What lyf ȝe lede erly and late.  
 For I am ful fayn þat your astate  
 Is worþen to worschyp and wele, iwysse;  
 Of alle my ioy þe hyȝe gate 35  
 Hit is, *and* grounde of alle my blysse.’

‘Now blysse, burne, mot þe bytyde,’  
 Þen sayde þat lufsum of lyth and lere,  
 ‘And welcum here to walk and byde,  
 For now þy speche is to me dere. 40  
 Maysterful mod and hyȝe pryde,  
 I hete þe, arn heterly hated here.  
 My Lorde ne loueȝ not for to chyde,  
 For meke arn alle þat woneȝ Hym nere;  
 And when in Hys place þou schal apere, 45  
 Be dep deuote in hol mekenesse;  
 My Lorde þe Lamb loueȝ ay such chere,  
 Þat is þe grounde of alle my blysse.

'A blysfyl lyf þou says I lede;  
 Þou woldest know þerof þe stage. 50  
 Þow wost wel when þy perle con schede  
 I watȝ ful ȝong and tender of age;  
 Bot my Lorde þe Lombe, þurȝ Hys Godhede,  
 He toke myself to Hys maryage,  
 Corounde me quene in blysse to brede 55  
 In lenghe of dayeȝ þat euer schal wage;  
 And sesed in alle Hys herytage  
 Hys lef is, I am holy Hysse;  
 Hys prese, Hys prys, and Hys parage  
 Is rote and grounde of alle my blysse.' 60

'Blysfyl,' quod I, 'may þys be trwe?—  
 Dyspleseȝ not if I speke errour—  
 Art þou þe quene of heueneȝ blwe,  
 þat al þys worlde schal do honour?  
 We leuen on Marye þat grace of grewe, 65  
 þat ber a barne of vyrgynflour;  
 Þe croune fro hyr quo moȝt remwe  
 Bot ho hir passed in sum fauour?  
 Now, for synglerty o hyr dousour,  
 We calle hyr Fenyx of Arraby, 70  
 þat freles fleȝe of hyr fasor,  
 Lyk to þe quen of cortaysye.'

'Cortayse Quen,' þenne s(a)yde þat gaye,  
 Knelande to grounde, folde vp hyr face,  
 'Makeleȝ Moder and myrrest May, 75  
 Blessed Bygynner of vch a grace!  
 Þenne ros ho vp and con restay,  
 And speke me towarde in þat space:  
 'Sir, sele here porchaseȝ and fongeȝ pray,  
 Bot supplantoreȝ none wythinne þys place. 80  
 þat emperise al heueneȝ hatȝ,

And vrþe and helle in her bayly ;  
 Of erytage ȝet non wyl ho chace,  
 For ho is quen of cortaysye.

‘ The court of þe kyndom of God alyue 85  
 Hatȝ a property in hytself beyng :  
 Alle þat may þerinne aryue  
 Of alle þe reme is quen oþer kyng,  
 And neuer oþer ȝet schal depryue,  
 Bot vchon fayn of oþereȝ hafyng, 90  
 And wolde her corouneȝ wern worþe þo fyue  
 If possyble were her mending.  
 Bot my Lady, of quom Iesu con spryng,  
 Ho haldeȝ þe empyre ouer vus ful hyȝe ;  
 And þat dyspleseȝ non of oure gyng, 95  
 For ho is quene of cortaysye.

‘ Of courtaysye, as saytȝ Saynt Poule,  
 Al am we membreȝ of Iesu Kryst ;  
 As heued and arme and legg and naule  
 Temen to hys body ful trwe and t(r)yste, 100  
 Ryȝt so is vch a Krysten sawle  
 A longande lym to þe Mayster of myste  
 Þenne loke what hate oþer any gawle  
 Is tached oþer tyȝed þy lymmeȝ bytwyste :  
 Þy heued hatȝ nauþer greme ne gryste 105  
 On arme oþer fynger þaȝ þou ber byȝe :  
 So fare we alle wyth luf and lyste  
 To kyng and quene by cortaysye.’

‘ Cortaysé,’ quod I, ‘ I leue,  
 And charyté grete, be yow among, 110  
 Bot my speche þat yow ne greue,

þyself in heuen ouer hyȝ þou heue,

To make þe quen þat wat3 so 3onge.  
 What more honour mo3te he acheue 115  
 þat hade endured in worlde stronge,  
 And lyued in penaunce hys lyue3 longe,  
 Wyth bodyly bale hym blysse to byye?  
 What more worschyp mo3t he fonge,  
 þen corounde be kyng by cortaysé? 120

‘That cortaysé is to fre of dede,  
 3yf hyt be soth þat þou cone3 saye;  
 þou lyfed not two 3er in oure þede;  
 þou cowþe3 neuer God nauþer plese ne pray,  
 Ne neuer nawþer Pater ne Crede; 125  
 And quen mad on þe fyrst day!  
 I may not traw, so God me spede,  
 þat God wolde wryþe so wrange away;  
 Of countes, damysel, par ma fay!  
 Wer fayr in heuen to halde asstate, 130  
 Oper elle3 a lady of lasse aray;  
 Bot a quene!—hit is to dere a date.’

‘þer is no date of Hys godnesse,’  
 þen sayde to me þat worþy wy3te,  
 ‘For al is trawþe þat He con dresse, 135  
 And He may do no þynk bot ry3t,  
 As Mathew mele3 in your messe,  
 In sothful Gospel of God Almy3t,  
 In sample he can ful grayþely gesse,  
 And lykne3 hit to heuen ly3te: 140

“My regne,” He sayt3, “is lyk on hy3t  
 To a lorde þat hade a uyne, I wate.  
 Of tyme of 3ere þe terme wat3 ty3t,  
 To labor vyne wat3 dere þe date.

“Pat date of ȝere wel knawe þys hyne.

þe lorde ful erly vp he ros,

To hyre werkmen to hys vyne,

And fyndeȝ þer summe to hys porpos.

Into acorde þay con declyne

For a pené on a day, and forth þay gotȝ,

150

Wryþen and worchen and don gret pyne,

Keruen and caggen and man hit clos.

Aboute vnder, þe lorde to marked totȝ,

And ydel men stande he fyndeȝ þerate.

‘Why stande ȝe ydel?’ he sayde to þos;

155

‘Ne knawe ȝe of þis day no date?’

“‘Er date of daye hider arn we wonne;’

So watȝ al samen her answar soȝt;

‘We haf standen her syn ros þe sunne,

And no mon byddeȝ vus do ryȝt noȝt.’

160

‘Gos into my vyne, dotȝ þat ȝe conne,’

So sayde þe lorde, and made hit toȝt;

‘What resonabele hyre be naȝt be runne

I yow pay in dede and þoȝte.’

Þay wente into þe vyne and wroȝte,

165

And al day þe lorde þus ȝede his gate,

And nw men to hys vyne he broȝte,

Welneȝ wyl day watȝ passed date.

“At þe date of day of euensonge,

On oure byfore þe sonne go down,

170

He seȝ þer ydel men ful stronge,

And sa(y)de to hem wyth sobre soun:

‘Wy stonde ȝe ydel þise dayeȝ longe?’

Þay sayden her hyre watȝ nawhere boun.

‘Gotȝ to my vyne, ȝemen ȝonge,

175

And wyrkeȝ and dotȝ þat at ȝe moun.’

164 pay] pray *MS.*

169 date of day] day of date *MS.*

172 hem] hen *MS.*

Sone þe worlde bycom wel broun,  
 Þe sunne wat3 doun, and hit wex late;  
 To take her hyre he mad sumoun;  
 Þe day wat3 al apassed date. 180

“ The date of þe daye þe lorde con know,  
 Called to þe reue: ‘ Lede, pay þe meyny;  
 Gyf hem þe hyre þat I hem owe;  
 And fyrre, þat non me may reprené,  
 Set hem alle vpon a rawe, 185  
 And gyf vchon ilyche a peny;  
 Bygyn at þe laste þat stande3 lowe,  
 Tyl to þe fyrste þat þou atteny.’  
 And þenne þe fyrst bygonne to pleny,  
 And sayden þat þay hade trauayled sore: 190  
 ‘ Þese bot on oure hem con streny;  
 Vus þynk vus o3e to take more.

“ ‘ More haf we serued, vus þynk so,  
 Þat suffred han þe daye3 hete,  
 Þenn þyse þat wro3t not hourez two, 195  
 And þou dot3 hem vus to counterfete.’  
 Þenne sayde þe lorde to on of þo:  
 ‘ Frende no waning I wyl þe 3ete;  
 Take þat is þyn owne and go.  
 And I hyred þe for a peny agrete, 200  
 Quy bygynnez þou now to þrete?  
 Wat3 not a pené þy couenaunt þore?  
 Fyrre þen couenaunde is no3t to plete.  
 Wy schalte þou þenne ask more?

“ ‘ More weþer flouylyt is me my gyfte 205  
 To do wyth myn quat so me lykez?  
 Oþer elle3 þyn y3e to lyþer is lyfte  
 For I am goude and non byswykez?’

178 and] & & *MS.*

186 ilyche] ilyche *MS.*

'Þus schal I,' quod Kryste, 'hit skyft.  
 Þe laste schal be þe fyrst þat strykeþ, 210  
 And þe fyrst be laste, be he neuer so swyft;  
 For mony ben calle(d), þaþ fewe be mykeþ.'"  
 Þus pore men her part ay pykeþ,  
 Þaþ þay com late and lyttel wore;  
 And þaþ her sweng wyth lyttel atslykeþ, 215  
 Þe merci of God is much þe more.

'More haf I of ioye and blysse hereinne,  
 Of ladyschyp gret and lyueþ blom,  
 Þen alle þe wyþeþ in þe worlde myȝt wyne  
 By þe way of ryȝt to aske dome. 220  
 Wheþer welnygh now I con bygynne—  
 In euentyde into þe vyne I come—  
 Fyrst of my hyre my Lorde con mynne,  
 I watþ payed anon of al and sum.  
 ȝet oþer þer werne þat toke more tom, 225  
 Þat swange and swat for long ȝore,  
 Þat ȝet of hyre no þynk þay nom,  
 Paraunter noȝt schal toȝere more.'

Then more I meled and sayde apert:  
 'Me þynk þy tale vnresounable;  
 Goddeþ ryȝt is redy and euermore rert,  
 Oþer Holy Wryt is bot a fable;  
 In Sauter is sayd a verce ouerte  
 Þat spekeþ a poynt determynable:  
 "Þou quyteþ vchon as hys desserte, 235  
 Þou hyȝe Kyng ay pretermynable."  
 Now he þat stod þe long day stable,  
 And þou to payment com hym byfore,  
 Þenne þe lasse in werke to take more able,  
 And euer þe lenger þe lasse þe more.' 240



‘Of more and lasse in Godeȝ ryche,’  
þat gentyl sayde, ‘lys no ioparde,  
For þer is vch mon payed ilyche,  
Wheþer lyttel oþer much be hys rewarde,  
For þe gentyl Cheuentayn is no chyche; 245  
Queþersoewer He dele nesch oþer harde,  
He laueȝ Hys gyfteȝ as water of dyche,  
Oþer goteȝ of golf þat neuer charde.  
Hys fraunchyse is large þat euer dard  
To Hym þat matȝ in synne rescoghe; 250  
No blysse betȝ fro hem reparde,  
For þe grace of God is gret inoghe.

243 ilyche] inlyche *MS.*

## VII

# THE GEST HYSTORIALE OF THE DESTRUCTION OF TROY

ABOUT 1375.

The Fall of Troy was one of the most popular subjects of mediaeval story. Lydgate wrote a *Troy Book* about 1420; fragments of another are attributed to 'Barbour', whose identity with the author of *The Bruce* has been questioned; a third version, anonymous, is known as the *Laud Troy Book*; and Caxton chose as the first work to be printed in English the *Recuyell of the Historyes of Troye* (about 1474). More famous than any of these full histories are two single stories detached from the cycle: Jason's Quest of the Golden Fleece, which is admirably told by Gower in the fifth book of his *Confessio Amantis*; and the Love of Troilus and Cressida, which gave a theme both to Chaucer and to Shakespeare.

The *Gest Hystoriale of the Destruction of Troy*, from which our extracts are taken, is a free rendering of the prose *Historia Troiana* finished in 1287 by Guido de Columna (most probably the modern Terranova in Sicily). The translation, which appears to have been made in the North or North-West Midlands in the second half of the fourteenth century, is preserved only in an imperfect fifteenth-century MS. at the Hunterian Museum, Glasgow. In the Early English Text Society's print, edited by Panton and Donaldson, the text extends to over 14,000 lines.

The table of contents prefixed to the MS. promises '*the nome of the knyght þat causet it [sc. the story] to be made, and the nome of bym that translatid it out of Latyn into Englysshe*'; but the extant MS. does not fulfil the promise. The execution suggests a set

task and a journeyman poet. Phrases are repeated carelessly; there is a great deal of padding; the versification is monotonous; and the writer is too often at the mercy of the alliteration to maintain a serious level. Yet he is not a slavish or a dull translator. The more romantic elements of the story, such as the matter of the *Odyssey*, had already been whittled away in his original, and he shows little desire or capacity to restore them. But he knew as well as the Old English poets the forcefulness of alliterative verse in scenes of violence, and describes with unflagging zest and vigour the interminable battles of the siege, and storms such as that which wrecked the fleet of Ajax.

The Prologue is a curious example of the pseudo-critical attitude of the Middle Ages. Homer is despised as a teller of impossible tales, and a partisan of the Greeks,—for Hector is the popular hero of the mediaeval versions. The narratives of Dares Phrygius and Dictys Cretensis, products of the taste for fictitious history that spread westward from Greek-speaking lands in the fourth and following centuries, are accepted as reliable documents; and Guido de Columna as their authoritative literary interpreter. No mention is made of Benoît de Sainte-Maure, whose *Roman de Troie*, written in French about 1184, served as source to Guido, and, directly or indirectly, as inspiration to the whole body of Western writers who dealt with the ‘Matter of Troy’. For these lapses the English translator need not be held responsible. On the merits of Homer, Dares, Dictys, and Guido de Columna, he probably accepted without question the word of his master Guido.

### PROLOGUE.

MAISTUR in magesté, Maker of alle,  
 Endles and on, euer to last !  
 Now, God, of þi grace, graunt me þi helpe,  
 And wysshe me with wyt þis werke for to ende  
 Of aunters ben olde of aunsetris nobill,  
 And slydyn vppon shlepe by slomeryng of age ;

Of stithe men in stoure, strongest in armes,  
 And wisest in wer, to wale in hor tyme,  
 Þat ben drepit with deth, and þere day paste,  
 And most out of mynd for þere mecull age. 10  
 Sothe stories ben stoken vp, and straught out of mynde,  
 And swolowet into swym by swiftenes of yeres,  
 For new þat ben now next at our hond,  
 Breuyt into bokes for boldyng of hertes,  
 On lusti to loke with lightnes of wille, 15  
 Cheuyt throughe chaunce and chaungyng of peopull;  
 Sum tru for to traist, triet in þe ende,  
 Sum feynit o fere and ay false vnder.

Yche wegh as he will warys his tyme,  
 And has lykyng to lerne þat hym list after. 20  
 But olde stories of stithe þat astate helde  
 May be solas to sum þat it segh neuer,  
 Be wrytyng of wees þat wist it in dede,  
 With sight for to serche of hom þat suet after,  
 To ken all the crafte how þe case felle 25  
 By lokyng of letturs þat lefte were of olde.

Now of Troy for to telle is myn entent euyn,  
 Of the stoure and þe stryffe when it distroyet was.  
 Þof fele yeres bene faren syn þe fight endid,  
 And it meuyt out of mynd, myn hit I thinke, 30  
 Alss wise men haue writen the wordes before,  
 Left it in Latyn for lernyng of vs.

But sum poyetis full prist þat put hom þerto  
 With fablis and falshed fayned þere speche,  
 And made more of þat mater þan hom maister were. 35  
 Sum lokyt ouer litle, and lympit of the sothe.  
 Amonges þat menye, to myn hym be nome,  
 Homer was holden haithill of dedis  
 Qwiles his dayes enduret, derrist of other,

þat with the Grekys was gret, and of Grice comyn. 40  
 He feynet myche fals was neuer before wrought,  
 And turnet þe truth, trust ye non other.  
 Of his trifuls to telle I haue no tome nowe,  
 Ne of his feynit fare þat he fore with :  
 How goddes foght in the filde, folke as þai were ! 45  
 And other errours vnable, þat after were knownen,  
 That poyetis of prise have preuyt vntrew :  
 Ouyde and othir þat onest were ay,  
 Virgille þe virtuus, verrit for nobill,  
 Thes dampnet his dedys, and for dull holdyn. 50  
 But þe truth for to telle, and þe text euyn,  
 Of þat fight, how it felle in a few yeres,  
 þat was clanly compilet with a clerke wise,  
 On Gydo, a gome þat graidly hade soght,  
 And wist all þe werkes by wegges he hade, 55  
 That bothe were in batell while the batell last,  
 And euþer sawte and assembly see with þere een.  
 Thai wrote all þe werkes wrought at þat tyme  
 In letturs of þere langage, as þai lernede hade :  
 Dares and Dytes were duly þere namys. 60  
 Dites full dere was dew to the Grekys,  
 A lede of þat lond, and logede hom with.  
 The tother was a tulke out of Troy selfe,  
 Dares, þat duly the dedys behelde.  
 Aither breuyt in a boke on þere best wise, 65  
 That sithen at a sité somyn were founden,  
 After, at Atthenes, as aunter befell.  
 The whiche bokes barely, bothe as þai were,  
 A Romayn ouerraght, and right hom hymselfe,  
 That Cornelius was cald to his kynde name. 70  
 He translated it into Latyn for likyng to here,  
 But he shope it so short þat no shalke might  
 Haue knowlage by course how þe case felle ;

For he brought it so breff, and so bare leuyt,  
 þat no lede might have likyng to loke þerappon; 75  
 Till þis Gydo it gate, as hym grace felle,  
 And declaret it more clere, and on clene wise.

In this shall faithfully be founden, to the fer ende,  
 All þe dedis bydene as þai done were:  
 How þe groundes first grew, and þe grete hate, 80  
 Bothe of torfer and tene þat hom tide aftur.  
 And here fynde shall ye faire of þe felle peopull:  
 What kynges þere come of costes aboute;  
 Of dukes full doughty, and of derffe erles,  
 That assemblid to þe citie þat sawte to defend; 85  
 Of þe Grekys þat were gedret how gret was þe nowmber,  
 How many knyghtes þere come, and kynges enarmede,  
 And what dukes thedur droghe for dedis of were;  
 What shippes þere were shene, and shalkes within,  
 Bothe of barges and buernes þat broght were fro Grese; 90  
 And all the batels on bent þe buernes betwene;  
 What duke þat was dede throughe dyntes of hond,  
 Who fallen was in fylde, and how it fore after.  
 Bothe of truse and of trayne þe truthe shalt þu here,  
 And all the ferlies þat fell, vnto the ferre ende. 95

Fro this prologe I passe, and part me þerwith.  
 Frayne will I fer, and fraist of þere werkes,  
 Meue to my mater, and make here an ende.

EXPLICIT PROLOGUE.

THE XXXI BOKE: OF THE PASSAGE OF THE  
 GREKYS FRO TROY (ll. 12463-12547).

Hyt fell thus, by fortune, þe fairest of þe yere  
 Was past to the point of the pale wintur. 100  
 Heruest, with the heite and the high sun,  
 Was comyn into colde, with a course low.

Trees, thurgh tempestes, tynde hade þere leues,  
 And briddes abatid of hor brem songe;  
 The wynde of the west wackenet aboue, 105  
 Blowyng full bremly o the brode ythes;  
 The clere aire ouercast with cloudys full thicke,  
 With mystes full merke mynget with showres.  
 Flodes were felle thurgh fallying of rayne,  
 And wintur vp wacknet with his wete aire. 110

The gret nauy of the Grekes and the gay kynges  
 Were put in a purpos to pas fro the toune.  
 Sore longit þo lordis hor londys to se,  
 And dissiret full depely, doutyng no wedur.  
 þai counted no course of the cold stormys, 115  
 Ne the perellis to passe of the pale windes.  
 Hit happit hom full hard in a hondqwile,  
 And mony of þo mighty to misse of hor purpos.

Thus tho lordes in hor longyng laghton þe watur,  
 Shotton into ship mony shene knightes, 120  
 With the tresowre of þe toune þai token before,  
 Relikes full rife, and miche ranke godes.  
 Clere was the course of the cold flodis,  
 And the firmament faire, as fell for the wintur.  
 Thai past on the pale se, puld vp hor sailes, 125  
 Hadyn bir at þere backe, and the bonke leuyt.  
 Foure dayes bydene, and hor du nyghtis,  
 Ful soundly þai sailed with seasonable windes.

The fyft day fuersly fell at the none,  
 Sodonly the softe winde vnsobberly blew; 130  
 A myste and a merkenes myngit togedur;  
 A thonder and a thicke rayne þrublet in the skewes,  
 With an ugsom noise, noy for to here;  
 All flasshet in a fire the firmament ouer;  
 Was no light but a laite þat launchit aboue: 135  
 Hit skirmyt in the skewes with a skyre low,

Thurgh the claterand clowdes clos to the heuyn,  
 As the welkyn shuld walt for wodenes of hete;  
 With blastes full bigge of the breme wyndes,  
 Walt vp the waghes vpon wan hilles. 140

Stith was the storme, stird all the shippes,  
 Hoppit on hegh with heste of the flodes.  
 The sea was vnsobber, sondrit the nauy,  
 Walt ouer waghes, and no way held,  
 Depertid the pepull, pyne to behold, 145  
 In costes vnkowthe; cut down pere sailes,  
 Ropis al torochit, rent vp the hacches,  
 Topcastell ouerturnyt, takelles were lost.

The night come onone, noye was the more!  
 All the company cleane of the kyng Telamon, 150  
 With pere shippes full shene, and þe shire godis,  
 Were brent in the bre with the breme lowe  
 Of the leymonde laite þat launchit fro heuyn,  
 And euyn drownet in the depe, dukes and other!

Oelius Ajax, as aunter befelle, 155  
 Was stad in the storme with the stith windes,  
 With his shippes full shene and the shire godes.  
 Thrifty and þriuaund, thretty and two  
 There were brent on the buerne with the breme low,  
 And all the freikes in the flode floterand aboue. 160

Hymseluyn in the sea sonkyn belyue,  
 Swalprit and swam with swyngyng of armys.  
 3et he launchet to lond, and his lyf hade,  
 Bare of his body, bretfull of water,  
 In the slober and the slicche slongyn to londe; 165  
 There he lay, if hym list, the long night ouer,  
 Till the derke was done, and the day sprang;  
 Pare sum of his sort, þat soght were to lond  
 And than wonen of waghes, with wo as þai might,



# THE DESTRUCTION OF TROY

75

Laited þere lord on the laund-syde, 170

If hit fell hym by fortune the flodes to passe.

þan found þai the freike in the some lye,

And comford hym kyndly, as þere kyd lord ;

With worship and wordes wan hym to fote.

Bothe faillet hym the fode and the fyne clothes. 175

Thus þere goddes with gremþ with þe Grekes fore,

Mighty Myner(u)a, of malis full grete,

For Telamon, in tene, tid for to pull

Cassandra the cleane out of hir cloise temple.

Thus hit fell hom by fortune of a foule ende, 180

For greuyng þere goddes in hor gret yre.

Oftsythes men sayn, and sene is of olde,

þat all a company is cumbrit for a cursed shrewe.

171 hym] hom MS.

## VIII

### PIERS PLOWMAN

(1362-1400)

By WILLIAM LANGLAND

Recent criticism of *Piers Plowman* has done more to weaken the hold of opinions once generally accepted than to replace them by others better founded. It is still most probable that 'Long Will', who is more than once mentioned in the text as the poet, was William Langland. The earliest external evidence of his home and parentage is given in a fifteenth-century note in MS. Dublin D 4. 1, of which both the matter and the vile Latinity bear the stamp of genuineness: 'Memorandum quod Stacy de Rokayle, pater Willielmi de Langlond, qui Stacius fuit generosus, et morabatur in Schiptone under Whicwode, tenens domini le Spenser in comitatu Oxon., qui praedictus Willielmus fecit librum qui vocatur Perys Ploughman.' Shipton-under-Wychwood is near Burford in Oxfordshire. The poem shows familiarity with the Malvern Hills and the streets of London; but it is hard to say how much is fact and how much is fiction in the references to Long Will in the text itself, more especially the description of his London life added as the Sixth Passus in Version C, and reproduced here as the second extract.

Since Skeat's edition for the Early English Text Society, the many manuscripts have been grouped into three main types. The shortest, or A-text, appears from internal evidence to have been written about 1362. The B-text (about 1377) has the most compact manuscript tradition. It is distinguished by considerable additions throughout, and by the reconstruction and expansion of the visions of Dowel, Dobet, Dobest, which make up the second half of the poem. The C-text, the latest and fullest form, appears

to have been completed in the last decade of the fourteenth century.

Until recently it has been assumed that these three versions represent progressive revisions by the author. But Professor Manly has found considerable support for his view that more than one writer—perhaps as many as five—had a share in the work. For the present, judgement on this question, and on the intricate problem of the relations of the different versions, is suspended until the results of a complete re-examination of all the MSS. are available. It would not be surprising to find that even when this necessary work is done differences of opinion on the larger questions remain as acute as ever.

It is impossible in short space to give an outline of the whole work, which describes no less than eleven visions. The structure is loose, and allegory is developed or dropped with disconcerting abruptness, for the writer does not curb his vigorous imagination in the interests of formal correctness.

The first part is the best known. On a May morning the poet falls asleep on the Malvern Hills and sees a 'Field full of Folk', where all classes of men are busy about their occupations, more particularly the nefarious occupations that engage the attention of the moralist. Holy Church explains that a high tower in the Field is the home of Truth; and that a 'deep dale' is the Castle of Care, where Wrong dwells with the wicked. She points out Falseness, who is about to marry Lady Meed (i.e. Reward, whether deserved reward or bribe). Lady Meed and her company are haled before the King, who, with Reason and Conscience as his guides, decides her case, and upholds the plea of Peace against Wrong.

The second vision is prefaced (in the C-text only) by the passage printed as the second selection. The poet falls asleep again, and sees Conscience preaching to the people in the Field. Representatives of the Seven Deadly Sins are vividly described. They are brought to penitence, and all set out in search of Truth. But no one knows the way. A palmer who wears the trophies of many pilgrimages to distant saints is puzzled by their inquiries, for he has never heard of pilgrims seeking Truth. Then Peter the Plowman comes forward and explains the way in allegorical

terms. Here the first extract begins. The second vision closes with a general pardon given by Truth to Piers Plowman in this simple form :

Do wel, and haue wel, and God shal haue þi sowle ;  
And do yuel, and haue yuel, hope þow non other  
But after þi ded-day þe Deuel shal haue þi sowle.

The several visions of the second part make up the lives of Dowel, Dobet, and Dobest. Piers Plowman is there identified with Christ, and the poem ends with Conscience, almost overcome by sin, setting out resolutely in search of Piers.

First impressions of mediaeval life are usually coloured by the courtly romances of Malory and his later refiners. Chaucer brings us down to reality, but his people belong to a prosperous middle-class world, on holiday and in holiday mood. *Piers Plowman* stands alone as a revelation of the ignorance and misery of the lower classes, whose multiplied grievances came to a head in the Peasants' Revolt of 1381. It must not be supposed that Langland idealized the labourers. Their indolence and improvidence are exposed as unsparingly as the vices of the rich ; and Piers himself is not so much a representative of the English workman in the fourteenth century as a character drawn straight from the Gospels. Still, such an eager plea for humbleness, simplicity, and honest labour, could not fail to encourage the political hopes of the poor, and we see in John Ball's letter (p. 160) that 'Piers Plowman' had become a catchword among them. The poet himself rather deprecates political action. His satire is directed against the general slackening of the bonds of duty that marked the last years of an outworn system of society. For the remedy of abuses he appeals not to one class but to all : king, nobles, clergy, and workers must model their lives on the pattern of the Gospels.

#### A. FROM THE B-TEXT, PASSUS VI.

Bodleian MS. Laud 581 (about 1400).

'THIS were a wikked way, but whoso hadde a gyde  
That wolde folwen vs eche a fote : ' þus þis folke hem  
mened.

Quatz Perkyn þe plouman : ' Bi Seynt Peter of Rome !

I haue an half-acre to eryl bi þe heigh way.

Hadde I cried þis half-acre, and sowne it after, 5

I wolde wende with ȝow, and þe way teche.'

'Þis were a longe lettynge,' quod a lady in a sklayre;

'What sholde we wommen worche þerewhiles?'

'Somme shal sowe <þe> sakke,' quod Piers, 'for shedyng  
of þe whete;

And ȝe, louely ladyes, with ȝoure longe fynGRES, 10

þat ȝe han silke and sendal to sowe, whan tyme is,

Chesibles for chapelleyneS, cherches to honoure;

Wyues and wydweS wolle and flex spynneth,

Maketh cloth, I conseilte ȝow, and kenneth so ȝowre  
douȝtres;

þe nedý and þe naked, nymmeth hede how hii liggeth, 15

And casteth hem clothes, for so comaundeth Treuthe,

For I shal lene hem lyfode, but ȝif þe londe faille,

Flesshe and bred, bothe to riche and to pore,

As longe as I lyue, for þe Lordes loue of heuene.

And alle manere of men þat þow mete and drynke lyb-  
beth, 20

Helpith hym to worche wiȝtliche þat wynneth ȝowre fode.'

'Bi Crist!' quod a knyȝte þo, 'he kenneth vs þe best;

Ac on þe teme trewly tauȝte was I neuere.

Ac kenne me,' quod þe knyȝte, 'and, bi Cryst! I wil assaye.'

'Bi seynt Poule!' quod Perkyn, 'ȝe profre ȝow so faire, 25

þat I shal swynke, and swete, and sowe for vs bothe,

And oþer laboures do for þi loue al my lyf tyme,

In couenaunt þat þow kepe Holi Kirke and myselue

Fro wastoures and fro wykked men þat þis worlde struyeth;

And go hunte hardiliche to hares and to foxes, 30

To bores and to brockes þat breketh adown myne hegges,

And go affaite þe faucones wilde foules to kille,

For suche cometh to my croft, and croppeth my whete.'

6 wolde] wil MS.

Curteislich þe knyȝte þanne comsed þise wordes :

'By my power, Pieres,' quod he, 'I pliȝte þe my treuthe 35  
To fulfille þis forward, þowȝ I fiȝte sholde ;  
Als longe as I lyue, I shal þe mayntene.'

'Ȝe, and ȝit a poynt,' quod Pieres, 'I preye ȝow of more ;  
Loke Ȝe tene no tenaunt, but Treuthe wil assent.

And þowgh Ȝe mowe amercy hem, late Mercy be taxoure,  
And Mekenesse þi mayster, maugré Medes chekes ; 41

And þowgh pore men profre ȝow presentis and ȝiftis,  
Nym it nauȝte, an auenture Ȝe mowe it nauȝte deserue ;

For þow shalt ȝelde it aȝein at one ȝeres ende  
In a ful perillous place, Purgatorie it hatte. 45

And mysbede nouȝte þi bondemen, þe better may þow  
spede ;

Þowgh he be þyn vnderlynge here, wel may happe in  
heuene

þat he worth worthier sette and with more blisse :

*Amice, ascende superius.*

For in charnel atte chirche cherles ben yuel to knowe, 50

Or a kniȝte fram a knaue þere,—knowe þis in þin herte.

And þat þow be trewe of þi tonge, and tales þat þow  
hatie,

But if þei ben of wisdomes or of witte, þi werkmen to  
chaste.

Holde with none harlotes, ne here nouȝte her tales,

And nameliche atte mete suche men eschue, 55

For it ben þe deueles disoures, I do þe to vnderstande.'

'I assente, bi Seynt Iame !' seyde þe kniȝte þanne,

'Forto worche bi þi wordes þe while my lyf dureth.'

'And I shal apparaille me,' quod Perkyn, 'in pilgrimes  
wise,

And wende with ȝow I wil til we fynde Treuthe, 60

And cast on me my clothes, yclouted and hole,

My cokeres and my coffes, for colde of my nailles,

And hange myn hoper at myn hals, in stede of a scrippe.  
 A busschel of bredcorne brynge me þerinne,  
 For I wil sowe it myself; and sitthenes wil I wende 65  
 To pylgrymage, as palmers don, pardoun forto haue.  
 Ac whoso helpeth me to erie or sowen here, ar I wende,  
 Shal haue leue, bi owre Lorde, to lese here in heruest,  
 And make hem mery þeremydde, maugré whoso bigruc-  
 cheth it.

And alkyn crafty men, þat konne lyuen in treuthe, 70  
 I shal fynden hem fode, þat feithfulliche libbeth.' . .

(Dame 'Worche-whan-tyme-is' Pieres wyf hiȝte;  
 His douȝter hiȝte 'Do-riȝte-so- or-þi-dame-shal-þe-bete';  
 His sone hiȝte 'Suffre-þi-souereynes- to-hauen-her-wille-,  
 Deme-hem-nouȝte-, for-, if-þow-doste-, þow-shalt-it-dere-  
 abugge.') 75

'Late God yworth with al, for so His worde techeth;  
 For now I am olde and hore, and haue of myn owen,  
 To penaunce and to pilgrymage I wil passe with þise  
 other.

Forþi I wil, or I wende, do wryte my biqueste.

*In Dei nomine, amen*, I make it myseluen. 80

He shal haue my soule þat best hath yserued it,  
 And fro þe fende it defende, for so I bileue,  
 Til I come to His acountes, as my *Credo* me telleth,  
 To haue a relees and a remissioun on þat rental I leue.  
 Þe kirke shal haue my caroigne and kepe my bones, 85  
 For of my corne and catel he craued þe tythe;  
 I payed it hym prestly, for peril of my soule,  
 Forthy is he holden, I hope, to haue me in his masse,  
 And mengen in his memorye amonge alle Crystene.

My wyf shal haue of þat I wan with treuthe, and nomore,  
 And dele amonge my douȝtres and my dere children; 91  
 For þowgh I deye todaye, my dettes ar quitte;  
 I bare home þat I borwed, ar I to bedde ȝede.

And with þe residue and þe remenaunte, bi þe rode of  
Lukes!

I wil worschip þerwith Treuthe bi my lyue, 95

And ben his pilgryme atte plow, for pore mennes sake.

My plow-fote shal be my pyk-staf, and picche atwo þe  
rotes,

And helpe my culter to kerue, and clense þe forwes.'

Now is Perkyn and his pilgrymes to þe plowe faren;  
To erie þis halue-acre holpyn hym manye. 100

Dikeres and delueres digged vp þe balkes;

þerewith was Perkyn apayed, and preysed hem faste.

Other werkemen þere were þat wrouȝten ful ȝerne;

Eche man in his manere made hymself to done,

And some, to plesse Perkyn, piked vp þe wedes. 105

At heighe pryme Peres lete þe plowe stonde,

To ouersen hem hymself, and whoso best wrouȝte

He shulde be huyred þerafter whan heruest-tyme come.

And þanne seten somme and songen atte nale,

And hulpen erie his half-acre with 'how! trollilolli!' 110

'Now, bi þe peril of my soule!' quod Pieres, al in pure  
tene,

'But ȝe arise þe rather, and rape ȝow to worche,

Shal no greyne þat groweth glade ȝow at nede;

And þough ȝe deye for dole, þe deuel haue þat reccheth!'

Tho were faitoures aferde, and feyned hem blynde; 115

Somme leyde here legges aliri, as suche loseles conneth,

And made her mone to Pieres, and preyde hym of grace:

'For we haue no lymes to laboure with, lorde, ygraced be ȝe!

Ac we preye for ȝow, Pieres, and for ȝowre plow bothe,

þat God of His grace ȝowre grayne multiplie, 120

And ȝelde ȝow of ȝowre almesse þat ȝe ȝiue vs here;

For we may nouȝte swynke ne swete, suche sikennesse vs  
eyleth.'

'If it be soth,' quod Pieres, 'þat ȝe seyne, I shal it sone  
asspye.'



3e ben wastoures, I wote wel, and Treuthe wote þe sothe,  
 And I am his olde hyne, and hiȝte hym to warne 125  
 Which þei were in þis worlde his werkemen appeyred.  
 3e wasten þat men wynnen with trauaille and with tene,  
 Ac Treuthe shal teche ȝow his teme to dryue,  
 Or 3e shal ete barly bred and of þe broke drynke.  
 But if he be blynde, or broke-legged, or bolted with yrnes,  
 He shal ete whete bred and drynke with myselue, 131  
 Tyl God of his goodnesse amendement hym sende.  
 Ac 3e myȝte trauaille as Treuthe wolde, and take mete and  
 huyre

To kepe kyne in þe felde, þe corne fro þe bestes,  
 Diken, or deluen, or dyngen vpon sheues, 135  
 Or helpe make mortar, or bere mukke afelde.  
 In lecherye an in losengerye 3e lyuen, and in sleuthe,  
 And al is þorw suffrance þat veniaunce ȝow ne taketh.

Ac ances and heremytes, þat eten but at nones,  
 And namore er morwe, myne almesse shul þei haue, 140  
 And of my catel to cope hem with þat han cloistres and  
 cherches.

Ac Robert Renne-aboute shal nouȝte haue of myne,  
 Ne posteles, but þey preche conne, and haue powere of  
 þe bisschop;

They shal haue payne and potage, and make himself at ese,  
 For it is an vnresonable religioun þat hath riȝte nouȝte of  
 certeyne.' 145

And þanne gan a Wastoure to wrath hym, and wolde haue  
 yfouȝte,

And to Pieres þe plowman he profered his gloue;  
 A Brytonere, a braggere, abosted Pieres als:—

'Wiltow or neltow, we wil haue owre wille  
 Of þi flowre and of þi flessche, secche whan vs liketh, 150  
 And make vs myrie þermyde, maugré þi chekes!'

130 or] and MS.

Thanne Pieres þe plowman pleyned hym to þe knyȝte,  
 To kepe hym, as couenaunte was, fram cursed shrewes,  
 And fro þis wastoures wolues-kynnes, þat maketh þe worlde  
 dere :

‘For þo waste, and wynnyn nouȝte, and þat ilke while 155  
 Worth neuere plenté amonge þe poeple þerwhile my plow  
 liggeth.’

Curteisly þe knyȝte þanne, as his kynde wolde,  
 Warned Wastoure, and wissed hym bettere,  
 ‘Or þow shalt abugge by þe lawe, by þe ordre þat I bere !’  
 ‘I was nouȝt wont to worche,’ quod Wastour, ‘and now  
 wil I nouȝt bigynne’, 160

And lete liȝte of þe lawe, and lasse of þe knyȝte,  
 And sette Pieres at a pees, and his plow bothe,  
 And manaced Pieres and his men ȝif þei mette eftsone.  
 ‘Now, by þe peril of my soule !’ quod Pieres, ‘I shal  
 apeyre ȝow alle !’

And houped after Hunger, þat herd hym atte firste : 165  
 ‘Awreke me of þise wastoures,’ quod he ‘þat þis worlde  
 schendeth !’

Hunger in haste þo hent Wastour bi þe mawe,  
 And wronge hym so bi þe wombe þat bothe his eyen  
 wattered.

He buffeted þe Britoner aboute þe chekes,  
 þat he loked like a lanterne al his lyf after. 170  
 He bette hem so bothe, he barste nere here guttes ;  
 Ne hadde Pieres with a pese-lof preyed Hunger to cesse,  
 They hadde ben doluen bothe, ne deme þow non other.  
 ‘Suffre hem lyue,’ he seyde ‘and lete hem ete with hogges,  
 Or elles benes and bren ybaken togideres, 175  
 Or elles melke and mene ale ;’ þus preyed Pieres for hem.

Faitoures for fere herof flowen into bernas,  
 And flapten on with flayles fram morwe til euen,  
 That Hunger was nouȝt so hardy on hem for to loke,

For a potful of peses þat Peres hadde ymaked. 180

An heep of heremites henten hem spades,  
And ketten here copes, and courtpies hem made,  
And wenten as werkemen with spades and with schoueles,  
And doluen and dykeden to dryue aweye Hunger.

Blynde and bedreden were botened a þousande, 185  
þat seten to begge syluer; sone were þei heled.

For þat was bake for Bayarde was bote for many hungry,  
And many a beggere for benes buxome was to swynke,  
And eche a pore man wel apayed to haue pesen for his  
huyre,

And what Pieres preyed hem to do as prest as a sperhauke.  
And þereof was Peres proude, and put hem to werke, 191  
And ȝaf hem mete as he myȝte aforth, and mesurable huyre.

þanne hadde Peres pité, and preyed Hunger to wende  
Home into his owne erde, and holden hym þere:  
'For I am wel awroke now of wastoures, þorw þi myȝte. 195

Ac I preye þe, ar þow passe,' quod Pieres to Hunger,  
'Of beggeres and of bidderes what best be <to> done?  
For I wote wel, be þow went, þei wil worche ful ille;  
For myschief it maketh þei beth so meke nouthe,  
And for defaute of her fode þis folke is at my wille. 200  
Þey are my bloody bretheren,' quod Pieres, 'for God bouȝte  
vs alle;

Treuthe tauȝte me ones to louye hem vchone,  
And to helpen hem of alle þinge ay as hem nedeth.  
And now wolde I witen of þe what were þe best, 204  
An how I myȝte amaistrien hem, and make hem to worche.'

'Here now,' quod Hunger 'and holde it for a wisdom:  
Bolde beggeres and bigge, þat mowe her bred biswynke,  
With houndes bred and hors bred holde vp her hertis,  
Abate hem with benes for bollyng of her wombe;  
And ȝif þe gomes grucche, bidde hem go swynke, 210  
And he shal soupe swettere whan he it hath deseruid.

And if þow fynde any freke, þat fortune hath appeyred  
 Or any maner fals men, fonde þow suche to cnowe;  
 Conforte hym with þi catel, for Crystes loue of heuene;  
 Loue hem and lene hem, so lawe of God techeth:— 215

*Alter alterius onera portate.*

And alle maner of men þat þow myzte asspye  
 That nedy ben and nauȝty, helpe hem with þi godis;  
 Loue hem, and lakke hem nouȝte; late God take þe  
 veniaunce;

Theigh þei done yuel, late þow God aworthe:— 220

*Michi vindictam, et ego retribuam.*

And if þow wil be graciouse to God, do as þe Gospel  
 techeth,

And bilow þe amonges low men; so shaltow lacche grace:—

*Facite vobis amicos de mamona iniquitatis.*

‘I wolde nouȝt greue God,’ quod Piers, ‘for al þe good  
 on grounde; 225

Mizte I synnelees do as þow seist?’ seyde Pieres þanne.

‘ȝe, I bihote þe,’ quod Hunger, ‘or ellis þe Bible lieth;  
 Go to Genesis þe gyaunt, þe engendroure of vs alle:—

“*In sudore* and swynke þow shalt þi mete tilye,  
 And laboure for þi lyfode,” and so owre Lorde hyȝte. 230

And Sapience seyth þe same, I seigh it in þe Bible:—

“*Piger pro frigore* no felde nolde tilye,

And þerfore he shal begge and bidde, and no man bete his  
 hunger.”

Mathew with mannes face mouthed þise wordis:—

þat *seruus nequam* had a nam, and for he wolde nouȝte  
 chaffare, 235

He had maugré of his maistre for euermore after,

And binam (hym) his mnam, for he ne wolde worche,

And ȝaf þat mnam to hym þat ten mnames hadde;

And with þat he seyde, þat Holi Cherche it herde,

“He þat hath shal haue, and helpe þere it nedeth, 240

And he þat nouȝt hath shal nouȝt haue, and no man hym  
helpe;

And þat he weneth wel to haue, I wil it hym bireue."

Kynde Wiit wolde þat eche a wyght wrouȝte,  
Or in dykyng, or in deluyng, or trauaillynge in preyer,es,  
Contemplatyf lyf or actyf lyf, Cryst wolde men wrouȝte. 245  
þe Sauter seyth in þe psalme of *Beati omnes*,  
þe freke þat fedeth hymself with his feythful laboure,  
He is blessed by þe boke, in body and in soule :—

*Labores manuum tuarum, etc.'*

'ȝet I prey ȝow,' quod Pieres, '*par charité!* and ȝe kunne  
Eny leef of lechecraft, lere it me, my dere. 251  
For somme of my seruauntȝ, and myself bothe,  
Of al a wyke worche nouȝt, so owre wombe aketh.'

'I wote wel,' quod Hunger, 'what sykenesse ȝow ey leth;  
ȝe han maunged ouermoch, and þat maketh ȝow grone. 255  
Ac I hote þe,' quod Hunger, 'as þow þyne hele wilnest,  
That þow drynke no day ar þow dyne somewhat.  
Ete nouȝte, I hote þe, ar hunger þe take,  
And sende þe of his sauce to sauoure with þi lippes;  
And kepe some tyl sopertyme, and sitte nouȝt to longe; 260  
Arise vp ar appetit haue eten his fulle.

Lat nouȝt Sire Surfait sitten at þi borde. . . .  
And ȝif þow diete þe þus, I dar legge myne eres  
þat Phisik shal his furred hodes for his fode selle,  
And his cloke of Calabre, with alle þe knappes of golde, 265  
And be fayne, bi my feith, his phisik to lete,  
And lerne to laboure with londe, for lyfode is swete;  
For morthereres aren mony leches, Lorde hem amende!  
þei do men deye þorw here drynkes, ar Destiné it wolde.'

'By Seynt Poule!' quod Pieres, 'þise aren profitable  
wordis. 270

Wende now, Hunger, whan þow wolt, þat wel be þow  
euere,

For this is a louely lessoun ; Lorde it þe forȝelde !'

'Byhote God,' quod Hunger, 'hennes ne wil I wende,  
Til I haue dyned bi þis day, and ydronke bothe.'

'I haue no peny,' quod Peres 'poletes forto bigge, 275

Ne neyther gees ne grys, but two grene cheses,

A fewe cruddes and creem, and an hauer-cake,

And two loues of benes and bran ybake for my fauntis ;

And ȝet I sey, by my soule, I haue no salt bacoun

Ne no kokeney, bi Cryst, coloppes forto maken. 280

Ac I haue percil, and porettes, and many koleplantes,

And eke a cow and a kalf, and a cart-mare

To drawe afelde my donge þe while þe drought lasteth.

And bi þis lyfode we mot lyue til Lammasse tyme ;

And bi þat I hope to haue heruest in my croft, 285

And þanne may I diȝte þi dyner as me dere liketh.'

Alle þe pore peple þo pesecoddes fetten,

Benes and baken apples þei brouȝte in her lappes,

Chibolles and cheruelles and ripe chiries manye,

And profred Peres þis present to plesse with Hunger. 290

Al Hunger eet in hast, and axed after more.

þanne pore folke for fere fedde Hunger ȝerne

With grene poret and pesen—to poysoun Hunger þei þouȝte.

By þat it neighed nere heruest, newe corne cam to chepynge ;

þanne was folke fayne, and fedde Hunger with þe

best, 295

With good ale, as Glotoun tauȝte, and gerte Hunger go

slepe.

And þo wolde Wastour nouȝt werche, but wandren aboute

Ne no begger ete bred that benes inne were,

But of coket, or clerematyn, or elles of clene whete

Ne none halpeny ale in none wise drynke, 300

But of þe best and of þe brounest þat in borch is to selle.

Laboreres þat haue no lande to lyue on but her handes,

Deyned nouȝt to dyne aday nyȝt-olde wortes ;

May no peny-ale hem paye, ne no pece of bakoun,  
 But if it be fresch flesch, other fische, fryed other bake, 305  
 And that *chaude* or *plus chaud*, for chillyng of here mawe.  
 And but if he be heighlich huyred, ellis wil he chyde,  
 And þat he was werkman wrouȝt waille þe tyme;  
 Aȝeines Catones conseil le comseth he to iangle:—

*Paupertatis onus pacienter ferre memento.* 310

He greueth hym aȝeines God, and gruccheth aȝeines resoun,  
 And þanne curseth he þe kynge, and al his conseil le after,  
 Suche lawes to loke, laboreres to greue.

Ac whiles Hunger was her maister, þere wolde none of hem  
 chyde,

Ne stryue aȝeines his statut, so sterneliche he loked. 315

Ac I warne ȝow, werkemen, wynneth while ȝe mowe,  
 For Hunger hide(r)ward hasteth hym faste,  
 He shal awake with water wastoures to chaste.  
 Ar fyue (ȝere) be fulfilled suche famyn shal aryse,  
 Thorwgh flodes and þourgh foule wederes frutes shul faille;  
 And so sayde Saturne, and sent ȝow to warne: 321

Whan ȝe se þe sonne amys, and two monkes hedes,  
 And a mayde haue þe maistrie, and multiplied bi eight,  
 þanne shal Deth withdrawe, and Derthe be Iustice,  
 And Dawe þe Dyker deye for hunger, 325  
 But if God of his goodnesse graunt vs a trewe.

## B. FROM THE C-TEXT, PASSUS VI, ll. 1-104.

MS. Phillips 8231 (about 1400).

Thus ich awaked, wot God, wanne ich wonede on Cornehulle,  
 Kytte and ich in a cote, cloped as a lollere,  
 And lytel *ylete* by, leyue me for soþe,  
 Among lollares of London and lewede heremytes;  
 For ich made of þo men as Reson me tauhte. 5

3 And a lytel ich let by MS.

For as ich cam by Conscience, wit Reson ich mette,  
 In an hote heruest, wenne ich hadde myn hele,  
 And lymes to labore with, and louede wel fare,  
 And no dede to do bote drynke and to slepe :  
 In hele and in vnité on me aposede, 10  
 Romyng in remembraunce, thus Reson me aratede :—  
 ‘Canstow seruen,’ he seide, ‘oþer synge in a church,  
 Oþer coke for my cokers, oþer to þe cart picche,  
 Mowe, oþer mowen, oþer make bond to sheues,  
 Repe, oþer be a repereyue, and aryse erliche, 15  
 Oþer haue an horne and be haywarde, and liggē oute  
 a nyghtes,

And kepe my corn in my croft fro pykers and þeeues ?  
 Oþer shappe shon oþer cloþes, oþer shep oþer kyn kepe,  
 (H)eggen oþer harwen, oþer swyn oþer gees dryue,  
 Oþer eny kyns craft þat to þe comune nudeþ, 20  
 Hem þat bedreden be bylyue to fynde ?’  
 ‘Certes,’ ich seyde, ‘and so me God helpe,  
 Ich am to waik to worche with sykkel oþer with sythe,  
 And to long, leyf me, lowe for to stoupe,  
 To worchen as a workeman eny wyle to dure.’ 25  
 ‘Thenne hauest þow londes to lyue by,’ quath Reson, ‘oþer  
 lynage riche

That fynden þe þy fode ? For an hydel man þow semest,  
 A spendour þat spende mot, oþer a spille-tyme,  
 Oþer beggest þy bylyue aboute ate menne hacches,  
 Oþer faitest vpon Frydays oþer feste-dayes in churches, 30  
 The wiche is lollarene lyf, þat lytel ys preysed  
 Þer Ryghtfulnesse rewardeþ ryght as men deserueþ :—

*Reddit unicuique iuxta opera sua.*

Oþer þow ert broke, so may be, in body oþer in membre,  
 Oþer ymaymed þow som myshap werby þow myȝt be ex-  
 cused ?’



'Wanne ich 3ong was,' quath ich, 'meny 3er hennes,  
 My fader and my frendes founden me to scole,  
 Tyl ich wiste wyterliche wat Holy Wryt menede,  
 And wat is best for þe body, as þe Bok telleþ,  
 And sykerest for þe soule, by so ich wolde continue. 40  
 And 3ut fond ich neuere, in faith, sytthen my frendes deyden,  
 Lyf þat me lyked, bote in þes longe clothes.  
 Hyf ich by labour sholde lyue and lyfode deseruen,  
 That labour þat ich lerned best þerwith lyue ich sholde :—

*In eadem uocatione qua uocati estis.* 45

And ich lyue in Londene and on Londen bothe ;  
 The lomes þat ich labour with and lyfode deserue  
 Ys *Paternoster*, and my Prymer, *Placebo* and *Dirige*,  
 And my Sauter som tyme, and my Seuene Psalmes.  
 Thus ich synge for hure soules of suche as me helpen, 50  
 And þo þat fynden me my fode vochen saf, ich trowe,  
 To be wolcome wanne ich come oþerwyle in a monthe,  
 Now with hym and now with hure ; and þusgate ich begge  
 Withoute bagge oþer botel bote my wombe one.  
 And also, moreouer, me þynkeþ, syre Reson, 55  
 Men sholde constreyne no clerke to knaue ne werkes ;  
 For by lawe of *Leuitici*, þat oure Lord ordeynede,  
 Clerkes þat aren crowned, of kynde vnderstondyng,  
 Sholde noþer swynke, ne swete, ne swere at enquestes,  
 Ne fyghte in no vauntwarde, ne hus fo greue :— 60

*Non reddas malum pro malo.*

For it ben aires of heuene alle þat ben crowned,  
 And in queer in churches Cristes owene mynestres :—

*Dominus pars hereditatis mee ; & alibi : Clementia non constringit.*

Hit bycomeþ for clerkus Crist for to seruen, 65  
 And knaues vncrowned to cart and to worche.

44 þerwith] þerhwit *MS.*    62 alle] and alle *MS.*    63 in churches]  
 and in kirkes *Ilchester MS.*

For shold no clerk be crouned bote yf he ycome were  
 Of franklens and free men, and of folke yweddede.  
 Bondmen and bastardes and beggers children,  
 Thuse bylongeþ to labour, and lordes children sholde seruen,  
 Bothe God and good men, as here degree askeþ ; 71  
 Some to synge masses, oþer sitten and wryte,  
 Rede and receyue þat Reson ouhte spende ;  
 And sith bondemenne barnes han be mad bisshopes,  
 And barnes bastardes han ben archidekenes, 75  
 And sopers and here sones for seluer han be knyghtes,  
 And lordene sones here laborers, and leid here rentes to  
 wedde,

For þe ryght of þes reame ryden aȝens oure enemys,  
 In confort of þe comune and þe kynges worshep,  
 And monkes and moniales, þat mendinauns sholden fynde, 80  
 Han mad here kyn knyghtes, and knyghtfees purchase(d),  
 Popes and patrones poure gentil blod refuseþ,  
 And taken Symondes sone seyntewarie to kepe.  
 Lyf-holynesse and loue han ben longe hennes,  
 And wole, til hit be wered out, or oþerwise ychaunged. 85  
 Forþy rebuke me ryght nouht, Reson, ich ȝow praye ;  
 For in my conscience ich knowe what Crist wolde þat ich  
 wrouhte.

Preyers of (a) parfyt man and penaunce discret  
 Ys þe leueste labour þat oure Lord pleseþ.  
*Non de solo,* ich seide, 'for soþe *uiuit homo*, 90  
*Nec in pane et pabulo*, þe *Paternoster* witnesseth :  
*Fiat uoluntas tua* fynt ous alle þynges.'  
 Quath Conscience, 'By Crist! ich can nat see this lyeþ ;  
 Ac it semeth nouht parfytynesse in cytees for to begge,  
 Bote he be obediencer to pryour oþer to mynstre.' 95  
 'That ys soth,' ich seide 'and so ich byknowe  
 That ich haue tynt tyme, and tyme mysspended ;

And ȝut, ich hope, as he þat ofte haueþ chaffared,  
 þat ay hath lost and lost, and at þe laste hym happed  
 He bouhte suche a bargayn 'ue was þe bet euere, 100  
 And sette hus lost at a lef at þe laste ende,  
 Suche a wynnyngge hym warth þorw wyrdes of hus grace:—

*Simile est regnum celorum thesauro abscondito in agro,  
 et cetera ;*

*Mulier que inuenit dragmam, et cetera ;*

So hope ich to haue of Hym þat his almyghty 105  
 A gobet of Hus grace, and bygynne a tyme  
 þat alle tymes of my tyme to profit shal turne.'

'Ich rede þe,' quath Reson þo 'rape þe to bygynne  
 þe lyf þat ys lowable and leel to þe soule'—  
 'ȝe, and continue,' quath Conscience ; and to þe churche ich  
 wente. 110

## IX

### MANDEVILLE'S TRAVELS

*Mandeville's Travels* were originally written in French, perhaps in 1356 or 1357. Their popularity was immediate, and Latin and English translations soon appeared. The English texts published show three forms. The first, imperfect, is the text of the early prints. The second, from Cotton MS. Titus C xvi (about 1400-25), was first printed in 1725, and is followed in the editions by Halliwell, 1839 and 1866, and by Hamelius, 1919. The third, from Egerton MS. 1982 (about 1400-25), has been edited for the Roxburghe Club by G. F. Warner, with the French text, and an excellent apparatus. Our selections follow the Cotton MS.

The *Travels* fall into two parts: (i) a description of the routes to the Holy Land, and an account of the Holy Places; (ii) a narrative of travel in the more distant parts of Asia. Throughout the author poses as an eyewitness. But in fact the book is a compilation, made without much regard to time or place. For the first part William de Boldensele, who wrote in 1336 an account of a visit to the Holy Land, is the main source. The second part follows the description of an Eastern voyage written by Friar Odoric of Pordenone in 1330. Other materials from the mediaeval encyclopaedists are woven in, and there is so little trace of original observation that it is doubtful whether the author travelled far beyond his library.

In the preface he claims to be Sir John Mandeville, an Englishman born at St. Albans. The people of St. Albans were driven to desperate shifts to explain the absence of his tomb from their abbey; but until 1798 it was actually to be seen at the church of the Guillemins, Liège, with this inscription:

‘Hic iacet vir nobilis Dom Ioannes de Mandeville, alias dictus

ad Barbam, Miles, Dominus de Campdi, natus de Anglia, medicinae professor, devotissimus orator, et bonorum suorum largissimus pauperibus erogator, qui, toto quasi orbe lustrato, Leodii diem vitae suae clausit extremum A.D. MCCCLXXII, mensis Nov. die xvii.'

A Liège chronicler, Jean d'Outremeuse (d. 1399), who claims the invidious position of his confidant and literary executor, gives further details: Mandeville was 'chevalier de Montfort en Angleterre'; he was obliged to leave England because he had slain a nobleman; he came to Liège in 1343; and was content to be known as 'Jean de Bourgogne dit à la Barbe'.

Now Jean de Bourgogne, with whom Sir John Mandeville is identified by d'Outremeuse, is known as the writer of a tract on the Plague, written at Liège in 1365. Further, the Latin text of the *Travels* mentions that the author met at Liège a certain 'Johannes ad Barbam', recognized him as a former physician at the court of the Sultan of Egypt, and took his advice and help in the writing of the *Travels*.

Again, in 1322, the year in which Sir John Mandeville claims to have left England, a Johan de Burgoyne was given good reason to flee the country, because a pardon, granted to him the previous year for his actions against the Despensers, was then withdrawn. Curiously enough, a John Mandeville was also of the party opposed to the Despensers.

Nothing has come of the attempts to attach the clues—St. Albans, Montfort, Campdi, the arms on the tomb at Liège—to the English family of Mandeville. It seems likely that 'Sir John Mandeville' was an alias adopted by Jean de Bourgogne, unless both names cover Jean d'Outremeuse. The Epilogue to the Cotton version shows how early the plausible fictions of the text had infected the history of its composition.

It is clear that the English versions do not come from the hand of the writer of the *Travels*, who could not have been guilty of such absurdities as the translation of *montaignes* by 'þe hille of Aygnes' in the Cotton MS. But whoever the author was, he shows a courtesy and modesty worthy of a knight, begging those with more recent experience to correct the lapses of his memory, and remembering always the interests of later travellers, who

might wish to glean some marvels still untold. He might well have pleaded in the fourteenth century that the time had not come when prose fiction could afford to throw off the disguise of truth.

[THE VOIAGE AND TRAVAILE OF SIR  
IOHN MAUNDEVILE, KT.]

British Museum MS. Cotton Titus C xvi (about 1400-25).

From chap. xiv (xviii), f. 65 b.

ETHIOPE is departed in two princypall parties ; and þat is in the Est partie, and in the Meridionall partie, the whiche partie meridionall is clept Moretane. And the folk of þat contree ben blake ynow, and more blake þan in the toþer  
5 partie ; and þei ben clept Mowres. In þat partie is a well, þat in the day it is so cold þat no man may drynke þereoffe ; and in the nyght it is so hoot þat no man may suffre hys hond þerein. And beþonde þat partie, toward the South, to passe by the See Occean, is a gret lond and a gret contrey. But  
10 men may not duell þere, for the feruent brennyng of the sonne, so is it passyng hoot in þat contrey.

In Ethiope all the ryueres and all the watres ben trouble, and þei ben somdell salte, for the gret hete þat is þere. And the folk of þat contree ben lyghtly dronken, and han but litill  
15 appetyt to mete . . .

In Ethiope ben many dyuerse folk, and Ethiope is clept 'Cusis.' In þat contree ben folk þat han but o foot ; and þei gon so blyue þat it is meruaylle ; and the foot is so large þat it schadeweth all the body aȝen the sonne, whanne þei wole lye  
20 and reste hem.

In Ethiope, whan the children ben ȝonge and lytill, þei ben all ȝalowe ; and whan þat þei wexen of age, þat ȝalownesse turneth to ben all blak. In Ethiope is the cytee of Saba.

and the lond of the whiche on of the þre Kynges, þat presented oure Lord in Bethleem, was kyng offe. 25

Fro Ethiope men gon into Ynde be manye dyuerse contreyes. And men clepen the high Ynde 'Emlak'. And Ynde is devyded in þre princypall parties; þat is: the more, þat is a full hoot contree; and Ynde the lesse, þat is a full atempree contrey, þat streccheth to the lond of Medé; and the þridde 30 part, toward the Septentrion, is full cold, so þat for pure cold and contynuell frost the water becometh cristall.

And vpon tho roches of cristall growen the gode dyamandes, þat ben of trouble colour. Ȝalow cristall draweth <to> colour lyke oylle. And þei ben so harde þat no man may pollysch 35 hem; and men clepen hem 'dyamandes' in þat contree, and 'hamese' in anoþer contree. Othere dyamandes men fynden in Arabye, þat ben not so gode; and þei ben more broun and more tendre. And oþer dyamandes also men fynden in the Ile of Cipre, þat ben ȝit more tendre; and hem men may wel 40 pollische. And in the lond of Macedoyne men fynden dyamaundes also. But the beste and the moste precyious ben in Ynde.

And men fynden many tyme harde dyamandes in a masse, þat cometh out of gold, whan men puren it and fynen it out 45 of the myne, whan men breken þat masse in smale peces. And sum tyme it happeneth þat men fynden summe as grete as a pese, and summe lasse; and þei ben als harde as þo of Ynde.

And all be it þat men fynden gode dyamandes in Ynde, 50 ȝit natheles men fynden hem more comounly vpon the roches in the see, and vpon hilles where the myne of gold is. And þei growen many togedre, on lytill, another gret. And þer ben summe of the gretnesse of a bene, and summe als grete as an hasell-note. And þei ben square and poynted of here owne 55 kynde, boþe abouen and benethen, withouten worchinge of mannes hond.

And þei growen togedre, male and femele. And þei ben  
 norysscht with the dew of heuene. And þei engendren  
 60 comounly, and bryngen forth smale children, þat multiplen  
 and growen all the jeer. I haue often tymes assayed þat ȝif  
 a man kepe hem with a lityll of the roche, and wete hem with  
 May dew oftesithes, þei schull growe eueryche jeer; and the  
 smale wole wexen grete. For right as the fyn perl congeleth  
 65 and wexeth gret of the dew of heuene, right so doth the verray  
 dyamand; and right as the perl, of his owne kynde, taketh  
 roundnesse, right so the dyamand, be vertu of God, taketh  
 squarenesse.

And men schall bere the dyamaund on his left syde; for  
 70 it is of grettere vertue þanne, þan on the right syde. For the  
 strengthe of here growynge is toward the North, þat is the left  
 syde of the world, and the left partie of man is, whan he turneth  
 his face toward the Est.

And ȝif ȝou lyke to knowe the vertues of þe dyamand, as  
 75 men may fynden in þe Lapidarye, þat many men knowen  
 noght, I schall telle ȝou, as þei beȝonde the see seyn and  
 affermen, of whom all science and all philosophie cometh  
 from.

He þat bereth the dyamand vpon him, it ȝeueþ him hardy-  
 80 nesse and manhode, and it kepeth the lemes of his body hole.  
 It ȝeueþ him victorie of his enemyes, in plee and in werre, ȝif  
 his cause be rightfull; and it kepeth him þat bereth it in gode  
 wytt; and it kepeth him fro strif and ryot, fro euyll sweuenes,  
 from sorwes, and from enchauntementes, and from fantasies  
 85 and illusiouns of wykked spirites. And ȝif ony cursed wycche  
 or enchauntour wolde bewycche him þat bereth the dyamand,  
 all þat sorwe and myschance schall turne to himself, þorgh  
 vertue of þat ston. And also no wylde best dar assaylle the  
 man þat bereth it on him. Also the dyamand scholde ben  
 90 ȝouen frely, withouten coueytynge, and withouten byggyng; and  
 þan it is of grettere vertue. And it maketh a man more



strong and more sad aȝenst his enemyes. And it heleth him þat is lunatyk, and hem þat the fend pursueth or trauayleth. And ȝif venym or poysoun be brought in presence of the dyamand, anon it begynneth to wexe moyst, and for to 95 swete.

Pere ben also dyamandes in Ynde þat ben clept 'violastres',—for here colour is liche vyolet, or more browne þan the violettes,—þat ben full harde and full precyous. But ȝit sum men loue not hem so wel as the oþere. But in soth to 100 me, I wolde louen hem als moche as þe oþere; for I haue seen hem assayed. Also þere is anoþer maner of dyamandes þat ben als white as cristall, but þei ben a lityll more trouble; and þei ben gode and of gret vertue, and all þei ben square and poynted of here owne kynde. And summe 105 ben six squared, summe four squared, and summe þre, as nature schapeth hem.

And þerfore whan grete lordes and knyghtes gon to seche worschipe in armes, þei beren gladly the dyamaund vpon hem. I schal speke a litill more of the dyamandes, allþough 110 I tarye my matere for a tyme, to þat ende þat þei þat knowen hem not be not disceyued be gabberes þat gon be the contree, þat sellen hem. For whoso wil bye the dyamand, it is nede-full to him þat he knowe hem, because þat men counterfeten hem often of cristall þat is ȝalow; and of saphires of cytryne 115 colour, þat is ȝalow also; and of the saphire loupe; and of many oþer stones. But, I tell ȝou, theise contrefetes ben not so harde; and also the poyntes wil breken lightly; and men may esily pollissche hem. But summe werkmen, for malice, wil not pollissche hem, to þat entent to maken men beleue þat þei may 120 not ben pollisscht. But men may assaye hem in this manere: First schere with hem, or write with hem, in saphires, in cristall, or in oþer precious stones. After þat men taken the ademand, þat is the schipmannes ston, þat draweth the nedle to him, and men leyn the dyamand vpon the ademand, and leyn the nedle 125

before the ademand; and 3if the dyamand be gode and vertuous, the ademand draweth not the nedle to him, whils the dyamand is þere present. And this is the preef þat þei bezonde the see maken. Natheles it befalleth often tyme þat the gode dyamand  
 130 leseth his vertue, be synne and for incontynence of him þat bereth it. And þanne is it nedfull to make it to recoueren his vertue agen, or ell it is of litill value.

Chap. xxvi (xxx), f. 112 a.

Now schall I seye 3ou sewyngly of contrees and yles þat  
 135 ben bezonde the contrees þat I haue spoken of. Wherefore I seye 3ou, in passyng be the lond of Cathaye toward the high Ynde, and toward Bacharye, men passen be a kyngdom þat men clepen 'Caldilhe', þat is a full fair contré. And bere groweth a maner of fruyt, as þough it weren gowrdes;  
 140 and whan þei ben ripe, men kutten hem ato, and men fynden withinne a lytyll best, in flesch, in bon, and blode as þough it were a lytyll lomb, withouten wolle. And men eten bothe the frut and the best: and þat is a gret merueylle. Of þat frute I haue eten, allpough it were wondirfull: but þat I knowe wel,  
 145 þat God is merueyllous in his werkes. And natheles I tolde hem of als gret a merueyle to hem, þat is amonges vs: and þat was of the Bernakes. For I tolde hem þat in oure contree weren trees þat baren a fruyt þat becomen briddes fleeynge; and þo þat fellen in the water lyuen; and þei þat fallen on the erthe  
 150 dyenanon; and þei ben right gode to mannes mete. And hereof had þei als gret meruaylle þat summe of hem trowed it were an impossible thing to be. In þat contré ben longe apples of gode sauour, whereof ben mo þan an hundred in a clustre, and als manye in another: and þei han grete longe leues and  
 155 large, of two fote long or more. And in þat contree, and in oþer contrees þere abouten, growen many trees, þat beren clowe gylofres, and notemuges, and grete notes of Ynde, and of canell, and of many oþer spices. And þere ben vynes þat beren so grete grapes þat a strong man scholde haue

ynow to done for to bere o clustre with all the grapes. In 160  
þat same regioun ben the mountaynes of Caspye þat men  
clepen 'Vber' in the contree. Betwene þo mountaynes the  
Iewes of ten lynages ben enclosed, þat men clepen Goth and  
Magoth; and þei mowe not gon out on no syde. Þere weren  
enclosed twenty two kynges with hire peple, þat dwelleden 165  
betwene the mountaynes of Syshye. Þere Kyng Alisandre  
chacede hem betwene þo mountaynes; and þere he thoughte  
for to enclose hem þorgh werk of his men. But whan he  
saugh þat he myghte not don it, ne bryng it to an ende, he  
preyed to God of Nature þat He wolde parforme þat þat he 170  
had begonne. And all were it so þat he was a payneme,  
and not worthi to ben herd, 3it God of His grace closed the  
mountaynes togydre; so þat þei dwellen þere, all faste  
ylokked and enclosed with high mountaynes alle aboute, saf  
only on o syde; and on þat syde is the See of Caspye. Now 175  
may sum men asken: sith þat the see is on þat o syde, wherfore  
go þei not out on the see syde, for to go where þat hem lyketh?  
But to this questioun I schal answe: þat See of Caspye goth  
out be londe, vnder the mountaynes, and renneth be the desert  
at o syde of the contree; and after it streccheth vnto the endes 180  
of Persie. And allpough it be clept a see, it is no see, ne  
it toucheth to non oþer see; but it is a lake, the grettest of the  
world. And þough þei wolden putten hem into þat see, þei  
ne wysten neuer where þat þei scholde arryuen. And also  
þei conen no langage but only hire owne, þat no man 185  
knoweth but þei: and þerfore mowe þei not gon out. And  
also 3ee schull vnderstonde þat the Iewes han no propre  
lond of hire owne, for to dwellen inne, in all the world, but  
only þat lond betwene the mountaynes. And 3it þei 3elden  
tribute for þat lond to the queen of Amazoine, the whiche þat 190  
maketh hem to ben kept in cloos full diligently, þat þei schull  
not gon out on no syde, but be the cost of hire lond. For  
hire lond marcheth to þo mountaynes. And often it hath

befallen þat summe of þe Iewes han gon vp the mountaynes,  
 95 and aualed down to the valeyes: but gret nombre of folk ne  
 may not do so. For the mountaynes ben so hye, and so  
 streight vp, þat þei moste abyde þere, maugree hire myght.  
 For þei mowe not gon out, but be a litill issue þat was  
 made be strengthe of men; and it lasteth wel a four grete  
 100 myle. And after is þere ȝit a lond all desert, where men  
 may fynde no water, ne for dyggynge, ne for non other þing:  
 wherfore men may not dwellen in þat place. So is it full of  
 dragounes, of serpentes, and of oþer venymous bestes, þat no  
 man dar not passe, but ȝif it be be strong wynter. And þat  
 105 streyt passage men clepen in þat contree 'Clyron'. And þat  
 is the passage þat the Queen of Amazoine maketh to ben kept.  
 And þogh it happene sum of hem, be fortune, to gon out,  
 þei conen no maner of langage but Ebrew, so þat þei can  
 not speke to the peple. And ȝit natheles, men seyn þei schull  
 110 gon out in the tyme of Antecrist, and þat þei schull maken  
 gret slaughter of Cristene men. And þerfore all the Iewes  
 þat dwellen in all londes lernen allweys to speken Ebrew,  
 in hope þat whan the oþer Iewes schull gon out, þat þei may  
 vnderstonden hire speche, and to leden hem into Cristendom,  
 115 for to destroye the Cristene peple. For the Iewes seyn þat  
 þei knowen wel be hire prophecyes þat þei of Caspye schull  
 gon out and spreden þorghout all the world; and þat the  
 Cristene men schull ben vnder hire subieccioun als longe as  
 þei han ben in subieccioun of hem. And ȝif þat ȝee wil wytte  
 120 how þat þei schull fynden hire weye, after þat I haue herd  
 seye, I schall tell ȝou. In the tyme of Antecrist, a fox  
 schall make þere his ttraynet, and mynen an hole, where  
 Kyng Alisandre leet make the ȝates: and so longe he schall  
 mynen and percen the erthe, til þat he schall passe þorgh  
 125 towards þat folk. And whan þei seen the fox, they schull  
 haue gret merueylle of him, because þat þei saugh neuer  
 such a best. For of all oþere bestes þei han enclosed

amonges hem, saf only the fox. And þanne þei schulle chacen him and pursuen him so streyte, till þat he come to the same place þat he cam fro. And þanne þei schulle 230 dyggen and mynen so strongly, till þat þei fynden the ȝates þat King Alisandre leet make of grete stones and passynge huge, wel symented and made stronge for the maystrie. And þo ȝates þei schull breken, and so gon out, be fyndynge of þat issue. 235

Fro þat lond gon men toward the lond of Bacharie, where ben full yuele folk and full cruell. In þat lond ben trees þat beren wolfe, as þogh it were of scheep; whereof men maken clothes, and all þing þat may ben made of wolfe. In þat contree ben many ipotaynes, þat dwellen som tyme in the 240 water, and somtyme on the lond: and þei ben half man and half hors, as I haue seyd before; and þei eten men, whan þei may take hem. And þere ben ryueres and watres þat ben fulle byttere, þree siþes more þan is the water of the see. In þat contré ben many griffounes, more plentee þan in ony 245 other contree. Sum men seyn þat þei han the body vpward as an egle, and benethe as a lyoun: and treuly þei seyn soth þat þei ben of þat schapp. But o griffoun hath the body more gret, and is more strong, þanne eight lyouns, of suche lyouns as ben o this half; and more gret and strongere þan an 250 hundred egles, suche as we han amonges vs. For o griffoun þere wil bere fleyng to his nest a gret hors, ȝif he may fynde him at the poynt, or two oxen ȝoked togidere, as þei gon at the plowgh. For he hath his talouns so longe and so large and grete vpon his feet, as þogh þei weren hornes of grete oxen, or of 255 bugles, or of kyȝn; so þat men maken cuppes of hem, to drynken of. And of hire ribbes, and of the pennes of hire wenges, men maken bowes full stronge, to schote with arwes and quarell.

From þens gon men be many iourneyes þorgh the lond of Prestre lohn, the grete emperour of Ynde. And men clepen 260 his roialme the Yle of Pentexoire.

## EPILOGUE.

Þere ben manye oþer dyuerse contrees and manye oþer  
 merueyles bezonde, þat I haue not seen: wherfore of hem  
 I can not speke propurly, to tell 3ou the manere of hem.  
 165 And also in the contrees where I haue ben, ben manye  
 mo dyuersitees of many wondirfull thinges þanne I make  
 mencion of, for it were to longe thing to deuysen 3ou the  
 manere. And þerfore þat þat I haue deuysed 3ou of certeyn  
 contrees, þat I haue spoken of before, I beseche 3oure worthi  
 170 and excellent noblesse þat it suffice to 3ou at this tyme. For  
 3if þat I deuysed 3ou all þat is bezonde the see, another man  
 peraunter, þat wolde peynen him and trauaylle his body for  
 to go into þo marches for to encerche þo contrees, myghte  
 ben blamed be my wordes, in rehercyng manye straunge  
 175 thinges; for he myghte not seye no thing of newe, in the  
 whiche the hereres myghten haue ouer solace or desport or  
 lust or lykyng in the heryng. For men seyn allweys þat  
 newe thinges and newe tydynges ben plesant to here.  
 Wherfore I wole holde me stille, withouten ony more rehercyng  
 180 of dyuersitees or of meruaylles þat ben bezonde, to þat entent  
 and ende þat whoso wil gon into þo contrees, he schall  
 fynde ynowe to speke of, þat I haue not touched of in no  
 wyse.

And 3ee schull vnderstonde, 3if it lyke 3ou, þat at myn  
 185 hom comyng I cam to Rome, and schewed my lif to oure  
 holy fadir the Pope, and was assoylled of all þat lay in my  
 conscience, of many a dyuerse greuous poynt, as men mosten  
 nedes þat ben in company, dwellyng amonges so many  
 a dyuerse folk of dyuerse secte and of beleefe, as I haue ben.  
 190 And amonges all, I schewed hym this tretys, þat I had made  
 after informacioun of men þat knewen of thinges þat I had  
 not seen myself; and also of merueyles and customes þat  
 I hadde seen myself, as fer as God wolde 3eue me grace:

and besoughte his holy fadirhode þat my boke myghte ben examyned and corrected be avys of his wyse and discreet 295  
 conseil. And oure holy fader, of his special grace, remytted my boke to ben examyned and preued be the avys of his seyð conseil. Be the whiche my boke was preued for trewe; in so moche þat þei schewed me a boke, þat my boke was examynde by, þat comprehended full moche more be an 300  
 hundred part; be the whiche the *Mappa Mundi* was made after. And so my boke (all be it þat many men ne list not to ȝeue credence to no þing, but to þat þat þei seen with hire eye, ne be the auctour ne the persone neuer so trewe) is affirmed and preued be oure holy fader, in maner and forme 305  
 as I haue seyð.

And I Iohn Maundevyll knyght aboueseyd, (allþough I be vnworthi) þat departed from oure contrees and passed the see the ȝeer of grace 1322, þat haue passed many londes and manye yles and contrees, and cerched manye full 310  
 strange places, and haue ben in many a full gode honourable companye, and at many a faire dede of armes, all be it þat I dide none myself, for myn vnable insuffisance; and now I am comen hom, mawgree myself, to reste, for gowtes artetykes þat me distreynen, þat diffynen the ende of my labour, ȝenst 315  
 my will, God knoweth. And þus takynge solace in my wrechched reste, recordynge the tyme passed, I haue fulfilled þeise thinges and putte hem wryten in this boke, as it wolde come into my mynde, the ȝeer of grace 1356 in the 34<sup>th</sup> ȝeer þat I departede from oure contrees. Wherefore I preye to all 320  
 the rederes and hereres of this boke, ȝif it plesse hem, þat þei wolde preyen to God for me, and I schall preye for hem. And alle þo þat seyn for me a *Paternoster*, with an *Aue Maria*, þat God forȝeue me my synnes, I make hem parteneres and graunte hem part of all the gode pilgrimages, 325  
 and of all the gode dedes þat I haue don, ȝif ony ben to his plesance; and noght only of þo, but of all þat euere I schall

do vnto my lyfes ende. And I beseche Almyghty God,  
fro whom all godenesse and grace cometh fro, þat He  
330 vouchesaf of His excellent mercy and habundant grace to  
fullfyll hire soules with inspiracioun of the Holy Gost, in  
makynge defence of all hire gostly enemyes here in erthe,  
to hire saluacioun, bothe of body and soule ; to worschipe and  
thankynge of Him þat is þree and on, withouten begynnyng  
335 and withouten endyng ; þat is withouten qualitee good,  
withouten quantytee gret ; þat in alle places is present, and  
all thinges conteynyng ; the whiche þat no goodnesse may  
amende, ne non euell empeyre ; þat in perfyte Trynytee  
lyueth and regneth God, be alle worldes and be all tymes.  
340 Amen, Amen, Amen.



# X

## THE BRUCE

WRITTEN IN 1375 BY JOHN BARBOUR.

John Barbour was archdeacon of Aberdeen, an auditor of the Scottish exchequer, and a royal pensioner. Consequently a number of isolated records of his activities have been preserved. In 1364 he was granted a safe-conduct to travel with four students to Oxford. In 1365 and 1368 he had permission to travel through England so that he might study in France. The notices of his journeys, his offices, and his rewards point to a busy and successful life. He died in 1395.

According to Wyntoun, Barbour's works were (1) *The Bruce*; (2) *The Stewartis Oryginalle* (or *Pedigree of the Stewarts*), now lost; (3) a *Brut*, which some have identified with extant fragments of a Troy Book (see the prefatory note to No. VII), and others with (2) *The Stewartis Oryginalle*.

*The Bruce* is found in two late MSS., both copied by John Ramsay; the first, St. John's College, Cambridge, MS. G 23, in the year 1487; the second, now at the Advocates' Library, Edinburgh, in 1489. It has been edited by Skeat for the Early English Text Society, and for the Scottish Text Society. The poem is valuable for the history, more especially the traditional history, of the period 1304-33. Barbour speaks of it as a romance, and the freedom and vividness of the narrative, with its hero-worship of Robert Bruce and Douglas, place it well above the ordinary chronicle. But far from disclaiming historical accuracy, Barbour prides himself that truth well told should have a double claim to popularity:

Storys to rede ar delitabill  
Suppos that thai be nocht bot fabill:  
Than suld storys that suthfast wer,  
And thai war said on gud maner,

Hawe doubill plesance in heryng:  
 The fyrst plesance is the carpyng,  
 And the tothir the suthfastnes,  
 That schawys the thing rycht as it wes.

He did not misjudge the taste of his country, and *The Bruce*, with which the Scottish contribution to English literature begins, long held its place as the national epic of Scotland.

The specimen describes an incident in the unsuccessful siege of Berwick, 1319, after five quiet days.

THE BRUCE, Bk. xvii, ll. 593 ff.

St. John's College (Cambridge) MS. G 23 (A. D. 1487).

THAI <that> at the sege lay,  
 Or it wes passit the fift day,  
 Had maid thame syndry apparale  
 To gang eftsonis till assale.  
 Of gret gestis ane sow thai maid 5  
 That stalward heling owth it had,  
 With armyt men enew tharin,  
 And instrumentis als for to myne.  
 Syndry scaffatis thai maid vithall  
 That war weill hyar than the wall, 10  
 And ordanit als that by the se  
 The toune suld weill assalzeit be.

And thai vithin that saw thame swa  
 So gret apparale schap till ma,  
 Throu Crabbis consale, that ves sle, 15  
 Ane cren thai haf gert dres vp hye,  
 Rynand on quhelis, that thai mycht bring  
 It quhar neid war of mast helping.  
 And pik and ter als haf thai tane,  
 And lynt <and> hardis, with brynstane, 20  
 And dry treis that weill wald byrne,  
 And mellit syne athir othir in ;

15 Crabbis] Craggis MS. : Crabys MS. *Edinburgh.*

And gret flaggatis tharof thai maid,  
Gyrdit with irnebandis braid;  
Of thai flaggatis mycht mesurit be 25  
Till a gret twnnys quantit .

Thai flaggatis, byrnand in a baill,  
With thair cren thought thai till avail,  
And, gif the sow come to the wall,  
Till lat thame byrnand on hir fall, 30  
And with ane stark cheyne hald thame thar  
Quhill all war brint <vp> that ves thar.

Engynys alsua for till cast  
Thai ordanit and maid redy fast,  
And set ilk man syne till his ward; 35  
And Schir Valter, the gude Steward,  
With armyt men suld ryde about,  
And se quhar at thar var mast dout,  
And succur thar with his menzhe.

And quhen thai into sic degr  40  
Had maid thame for thair assaling,  
On the Rude-evyn in the dawning,  
The Inglis host blew till assale.

Than mycht men with ser apparale  
Se that gret host cum sturdely. 45

The toune enveremyt thai in hy,  
And assalit with sa gud will,—  
For all thair mycht thai set thartill,—  
That thai thame pressit fast of the toune.

Bot thai that can thame abandoune 50  
Till ded, or than till woundis sare,

So weill has thame defendit thare  
That ledderis to the ground thai slang,  
And vith stanys so fast thai dang  
Thair fais, that feill thai left lyand, 55  
Sum ded, sum hurt, and sum swavnand.

Bot thai that held on fut in hy  
 Drew thame away deliuerly,  
 And skunnyrrit tharfor na kyn thing,  
 Bot went stoutly till assalyng; 60  
 And thai abovin defendit ay,  
 And set thame till so harde assay,  
*Quhill* that feill of thame voundit war,  
*And* thai so gret defens maid thar,  
 That thai styntit thair fais mycht. 65  
 Apon sic maner can thai ficht  
*Quhill* it wes neir noyne of the day.  
 Than thai without, in gret aray,  
 Pressit thair sow toward the wall;  
 And thai within weill soyne gert call 70  
 The engynour that takyne was,  
 And gret manans till him mais,  
 And swoir that he suld de, bot he  
 Provit on the sow sic sutelté  
 That he tofruschy/ hir ilke deill. 75  
 And he, that has persauit weill  
 That the dede wes neir hym till,  
 Bot gif he mycht fulfill thar will,  
 Thought that he all his mycht vald do:  
 Bendit in gret hy than wes scho, 80  
 And till the sow wes soyn evin set.  
 In hye he gert draw the cleket,  
 And smertly swappit out the stane,  
 That evyn out our the sow is gane,  
 And behynd hir a litill we 85  
 It fell, and than thai cryit hye  
 That war in hir: 'Furth to the wall,  
 For dreid(les) it is ouris all.'

63 *Quhill*] How *MS.*  
till frusche *MS.*

64 *And*] þat *MS.*

75 tofruschyt]

The engynour than deliuerly  
 Gert bend the gyne in full gret hy, 90  
 And the stane smertly swappit out.  
 It flaw <out> quhedirand with a rout,  
 And sell richt evin befor the sow.  
 Thair hertis than begouth till grow,  
 Bot 3eit than with thair mychtis all 95  
 Thai pressit the sow toward the wall,  
 And has hir set tharto iuntly.

The gynour than gert bend in hy  
 The gyne, and swappit out the stane,  
 That evin toward the lift is gane, 100  
 And with gret wecht syne duschit doune  
 Richt by the wall, in a randoune,  
 That hyt the sow in sic maner  
 That it that wes the mast summer,  
 And starkast for till stynt a strak, 105  
 In swndir with that dusche he brak.  
 The men ran out in full gret hy,  
 And on the wallis thai can cry  
 That 'thair sow ferryit wes thair !'

Iohne Crab, that had his geir all 3ar, 110  
 In his faggatis has set the fyre,  
 And our the wall syne can thame wyre,  
 And brynt the sow till brandis bair.

With all this fast assal3eand war  
 The folk without, with felloune ficht ; 115  
 And thai within with mekill mycht  
 Defendit manfully thar stede  
 Intill gret auentur of dede.  
 The schipmen with gret apparale  
 Com with thair schippes till assale, 120  
 With top-castellis warnist weill,

And wicht men armyt intill steill;  
 Thair batis vp apon thair mastis  
 Drawyn weill hye and festnyt fast is,  
 And pressit with that gret atour 125  
 Toward the wall. Bot the gynour  
 Hit in ane hespyne with a stane,  
 And the men that war tharin gane  
 Sum dede, *sum* dosnyt, <come down> vyndland.  
 Fra thine furth durst nane tak vpon hand 130  
 With schippes pres thame to the vall.

But the laiff war assalzeand all  
 On ilk a syde sa egyrly,  
 That certis it wes gret ferly  
 That thai folk sic defens has maid, 135  
 For the gret myscheif that thai had:  
 For thair wallis so law than weir  
 That a man richt weill with a sper  
 Micht strik ane othir vp in the face,  
 As eir befor tald till 3ow was; 140  
 And feill of thame war woundit sare,  
 And the layf so fast travaland war  
 That nane had tume rest for till ta,  
 Thair aduersouris assailzeit swa.  
 Thai war within sa stratly stad 145  
 That thar wardane with *him* had  
 Ane hundreth men in cumpany  
 Armyt, that wicht war and hardy,  
 And raid about for till se quhar  
 That his folk hardest pressit war, 150  
 Till releif thame that had mister,  
 Com syndry tymes in placis ser  
 Quhar sum of the defensouris war  
 All dede, and othir woundit sare,

Swa that he of his cumpany 115

Behufit to leiff thair party ;

Swa that, be he ane cours had maid

About, *of* all *the* men he had

Thair wes levit with him bot ane,

That he ne had thame left ilkane 160

To releve quhar he saw mister.

And the folk that assaljeand wer

At Mary-3et behevin had

The barras, and a fyre had maid

At the drawbrig, and brynt it doune. 165

And war thringand in gret foyssoun

Richt in the 3et, ane fire till ma.

And thai within gert smertly ga

Ane to the wardane, for till say

How thai war set in hard assay. 170

And quhen Schir Valter Steward herd

How men sa stratly with thame ferd,

He gert cum of the castell then

All that war thar of armyt men,—

For thar that day assaljeit nane,— 175

And with that rout in hy is gane

Till Mary-3et, and till the wall

Is went, and saw the myscheif all,

And vmbethought hym suddandly,

Bot gif gret help war set in hy 180

Tharto, thai suld burne vp the 3et

*With* the fire *he* fand tharat.

Tharfor apon gret hardyment

He suddanly set his entent,

And gert all wyde set vp the 3et, 185

And the fyre that he fand tharat

158 of] to *MS.* the] to *MS.* 182 With] And *MS.* he fand]  
haffand *MS.*

With strinth of men he put away.  
He set hym in full hard assay,  
For thai that war assalȝeand thar  
Pressit on hym with vapnys bair, 190  
And he defendit with all his mycht.

Thar mycht men se a felloun sight :  
With staffing, stoking, and striking  
Thar maid thai sturdy defending,  
For with gret strynth of men the ȝet 195  
Thai defendit, and stude tharat,  
Magré thair fais, quhill the nycht  
Gert thame on bath halfis leif the ficht.



## XI

### JOHN WICLIF

D. 1384.

Like Richard Rolle, Wiclif was a Yorkshireman by birth. Of his career at Oxford little is known until 1360, when he is described as 'master of Balliol'. From Balliol he was presented to the living of Fillingham, and, after a series of preferments, he accepted in 1374 the rectory of Lutterworth, which he held till his death in 1384.

Wiclif's life was stormy. His acknowledged pre-eminence as a theologian and doctor in the University did not satisfy his active and combative mind. 'False peace', he said, 'is grounded in rest with our enemies, when we assent to them without withstanding; and sword against such peace came Christ to send.' He lacked neither enemies nor the moral courage to withstand them.

At first, under the powerful patronage of John of Gaunt, he entered into controversies primarily political, opposing the right of the Pope to make levies on England, which was already overburdened with war-taxation, and to appoint foreigners to English benefices. On these questions popular opinion was on his side.

He proceeded to attack the whole system of Church government, urging disendowment; rejecting the papal authority, which had been weakened in 1378 by the fierce rivalry of Urban VI and Clement VII; attacking episcopal privileges, the established religious orders, and the abuse of indulgences, pardons, and sanctuary. Still his opinions found a good deal of popular and political support.

Then in 1380 he publicly announced his rejection of the doctrine of transubstantiation. From the results of such a heresy his friends could no longer protect him. Moderate opinion became alarmed and conservative after the Peasants' Revolt of 1381. Richard II was no friend of heretics. John of Gaunt, himself unpopular by this time, commanded silence. And in 1382

the secular party in Oxford were compelled, after a struggle, to condemn and expel their favourite preacher and his followers. Wiclif retired to Lutterworth, and continued, until struck down by paralysis in the last days of 1384, to inspire his 'poor preachers'—the founders of the Lollard sect which lived on to join forces with Lutheranism in the sixteenth century—and to develop in a series of Latin and English works the doctrines that later came to be associated with Puritanism.

His authorship is often doubtful. In the interests of orthodoxy the early MSS. of his writings were ruthlessly destroyed, as in the famous bonfire of his works at Carfax, Oxford, in 1411. And his followers included not only the simple folk from whom later the 'poor priests' were recruited, but able University men, trained in his new doctrines, bred in the same traditions, and eager to emulate their master in controversy. So his share in the famous Wiclif Bible (ed. Forshall and Madden, Oxford 1850) is still uncertain. Part of the translation seems to have been made by Nicholas of Hereford, and a later recension is claimed for another Oxford disciple, John Purvey. But Wiclif probably inspired the undertaking, for to him, as to the later Puritans, the word of the Bible was the test by which all matters of belief, ritual, and Church government must be tried; and he was particularly anxious, in opposition to the established clergy and the friars, that laymen should read it in their own language. Contemporaries, friend and foe, ascribe the actual translation to him. John Huss, the Bohemian reformer, who was martyred in 1416 for teaching Wiclif's doctrines, states that Wiclif 'translated all the Bible into English'. Arundel, Archbishop of Canterbury, is equally positive when he writes to the Pope in 1412 that 'the son of the Old Serpent filled up the cup of his malice against Holy Church by the device of a new translation of the Scriptures into his native tongue'.

The first selection, chapter xv of the *De Officio Pastoralis* (ed. Matthew, pp. 429 f.), states the case for translation: see Workman's *Wyclif*, ii. p. 329. In the second (ed. Matthew, pp. 188 ff.) some essential points of Wiclif's teaching are explained.

In abuse of his opponents he maintains the sturdy tradition of controversy that still survives in Milton's prose. The style

is rugged and vigorous; the thought logical and packed close. And it is easy to see the source of his strength. In an age whose evils were patent to all, many reproved this or that particular abuse, but the system as a whole passed unchallenged. Wiclif, almost alone in his generation, had the reasoning power to go to the root of the matter, and the moral courage not only to state fearlessly what, rightly or wrongly, he found to be the source of evil, but to insist on basic reform. It is difficult nowadays, when modern curiosity has made familiar the practice of mining among the foundations of beliefs, society, and government, to realize the force of authority that was ranged against unorthodox reformers in the fourteenth century. If the popular support he received indicates that this force was already weakening, Wiclif must still be reckoned among the greatest of those who broke the way for the modern world.

## A. THE TRANSLATION OF THE BIBLE.

### *De Officio Pastoralis, chap. xv.*

MS. Ashburnham XXVII (15th century).

ANT heere þe freris wiþ þer fautours seyn þat it is heresye to write þus Goddis lawe in English, and make it knowun to lewid men. And fourty signes þat þey bringen for to shewe an heretik ben not worþy to reherse, for nouȝt groundiþ hem but nygromansye. 5

It semyþ first þat þe wit of Goddis lawe shulde be tauȝt in þat tunge þat is more knowun, for þis wit is Goddis word. Whanne Crist seiþ in þe Gospel þat boþe heuene and erþe shulen passe, but His wordis shulen notpasse, He vndirstondith bi His woordis His wit. And þus Goddis wit is Hooly Writ, 10 þat may on no maner be fals. Also þe Hooly Gost ȝaf to apostlis wit at Wit Sunday for to knowe al maner langagis, to teche þe puple Goddis lawe þerby; and so God wolde þat þe puple were tauȝt Goddis lawe in dyuerse tungis. But what man, on Goddis half, shulde reuerse Goddis ordenaunse and 15 His wille?

And for þis cause Seynt Ierom trauelide and translatide þe Bible fro dyuerse tungis into Lateyn, þat it myȝte be afir translatid to opere tungis. And þus Crist and His apostlis  
 20 tauȝten þe puple in þat tunge þat was moost knowun to þe puple. Why shulden not men do nou so?

And herfore autours of þe newe law, þat weren apostlis of Iesu Crist, writen þer Gospels in dyuerse tungis þat weren more knowun to þe puple.

25 Also þe worþy reume of Fraunse, notwiþstondinge alle lettingis, haþ translatid þe Bible and þe Gospels, wiþ opere trewe sentensis of doctours, out of Lateyn into Freynsch. Why shulden not Engliȝschemen do so? As lordis of Englonð han þe Bible in Freynsch, so it were not aȝenus  
 30 resoun þat þey hadden þe same sentense in Engliȝsch; for þus Goddis lawe wolde be betere knowun, and more trowid, for onehed of wit, and more acord be bitwixe reumes.

And herfore freris han tauȝt in Englonð þe Paternoster in Engliȝsch tunge, as men seyen in þe pley of ȝork, and in  
 35 many opere cuntreys. Siþen þe Paternoster is part of Matheus Gospel, as clerkis knowen, why may not al be turnyd to Engliȝsch trewely, as is þis part? Specialy siþen alle Cristen men, lerid and lewid, þat shulen be sauȝd, moten algatis sue Crist, and knowe His lore and His lif. But þe comyns of  
 40 Engliȝschmen knowen it best in þer modir tunge; and þus it were al oon to lette sicke knowing of þe Gospel and to lette Engliȝschmen to sue Crist and come to heuene.

Wel y woot defaute may be in vntrewe translating, as myȝten haue be many defautis in turnyng fro Ebreu into  
 45 Greu, and fro Greu into Lateyn, and from o langage into anoper. But lyue men good lif, and studie many persones Goddis lawe, and whanne chaungyng of wit is foundun, amende þey it as resoun wole.

Sum men seyn þat freris trauelen, and þer fautours, in þis  
 50 cause for þre chesouns, þat y wole not aferme, but God woot

wher þey ben soþe. First þey wolden be seun so nedeful to þe Engliȝschmen of oure reume þat singulerly in her wit layȝ þe wit of Goddis lawe, to telle þe puple Goddis lawe on what maner euere þey wolden. And þe secound cause herof is seyð to stonde in þis sentense: freris wolden lede þe puple in 55 techinge hem Goddis lawe, and þus þei wolden teche sum, and sum hide, and docke sum. For þanne defautis in þer lif shulden be lesse knowun to þe puple, and Goddis lawe shulde be vntreweliere knowun boþe bi clerkis and bi comyns. Þe þridde cause þat men asprien stondiþ in þis, as þey seyn: alle 60 þes newe ordris dreden hem þat þer synne shulde be knowun, and hou þei ben not groundid in God to come into þe chirche; and þus þey wolden not for drede þat Goddis lawe were knowun in Engliȝsch; but þey myȝten putte heresye on men 65 ȝif Engliȝsch toolde not what þey seyden.

God moue lordis and bischops to stonde for knowing of His lawe!

## B. OF FEIGNED CONTEMPLATIVE LIFE.

Corpus Christi College (Cambridge) MS. 296 (1375-1400), p. 165.

Of feyned contemplatif lif, of song, of þe Ordynal of Salisbury, and of bodely almes and worldly bysynesse of prestis; hou bi þes foure þe fend lettijþ hem fro prechyng of þe Gospel.—

First, whanne trewe men techen bi Goddis lawe wit and 5 reson, þat eche prest owijþ to do his myȝt, his wit, and his wille to preche Cristis Gospel, þe fend blyndijþ ypocritis to excuse hem by feyned contemplatif lif, and to seie þat, siþ it is þe beste, and þei may not do boþe togidre, þei ben nedid for charité of God to leue þe prechyng of þe Gospel, and 10 lyuen in contemplacion.

7 fend] fendis MS.

See nowe þe ypocrisie of þis false seiynge. Crist tauȝt and dide þe beste lif for prestis, as oure feiþ techiþ, siþ He was God and myȝte not erre. But Crist preched þe Gospel, and  
 15 charged alle His apostlis and disciplis to goo and preche þe Gospel to alle men. þan it is þe beste lif for prestis in þis world to preche þe Gospel.

Also God in þe olde lawe techiþ þat þe office of a prophete is to schewe to þe peple here foule synnys. But eche prest  
 20 is a prophete bi his ordre, as Gregory seyþ vpon þe Gospellis. þanne it is þe office of eche prest to preche and telle þe synnys of þe peple; and in þis manere schal eche prest be an aungel of God, as Holy Writt seiþ.

Also Crist and Ion Baptist leften desert and precheden þe  
 25 Gospel to here deþ þerfore; and þis was most charité; for ellis þei weren out of charité, or peierid in charité, þat myȝte not be in hem boþe, siþ þe ton was God, and no man after Crist was holyere þan Baptist, and he synned not for þis prechyng.

Also þe holy prophete Ieromye, halwid in his moder  
 30 wombe, myȝtte not be excused fro prechyng bi his contemplacion, but chargid of God to preche þe synnes of þe peple, and suffre payne þerfore, and so weren alle þe prophetis of God.

A Lord! siþ Crist and Ion Baptist and alle þe prophetis of  
 35 God weren nedid bi charité to come out of desert to preche to þe peple, and leue here sol(it)arie preiere, hou dore we fonnyd heretikys seiþ þat it is betre to be stille, and preie oure owen fonnyd ordynaunce, þan to preche Cristis Gospel?

Lord! what cursed spirit of lesyngis stiriþ prestis to close  
 40 hem in stonys or wallis for al here lif, siþ Crist comaundiþ to alle His apostlis and prestis to goo into alle þe world and preche þe Gospel. Certis þei ben opyn foolis, and don pleynly aȝenst Cristis Gospel; and, ȝif þei meynthenen þis errour, þei ben cursed of (God), and ben perilous ypocritis and  
 45 heretikis also. And siþ men ben holden heretikis þat done

agenst þe popis lawe, (and þe beste part of þe popis lawe) seiþ pleynly þat eche þat comeþ to presthod takip þe office of a bedele, or criere, to goo bifore Domesday to crie to þe peple here synnes and vengauce of God, whi ben not þo prestis heretikis þat leuen to preche Cristis Gospel, and 50 compelle oþere treue men to leue prechyng of þe Gospel? Siþ þis lawe is Seynt Gregoryes lawe, groundid opynly in Goddis lawe and reson and charité; and oþere lawes of þe peple ben contrarie to Holy Writt and reson and charité, for to meyntene pride and coueitise of Anticristis worldly clerkis. 55

But ypocritis allegen þe Gospel,—þat Magdaleyne chees to hereself þe beste part whanne she saat bisiden Cristis feet and herde His word. Soþ it is þat þis meke sittynge and deuout herynge of Cristis wordis was best to Magdeleyne, for sche hadde not office of prechyng as prestis han, siþ sche was 60 a womman, þat hadde not auctorité of Goddis lawe to teche and preche opynly. But what is þis dede to prestis, þat han expresse þe comaundement of God and men to preche þe Gospel? Where þei wolen alle be wommen in ydelnesse, and suen not Iesu Crist in lif and prechyng þe Gospel, þat 65 He comandip Hymself boþe in þe olde lawe and newe?

Also þis pesible herynge of Cristis word and brennyng loue þat Magdeleyne hadde was þe beste part, for it schal be ende in heuene of good lif in þis world. But in þis *world* þe beste lif for prestis is holy lif in kepyng Goddis bestis, and 70 trewe prechyng of þe Gospel, as Crist dide, and chargid alle His prestis to do (þe same). And þes ypocritis wenen þat here dremys and fantasies of hemself ben contemplacion, and þat prechyng of þe Gospel be actif lif; and so þei menen þat Crist tok þe worse lif for þis world, and nedid alle His prestis 75 to leue þe betre and take þe worse lif; and þus þes fonnyd ypocritis putten errour in Iesu Crist. But who ben more heretikis?

Also þes blynde ypocritis alleggen þat Crist biddiþ vs preie  
 80 euermore, and Poul biddiþ þat we preie wiþoute lettyng, and  
 þan we prestis may not preche, as þei feynen falsly. But  
 here þes ypocritis schullen wite þat Crist and Poul vnder-  
 stonden of preiere of holy lif, þat eche man doþ as longe as  
 he dwelliþ in charité; and not of bablynge of lippis, þat no  
 85 man may euere do wiþouten cessyng; for ellis no man in þis  
 world myzte fulfille þe comaundement of Crist; and þis techiþ  
 Austyn and oþere seyntis.

And siþ men þat fulfillen not Goddis lawe, and ben out of  
 charité, ben not acceptid in here preiynge of lippis,—for here  
 90 preiere in lippis is abhomynable, as Holy Writt seiþ bi  
 Salomon,—þes prestis þat prechen not þe Gospel, as Crist  
 biddiþ, ben not able to prefe <God> for mercy, but disceyuen  
 hemself and þe peple, and dispisen God, and stiren Hym to  
 wrappe and vengauce, as Austyn and Gregory and oþere  
 95 seyntis techen.

And principaly þes ypocritis þat han rentes, and worldly  
 lordischipes, and parische chirchis appropriid to hem, aȝenst  
 Holy Writt boþe old and newe, by symonye and lesyngis on  
 Crist and His apostelis, for stynkyng gronyngys and abite of  
 100 holynesse, and for distroiynge of Goddis ordynaunce, and for  
 singuler profession maade to foolis and, in cas, to fendis of  
 belle,—þes foolis schullen lerne what is actif lif and con-  
 templatif bi Goddis lawe, and þanne þei myzten wite þat þei  
 han neiþer þe ton ne þe toiþer, siþ þei chargen more veyn  
 105 statutis of synful men, and, in cas, <of> deuelys, þan þei  
 chargen þe heste of God, and werkis of mercy, and poyntis  
 of charité. And þe fende blyndiþ hem so moche, þat þei seyn  
 indede þat þei moten neuere preie to plesyng of God, siþ þei  
 vnablen hemself to do þe office of prestis bi Goddis lawe, and  
 110 purposen to ende in here feyned deuocion, þat is blasphemye  
 to God.

98 on] & MS. 100 for (1st)] fro MS. 105 of (1st)] & MS.  
 108 plesyng] preisyng MS. altered later.



Also bi song þe fend lettīþ men to studie and preche þe Gospel; for siþ mannys wittis ben of certeyn mesure and myzt, þe more þat þei ben occupied aboute sicke mannus song, þe lesse moten þei be sette aboute Goddis lawe. For 115 þis stirīþ men to pride, and iolité, and oþere synnys, and so vnableþ hem many gatis to vnderstonde and kepe Holy Writt, þat techēþ mekenesse, mornynge for oure synnys and oþere mennus, and stable lif, and charité. And ȝit God in all þe lawe of grace chargiþ not sicke song, but deuocion in 120 herte, trewe techynge, and holy spekyng in tonge, and goode werkis, and holy lastynge in charité and mekenesse. But mannus foly and pride stieþ vp euere more and more in þis veyn nouelrie.

First men ordeyned songe of mornynge whanne þei weren 125 in prison, for techynge of þe Gospel, as Ambrose, as men seyn, to putte away ydelnesse, and to be not vnoccupied in goode manere for þe tyme. And þat songe and our(e) acordiþ not, for oure stirīþ to iolité and pride, and here stirīþ to mornynge, and to dwelle lenger in wordis of Goddis lawe. 130 þan were matynys, and masse, and euensong, *placebo* and *dirige*, and comendacion, and matynes of Oure Lady, ordeyned of synful men to be songen wiþ heiȝe cryng, to lette men fro þe sentence and vnderstondynge of þat þat was þus songen, and to maken men wery, and vndisposid to studie 135 Goddis lawe for akyng of hedis. And of schort tyme þanne (weren) more veyn iapis founden: deschaunt, countre note, and orgon, and smale brekyng, þat stirīþ veyn men to daunsynge more þan (to) mornynge; and herefore ben many proude lorelis founden and dowid wiþ temperal and worldly 140 lordischipis and gret cost. But þes foolis schulden drede þe scharpe wordis of Austyn, þat seiþ: 'As oft as þe song likiþ me more þan doþ þe sentence þat is songen, so oft I confesse þat I synne greuously.'

148 And ȝif þes knackeris excusen hem bi song in þe olde lawe,  
 seie þat Crist, þat best kepte þe olde lawe as it schulde be  
 aftirward, tauȝt not ne chargid vs wiþ sich bodely song, ne ony  
 of His apostlis, but wiþ deuocion in herte, and holy lif, and  
 trewe prechyng, and þat is ynowþȝ and þe beste. But who  
 150 schulde þanne charge vs wiþ more, oure þe fredom and  
 liztnesse of Cristis lawe?

And ȝif þei seyn þat angelis heryen God bi song in heuene,  
 seie þat we kunnen not þat song; but þei ben in ful victorie  
 of here enemys, and we ben in perilous *bataile*, and in þe  
 155 valeye of wepyng and mornyng; and oure song lettith vs  
 fro betre occupacion, and stirith vs to many grete synnes, and  
 to forȝete vs self.

But oure flecshly peple haþ more lykyng in here bodely  
 eris in sich knackyng and taterynge, þan in heryng of  
 160 Goddis lawe, and spekyng of þe blisse of heuene; for þei  
 wolen hire proude prestis and opere lorelis þus to knacke  
 notis for many markis and poundis. But þei wolen not ȝeue  
 here almes to prestis and children to lerne and teche  
 Goddis lawe. And þus, bi þis nouelrie of song, is Goddis  
 165 lawe vnstudied and not kepte, and pride and opere grete  
 synnys meynthynd.

And þes fonnyd lordis and peple gessen to haue more þank  
 of God, and <to> worschipe Hym more, in haldyng vp of  
 here owen nouelries wiþ grete cost, þan in leryng, and  
 170 techyng, and meynthyng of his lawe, and his seruautis,  
 and his ordynaunce. But where is more disceit in feiþ, hope  
 and charité? For whanne þer ben fourty or fyfty in a queer,  
 þre or foure proude lorellis schullen knacke þe most deuout  
 seruyce þat no man schal here þe sentence, and alle opere  
 175 schullen be doumbe, and loken on hem as foolis. And þanne  
 strumpatis and þeuys preisen Sire Iacke, or Hobbe, and  
 Williem þe proude clerk, hou smale þei knacken here notis;

and seyn þat þei seruen wel God and Holy Chirche, whanne þei dispisen God in His face, and letten opere Cristene men of here deuocion and compunccion, and stiren hem to worldly 180 vanyté. And þus trewe seruyce of God is lettid, and þis veyn knackyng for oure iolité and pride is preised abouen þe mone.

Also þe Ordynalle of Salisbury lettij moche prechyng of þe Gospel; for folis chargen þat more þan þe maundementis of God, and to studie and teche Cristis Gospel. For 3if 185 a man faile in his Ordynale, men holden þat grete synne, and reprouen hym þerof faste; but 3if a preste breke þe hestis of God, men chargen þat litel or nouȝt. And so 3if prestis seyn here matynes, masse, and euensong astir Salisbury vsse, þei hemself and opere men demen it is ynowȝ, þowþ þei neiþer 190 preche ne teche þe hestis of God and þe Gospel. And þus þei wenen þat it is ynowȝ to fulfille synful mennus ordynaunce, and to leue þe riȝtfulleste ordynaunce of God, þat He chargid prestis to performe.

But, Lord! what was prestis office ordeyned bi God bifore 195 þat Salisbury vss was maad of proude prestis, coueitous and dronkelewe? Where God, þat dampneþ alle ydelnesse, chargid hem not at þe ful wiþ þe beste occupacion for hemself and opere men? Hou doren synful folis chargen Cristis prestis wiþ so moche nouelrie, and euermore cloute more to, 200 þat þei may not frely do Goddis ordynaunce? For þe Iewis in þe olde lawe haden not so manye serymonyes of sacrifices ordeyned bi God as prestis han now riȝtis and reulis maade of synful men. And 3it þe olde lawe in þes charious customes mosten nedes cesse for fredom of Cristis Gospel. But þis 205 fredom is more don awei bi þis nouelrie þan bi customes of þe olde lawe. And þus many grete axen where a prest may, wiþouten dedly synne, seie his masse wiþouten matynys; and þei demen it dedly synne a prest to fulfille þe ordynaunce of God in his fredom, wiþoute nouelrie of synful men, þat lettij 210

prestis fro þe betre occupacion ; as ȝif þei demen it dedly synne to leue þe worse þing, and take þe betre, whanne þei may not do boþe togidre.

And þus, Lord ! þin owen ordynaunce þat þou madist for  
 215 þi prestis is holden errour, and distroied for þe sonnyd nouelrie of synful foolis, and, in cas, of fendis in helle.

But here men moste be war þat vnder colour of þis fredom þei ben betre occupied in þe lawe of God to studie it and teche it, and not slouȝ ne ydel in ouermochē sleep, and vanyté, and  
 220 oþer synnes, for þat is þe fendis panter.

See now þe blyndnesse of þes foolis. þei seyn þat a prest may be excused fro seiynge of masse, þat God comaundid Himself to þe substance þerof, so þat he here on. But he schal not be excused but ȝif he seie matynes and euensong  
 225 himself, þat synful men han ordeyned ; and þus þei chargen more here owene fyndynge þan Cristis comaundement.

A Lord ! ȝif alle þe studie and traueile þat men han now abowte Salisburi vss, wiþ multitude of newe costy portos, antifeners, graielis, and alle oþere bokis, weren turned into  
 230 makynge of biblis, and in studiyng and techyng þerof, hou moche schulde Goddis lawe be forþered, and knowen, and kept, and now in so moche it is hyndrid, vnstudied, and vnkept. Lord ! hou schulden riche men ben excused þat costen so moche in grete schapellis, and costy bokis of mannus  
 235 ordynaunce, for fame and nobleie of þe world, and wolen not spende so moche aboute bokis of Goddis lawe, and for to studie hem and teche hem : siþ þis were wiþoute comparison betre on alle siddis, and lyȝttēre, and sykerere ?

But ȝit men þat knowen þe fredom of Goddis ordynaunce  
 240 for prestis to be þe beste, wiþ grete sorow of herte seyn here matynes, masse, and euensong, whanne þei schulden ellis be betre occupied, last þei slaundren þe sike conscience of here breþeren, þat ȝit knowen not Goddis lawe. God brynge þes

prestis to þe fredom to studie Holy Writt, and lyue þerafter, and teche it oþer men frely, and to preie as long and as 248 moche as God meueþ hem þerto, and ellis turne to oþere medeful werkis, as Crist and His apostlis diden; and þat þei ben not constreyned to blabre alle day wiþ tonge and grete crynge, as pies and iaies, þing þat þei knowen not, and to peiere here owen soule for defaute of wis deuocion and charité! 250

Also bysynesse of worldly occupacion of prestis lettþ prechyng of þe Gospel, for þei ben so besy (þer) aboute, and namely in herte, þat þei þenken litel on Goddis lawe, and han no sauour þerto. And seyn þat þei don þus for hospitalité, and to releue pore men wiþ dedis of charité. But, hou euere 255 men speken, it his for here owen couetise, and lustful lif in mete and drynk and precious cloþis, and for name of þe world in sedyng of riche men; and litel or nouȝt comeþ frely to pore men þat han most nede.

But þes prestis schulden sue Crist in manere of lif and 260 trewe techyng. But Crist leste sich occupacion, and His apostlis also, and weren betre occupied in holy preiere and trewe techyng of þe Gospel. And þis determinacion and ful sentence was ȝouen of alle þe apostlis togidre, whanne þei hadden resceyued þe plenteuous ȝiftis of þe Holy Gost. Lord! 265 where þes worldly prestis (ben) wisere þan ben alle þe apostlis of Crist? It semeth þat þei ben, or ellis (þei ben) fooles.

Also Crist wolde not take þe kyngdom whan þe puple wolde haue maad Him kyng, as Iones Gospel telleþ. But if it haade be a prestis office to dele aboute þus bodi(ly) almes, 270 Crist, þat coude best haue do þis office, wolde haue take þes temperal goodis to dele hem among pouere men. But He wolde not do þus, but fley, and took no man of þe aposteles wiþ him, so faste He hiede. Lord! where worldly prestis kunnen bettere don þis partinge of worldly goodis þan Iesu 275 Crist?

And ȝif þei seyn þat Crist fedde þe puple in desert with  
 bodily almes, manye þousand, as þe Gospel saiþ: þat dide  
 280 Crist by miracle, to shewe His godhede, and to teche prestes  
 houȝ þei schulden fede gostly Cristene men by Goddis word.  
 For so dide Cristis aposteles, and hadde not whereof to do  
 bodily almes, whan þei miȝten haue had tresour and iuelis  
 ynowe of kynggis and lordis.

285 Also Peter saiþ in Dedis of Apostlis to a pore man þat to  
 him neiþer was gold ne siluer; and ȝit he performede wel þe  
 office of a trewe prest. But oure prestis ben so bysye aboute  
 worldly occupacioun þat þei semen bettere baillyues or reues  
 þan gostly prestis of Iesu Crist. For what man is so bysy  
 290 aboute marchaundise, and oþere worldly doyngis, as ben  
 preostes, þat shulden ben lyȝt of heuenly lif to alle men  
 abouten hem?

But certes þei shulde be as bysy aboute studyinge of  
 Goddis lawe, and holy preyer, not of *Famulorum*, but of holy  
 295 desires, and clene meditacioun of God, and trewe techinge of  
 þe Gospel, as ben laboreris aboute worldly labour for here  
 sustenaunce. And muche more bysie, ȝif þei miȝten, for þey  
 ben more holden for to lyue wel, and <ȝeue> ensauple of  
 holi lif to þe puple, and trewe techinge of Holy Writ, þanne þe  
 300 people is holden to ȝyue hem dymes or offringis or ony  
 bodily almes. And þerfore prestis shulde not leue ensauple  
 of good lif, and studyinge of Holi Writ, and trewe techinge  
 þerof, ne <for> bodily almes, ne for worldly goodis, ne for  
 sauynge of here bodily lif.

305 And as Crist sauede þe world by writynge and techinge of  
 foure Euaungelistis, so þe fend casteþ to dampne þe world  
 and prestis for lettynge to preche þe Gospel by þes foure:  
 by feyned contemplacioun, by song, by Salisbury vse. and  
 by worldly bysynes of prestis.

310 God for His mercy styre þes prestis to preche þe Gospel in  
 word, in lif; and be war of Sathanas disceitis. Amen.

## XII

### JOHN GOWER

D. 1408.

John Gower, a Londoner himself, came of a good Kentish family. Chaucer must have known him well, for he chose him as his attorney when leaving for the Continent in 1378, and, with the dedication of *Troilus and Criseyde*, labelled him for ever as 'moral Gower'. Gower's marriage with Agnes Groundolf, probably a second marriage, is recorded in 1398. Blindness came on him a few years later. His will, dated August 15, 1408, was proved on October 24, 1408, so that his death must fall between those two points. By his own wish he was buried in St. Saviour's, Southwark, the church of the canons of St. Mary Overy, to whom he was a liberal benefactor.

On his tomb in St. Saviour's Church, Gower is shown with his head resting on three great volumes, representing his principal works—the *Speculum Meditantis*, the *Vox Clamantis*, and the *Confessio Amantis*.

The *Speculum Meditantis*, or *Mirour de l'Omme*, is a handbook of sins and sinners, written in French.

The *Vox Clamantis*, written in Latin, covers similar ground. Opening with a vision of the Peasants' Revolt of 1381, the poet passes in review the faults of the different grades of society—clergy, nobles, labourers, traders, lawyers—and ends with an admonition to the young King Richard II.

In his English work, the *Confessio Amantis*, he expressly abandons the task of setting the world to rights, and promises to change his style henceforth. Now he will sing of Love. The machinery of the poem is suggested by the great source of mediaeval conventions, the *Roman de la Rose*. On a May morning the poet, a victim of love, wanders afield and meets the

Queen of Love (cp. the beginning of Chaucer's *Legend of Good Women*). She bids him confess to her priest Genius. Genius hears the confession, sustaining with some incongruity the triple rôle of high priest of Love, Christian moralist, and entertainer—for it is he who tells the stories which, woven about the framework of the Seven Deadly Sins, make the real matter of the poem.

The first form of the *Confessio* was completed in 1390. It contains a Prologue in which the suggestion for the poem is ascribed to Richard II, and an Epilogue in his praise. In this version the Queen of Love at parting gives Gower a message for Chaucer :

And gret wel Chaucer whan ye mete,  
As mi disciple and mi poete :  
For in the floures of his youthe  
In sondri wise, as he wel couthe,  
Of ditees and of songes glade,  
The whiche he for mi sake made,  
The lond fulfild is overal.  
Wherof to him in special  
Above alle othre I am most holde.  
Forthi now, in hise daies olde,  
Thow schalt him telle this message,  
That he upon his latere age,  
To sette an ende of alle his werk,  
As he which is myn owne clerk,  
Do make his testament of love,  
As thou hast do thi schrifte above,  
So that mi Court it mai recorde.

In the final form, completed in 1392-3, Richard's name disappears from the Prologue; the dedication to his popular rival, Henry of Lancaster, is made prominent; the eulogy in the Epilogue is dropped; and with it the compliment to Chaucer. Whether this last omission is due to chance, or to some change in the relations between the two poets, is not clear.

In his own day Gower was ranked with Chaucer. His reputation was still high among the Elizabethans; and he has the distinction of appearing as Chorus in a Shakespearian play—*Pericles*—of which his story of *Apollonius of Tyre*, in Bk. viii of the *Confessio*, was the immediate source.

A selection gives a very favourable impression of his work. He has a perfect command of the octosyllabic couplet; an easy



style, well suited to narrative; and a classic simplicity of expression for which the work of his predecessors in Middle English leaves us unprepared. Throughout the whole of the *Confessio Amantis*, more than 30,000 lines, the level of workmanship is remarkable, and almost every page shows some graceful and poetical verses.

Yet the poem as a whole suffers from the fault that Gower tried to avoid:

It dulleth ofte a mannes wit  
To him that schal it alday rede.

One defect, obvious to a modern reader, would hardly be noticed by his contemporaries: he often incorporates in his poetry matter proper only to an encyclopaedia, such as the discourse on the religions of the world in Bk. v, or that on Philosophy in Bk. vii. Another is more radical: for all his wide reading, his leading ideas lack originality. It is hardly a travesty to say that the teaching of his works amounts to this: 'In the moral world, avoid the Seven Deadly Sins in the five sub-classifications of each; in the political world keep your degree without presuming'. Such a negative and conventional message cannot sustain the fabric of three long poems. Their polished and facile moralizing becomes almost exasperating if it be remembered that the poet wrote when a whole system of society was falling, and falling noisily, about him. Modern taste rejects Gower the moralist and political writer, and his claim to present as apart from historical value rests on the delightful single stories which served as embroidery to his serious themes.

The extracts are taken from the admirable edition by G. C. Macaulay: 'The Works of John Gower', 4 vols., Oxford 1899-1902.

### A. CEIX AND ALCEONE.

From Bk. iv, ll. 2927 ff.

THIS finde I write in Poesie:  
Ceix the king of Trocinie  
Hadde Alceone to his wif,  
Which as hire oghne hertes lif

Him loveth ; and he hadde also 5  
 A brother, which was cleped tho  
 Dedalion, and he per cas  
 Fro kinde of man forschape was  
 Into a goshauk of liknesse ;  
 Wherof the king gret hevynesse 10  
 Hath take, and thoghte in his corage  
 To gon upon a pelrinage  
 Into a strange regioun,  
 Wher he hath his devocioun  
 To don his sacrifice and preie, 15  
 If that he mihte in eny weie  
 Toward the goddes finde grace  
 His brother hele to purchace,  
 So that he mihte be reformed  
 Of that he hadde be transformed. 20  
 To this pourpos and to this ende  
 This king is redy for to wende,  
 As he which wolde go be schipe ;  
 And for to don him felaschipe  
 His wif unto the see him broghte, 25  
 With al hire herte and him besoghte  
 That he the time hire wolde sein  
 Whan that he thoghte come aȝein :  
 ‘ Withinne,’ he seith, ‘ tuo monthe day.’  
 And thus in al the haste he may 30  
 He tok his leve, and forth he seileth,  
 Wepende and sche herself beweileth,  
 And torneth hom, ther sche cam fro.  
 Bot whan the monthes were ago,  
 The whiche he sette of his comynge, 35  
 And that sche herde no tydinge,  
 Ther was no care for to seche :  
 Wherof the goddes to beseche

Tho sche began in many wise,  
 And to Iuno hire sacrificise 40  
 Above alle othre most sche dede,  
 And for hir lord sche hath so bede  
 To wite and knowe hou that he ferde,  
 That Iuno the goddesse hire herde,  
 Anon and upon this matiere 45  
 Sche bad Yris hir messagere  
 To Slepes hous that <sc>he schal wende,  
 And bidde him that he make an ende,  
 Be swevene and schewen al the cas  
 Unto this ladi, hou it was. 50

This Yris, fro the hihe stage  
 Which undertake hath the message,  
 Hire reyny cope dede upon,  
 The which was wonderli begon  
 With colours of diverse hewe, 55  
 An hundred mo than men it knewe ;  
 The hevene lich unto a bowe  
 Sche bende, and so she cam doun lowe,  
 The god of Slep wher that sche fond ;  
 And that was in a strange lond, 60  
 Which marcheth upon Chymerie :  
 For ther, as seith the Poesie,  
 The God of Slep hath mad his hous,  
 Which of entaille is merveilous.

Under an hell ther is a cave, 65  
 Which of the sonne mai noght have,  
 So that noman mai knowe ariht  
 The point between the dai and nyht :  
 Ther is no fyr, ther is no sparke,  
 Ther is no dore, which mai charke, 70  
 Wherof an yhe scholde unschette,  
 So that inward ther is no lette.

And for to speke of that withoute,  
 Ther stant no gret tree nyh aboute  
 Wher on ther myhte crowe or pie 75  
 Alihte, for to clepe or crie ;  
 Ther is no cok to crowe day,  
 Ne beste non which noise may ;  
 The hell bot al aboute round  
 Ther is growende upon the ground 80  
 Popi, which berth the sed of slep,  
 With othre herbes suche an hep.  
 A stille water for the nones  
 Rennende upon the smale stones,  
 Which hihte of Lethes the rivere, 85  
 Under that hell in such manere  
 Ther is, which ȝifh gret appetit  
 To slepe. And thus full of delit  
 Slep hath his hous ; and of his couche  
 Withinne his chambre if I schal touche, 90  
 Of hebenus that slepi tree  
 The bordes al aboute be,  
 And for he scholde slepe softe,  
 Upon a fethrebed alofte  
 He lith with many a pilwe of doun. 95  
 The chambre is strowed up and doun  
 With swevenes many thousandfold.  
 Thus cam Yris into this hold,  
 And to the bedd, which is al blak,  
 Sche goth, and ther with Slep sche spak, 100  
 And in the wise as sche was bede  
 The message of Iuno sche dede.  
 Ful ofte hir wordes sche reherceth,  
 Er sche his slepi eres perceth ;  
 With mochel wo bot ate laste 105  
 His slombrende yhen he upcaste

And seide hir that it schal be do.

Wherof among a thousand tho  
Withinne his hous that slepi were,  
In special he ches out there

110

Thre, whiche scholden do this dede :

The ferste of hem, so as I rede,  
Was Morphetis, the whos nature  
Is for to take the figure

Of what persone that him liketh,  
Wherof that he ful ofte entriketh

115

The lif which slepe schal be nyhte ;

And Ithecus that other hihte,

Which hath the vois of every soun,

The chiere and the condicioun

120

Of every lif, what so it is :

The thridde suiende after this

Is Panthasas, which may transforme

Of every thing the rihte forme,

And change it in an other kinde.

125

Upon hem thre, so as I finde,

Of swevenes stant al thapparence,

Which other while is evidence,

And other while bot a iape.

Bot natheles it is so schape,

130

That Morphetis be nyht al one

Appiereth until Alceone

In liknesse of hir housebonde

Al naked ded upon the stronde,

And hou he dreynte in special

135

These othre tuo it schewen al :

The tempeste of the blake cloude,

The wode see, the wyndes loude,

Al this sche mette, and sih him dyen ;

Wherof that sche began to crien,

140

Slepende abedde ther sche lay,  
 And with that noise of hire affray  
 Hir wommen sterten up aboute,  
 Whiche of here ladi were in doute,  
 And axen hire hou that sche ferde ; 145  
 And sche, riht as sche syh and herde,  
 Hir swevene hath told hem everydel :  
 And thei it halsen alle wel  
 And sein it is a tokne of goode.

Bot til sche wiste hou that it stode, 150  
 Sche hath no confort in hire herte,  
 Upon the morwe and up sche sterte,  
 And to the see, wher that sche mette  
 The bodi lay, withoute lette  
 Sche drowh, and whan that sche cam nyh, 155  
 Stark ded, hise armes sprad, sche syh  
 Hire lord flietende upon the wawe.  
 Wherof hire wittes ben withdrawe,  
 And sche, which tok of deth no kepe,  
 Anon forth lepte into the depe 160  
 And wolde have cawht him in hire arm.

This infortune of double harm  
 The goddes fro the hevene above  
 Behielde, and for the trowthe of love,  
 Which in this worthi ladi stod, 165  
 Thei have upon the salte flod  
 Hire dreinte lord and hire also  
 Fro deth to lyve torned so  
 That thei ben schapen into briddes  
 Swimmende upon the wawe amiddes. 170  
 And whan sche sih hire lord livende  
 In liknesse of a bridd swimmende,  
 And sche was of the same sort,  
 So as sche mihte do desport,

## CEIX AND ALCEONE

137

Upon the ioie which sche hadde 178

Hire wynges bothe abrod sche spradde,

And him, so as sche mai suffise,

Beclipte and keste in such a wise,

As sche was whilom wont to do :

Hire wynges for hire armes tuo 180

Sche tok, and for hire lippes softe

Hire harde bile, and so ful ofte

Sche fondeth in hire briddes forme,

If that sche mihte herself conforme

To do the plesance of a wif, 185

As sche dede in that other lif :

For thogh sche hadde hir pouer lore,

Hir will stod as it was tofore,

And serveth him so as sche mai.

Wherof into this ilke day 190

Togedre upon the see thei wone,

Wher many a dowhter and a sone

Thei bringen forth of briddes kinde ;

And for men scholden take in mynde

This Alceoun the trewe queene, 195

Hire briddes ȝit, as it is seene,

Of Alceoun the name bere.

## B. ADRIAN AND BARDUS.

From Bk. v, ll. 4937 ff.

To speke of an unkinde man,

I finde hou whilom Adrian,

Of Rome which a gret lord was,

Upon a day as he per cas

To wode in his huntinge wente,

It hapneth at a soudein wente,

After his chace as he poursuieth,  
 Thurgh happ, the which noman eschuieth,  
 He fell unwar into a pet,  
 Wher that it mihte noght be let. 10  
 The pet was dep and he fell lowe,  
 That of his men non myhte knowe  
 Wher he becam, for non was nyh  
 Which of his fall the meschief syh.  
 And thus al one ther he lay 15  
 Clepende and criende al the day  
 For socour and deliverance,  
 Til azein eve it fell per chance,  
 A while er it began to nyhte,  
 A povere man, which Bardus hihte, 20  
 Cam forth walkende with his asse,  
 And hadde gadred him a tasse  
 Of grene stickes and of dreie  
 To selle, who that wolde hem beie,  
 As he which hadde no liflode, 25  
 Bot whanne he myhte such a lode  
 To toune with his asse carie.  
 And as it fell him for to tarie  
 That ilke time nyh the pet,  
 And hath the trusse faste knet, 30  
 He herde a vois, which cride dimme,  
 And he his ere to the brimme  
 Hath leid, and herde it was a man,  
 Which seide, 'Ha, help hier Adrian,  
 And I wol ȝiven half mi good.' 35  
 The povere man this understod,  
 As he that wolde gladly winne,  
 And to this lord which was withinne  
 He spak and seide, 'If I thee save,  
 What sikernesse schal I have 40



Of covenant, that afterward  
Thou wolt me give such reward  
As thou behiitest nou tofore ?'

That other hath his othes swore  
Be hevene and be the goddes alle, 45  
If that it myhte so befall  
That he out of the pet him broghte,  
Of all the goodes whiche he oghte  
He schal have evene halvendel.

This Bardus seide he wolde wel ; 50  
And with this word his asse anon  
He let untrusse, and therupon  
Doun goth the corde into the pet,  
To which he hath at the ende knet  
A staf, wherby, he seide, he wolde 55  
That Adrian him scholde holde.

Bot it was tho per chance falle,  
Into that pet was also falle  
An ape, which at thilke throwe,  
Whan that the corde cam doun lowe, 60  
Al sodeinli therto he skipte  
And it in bothe hise armes clipte.

And Bardus with his asse anon  
Him hath updrawe, and he is gon.  
But whan he sih it was an ape, 65  
He wende al hadde ben a iape  
Of faierie, and sore him dradde :

And Adrian eftsone gradde  
For help, and cride and preide faste,  
And he eftsone his corde caste ; 70  
Bot whan it cam unto the grounde,  
A gret serpent it hath bewounde,  
The which Bardus anon up drouh.  
And thanne him thoghte wel ynouh

It was fantosme, bot yit he herde 75  
 The vois, and he therto ansuerde,  
 'What wiht art thou in Goddes name?  
     'I am,' quod Adrian, 'the same,  
 Whos good thou schalt have evene half.'  
 Quod Bardus, 'Thanne a Goddes half 80  
 The thridde time assaie I schal':  
 And caste his corde forth withal  
 Into the pet, and whan it cam  
 To him, this lord of Rome it nam,  
 And therupon him hath adresced, 85  
 And with his hand ful ofte blessed,  
 And thanne he bad to Bardus hale.  
 And he, which understod his tale,  
 Betwen him and his asse, al softe,  
 Hath drawe and set him up alofte 90  
 Withouten harm, al esely.  
     He seith noght ones 'grant merci,'  
 Bot strauhte him forth to the cité,  
 And let this povere Bardus be.  
 And natheles this simple man 95  
 His covenant, so as he can,  
 Hath axed; and that other seide,  
 If so be that he him umbreide  
 Of oght that hath be speke or do,  
 It schal ben venged on him so, 100  
 That him were betre to be ded.  
     And he can tho non other red,  
 But on his asse azein he caste  
 His trusse, and hieth homward faste :  
 And whan that he cam hom to bedde, 105  
 He tolde his wif hou that he spedde.  
 Bot finaly to speke oght more  
 Unto this lord he dradde him sore,

So that a word ne dorste he sein.

And thus upon the morwe agein, 110  
In the manere as I recorde,  
Forth with his asse and with his corde  
To gadre wode, as he dede er,  
He goth ; and whan that he cam ner  
Unto the place where he wolde, 115  
He hath his ape anon beholde,  
Which hadde gadred al aboute  
Of stickes hiere and there a route,  
And leide hem redy to his hond,  
Wherof he made his trosse and bond. 120  
Fro dai to dai and in this wise  
This ape profreth his servise,  
So that he hadde of wode ynouh.

Upon a time and as he drouh  
Toward the wode, he sih besyde 125  
The grete gastli serpent glyde,  
Til that sche cam in his presence,  
And in hir kinde a reverence  
Sche hath him do, and forth withal  
A ston mor briht than a cristall 130  
Out of hir mouth tofore his weie  
Sche let doun falle, and wente aweie  
For that he schal noght ben adrad.  
Tho was this povere Bardus glad,  
Thonkende God and to the ston 135  
He goth and takth it up anon,  
And hath gret wonder in his wit  
Hou that the beste him hath aquit,  
Wher that the mannes sone hath failed,  
For whom he hadde most travailed. 140

Bot al he putte in Goddes hond,  
And torneth hom, and what he fond

Unto his wif he hath it schewed ;  
 And thei, that weren bothe lewed,  
 Acorden that he scholde it selle. 145  
 And he no lengere wolde duelle,  
 Bot forth anon upon the tale  
 The ston he profreth to the sale ;  
 And riht as he himself it sette,  
 The iueler anon forth fette 150  
 The gold and made his paiement ;  
 Therof was no delaie ment.

Thus whan this ston was boght and sold,  
 Homward with ioie manyfold  
 This Bardus goth ; and whan he cam 155  
 Hom to his hous and that he nam  
 His gold out of his purs, withinne  
 He fond his ston also therinne,  
 Wherof for ioie his herte pleide,  
 Unto his wif and thus he seide, 160  
 ‘ Lo, hier my gold, lo, hier mi ston ! ’  
 His wif hath wonder therupon,  
 And axeth him hou that mai be.  
 ‘ Nou, be mi trouthe ! I not,’ quod he,  
 ‘ Bot I dar swere upon a bok 165  
 That to my marchant I it tok,  
 And he it hadde whan I wente :  
 So knowe I noght to what entente  
 It is nou hier, bot it be grace.  
 Forthi tomorwe in other place 170  
 I wole it sonde for to selle,  
 And if it wol noght with him duelle,  
 Bot crepe into mi purs aȝein,  
 Than dar I sauffy swere and sein  
 It is the vertu of the ston.’ 175

The morwe cam, and he is gon

To seche aboute in other stede  
His ston to selle, and he so dede,  
And lefte it with his chapman there.  
Bot whan that he cam elleswhere 180  
In presence of his wif at hom,  
Out of his purs and that he nom  
His gold, he fond his ston withal.  
And thus it fell him overal,  
Where he it solde in sondri place, 185  
Such was the fortune and the grace.

Bot so wel may nothing ben hidd,  
That it nys ate laste kidd:  
This fame goth aboute Rome  
So ferforth that the wordes come 190  
To themperour Iustinian;  
And he let sende for the man,  
And axede him hou that it was.  
And Bardus tolde him al the cas,  
Hou that the worm and ek the beste, 195  
Although thei maden no beheste,  
His travail hadden wel aquit;  
Bot he which hadde a mannes wit,  
And made his covenant be mouthe,  
And swor therto al that he couthe, 200  
To parte and ȝiven half his good,  
Hath nou forȝete hou that it stod,  
As he which wol no trouthe holde.

This Emperour al that he tolde  
Hath herd, and thilke unkindenesse 205  
He seide he wolde himself redresse.  
And thus in court of iuggement  
This Adrian was thanne assent,  
And the querele in audience  
Declared was in the presence 210

Of themperour and many mo ;  
Wherof was mochel speche tho  
And gret wondringe among the press.

Bot ate laste natheles

For the partie which hath pleigned 215  
The lawe hath diemed and ordeigned  
Be hem that were avised wel,  
That he schal have the halvendel  
Thurghout of Adrianes good.

And thus of thilke unkinde blod 220  
Stant the memoire into this day,  
Wherof that every wys man may  
Ensamplen him, and take in mynde  
What schame it is to ben unkinde ;  
Aȝein the which reson debateth, 225  
And every creature it hateth.

## XIII

### JOHN OF TREVISA'S TRANSLATION OF HIGDEN'S POLYCHRONICON

1387.

Ranulph Higden (d. 1364) was a monk of St. Werburgh's at Chester, and has been doubtfully identified with the 'Randal Higden' who is said to have travelled to Rome to get the Pope's consent to the acting of the Chester miracle plays in English.

His *Polychronicon*, so called because it is the chronicle of many ages, is a compilation covering the period from the Creation to 1352. In the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries it was the favourite universal history; and the First Book, which deals with general geography, has still a special interest for the light it throws on the state of knowledge in Chaucer's day.

Two English prose translations are known: Trevisa's, completed in 1387, and modernized and printed by Caxton in 1482; and an anonymous rendering made in the second quarter of the fifteenth century. Both are printed, with Higden's Latin, in the edition by Babington and Lumby, Rolls Series, 9 vols., 1865-86.

John of Trevisa was a Cornishman. He was a fellow of Exeter College, Oxford, from 1362 to 1365; and was one of those expelled from Queen's College for 'unworthiness' in 1379. He became vicar of Berkeley, and at the request of Sir Thomas Berkeley undertook the translation of the *Polychronicon*. In 1398 he brought to an end another long work, the translation of *Bartolomaeus de Proprietatibus Rerum*, the great encyclopaedia of natural science at this time. He died at Berkeley in 1402.

Trevisa was a diligent but not an accurate or graceful trans-

lator. He rarely adds anything from his own knowledge, though we have an example in the account of the reform of teaching at Oxford while he was there. The interest of his work depends chiefly on the curiosity of some passages in his originals.

## A. THE MARVELS OF BRITAIN.

### CHAP. xlii.

MS. Tiberius D. vii (about 1400), f. 39 a.

In Brytayn buþ hoot welles wel arayed and yhyzt to þe vse of mankunde. Mayster of þulke welles ys þe gret spyryt of Minerua. Yn hys hous fuyr duyreþ alwey, þat neuer chaungeþ into askes, bote þar þe fuyr slakeþ, hyt changeþ  
 5 ynto stony clottes.

Yn Brytayn buþ meny wondres. Noþeles foure buþ most wonderfol. Þe furste ys at Pectoun. Þar bloweþ so strong a wynd out of þe chenes of þe eorþe þat hyt casteþ vp aze cloþes þat me casteþ yn. Þe secunde ys at Stonhenge  
 10 bysydes Salesbury. Þar gret stones and wondur huge buþ arered an hyz, as hyt were zates, so þat þar semeþ zates yset apon oþer zates. Noþeles hyt ys nozt clerlych yknowe noþer parceyuet houz and wharfore a buþ so arered and so wonderlych yhonged. Þe þridde ys at Cherdhol. Þer  
 15 ys gret holwenes vndur eorþe. Ofte meny men habbeþ ybe þerynne, and ywalked aboute wiþynne, and yseye ryuers and streemes, bote nowhar conneþ hy fynde non ende. Þe feurþe ys þat reyn ys yseye arered vp of þe hules, and anon yspronge aboute yn þe feeldes. Also þer ys a gret pond þat  
 20 conteyneþ þre score ylondes couenable for men to dwelle ynne. Þat pound ys byclypped aboute wiþ six score rooches. Apon euerych rooch ys an egle hys nest; and þre score ryuers eorneþ into þat pound, and non of ham aile eorneþ into þe se, bot on. Þar ys a pound yclosed aboute wiþ a wal  
 25 of tyyl and of ston. Yn þat pound men wascheþ and baþeþ



wel ofte, and euerych man feelep þe water hoot oþer cold  
 ryȝt as a wol hymself. Þar buþ also salt welles fer fram þe  
 se, and buþ salt al þe woke long forto Saturday noon, and  
 fersch fram Saturday noon forto Moneday. Þe water of þis  
 welles, whanne hyt ys ysode, turnep into smal salt, fayr and <sup>30</sup>  
 whyyt. Also þar ys a pond þe water þerof haþ wondur  
 worchyng, for þey al an ost stood by þe pond, and turnede  
 þe face þyderward, þe water wolde drawe ⟨hem⟩ vyolentlych  
 toward þe pond, and weete al here cloþes. So scholde hors  
 be drawe yn þe same wyse. Bote ȝef þe face ys awayward <sup>35</sup>  
 fram þe water, þe water noyep noȝt. Þer ys a wellle ⟨þat⟩ non  
 streem eorneþ þarfram noþer þerto, and ȝet four maner fysch  
 buþ ytake þarynne. Þat wellle ys bote twenty foot long, and  
 twenty foot brood, and noȝt deop bote to þe kneo, and  
 ys yclosed wiþ hyȝ bankkes in euerych syde. <sup>40</sup>

Yn þe contray aboute Wynchestre ys a den. Out of þat  
 den alwey blowep a strong wynd, so þat no man may endure  
 for to stonde tofor þat den. Þar ys also a pond þat turnep  
 tre into yre and hyt be þerynne al a ȝer, and so tren buþ  
 yschape into whestones. Also þer ys yn þe cop of an hul <sup>45</sup>  
 a buryel. Euerych man þat comeþ and meteþ þat buriel  
 a schal fynde hyt euene ryȝt of hys oune meete; and ȝef a  
 pylgrym oþer eny wery man kneoleþ þerto, anon a schal be  
 al fersch, and of werynes schal he feele non nuy.

Fast by þe Ministre of Wynburney, þat ys noȝt fer fram <sup>50</sup>  
 Bathe, ys a wode þat bereþ moche fruyt. ȝef þe tren of þat  
 wode falle into a water oþer grounde ⟨þat⟩ þar ys nyȝ, and  
 lygge þar al a ȝer, þe tren teorneþ ynto stoones.

Vndur þe cité of Chestre eorneþ þe ryuer Dee, þat now  
 todelep Engeland and Wales. Þat ryuer euerych monthe <sup>55</sup>  
 chaungeþ hys fordes, as men of þe contray telleþ, and leueþ  
 ofte þe chanel. Bote wheþer þe water drawe more toward  
 Engeland oþer toward Wales, to what syde þat hyt be, þat ȝer  
 men of þat syde schal habbe þe wors ende and be ouerset, and

60 þe men of þe oþer syde schal habbe þe betre ende and be at here aboue. Whanne þe water chaungeþ so hys cours, hyt bodeþ such happes. Þis ryuer Dee eorneþ and comeþ out of a lake þat hatte Pimbilmere. Yn þe ryuer ys gret plenté of samon. Noþeles in þe lake ys neuer samon yfoundede.

## B. THE LANGUAGES OF BRITAIN.

### CHAP. lix.

As hyt ys yknowe houȝ meny maner people buþ in þis ylond, þer buþ also of so meny people longages and tonges. Noþeles Walschmen and Scottes, þat buþ noȝt ymelled wiþ oþer nacions, holdeþ wel nyȝ here furste longage and speche, 5 bote ȝef Scottes, þat were som tyme confederat and wonede wiþ þe Pictes, drawe somewhat after here speche. Bote þe Fiemmynges þat woneþ in þe west syde of Wales habbeþ yleft here strange speche, and spekeþ Saxonlych ynow. Also Englyschmen, þeyȝ hy hadde fram þe bygynnyng þre maner 10 speche, Souþeron, Norþeron, and Myddel speche in þe myddel of þe lond, as hy come of þre maner people of Germania, noþeles by commyxstion and mellyng, furst wiþ Danes and afterward wiþ Normans, in menye þe contray longage ys aþeyred, and som vseþ strange wlaffyng, chyteryng, 15 harryng, and garryng grisbittyng. Þis aþeyryng of þe burþtonge ys bycause of twey þinges. On ys for chyldern in scole, aȝenes þe vsage and manere of al oþer nacions, buþ compelled for to leue here oune longage, and for to construe here lessons and here þinges a Freynsch, and habbeþ supþe 20 þe Normans come furst into Engeland. Also gentil men children buþ ytaugt for to speke Freynsch fram tyme þat a buþ yrokked in here cradel, and conneþ speke and playe wiþ a child hys brouch; and oplondysch men wol lykne

hamsylf to gentil men, and fondeþ wiþ gret bysynes for to speke Freynsch, for to be more ytold of. 25

[Pys manere was moche y-used tofore þe furste moreyn, and ys seþthe somdel ychaunged. For Iohan Cornwal, a mayster of gramere, chayngede þe lore in gramerscole and construccion of Freynsch into Englysch; and Richard Pencrych lurnede þat manere techyng of hym, and oþer men of Pencrych, so þat 30 now, þe 3er of oure Lord a þousond þre hondred foure score and fyue, of þe secunde kyng Richard after þe Conquest nyne, in al þe gramerscoles of Engelond childern leueþ Frensch, and construeþ and lurneþ an Englysch, and habbeþ þerby avauntage in on syde, and desavauntage yn anoþer. 35 Here avauntage ys þat a lurneþ here gramer yn lasse tyme þan childern wer ywoned to do. Disavauntage ys þat now childern of gramerscole conneþ no more Frensch þan can here lift heele, and þat ys harm for ham and a scholle passe þe se and trauayle in strange londes, and in meny caas also. 40 Also gentil men habbeþ now moche yleft for to teche here childern Frensch.] Hyt semeþ a gret wondur houþ Englysch, þat ys þe burþ-tonge of Englyschmen, and here oune longage and tonge, ys so dyuers of soon in þis ylond; and þe longage of Normandy ys comlyng of anoþer lond, and haþ on maner 45 soon among al men þat spekeþ hyt aryzt in Engelond. [Noþeles þer ys as meny dyuers maner Frensch yn þe rem of Fraunce as ys dyuers manere Englysch in þe rem of Engelond.]

Also of þe forseyde Saxon tonge, þat ys deled a þre, and ys abyde scarslych wiþ feaw vplondysch men, and ys gret 50 wondur, for men of þe est wiþ men of þe west, as hyt were vnder þe same party of heuene, acordeþ more in sounyng of speche þan men of þe norþ wiþ men of þe souþ. Þerfore hyt ys þat Mercii, þat buþ men of myddel Engelond, as hyt were parteners of þe endes, vndurstondeþ betre þe syde 55 longages, Norþeron and Souþeron, þan Norþeron and Souþeron vndurstondeþ eyþer oþer.

Al þe longage of þe Norþhumbres, and specialych at ȝork,  
ys so scharp, slyttyng, and frotyng, and vnschape, þat we  
60 Souperon men may þat longage vneþe vndurstonde. Y trowe  
þat þat ys bycause þat a buþ nyȝ to strange men and aliens,  
þat spekeþ strangelych, and also bycause þat þe kynges of  
Engelond woneþ alwey fer fram þat contray ; for a buþ more  
yturnd to þe souþ contray, and ȝef a goþ to þe norþ contray,  
65 a goþ wiþ gret help and strengthe.

þe cause why a buþ more in þe souþ contray þan in þe norþ  
may be betre cornlond, more people, more noble cytés, and  
more profytable hauenes.

## XIV

### POLITICAL PIECES

In the thirteenth century political poems were written chiefly in Latin or French. In the fourteenth century a steadily growing tendency to use English witnesses the increased interest of the people in politics and social questions. The fullest collections are those edited by T. Wright, *Political Songs of England* (John to Edward II), Camden Society, 1839; and *Political Poems and Songs* (Edward III to Richard III), Rolls Series, 2 vols., 1859-61.

The selections A and B are from the poems of Laurence Minot, of which the best edition is the third by J. Hall, Oxford 1914. Minot was a better patriot than a poet, and his boisterous contempt for the Scots and French reflects the spirit of England in the early days of Edward III's greatness.

The empty phrases in which the anonymous piece C abounds do not disguise a note of despair. The long war with France was becoming more and more hopeless. The plague that added to its miseries had carried off Henry, first Duke of Lancaster, in 1361. The Black Prince, to whom the nation looked for guidance, had died in 1376. The inglorious old age of Edward III ended in the following year. But there remained the hope, soon to be falsified, that the boy king Richard II would steer the ship of state to safety.

D is the earliest text of the letter which John Ball addressed to the Essex members of the Great Society of Peasants on the eve of the revolt of 1381. It shows how deep an impression the characters and allegorical form of *Piers Plowman* had made on the oppressed serfs and labourers, and it gives some idea of the vague and incoherent thinking that brought ruin on their enterprise. Ball, who had defied established authority all his

life, was freed from prison by the rebels, became a ringleader, and preached to their assembly on Blackheath a famous sermon with the text :

When Adam dalf, and Eve span,  
Who was then the gentleman?

A few weeks later he was executed by sentence of Lord Chief Justice Tressilian, who had been charged by the King to take vengeance on the rebels.

The distich E sums up briefly the history of a year which turned moderate men against Richard II. A fuller contemporary picture of the events that led to his deposition is found in the alliterative poem *Richard the Redeles* (called *Mum and the Sothsegger* since the discovery of a new fragment) which Skeat attributed, probably wrongly, to the author of *Piers Plowman*.

#### A. ON THE SCOTS (ABOUT 1333).

BY LAURENCE MINOT.

MS. Cotton Galba E. ix (about 1425), f. 52 a.

*Now for to tell ȝou will I turn  
Of batayl of Banocburn*

SKOTTES out of Berwik and of Abirdene  
At þe Bannokburn war ȝe to kene;  
Þare slogh ȝe many sakles, als it was sene,  
And now has King Edward wroken it, I wene.  
It es wrokin, I wene, wele wurth þe while!  
War ȝit with þe Skottes for þai er ful of gile!

Whare er ȝe Skottes of Saint Iohnes toune?  
Þe boste of ȝowre baner es betin all doune.  
When ȝe bosting will bede, Sir Edward es boune  
For to kindel ȝow care, and crak ȝowre crowne.

10

He has crakked ȝowre croune, wele worth þe while  
Schame bityde þe Skottes, for þai er full of gile!

Skottes of Striflin war steren and stout,  
 Of God ne of gude men had þai no dout.  
 Now haue þai, þe pelers, priked about, 15  
 Bot at þe last Sir Edward rifild þaire rout.  
 He has rifild þaire rout, wele wurth þe while !  
 Bot euer er þai vnder bot gaudes and gile.  
 Rughfute riueling, now kindels þi care ;  
 Berebag with þi boste, þi biging es bare ; 20  
 Fals wretche and forsworn, whider wiltou fare ?  
 Busk þe vnto Brig, and abide þare.  
 Þare, wretche, saltou won, and wery þe while ;  
 Þi dwelling in Dondé es done for þi gile.  
 Þe Skottes gase in Burghes and betes þe stretes ; 25  
 Al þise Inglis men harmes he hetes ;  
 Fast makes he his mone to men þat he metes,  
 Bot fone frendes he findes þat his bale betes.  
 Fune betes his bale, wele wurth þe while !  
 He vses al threting with gaudes and gile. 30  
 Bot many man thretes and spekes ful ill  
 Þat sum tyme war better to be stane-still.  
 Þe Skot in his wordes has wind for to spill,  
 For at þe last Edward sall haue al his will.  
 He had his will at Berwik, wele wurth þe while ! 35  
 Skottes broght him þe kayes,—bot get for þaire gile.

## B. THE TAKING OF CALAIS (1347).

BY LAURENCE MINOT.

MS. Cotton Galba E. ix (about 1425), f. 55 b.

*How Edward als þe romance sais  
 Held his sege bifor Calais.*

CALAYS men, now mai 3e care,  
 And murni(n)g mun 3e haue to mede ;

Mirth on mold get ȝe no mare,  
 Sir Edward sall ken ȝow ȝowre crede.  
 Whilum war ȝe wight in wede 5  
 To robbing rathly for to ren ;  
 Mend ȝow sone of ȝowre misdede :  
 ȝowre care es cumen, will ȝe it ken.

Kend it es how ȝe war kene  
 Al Inglis men with dole to dere. 10  
 ȝaire gudes toke ȝe al bidene,  
 No man born wald ȝe forbere.  
 ȝe spared noght with swerd ne spere  
 To stik þam, and ȝaire gudes to stele.  
 With wapin and with ded of were 15  
 þus haue ȝe wonnen werldes wele.

Weleful men war ȝe iwis,  
 Bot fer on fold sall ȝe noght fare :  
 A bare sal now abate ȝowre blis  
 And wirk ȝow bale on bankes bare. 20  
 He sall ȝow hunt, als hund dose hare,  
 þat in no hole sall ȝe ȝow hide ;  
 For all ȝowre speche will he noght spare,  
 Bot bigges him right by ȝowre side.

Biside ȝow here þe bare bigins 25  
 To big his boure in winter-tyde,  
 And all bityme takes he his ines  
 With semly se(r)gantes him biside.  
 þe word of him walkes ful wide—  
 Iesu saue him fro mischance ! 30  
 In bataill dar he wele habide  
 Sir Philip and Sir Iohn of France.



þe Franche men er fers and fell,  
And mase grete dray when þai er dight ;  
Of þam men herd slike tales tell, 35  
With Edward think þai for to fight,  
Him for to hald out of his right,  
And do him treson with þaire tales :  
þat was þaire purpos, day and night,  
Bi counsail of þe Cardinales. 40

Cardinales with hattes rede  
War fro Calays wele thre myle ;  
þai toke þaire counsail in þat stede  
How þai might Sir Edward bigile.  
þai lended þare bot litill while 45  
Till Franche men to grante þaire grace :  
Sir Philip was funden a file,  
He fled and faght noght in þat place.

In þat place þe bare was blith,  
For all was funden þat he had soght. 50  
Philip þe Valas fled ful swith  
With þe batail þat he had broght.  
For to haue Calays had he thoght  
All at his ledeing, loud or still ;  
Bot all þaire wiles war for noght : 55  
Edward wan it at his will.

Lystens now, and ȝe may lere,  
Als men þe suth may vnderstand,  
þe knightes þat in Calais were  
Come to Sir Edward sare wepeand. 60  
In kirtell one, and swerd in hand,  
And cried, ' Sir Edward, þine <we> are.  
Do now, lord, bi law of land  
þi will with vs for euermare '.

þe nobill burgase and þe best 65  
 Come vnto him to haue þaire hire.  
 þe comun puple war ful prest  
 Rapes to bring about þaire swire.  
 þai said all: 'Sir Philip, oure syre,  
 And his sun, Sir Iohn of France, 70  
 Has left vs ligand in þe mire,  
 And broght vs till þis doleful dance.

Our horses þat war faire and fat  
 Er etin vp ilkone bidene;  
 Haue we nowþer conig ne cat 75  
 þat þai ne er etin, and hundes kene  
 Al er etin vp ful clene—  
 Es nowther leuid biche ne whelp—  
 þat es wele on oure sembland sene,  
 And þai er fled þat suld vs help.' 80

A knight þat was of grete renowne—  
 Sir Iohn de Viene was his name—  
 He was wardaine of þe toun  
 And had done Ingland mekill schame.  
 For all þaire boste þai er to blame, 85  
 Ful stalworthly þare haue þai streuyn.  
 A bare es cumen to mak þam tame,  
 Kayes of þe toun to him er gifen.

þe kaies er 3olden him of þe 3ate,—  
 Lat him now kepe þam if he kun. 90  
 To Calais cum þai all to late,  
 Sir Philip, and Sir Iohn his sun.  
 Al war ful ferd þat þare ware fun,  
 þaire leders may þai barely ban.  
 All on þis wise was Calais won: 95  
 God saue þam þat it sogat wan !

## C. ON THE DEATH OF EDWARD III, A.D. 1377.

Bodleian MS. Vernon (about 1400), f. 410<sup>b</sup>.

A! ~~DERE~~ God, what mai þis be,  
 þat alle þing weres and wastep awai?  
 Frendschip is but a vanyté,  
 Vnneþe hit dures al a day.  
 Þei beo so sliper at assai, 5  
 So leof to han, and loþ to lete,  
 And so fikel in heore fai,  
 þat selden iseige is sone forþete.

I sei hit not wiþouten a cause,  
 And þerfore takes riht good hede, 10  
 For 3if 3e construwe wel þis clause,  
 I puit 3ou holly out of drede  
 þat for puire schame 3or hertes wol blede  
 And 3e þis matere wysli trete :  
 He þat was vr moste spede 15  
 Is selden iseye and sone forþete.

Sum tyme an Englisch schip we had,  
 Nobel hit was and heih of tour,  
 þorw al Cristendam hit was drad,  
 And stif wolde stande in vch a stour, 20  
 And best dorst byde a scharp schour,  
 And oþer stormes, smale and grete.  
 Now is þat schip, þat bar þe flour,  
 Selden seze and sone forþete.

Into þat schip þer longed a rooþur 25  
 þat steered þe schip and gouerned hit ;  
 In al þis world nis such anoþur,  
 As me þinkeþ in my wit.

Whyl schip and roþur togeder was knit,  
 þei dredde nouþer tempest, druyþe nor wete; 30  
 Nou be þei boþe in synder flit,  
 þat selden seyþe is sone forþete.

Scharpe wawes þat schip has sayled,  
 And sayed alle sees at auentur.  
 For wynt ne wederes neuer hit fayled 35  
 Whil þe roþur mihte enduir.  
 Þouþ þe see were rouh or elles dimuir,  
 Gode hauenes þat schip wolde gete.  
 Nou is þat schip, I am wel suir,  
 Selde iseye and sone forþete. 40

Þis goode schip I may remene  
 To þe chiualrye of þis londe;  
 Sum tyme þei counted nouþt a bene  
 Beo al Fraunce, ich vnderstonde.  
 Þei tok and slouþ hem with heore honde, 45  
 þe power of Fraunce, boþ smal and grete,  
 And brouþt þe king hider to byde her bonde;  
 And nou riht sone hit is forþete.

þat schip hadde a ful siker mast,  
 And a sayl strong and large, 50  
 þat made þe gode schip neuer agast  
 To vndertake a þing of charge;  
 And to þat schip þer longed a barge  
 Of al Fraunce þaf nouþt a clete;  
 To vs hit was a siker targe, 55  
 And now riht clene hit is forþete.

þe roþur was nouþer ok ne elm,—  
 Hit was Edward þe þridde, þe noble kniht.  
 þe Prince his sone bar vp his helm,  
 þat neuer scoumfited was in fiht. 60

The Kyng him rod and rouwed ariht ;  
 þe Prince dredde nouþur stok nor strete.  
 Nou of hem we lete ful liht :  
 þat selde is seȝe is sone forȝete.

þe swifte barge was Duk Henri, 65  
 þat noble kniht and wel assayed,  
 And in his leggaunce worþili  
 He abod mony a bitter brayd.  
 ȝif þat his enemys ouȝt outrayed,  
 To chastis hem wolde he not lete. 70  
 Nou is þat lord ful lowe ileyd :  
 þat selde is seȝe is sone forȝete.

þis gode Comunes, bi þe rode !  
 I likne hem to the schipes mast,  
 þat with heore catel and heore goode 75  
 Mayntened þe werre boȝ furst and last.  
 þe wynd þat bleuȝ þe schip wiȝ blast  
 Hit was gode preȝers, I sei hit atrete.  
 Nou is deuoutnes out icast,  
 And mony gode dedes ben clen forȝete. 80

þus ben þis lordes ileid ful lowe :  
 þe stok is of þe same rote ;  
 An ympe biginnes for to growe  
 And ȝit I hope schal ben vr bote,  
 To holde his fomen vnder fote, 85  
 And as a lord be set in sete.  
 Crist leue þat he so mote,  
 þat selden iseȝe be not forȝete !

Weor þat impe fully growe,  
 þat he had sarri sap and piȝ, 90  
 I hope he schulde be kud and knowe  
 For conquerour of moni a kip.

He is ful lyflich in lyme and lip  
 In armes to trauayle and to swete.  
 Crist leue we so fare him wiþ 95  
 þat selden seþe be neuer forþete!  
 And þerfore holliche I ou rede,  
 Til þat þis ympe beo fully growe,  
 þat vch a mon vp wiþ þe hede  
 And mayntene him, boþe heiþe and lowe. 100  
 þe Frensche men cunne boþe boste and blowe,  
 And wiþ heore scornes vs toþrete,  
 And we beoþ boþe vnkuynde and slowe,  
 þat selden seþe is sone forþete.  
 And þerfore, gode sires, takeþ reward 105  
 Of þor douhti kyng þat dyþede in age,  
 And to his sone, Prince Edward,  
 þat welle was of alle corage.  
 Suche two lordes of heiþ þarage  
 I not in corþe whon we schal gete; 110  
 And nou heore los biginneþ to swage,  
 þat selde iseþe is sone forþete.

#### D. JOHN BALL'S LETTER TO THE PEASANTS OF ESSEX, 1381.

St. Albans MS. British Museum Royal 13. E. ix (about 1400), f. 287 a.

IOHON SCHEP, som tyme Seynte Marie prest of þork, and  
 now of Colchestre, greteth wel Iohan Nameles, and Iohan  
 þe Mullere, and Iohon Cartere, and biddeþ hem þat þei bee  
 war of gyle in borugh, and stondeth togidre in Godes name,  
 5 and biddeþ Peres Plouþman go to his werk, and chastise

110 I] In MS.

4 togidre] togidedre MS.

wel Hobbe þe Robbere, and takeþ wiþ ȝow Iohan Trewman,  
and alle hiis felawes, and no mo, and loke schappe ȝou to  
on heued, and no mo.

Iohan þe Mullere haþ ygrounde smal, smal, smal;  
þe Kynges sone of heuene schal paye for al. 10  
Be war or ye be wo;  
Knoweþ ȝour freend fro ȝour foo;  
Haueth ynow, and seith 'Hoo';  
And do wel and bettre, and fleth synne,  
And sekeþ pees, and hold ȝou þerinne; 15  
and so biddeþ Iohan Trewman and alle his felawes.

## E. ON THE YEAR 1390-1.

St. John's College (Oxford) MS. 209, f. 57 a.

THE ax was sharpe, the stokke was harde,  
In the xiiii yere of Kyng Richarde.

11 ye] þe MS.

## XV

### MISCELLANEOUS PIECES IN VERSE

Under this head are grouped a number of short poems, representing forms of composition that survive only by fortunate chance.

A is a curious little song, which has been printed from Hale MS. 135 in *Modern Language Review*, vol. iv, p. 236, and reconstructed by Skeat at vol. v, p. 105. For a related French poem see H. E. Sandison, *The Chanson d'Adventure in M.E.*, 1913, p. 47.

B and C are the best-known lyrics of the important collection edited by Böddeker, *Altenglische Dichtungen des MS. Harley 2253*, Berlin 1878. They are literary and rather artificial in form.

D and E are minstrels' songs found, among other popular snatches, on a fly-leaf of Bodleian MS. Rawlinson D. 913, and edited by Heuser in *Anglia*, vol. xxx, p. 173. In E ll. 14-16 and ll. 17-19 are to be expanded on the model of ll. 7-13. For a Latin Nativity poem to this tune see R. L. Greene, *Speculum*, xxvii (1952), pp. 504 ff.

All these songs are early, and have a lightness and gaiety that become rare as the fourteenth century advances.

F is one of several English scraps (ed. Furnivall in *Political, Religious, and Love Poems*, E.E.T.S., pp. 249 ff.) that are found scattered through the Latin text of MS. Harley 7322. Most of the English pieces are without poetical merit, but in this one poem the writer has attained a perfect simplicity.

G, printed in Wright and Halliwell's *Reliquiae Antiquae*, 1845, vol. i, p. 144, has been recognized as the first of the English ballads. It is the only example before 1400 of the swift and dramatic movement, the sudden transitions, and the restrained expression, characteristic of the ballad style.

H, first printed in *Reliquiae Antiquae*, vol. i, p. 240, is the latest of the short pieces. With onomatopoeic effects it gives a vivid if unfriendly picture of a blacksmith's forge on a busy night.

I is a charm edited by Furnivall at p. 43 of the E.E.T.S. volume in which F appears.



## A. NOW SPRINGS THE SPRAY.

Lincoln's Inn MS. Hale 135 (about 1300).

*Nou sprinkes þe sprai,  
 Al for loue icche am so seck  
 Þat slepen I ne mai.*

Als I me rode þis endre dai  
 O mi playinge, 5  
 Seih I hwar a litel mai  
 Bigan to singge :  
 ' þe clot him clingge !  
 Wai es him i louue-longinge  
 Sal libben ai !' 10  
*Nou sprinkes, &c.*

Son icche herde þat mirie note,  
 Þider I drogh ;  
 I fonde hire in an herber swot  
 Vnder a bogh,  
 With ioie inogh. 15  
 Son I asked : ' þou mirie mai,  
 Hwi sinkestou ai ?'  
*Nou sprinkes, &c.*

þan answerde þat maiden swote  
 Midde wordes fewe :  
 ' Mi lemman me haues bihot 20  
 Of louue trewe :  
 He chaunges anewe.  
 Þiif I mai, it shal him rewe  
 Bi þis dai.'  
*Nou sprinkes, &c.*

4 þis endre dai als I me rode MS.; corr. *Sheat.*  
*indistinct.* 8 clingge] clingges MS.

5 playinge]

## B. SPRING.

MS. Harley 2253 (about 1325), f. 71 b.

LENTEN ys come wiþ loue to tounē,  
 Wiþ blosmen and wiþ briddes rounē,

þat al þis blisse bryngeþ.

Dayeseȝes in þis dales,

Notes suete of nyhtegales,

5

Vch foul song singeþ.

þe þrestelcoc him þreteþ oo,

Away is huere wynter wo,

When woderoue springeþ.

þis foules singeþ ferly fele,

10

Ant wlyteþ on huere twyntert wele,

þat al þe wode ryngeþ.

þe rose rayleþ hire rode,

þe leues on þe lyhte wode

Waxen al wiþ wille.

15

þe mone mandeþ hire bleo,

þe lilie is lossom to seo,

þe fenyl and þe fille.

Wowes þis wilde drakes ;

†Milest murgeþ huere makes,

20

Ase strem þat strikeþ stille.

Mody meneþ, so doþ mo—

Ichot ycham on of þo,

For loue þat likes ille.

þe mone mandeþ hire lyht ;

25

So doþ þe semly sonne bryht,

When briddes singeþ breme.

Deawes donkeþ þe dounes ;

Deores wiþ huere derne rounes,

Domes for te deme ;

30

22 doþ] doh MS.

Wormes woweþ vnder cloude ;  
 Wymmen waxeþ wounder proude,  
 So wel hit wol hem seme.  
 3ef me shal wonte wille of on,  
 Þis wunne weole y wole forgon,  
 Ant wyht in wode be fleme.

35

C. ALYSOUN.

MS. Harley 2253, f. 63 b.

BYTUENE Mersh and Aueril,  
 When spray biginneþ to springe,  
 Þe lutel foul haþ hire wyl  
 On hyre lud to synge.  
 Ich libbe in loue-longinge  
 For semlokest of alle þynge ;  
 He may me blisse bringe—  
 Icham in hire baundoun.  
*An hendy hap ichabbe yhent ;*  
*Ichot from heuene it is me sent ;*  
*From alle wymmen mi loue is lent,*  
*And lyht on Alysoun.*

5

10

On heu hire her is fayr ynoh,  
 Hire browe broune, hire eȝe blake ;  
 Wiþ lossum chere he on me loh,  
 Wiþ middel smal and wel ymake.  
 Bote he me wolle to hire take,  
 For te buen hire owen make,  
 Longe to lyuen ichulle forsake,  
 And feye fallen adoun.  
*An hendy hap, &c.*

15

20

Nihtes when y wende and wake,  
 Forþi myn wonges waxeþ won,  
 Leuedi, al for þine sake  
 Longinge is ylent me on.  
 In world nis non so wyter mon  
 þat al hire bounté telle con ;  
 Hire swyre is whittore þen þe swon,  
 And feyrest may in tounne.  
*An hend( y hap), &c.*

25

Icham for wowyng al forwake,  
 Wery so water in wore,  
 Lest eny reue me my make,  
 Ychabbe yzyrned ȝore.  
 Betere is þolien whyle sore  
 þen mournen euermore.  
 Geynest vnder gore,  
 Herkne to my roun.

30

35

*An hendi (hap ichabbe yhent ;  
 Ichot from heuene it is me sent ;  
 From alle wymmen mi loue is lent,  
 And lyht on Alysoun).*

40

#### D. THE IRISH DANCER.

Bodleian MS. Rawlinson D. 913.

ICHAM of Irlaunde,  
 Ant of the holy londe  
 Of Irlande.  
 Gode sire, pray ich þe,  
 For of saynte charité,  
 Come ant daunce wyt me  
 In Irlaunde.  
*4 þe] 3e MS.*

5

## E. THE MAID OF THE MOOR.

Bodleian MS. Rawlinson D. 913.

MAIDEN in the mor lay,  
     In the mor lay,  
 Seuenyst fulle, seuenist fulle,  
 Maiden in the mor lay,  
     In the mor lay, 6  
 Seuenistes fulle ant a day.  
  
 Welle was hire mete;  
     Wat was hire mete?  
     Þe primerole ant the,—  
     Þe primerole ant the,— 10  
 Welle was hire mete;  
 Wat was hire mete?—  
     The primerole ant the violet.  
  
 Welle <was hire dryng>;  
     Wat was hire dryng? 15  
 Þe chelde water of <þe> welle-spring.  
 Welle was hire bour;  
     Wat was hire bour?  
 Þe rede rose an te lillie flour.

## F. THE VIRGIN'S SONG.

British Museum MS. Harley 7322 (about 1375), f. 135 b.

IESU, swete sone dere!  
     On porful bed list þou here,  
 And þat me greuch sore;  
 For þi cradel is ase a bere,  
 Oxe and asse bep þi fere: 5  
     Weepe ich mai þarfore.  
     7 was] wat MS

Iesu, swete, beo noth wroþ,  
 þou ich nabbe clout ne cloþ  
     þe on for to folde,  
     þe on to folde ne to wrappe, 10  
 For ich nabbe clout ne lappe;  
 Bote ley þou þi fet to my pappe,  
 And wite þe from þe colde.

## G. JUDAS.

Trinlty College (Cambridge) MS. B. 14. 39 (about 1300), f. 34 a.

Hir wes upon a Scere þorsday þat vre Louerd aros;  
 Ful milde were þe wordes He spec to Iudas:  
 Iudas, þou most to Iurselem, oure mete for to bugge;  
 þritti platen of seluer þou bere upo þi rugge.  
 þou comest fer i þe brode stret, fer i þe brode strete; 5  
 Summe of þine cunesmen þer þou meist imete.  
 Imette wid is soster, þe swikele wimon:  
 'Iudas, þou were wrþe me stende þe wid ston, (*bis*)  
 For þe false prophete þat tou bileuest upon.'  
 'Be stille, leue soster, þin herte þe tobreke! 10  
 Wiste min Louerd Crist, ful wel He wolde be wreke.'  
 'Iudas, go þou on þe roc, heie upon þe ston,  
 Lei þin heued i my barm, slep þou þe anon.'  
 Sone so Iudas of slepe was awake,  
 þritti platen of seluer from hym weren itake. 15  
 He drou hymselfe bi þe top, þat al it lauede a blode;  
 þe Iewes out of Iurselem awenden he were wode.  
 Foret hym com þe riche Ieu þat heiste Pilatus:  
 'Wolte sulle þi Louerd, þat hette Iesus?'

'I nul sulle my Louerd for nones cunnes eiste,  
Bote hit be for þe þritti platen þat He me bitaiste.' 20

'Wolte sulle þi Lord Crist for enes cunnes golde?'

'Nay, bote hit be for þe platen þat He habben wolde.'

In him com ur Lord gon, as is postles seten at mete:

'Wou sitte ye, postles, ant wi nule ye ete? (*dis*) 25

Ic am iboust ant isold today for oure mete.'

Up stod him Iudas: 'Lord, am I þat?

I nas neuer o þe stude þer me þe euel spec.'

Up him stod Peter, ant spec wid al is miste:

'þau Pilatus him come wid ten hundred cnistes, (*dis*) 30

Yet ic wolde, Louerd, for þi loue fiste.'

'Stille þou be, Peter! Wel I þe icnowe;

þou wolt fursake me þrien ar þe coc him crowe.'

## H. THE BLACKSMITHS.

British Museum MS. Arundel 292 (about 1425-50), f. 71 b.

SWARTE smekyd smeþes smateryd wyth smoke

Dryue me to deth wyth den of here dyntes.

Swech noys on nyghtes ne herd men neuer:

What knaune cry and clateryng of knockes!

þe cammede kongons cryen after 'col, col!' 5

And blowen here bellewys, þat al here brayn brestes:

'Huf, puf!' seith þat on; 'haf, paf!' þat oþer.

þei spyttyn and spraulyn and spellyn many spellles;

þei gnauen and gnacchen, þei gronys togydere,

And holdyn hem hote wyth here hard hamers. 10

Of a bole-hyde ben here barm-fellys;

Here schankes ben schakeled for the fere-flunderys;

Heuy hamerys þei han, þat hard ben handled,

Stark strokes þei stryken on a stelyd stokke :  
 Lus, bus! las, das! rowtyn be rowe. 15  
 Swech dolful a dreme þe deuy! it todryue!  
 Þe mayster longith a lityl, and lascheth a lesse,  
 Twyneth hem tweyn, and towchith a treble :  
 Tik, tak! hic, hac! tiket, taket! tyk, tak!  
 Lus, bus! lus, das! swych lyf thei ledyn 20  
 Alle cloþemerys : Cryst hem gyue sorwe!  
 May no man for brenwaterys on nyght han hys rest!

## I. RATS AWAY.

Bodleian MS. Rawlinson C. 288, f. 113 (15th-century writing, blurred).  
 I comawnde alle þe ratones þat are here abowte,  
 þat non dwelle in þis place, withinne ne withowte,  
 Thorgh þe vertu of Iesu Crist, þat Mary bare abowte,  
 þat alle creatures owyn for to lowte,  
 And thorgh þe vertu of Mark, Mathew, Luke, an Ion,— 5  
 Alle foure Awangelys corden into on,—  
 Thorgh þe vertu of Sent Geretrude, þat mayde clene,  
     God graunte þat grace  
     þat (non) raton dwelle in þe place  
 þat here namis were nemeled in; 10  
 And thorgh þe vertu of Sent Kasi,  
 þat holy man, þat prayed to God Almyty  
     For skathes þat þei deden  
     Hys medyn  
 Be dayes and be nyzt, 15  
 God bad hem flen and gon out of euery manesse syzt.  
*Dominus Deus Sabaot!* Emanuel, þe gret Godes name!  
 I betweche þes place from ratones and from alle oþer schame.  
 God saue þis place fro alle oþer wykked wytes,  
 Boþe be dayes and be nytes! *et in nomine Patris et Filii, &c.* 20



## XVI

### THE YORK PLAY 'HARROWING OF HELL'

British Museum MS. Addit. 35290 (about 1430-40), f. 193 b.

The miracle play *Harrowing of Hell* is assigned to the craft of Saddlers in the York cycle, edited by Miss L. Toulmin-Smith, Oxford 1885, pp. 372 ff. This is the text reproduced below. It is also found, though in a less perfect form, among the *Towneley Plays*, ed. England and Pollard, E.E.T.S., 1897, pp. 293 ff.

All the mediaeval stories of Christ's Descent into Hell are based on the gospel of Nicodemus, which seems to date from the fourth century, though the legend is referred to nearly two centuries earlier. This apocryphal narrative was popular throughout the Middle Ages. There is a prose translation in late Anglo-Saxon, and a Middle English verse rendering supplies some of the phrases in the play.

Two points deserve notice for their bearing on the development of miracles. A trace of their origin in the services of the Church is seen in the use made of the Scriptural passage 'Attolite portas, principes, vestras, et elevamini portae aeternales, et introibit rex glorie', the dramatic possibilities of which were recognized in ritual from an early date. And the growing taste for comic scenes is met, without prejudice to the serious characters, by the rudimentary buffoonery of the Devil and his companions.

#### DRAMATIS PERSONAE.

ADAME	IOHANNES BAPTISTA	BELLIALL
EUA	MOYSES	MICHILL (Archangel)
ISAIAH	BELSABUB	PRIMUS DIABOLUS
SYMEON	SATTAN	SECUNDUS DIABOLUS
IESUS	DAVID	

#### [SCENE I, *outside the gates of Hell.*]

1. (*Jesus.* M)anne on molde, be meke to me,  
And haue thy Maker in þi mynde,  
And thynke howe I haue tholid for þe  
With pereles paynes for to be pynd.

- The forward of my Fadir free 5  
 Haue I fulfillid, as folke may fynde,  
 perfore aboute nowe woll I bee  
 pat I haue bought for to vnbynde.  
 þe feende þame wanne with trayne,  
 Thurgh frewte of erthely foode ; 10  
 I haue þame getyn agayne  
 Thurgh bying with my bloode.
2. And so I schall þat steede restore  
 Fro whilke þe feende fell for synne ;  
 þare schalle mankynde wonne euermore 15  
 In blisse þat schall neuere blynne.  
 All þat in werke my werkemen were,  
 Owte of thare woo I wol þame wynne,  
 And some signe schall I sende before  
 Of grace, to garre þer gamys begynne. 20  
 A light I woll þei haue  
 To schewe þame I schall come sone ;  
 My bodie bidis in graue  
 Tille alle thes dedis be done.
3. My Fadir ordand on þis wise 25  
 Afür His will þat I schulde wende,  
 For to fulfille þe prophicye(s),  
 And als I spake my solace to spende.  
 My frendis, þat in me faith affies,  
 Nowe fro ther fois I schall þame fende, 30  
 And on the thirde day ryght vprise,  
 And so tille heuen I schall assende.  
 Sithen schall I come agayne  
 To deme bothe goode and ill  
 Tille endles ioie or peyne ; 35  
 þus is my Fadris will.

[SCENE II, *Hell*; at one side *Limbo*, enclosing the patriarchs and prophets; a light shines across.]

4. *Adame.* Mi bretheren, harkens to me here,  
 Swilke hope of heele neuere are we hadde.  
 Foure thowsande and sex hundereth zere  
 Hauē we bene heere in þis steddē. 40  
 Nowe see I signe of solace seere,  
 A glorious gleme to make vs gladde,  
 Wherefore I hope oure helpe is nere,  
 And sone schall sesse oure sorowes sadde.
- Eua.* Adame, my husband hende, 45  
 þis menys solas certayne;  
 Such light gunē on vs lende  
 In Paradise full playne.
5. *Isaiah.* Adame, we schall wele vndirstande;  
 I, Ysaia, as God me kende, 50  
 I prechid in Neptalym þat lande,  
 And ʒabulon, even vntill ende.  
 I spake of folke in mirke walkand,  
 And saide a light schulde on þame lende;  
 This lered I whils I was leuand, 55  
 Nowe se I God þis same hath sende.  
 þis light comes all of Criste,  
 þat seede, to saue vs nowe,  
 þus is my poynte puplisshid.  
 But Symeon, what sais þou? 60
6. *Symeon.* þhis, my tale of farleis feele,  
 For in þis temple His frendis me fande;  
 I hadde delite with Hym to dele,  
 And halsed homely with my hande.  
 I saide, 'Lorde, late thy seruauent lele 65  
 Passe nowe in pesse to liffe lastand,

For nowe myselfe has sene Thy hele,  
 Me liste no lengar to liffe in lande.'  
 þis light þou hast purueyed  
 To folkes þat liffis in leede, 70  
 þe same þat I þame saide,  
 I see fulfillid in dede.

7. *Iohan. Baptista.* Als voyce criand to folke I kende  
 þe weyes of Criste, als I wele kanne;  
 I baptiste Hym with bothe my hande 75  
 Euen in þe floode of flume Iordanne.  
 þe Holy Goste fro heuene discende  
 Als a white dowue doune on Hym þanne;  
 The Fadir voice, my mirth to mende,  
 Was made to me euen als manne, 80  
 'This is my Sone,' he saide,  
 'In whome me paies full wele.'  
 His light is on vs laide,  
 He comes oure cares to kele.

8. *Moyse.* Of þat same light lernyng haue I, 85  
 To me Moyse He mustered his myght,  
 And also vnto anodir, Hely,  
 Wher we were on an hille on hight.  
 Whyte as snowe was His body,  
 And His face like to þe sonne to sight: 90  
 No man on molde was so myghty  
 Grathely to loke agaynste þat light;  
 þat same light se I nowe  
 Shynyng on vs sarteine,  
 Wherfore trewly I trowe 95  
 We schalle sone passe fro payne.

9. *i Diabolus.* Helpe! Belsabub! to bynde þer boyes,  
 Such harrowe was neuer are herde in helle.

*ii Diab.* Why rooris þou soo, Rebalde? þou royis ;  
What is betidde, canne þou ought telle? 100

*i Diab.* What ! heris þou noȝt þis vggely noyse?  
þes lurdans þat in Lymbo dwelle,  
þei make menyng of many ioies,  
And musteres grete mirthe þame emell.

*ii Diab.* Mirthe? nay, nay, þat poynte is paste, 105  
More hele schall þei neuer haue.

*i Diab.* þei crie on Criste full faste,  
And sais he schal þame saue.

10. *Belsabub.* 3a, if he saue þame noght, we schall,  
For they are sperde in speciall space ; 110  
Whils I am prince and principall  
Schall þei neuer passe oute of þis place.  
Calle vppe Astrotte and Anaball  
To giffe þer counsaile in þis case,  
Bele-Berit and Belial, 115  
To marre þame þat swilke maistries mase.  
Say to Satan oure sire,  
And bidde þame bringe also  
Lucifer louely of lyre.

*i Diab.* Al redy, lorde, I goo. 120

11. *Iesus [Without]. Attollite portas, principes,*  
Oppen vppe, 3e princes of paynes sere,  
*Et eleuamini eternales,*  
Youre yendles ȝatis þat 3e haue here.  
*Sattan.* What page is þere þat makes prees, 125  
And callis hym kyng of vs in fere?  
*David [in Limbo].* I lered leuand, withouten lees,  
He is a kyng of vertues clere.  
A! Lorde, mekill of myght,  
And stronge in ilke a stoure, 130  
In batailes ferse to fight,  
And worthy to wyne honnoure.

12. *Sattan.* Honnoure! in þe deuel way, for what dede?  
 All erthely men to me are thrall;  
 Þe lady þat calles hym lorde in leede 135  
 Hadde neuer ȝitt herberowe, house, ne halle.  
*i Diab.* Harke, Belsabub! I haue grete drede,  
 For hydously I herde hym calle.  
*Belliall.* Wel spere oure ȝates, all ill mot þou spede!  
 And sette furthe watches on þe wall. 140  
 And if he calle or crie  
 To make vs more debate,  
 Lay on hym þan hardely,  
 And garre hym gang his gate.
13. *Sattan.* Telle me what boyes dare be so bolde 145  
 For drede to make so mekill draye.  
*i Diab.* Itt is þe Iewe þat Iudas solde  
 For to be dede, þis othir daye.  
*Sattan.* O we! þis tale in tyme is tolde,  
 Þis traytoure traues(es) vs alway; 150  
 He schall be here full harde in holde,  
 Loke þat he passe noght, I þe praye.  
*ii Diab.* Nay, nay, he will noȝt wende  
 Away or I be ware,  
 He shappis hym for to schende 155  
 Alle helle, or he go ferre.
14. *Sattan.* Nay, faitour, þerof schall he faile,  
 For alle his fare I hym deffie;  
 I knowe his trantis fro toppe to taile,  
 He leuys with gaudis and with gilery. 160  
 Þerby he brought oute of oure bale,  
 Nowe late, Lazar of Betannye,  
 Þerfore I gaffe to þe Iewes counsaile  
 Þat þei schulde alway garre hym dye.

I entered in Iudas 165  
 þat forwarde to fulfille,  
 þerfore his hire he has,  
 Allway to wonne here stille.

15. *Belsabub*. Sir Sattanne, sen we here þe saie  
 þat þou and þe Iewes wer same assente, 170  
 And wotte he wanne Lazar awaye,  
 þat tille vs was tane for to tente,  
 Trowe þou þat þou marre hym maye  
 To mustir myghtis, what he has mente?  
 If he nowe deprive vs of oure praye, 175  
 We will 3e witte whanne þei are wente.  
*Sattan*. I bidde 3ou be noȝt abashed,  
 But boldely make youe boune  
 With toles þat 3e on traste,  
 And dyngre þat dastard doune. 180

16. *Iesus* [*Without*]. *Principes, portas tollite*.  
 Vndo youre 3atis, 3e princis of pryde,  
*Et introibit rex glorie*,  
 þe kyng of blisse comes in þis tyde.  
 [*Enters the gates of Hell.*]  
*Sattan*. Owte! harrowe <what harlot> is hee 185  
 þat sais his kyngdome schall be cryed?  
*David* [*in Limbo*]. þat may þou in my Sawter see  
 For þat poynte I prophicie<d>.  
 I saide þat he schuld breke  
 Youre barres and bandis by name, 190  
 And on youre werkis take wreke;  
 Nowe schalle 3e see þe same.

17. *Iesus*. þis steede schall stonde no lenger stoken;  
 Opyne vppe, and latte my pepul passe!

170 þe] 3e *MS.* 185 what harlot] *from Towneley MS. : om MS.*  
 188 I] of *MS.*

*Diabolus.* Owtel beholdes, oure baill is brokynne, 195  
And brosten are alle oure bandis of bras.

Telle Lucifer alle is vnlokynne.

*Belsabub.* What þanne, is Lymbus lorne? allas!

Garre Satan helpe þat we wer wroken;

þis werke is werse þanne euere it was. 200

*Sattan.* I badde ȝe schulde be boune

If he made maistries more;

Do dyngge þat dastard doune,

And sette hym sadde and sore.

18. *Belsabub.* ȝa, sette hym sore, þat is sone saide, 205

But come þiselffe and serue hym soo;

We may not bide his bittir braide,

He wille vs marre and we wer moo.

*Sattan.* What! faitours, wherfore are ȝe ferde?

Haue ȝe no force to flitte hym froo? 210

Belyue loke þat my gere be grathed,

Miselffe schall to þat gedlyng goo.

[*To Iesus.*] Howe! belamy, abide,

With al thy booste and bere,

And telle to me þis tyde, 215

What maistries makes þou here?

19. *Iesus.* I make no maistries but for myne,

pame wolle I saue, I telle þe now;e;

þou hadde no poure þame to pyne,

But as my prisoune for þer prow 220

Here haue þei sojorned, noght as thyne,

But in thy warde, þou wote wele howe.

*Sattan.* And what deuel haste þou done ay syne,

þat neuer wolde negh þame nere, or nowe?

*Iesus.* Nowe is þe tyme certayne 225

Mi Fadir ordand before



þat they schulde passe fro payne,  
And wonne in mirthe euer more.

20. *Sattan.* Thy fadir knewe I wele be sight,  
He was a write his mette to wyne, 230  
And Marie me menys þi modir hight,  
þe vtiremeste ende of all þi kynne.  
Who made þe be so mekill of myght?  
*Iesus.* þou wikid feende, latte be thy dynne!  
Mi Fadir wonnys in heuen on hight, 235  
With blisse þat schall neuere blynne.  
I am His awne sone,  
His forward to fulfille;  
And same ay schall we wonne,  
And sundir whan we wolle. 240

21. *Sattan.* God(ys) sonne! þanne schulde þou be ful  
gladde,  
Aftir no catel neyd thowe craue!  
But þou has leued ay like a ladde,  
And in sorowe, as a symple knaue.  
*Iesus.* þat was for hartely loue I hadde 245  
Vnto mannis soule, it for to saue;  
And for to make þe mased and madde,  
And by þat resoune þus dewly to haue  
Mi godhede here, I hidde  
In Marie modir myne, 250  
For it schulde noȝt be kidde  
To þe, nor to none of thyne.

22. *Sattan.* A! þis wolde I were tolde in ilke a toun.  
So, sen þou sais God is thy sire,  
I schall þe proue, be right resoune, 255  
þou motes His men into þe myre.

242 neyd thowe craue] þus þe I telle *first hand.*  
*later MS.* knaue] braide *first hand.*

244 as] *added*

To breke His bidding were þei boune,  
 And, for they did at my desire,  
 Fro Paradise He putte þame doun  
 In helle here to haue þer hyre. 260  
 And thyselſe, day and nyght,  
 Has taught al men emang  
 To do resoun and right,  
 And here werkis þou all wrang.

23. *Iesus.* I wirke noght wrang, þat schal þow witte, 265  
 If I my men fro woo will wynne;  
 Mi prophetis playnly prechid it,  
 All þis note þat nowe begynne.  
 Þai saide þat I schulde be obitte,  
 To hell þat I schulde entre in, 270  
 And saue my seruauntis fro þat pitte,  
 Wher dampned saulis schall sitte for synne.  
 And ilke trewe prophettis tale  
 Muste be fulfillid in mee;  
 I haue þame boughte with bale, 275  
 And in blisse schal þei be.

24. *Sattan.* Nowe sen þe liste allegge þe lawes,  
 Þou schalte be atteynted, or we twynne,  
 For þo þat þou to wittennesse drawes  
 Full even agaynste þe will begynne. 280  
 Salamon saide in his sawes  
 Þat whoso enteres helle withynne  
 Shall neuer come oute, þus clerkis knawes,  
 And þerfore, felowe, leue þi dynne.  
 Iob, þi seruaunte, also 285  
 Þus in his tyme gune telle,  
 Þat nowthir frende nor foo  
 Shulde fynde reles in helle

25. *Jesus.* He saide full soth, þat schall þou see,  
þat in helle may be no reles, 290  
But of þat place þan preched he  
Where synfull care schall euere encrees.  
And in þat bale ay schall þou be,  
Whare sorowes sere schall neuer sesse,  
And for my folke þerfro wer free, 295  
Nowe schall þei passe to þe place of pees.  
þai were here with my wille,  
And so schall þei fourthe wende,  
And þiselue schall fulfille  
þer wooe withouten ende. 300
26. *Sattan.* O wel þanne se I howe þou menys emang  
Some mesure with malice to melle,  
Sen þou sais all schall noȝt gang,  
But some schalle alway with vs dwelle.  
*Jesus.* ȝaa, witte þou wele, ellis were it wrang, 305  
Als cursed Cayme þat slewe Abell,  
And all þat hastis hemselue to hange,  
Als Iudas and Archedefell,  
Datan and Abiron,  
And alle of þare assente; 310  
Als tyrantis euerilkone  
þat me and myne turmente.
27. And all þat liste noght to lere my lawe,  
þat I haue lefte in lande nowe newe,  
þat is my comyng for to knawe, 315  
And to my sacramente pursewe,  
Mi dede, my rying, rede be rawe,  
Who will noght trowe, þei are noght trewe,  
Vnto my dome I schall þame drawe,  
And iuge þame worse þanne any Iewe. 320

33. *Jesus.* Adame and my frendis in feere, 385  
 Fro all youre fooes come fourth with me,  
 3e schalle be sette in solas seere,  
 Wher 3e schall neuere of sorowes see.  
 And Mighill, myn aungell clere,  
 Ressayue þes saules all vnto þe, 390  
 And lede þame als I schall þe lere  
 To Paradise with playe and plenté.  
 [ *They come out of Limbo.*

Mi graue I woll go till,  
 Redy to rise vpperight,  
 And so I schall fulfille 395  
 That I before haue highte.

34. *Michill.* Lorde, wende we schall aftir þi sawe,  
 To solace sere þai schall be sende,  
 But þat þer deuelis no draught vs drawe,  
 Lorde, blisse vs with þi holy hende. 400  
*Jesus.* Mi blissing haue 3e all on rawe,  
 I schall be with youe, wher 3e wende,  
 And all þat lelly luffes my lawe,  
 Þai schall be blissid withowten ende.  
*Adame.* To þe, Lorde, be louyng, 405  
 þat vs has wonne fro waa,  
 For solas will we syng,  
*Laus Tibi cum gloria.* [ *Exeunt.*

## XVII

### THE TOWNELEY PLAY OF NOAH

Towneley MS. (about 1475), ff. 76 ff.

The Towneley Miracles, so called because the manuscript belonged in recent times to the library of Towneley Hall in Lancashire, are edited by England and Pollard, E.E.T.S., 1897. The cycle is a composite one—for instance it includes a later form of the York play *Harrowing of Hell* (No. XVI, above)—but it is distinguished by a group of plays and interpolated scenes which seem to have been specially composed for representation at Wakefield. Formally this group is marked by the use of a peculiar nine-lined stanza, riming a a a a b c c c b, with central rimes in the first four lines. The rough vigour of the comic scenes is still more distinctive, and there can be little doubt that all are the work of one man. The specimen of his style most often reprinted is *The Second Shepberd's Play*, which has an original and purely secular comic plot. The *Play of Noab* is more typical of the English Miracle in its later development. This subject was always popular with early playwrights, for the Ark made a spectacle, and the traditional quarrels of Noah and his wife gave scope for contests in fisticuffs and rough raillery—the stuff of primitive comedy.

#### DRAMATIS PERSONAE.

NOE	PRIMUS FILIUS	PRIMA MULIER
DEUS	SECUNDUS FILIUS	SECUNDA MULIER
VXOR NOE	TERCIUS FILIUS	TERCIA MULIER

1. *Noe.* MYGHTFULL God veray, Maker of all that is,  
 Thre persons withoutten nay, oone God in endles blis,  
 Thou maide both nyght and day, beest, fowle, and fysh,  
 All creatures that lif may wrought Thou at Thi wish,  
     As Thou wel myght; 5  
 The son, the moyne, verament,  
 Thou maide, the firmament,  
 The sternes also full feruent  
     To shyne Thou maide ful bright.

2. Angels Thou maide ful euen, all orders that is, 10  
 To haue the blis in heuen; this did Thou, more and les,  
 Full mervelus to neuene; yit was ther vnkyndnes  
 More bi foldis seuene then I can well expres;  
 For whi?  
 Of all angels in brightnes 15  
 God gaf Lucifer most lightnes,  
 Yit proudly he flyt his des,  
 And set hym euen Hym by.
3. He thoght hymself as worthi as Hym that hym made,  
 In brightnes, in bewty, therfor He hym degrade, 20  
 Put hym in a low degré soyn after, in a brade,  
 Hym and all his menye, wher he may be vnglad  
 For euer.  
 Shall thay neuer wyn away  
 Hence vnto Domysday, 25  
 Bot burne in bayle for ay;  
 Shall thay neuer dysseuer.
4. Soyne after, that gracyous Lord to his liknes maide man,  
 That place to be restord euen as He began,  
 Of the Trinite bi accord, Adam and Eue that woman, 30  
 To multiplie without discord, in Paradise put He thaym,  
 And sithen to both  
 Gaf in commaundement  
 On the Tre of Life to lay no hend.  
 Bot yit the fals feynd 35  
 Made Hym with man wroth,
5. Entysyd man to glotony, styrd him to syn in pride;  
 Bot in Paradise, securly, myght no syn abide,  
 And therfor man full hastily was put out in that tyde,  
 In wo and wandreth for to be, in paynes full vnrid 40  
 To knowe,

Fyrst in erth, *and* sythen in hell  
 With feyndis for to dwell,  
 Bot He his mercy mell  
 To those that will Hym trawe.

45

6. Oyle of mercy He hus hight, as I haue hard red,  
 To euery lifyng wight that wold luf Hym and dred;  
 Bot now before His sight euery liffyng leyde,  
 Most party day and nyght, syn in word and dede  
 Full bold;  
 Som in pride, ire, and enuy,  
 Som in coueteis and glotyny,  
 Som in sloth and lechery,  
 And other wise many fold.
- 50
7. Therfor I drede lest God on vs will take veniance,  
 For syn is now alod, without any repentance.  
 Sex hundreth yeris and od haue I, without distance,  
 In erth, as any sod, liffyd with grete grevance  
 Allway;  
 And now I wax old,  
 Seke, sory, and cold,  
 As muk apon mold  
 I widder away.
- 55
- 60
8. Bot yit will I cry for mercy and call:  
 Noe, Thi seruant, am I, Lord ouer all!  
 Therfor me, and my fry shal with me fall,  
 Saue from velany, and bryng to Thi hall  
 In heuen;  
 And kepe me from syn  
 This world within;  
 Comly Kyng of mankyn,  
 I pray The, here my stevyn!  
 [*God appears above.*]
- 65
- 70

9. *Deus.* Syn I haue maide all thyng that is liffand,  
 Duke, emperour, and kyng, with Myne awne hand,  
 For to haue thare likyng, bi see and bi sand, 75  
 Euery man to My bydyng shuld be bowand  
 Full feruent,  
 That maide man sich a creatoure,  
 Farest of favoure ;  
 Man must luf Me paramoure 80  
 By reson, and repent.
10. Me thoght I shewed man luf when I made hym to be  
 All angels abuf, like to the Trynyté ;  
 And now in grete reprufe full low ligis he,  
 In erth hymself to stuf with syn that displeases Me 85  
 Most of all.  
 Veniance will I take  
 In erth for syn sake ;  
 My grame thus will I wake  
 Both of grete and small. 90
11. I repente full sore that euer maide I man ;  
 Bi me he settis no store, and I am his soferan ;  
 I will distroy therfor both beest, man and woman,  
 All shall perish, les and more ; that bargan may thay ban  
 That ill has done. 95  
 In erth I se right noght  
 Bot syn that is vnsoght ;  
 Of those that well has wrought  
 Fynd I bot a fone.
12. Therfor shall I fordo all this medill-erd 100  
 With floodis that shall flo and ryn with hidous rerd ;  
 I haue good cause therto ; for Me no man is ferd.  
 As I say shal I do—of veniance draw My swerd,  
 And make end



Of all that beris life, 105  
 Sayf Noe and his wife,  
 For thay wold neuer stryfe  
 With Me, then Me offend.

13. Hym to mekill wyn, hastily will I go  
 To Noe my seruand, or I blyn, to warn hym of his wo.  
 In erth I se bot syn reynand to and fro, 111  
 Emang both more and myn, ichon other fo  
 With all thare entent.  
 All shall I fordo  
 With floodis that shall floo; 115  
 Wirk shall I thaym wo  
 That will not repent.

[*God descends and addresses Noah.*]

14. Noe, My freend, I thee commaund, from cares the to keyle,  
 A ship that thou ordand of nayle and bord ful wele.  
 Thou was alway well-wirkand, to Me trew as stele, 120  
 To My bydyng obediand: frendship shal thou fele  
 To mede.  
 Of lennthe thi ship be  
 Thre hundreth cubettis, warn I the,  
 Of heght euen thirté, 125  
 Of fyfty als in brede.

15. Anoynt thi ship with pik and tar, without and als within,  
 The water out to spar—this is a noble gyn;  
 Look no man the mar, thre chese chambres begyn;  
 Thou must spend many a spar this wark or thou wyn 130  
 To end fully.  
 Make in thi ship also  
 Parloures oone or two,  
 And houses of offyce mo  
 For beestis that ther must be. 135

190 XVII. THE TOWNELEY PLAY OF NOAH

16. Oone cubite on hight a wyndo shal thou make ;  
 On the syde a doore, with slyght, beneyth shal thou take ;  
 With the shal no man fyght, nor do the no kyn wrake.  
 When all is doyne thus right, thi wife, that is thi make,  
     Take in to the ; 140  
 Thi sonnes of good fame,  
 Sem, Iaphet, and Came,  
 Take in also <t>hame,  
     Thare wifis also thre.
17. For all shal be fordone that lif in land, bot ye, 145  
 With floodis that from abone shal fall, and that plenté ;  
 It shall begyn full sone to rayn vncessantlé,  
 After dayes seuen be done, and induyr dayes fourty,  
     Withoutten fayll.  
 Take to thi ship also 150  
 Of ich kynd beestis two,  
 Mayll and femayll, bot no mo,  
     Or thou pull vp thi sayll,
18. For thay may the avayll when al this thyng is wroght.  
 Stuf thi ship with vitayll, for hungre that ye perish noght.  
 Of beestis, foull, and catayll, for thaym haue thou in  
     thoght, 156  
 For thaym is My counsayll that som socour be soght  
     In hast.  
 Thay must haue corn and hay,  
 And oder mete alway. 160  
 Do now as I the say,  
     In the name of the Holy Gast.
19. *Noe.* A! *benedicite* ! what art thou that thus  
 Tellys afore that shall be ? Thou art full mervelus !  
 Tell me, for charité, thi name so gracijs. 165  
*Deus.* My name is of dignyté, and also full glorius  
     To knowe.

I am God most myghty,  
 Oone God in Trynnty,  
 Made the and ich man to be; 170  
 To luf Me well thou awe.

20. *Noe.* I thank The, Lord so dere, that wold vowchsayf  
 Thus low to appere to a symple knafe.  
 Blis vs, Lord, here, for charité I hit crafe,  
 The better may we stere the ship that we shall hafe, 175  
 Certayn.

*Deus.* Noe, to the and to thi fry  
 My blyssyng graunt I;  
 Ye shall wax and multiply  
 And fill the erth agane, 180

21. When all thise floodis ar past, and fully gone away.  
*Noe.* Lord, homward will I hast as fast as that I may;  
 My <wife> will I frast what she will say, [*Exit Deus.*]  
 And I am agast that we get som fray  
 Betwixt vs both; 185  
 For she is full tethee,  
 For litill oft angré;  
 If any thyng wrang be,  
 Soyne is she wroth.

*Tunc perget ad vxorem.*

22. God spede, dere wife, how fayre ye? 190  
*Vxor.* Now, as euer myght I thryfe, the wars  
 I thee see.

Do tell me belife where has thou thus long be?  
 To dede may we dryfe, or lif, for the,  
 For want.

When we swete or swynk, 195  
 Thou dos what thou thynk,  
 Yit of mete and of drynk  
 Haue we veray skant.

23. *Noe.* Wife, we ar hard sted with tythyngis new.

*Vxor.* Bot thou were worthi be cled in Stafford blew;  
For thou art alway adred, be it fals or trew, 201  
Bot God knowes I am led, and that may I rew,  
Full ill;

For I dar be thi borow,  
From euen vnto morow 205  
Thou spekis euer of sorow;  
God send the onys thi fill!

24. We women may wary all ill husbandis;  
I haue oone, bi Mary that lowsyd me of my bandis!  
If he teyn, I must tary, how so euer it standis, 210  
With seymland full sory, wryngand both my handis  
For drede.

Bot yit other while,  
What with gam and with gyle,  
I shall smyte and smyle, 215  
And qwite hym his mede.

25. *Noe.* We! hold thi tong, ram-skyt, or I shall the still.  
*Vxor.* By my thryft, if thou smyte, I shal turne the  
vntill.

*Noe.* We shall assay as tyte. Haue at the, Gill!  
Apon the bone shal it byte.

*Vxor.* A, so, Mary! thou smytis ill! 220  
Bot I suppose  
I shal not in thi det  
Flyt of this flett!  
Take the ther a langett  
To tye vp thi hose! 225

26. *Noe.* A! wilt thou so? Mary! that is myne.

*Vxor.* Thou shal thre for two, I swere bi Godis pyne!

*Noe.* And I shall qwyte the tho, in fayth, or syne.

*Vxor.* Out apon the, ho!

- Noe.* Thou can both byte and whyne  
 With a rerd; 230  
 For all if she stryke,  
 Yit fast will she skryke;  
 In fayth, I hold none slyke  
 In all medill-erd.
27. Bot I will kepe charyté, for I haue at do. 235  
*Vxor.* Here shal no man tary the, I pray the go to!  
 Full well may we mys the, as euer haue I ro;  
 To spyn will I dres me.  
*Noe.* We l fare well, lo;  
 Bot wife,  
 Pray for me beselé 240  
 To eft I com vnto the.  
*Vxor.* Euen as thou prays for me,  
 As euer myght I thrife. [*Exit Vxor.*]
28. *Noe.* I tary full lang fro my warke, I traw;  
 Now my gere will I fang, and thederward draw; 245  
 I may full ill gang, the soth for to knaw,  
 Bot if God help amang, I may sit downe daw  
 To ken;  
 Now assay will I  
 How I can of wrightry, 250  
*In nomine patris, et filii,*  
*Et spiritus sancti. Amen.*
29. To begyn of this tree my bonys will I bend,  
 I traw from the Trynyté socoure will be send;  
 It fayres full fayre, thynk me, this wark to my hend; 255  
 Now blissid be He that this can amend.  
 Lo, here the lenght,  
 Thre nundreth cubettis euenly;  
 Of breed, lo, is it fyfty;  
 The heght is euen thyrtty 260  
 Cubettis full strenght.

37. *Noe.* Now ar we there as we shuld be ; 325  
 Do get in oure gere, oure catall and fe,  
 Into this vessell here, my chylder fre.  
*Vxor.* I was neuer bard ere, as euer myght I the,  
 In sich an oostré as this.  
 In fath, I can not fynd 330  
 Which is before, which is behynd.  
 Bot shall we here be pynd,  
 Noe, as haue thou blis ?
38. *Noe.* Dame, as it is skill, here must vs abide grace ;  
 Therfor, wife, with good will, com into this place. 335  
*Vxor.* Sir, for lak nor for Gill will I turne my face,  
 Till I haue on this hill spon a space  
 On my rok.  
 Well were he myght get me !  
 Now will I downe set me ; 340  
 Yit reede I no man let me,  
 For drede of a knok.
39. *Noe.* Behold to the heuen the cateractes all,  
 That are open full euen, grete and small,  
 And the planetis seuen left has thare stall. 345  
 Thise thoners and levyn downe gar fall  
 Full stout  
 Both halles and bowers,  
 Castels and towres.  
 Full sharp ar thise showers 350  
 That renys aboute.
40. Therfor, wife, haue done, com into ship fast.  
*Vxor.* Yei, Noe, go cloute thi shone, the better will  
 thai last.  
*Prima mulier.* Good moder, com in sone, for all is  
 ouercast  
 Both the son and the mone

*Secunda mulier.* And many wynd blast 355  
Full sharp.

Thise floodis so thay ryn,  
Therfor, moder, come in.

*Vxor.* In fayth, yit will I spyn ;  
All in vayn ye carp. 360

41. *Tercia mulier.* If ye like ye may spyn, moder, in the  
ship.

*Noe.* Now is this twyys com in, dame, on my frenship.

*Vxor.* Wheder I lose or I wyn, in fayth, thi felowship  
Set I not at a pyn. This spyndill will I slip  
Apon this hill, 365  
Or I styr oone fote.

*Noe.* Peter ! I traw we dote.  
Without any more note  
Come in if ye will.

42. *Vxor.* Yei, water nyghys so nere that I sit not dry, 370  
Into ship with a byr therfor will I hy  
For drede that I drone here.

*Noe.* Dame, securly,  
It bees boght ful dere ye abode so long by  
Out of ship.

*Vxor.* I will not, for thi bydyng, 375  
Go from doore to mydyng.

*Noe.* In fayth, and for youre long taryyng  
Ye shal lik on the whyp.

43. *Vxor.* Spare me not, I pray the, bot euen as thou  
thynk,

Thise grete wordis shall not flay me.

*Noe.* Abide, dame, and drynk, 380  
For betyn shall thou be with this staf to thou styng ;  
Ar strokis good ? say me.

For apou this flood haue we flett many day  
With pyne.

*Noe.* Now the water will I sownd:  
A! it is far to the grownd;  
This trauell I expownd 440  
Had I to tyne.

50. Aboue all hillys bedeyn the water is rysen late  
Cubettis fyfteyn, bot in a higher state  
It may not be, I weyn, for this well I wate:  
This forty dayes has rayn beyn; it will therfor abate 445  
Full lele.  
This water in hast  
Eft will I tast.  
Now am I agast,  
It is wanyd a grete dele. 450

51. Now are the weders cest, and cateractes knyrt,  
Both the most and the leest.  
*Vxor.* Me thynk, bi my wit,  
The son shynes in the eest. Lo, is not yond it?  
We shuld haue a good feest, were thise floodis flyt  
So spytus. 455  
*Noe.* We haue been here, all we,  
Thre hundreth dayes and fyfty.  
*Vxor.* Yei, now wanyes the see;  
Lord, well is vs!

52. *Noe.* The thryd tyme will I prufe what depnes we  
bere. 460  
*Vxor.* How long shall thou hufe? Lay in thy lyne  
there.  
*Noe.* I may towch with my lufe the grownd evyn  
here.



- Vxor.* Then begynnys to grufe to vs mery chere ;  
 Bot, husband,  
 What grownd may this be? 465  
*Noe.* The hyllys of Armonye.  
*Vxor.* Now blissid be He  
 That thus for vs can ordand!
53. *Noe.* I see toppys of hyllys he, many at a syght,  
 No thyng to let me, the wedir is so bright. 470  
*Vxor.* Thise ar of mercy tokyns full right.  
*Noe.* Dame, thou counsell me, what fowll best myght,  
 And cowth,  
 With flight of wyng  
 Bryng, without tarrying, 475  
 Of mercy som tokynyng,  
 Ayther bi north or southe?
54. For this is the fyrst day of the tent moyne.  
*Vxor.* The ravyn, durst I lay, will com agane sone ;  
 As fast as thou may, cast hym furth, haue done; 480  
 He may happyn today com agane or none  
 With grath.  
*Noe.* I will cast out also  
 Dowfys oone or two.  
 Go youre way, go, 485  
 God send you som wathe!
55. Now ar thise fowles flone into seyr countré;  
 Pray we fast ichon, kneland on our kne,  
 To Hym that is alone worthiest of degré,  
 That He wold send anone oure fowles som fee 490  
 To glad vs.  
*Vxor.* Thai may not fayll of land,  
 The water is so wanand.  
*Noe.* Thank we God Allweldand,  
 That Lord that made vs! 495

56. It is a wonder thyng, me thynk, sothlé,  
Thai ar so long taryyng, the fowles that we  
Cast out in the mornyng.  
*Vxor.* Syr, it may be  
Thai tary to thay bryng.  
*Noe.* The ravyn is a-hungrye  
Allway ; 500  
He is without any reson ;  
And he fynd any caryon,  
As peraventure may be fon,  
He will not away.
57. The dowfe is more gentill, her trust I vntew, 505  
Like vnto the turtill, for she is ay trew.  
*Vxor.* Hence bot a litill she commys, lew, lew !  
She bryngys in her bill som novels new ;  
Behald !  
It is of an olif tre 510  
A branch, thynkys me.  
*Noe.* It is soth, perdé,  
Right so is it cald.
58. Doufe, byrd full blist, fayre myght the befall !  
Thou art trew for to trist, as ston in the wall ; 515  
Full well I it wist thou wold com to thi hall.  
*Vxor.* A trew tokyn ist we shall be sauyd all :  
For whi ?  
The water, syn she com,  
Of depnes plom 520  
Is fallen a fathom  
And more, hardely.
59. *Primus filius.* Thise floodis ar gone, fader, behold.  
*Secundus filius.* Ther is left right none, and that be  
ye bold.  
*Tercius filius.* As still as a stone oure ship is stold. 525

*Noe.* Apon land here anone that we were, fayn I wold,  
 My childer dere,  
 Sem, Iaphet and Cam,  
 With gle and with gam,  
 Com go we all sam, 530  
 We will no longer abide here.

60. *Vxor.* Here haue we beyn, Noy, long enogh  
 With tray and with teyn, and dreed mekill wogh.  
*Noe.* Behald on this greyn nowder cart ne plogh  
 Is left, as I weyn, nowder tre then bogh, 535  
 Ne other thyng ;  
 Bot all is away ;  
 Many castels, I say,  
 Grete townes of aray,  
 Flitt has this flowyng. 540

61. *Vxor.* Thise floodis not afright all this world so wide  
 Has mevid with myght on se and bi side.  
*Noe.* To dede ar thai dyght, prowdist of pryde,  
 Euerich a wyght that euer was spyde  
 With syn, 545  
 All ar thai slayn,  
 And put vnto payn.  
*Vxor.* From thens agayn  
 May thai neuer wyn?

62. *Noe.* Wyn? No, iwis, bot He that myght hase 550  
 Wold myn of thare mys, and admytte thaym to grace ;  
 As He in bayll is blis, I pray Hym in this space,  
 In heven hye with His to purvaye vs a place,  
 That we,  
 With His santis in sight, 555  
 And His angels bright,  
 May com to His light :  
 Amen, for charité.

*Explicit processus Noe.*

# NOTES

## I

**Dialect:** North-East Midland of Lincolnshire.

**Inflections:—**

VERB: pres. ind. 2 sg. *hast* 131.

3 sg. *stondeþ* 8.

3 pl. *calle* 32, *seye* 254; beside  
*dos* 157 (see note).

imper. pl. *comeþ* 80, *dop* 82.

pres. p. *karoland* (in rime) 117, 150, 222.

strong pp. *wryte* 37, *fal* 195, *gone* 161.

PRONOUN 3 PERS.: fem. nom. *she* 48; pl. nom. *bey* 32;

poss. *here* 37; obj. *hem* 39.

The inflections are very much simplified as compared with those of the Kentish *Ayenbyrte* (III), but the verse shows that final unaccented *-e* was better preserved in the original than in our late MS., e.g.

*And specyaly at hygh(è) tymès* 13.

*For to see þys hard(è) dome* 173.

*And at þe þre(è) day(è)s endè* 198.

*þat nonè myȝt(è) leye yn graue* 217.

**Sounds:** *ȝ* is regular for OE. *ā*: *lothe* 9, *wroth* 10, &c.; but the only decisive rime is *also* (OE. *alswā*): *to* (OE. *tō*) 35-6, where *ȝ* after (s)*w* has become close *ȝ*; see Appendix § 8. ii, note.

**Syntax:** the loose constructions, e.g. ll. 15 ff. (note), 134-5, 138-9, 216-19, are characteristic of the period.

The history of this legend is traced by E. Schröder, *Zeitschrift für Kirchengeschichte*, vol. xvii, 1896, pp. 94 ff., and, more summarily, by Gaston Paris, *Les Danseurs maudits*, Paris 1900. The circumstances from which it sprang appear to belong to the year 1021. Kölbick, in Anhalt, Saxony, was the scene of the dance. In 1074 it is referred to as 'famous' by a German chronicler, who records the healing of one of the dancers in 1038 through the miraculous powers of St. Wigbert.

Mendicants who suffered from or could simulate nervous diseases like St. Vitus's dance, were quick to realize their opportunity, and two letters telling the story were circulated

as credentials by pretended survivors of the band. Both are influenced in form by a sermon of St. Augustine of Hippo which embodies a similar story (Migne, *Patrologia*, vol. xxxviii, col. 1443). The first (Letter of Otbert), which claims to be issued by Peregrinus bishop of Cologne, spread rapidly through Western Europe. This was the version that Mannyng found in William of Wadington. The second (Letter of Theodric) makes Bruno bishop of Toul, afterwards Pope Leo IX, vouch for the facts. In its extant form it derives from the Latin 'Legend of St. Edith of Wilton' by the monk Goscelin, who wrote about the year 1080 (see A. Wilmart, *Analecta Bollandiana* lvi, fasc. iii and iv, 1938). This was the text that Mannyng used. A later English version is found in the dreary fifteenth-century *Life of St. Editha* (ed. Horstmann, ll. 4063 ff.).

1 ff. *games*: Dances and shows in the churchyard were constantly condemned by the Church in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries. In 1287 a synod at Exeter rules *ne quisquam luctas, choreas, vel alios ludos inhonestos in coemeteriis exercere praesumat, praecipue in vigiliis et festis sanctorum*. See Chambers, *The Mediaeval Stage*, vol. i, pp. 90 ff.

6. or *tabure bete*: Note the use of *bete* infin. as a verbal noun = *betyng*; cp. XI b 184-5.

10-12. 'And he (*sc.* a good priest) will become angered sooner than one who has no learning, and who does not understand Holy Writ.'

15 ff. *noght . . . none*: An accumulation of negatives in ME. makes the negation more emphatic. Here the writer wavers between two forms of expression: (1) 'do not sing carols in holy places', and (2) 'to sing carols in holy places is sacrilege'.

25-8. *yn pys londe, &c.* The cure of Theodric, not the dance, took place in England. Brightgiva is said to have been abbess of Wilton at the time, and 'King Edward' is Edward the Confessor (1042-66).

34-5. The church of Kölbigk is dedicated to St. Magnus, of whom nothing certain is known. The memory of St. Bukcestre, if ever there was such a saint, appears to be preserved only in this story.

36. *þat þey come to*: Construe with *hyt* in l. 35.

37 ff. *Here names of alle*: The twelve followers of Gerlew are named in the Latin text, but Mannyng gives only the principal actors. The inconsistency is still more marked in the Bodleian MS., which after l. 40 adds:—

*þe ouþer twelue here names alle*

*þus were þey wrete, as y can kalle.*

Otherwise the Bodleian MS. is very closely related to the Harleian sharing most of its errors and peculiarities.

44. *þe prestes doghtyr of þe tounne*, 'the priest of the town's daughter'. In early ME. the genitive inflexion is not, as in Modern English, added to the last of a group of words: cp. XIV d 10 *þe Kynges sone of heuene* 'the King of Heaven's son'. The same construction occurs in VIII a 19 *for þe Lordes loue of heuene* = 'for the love of the Lord of Heaven', and in VIII a 214; but in these passages the genitive is objective, and Modern English does not use the inflexion at all (note to I 83). The ME. and modern expressions have their point of agreement in the position of the genitive inflexion, which always precedes immediately the noun on which the genitive depends. Cp. notes to II 518, VI 23, and XIV d 1.

46. *Azone*:  $\mathfrak{z} = z$  here. The name is *Azo* in the Latin.

55. *Beu(u)ne*: (derived from the accusative *Beuonem*) = *Beuo* of l. 59 and *Beuolyne* of l. 62. The form is properly *Bovo* not *Bevo*. Considerable liberties were taken with proper names to adapt them to metre or rime: e.g. l. 52 *Merswynde*; l. 63 *Merswyne*; cp. note to l. 246. This habit, and frequent miscopying, make it difficult to rely on names in mediaeval stories.

61. *Quid stamus? Cur non imus [hinc]?*: Terence, *Eunuchus*, l. 465.

65. *Gryslý*: An error for *Gerlew*, Latin *Gerleuus*, from Low German *Gērlēf* = OE. *Gārīaf*.

83. *for Crystys awe*: In Modern English a phrase like *Christ's awe* could mean only 'the awe felt by Christ'. But in OE. *Cristes ege*, or *ege Cristes*, meant also 'the awe of Christ (which men feel)', the genitive being objective. In ME. the word order *eie Cristes* is dropped, but *Cristes eie* (or *awe*, the Norse form) is still regular for '(men's) fear of Christ'. Hence formal ambiguities like *þe Lordes loue of heuene* VIII a 19, which actually means '(men's) love of the Lord of Heaven', but grammatically might mean 'the Lord of Heaven's love (for men)'—see note to l. 44 above.

96-7. The Latin Letter of Theodric in fact has *ab isto officio ex Dei nutu amodo* (henceforth) *non cessetis*.

127. *a saue*: lit. 'have safe', i.e. 'rescue'. *Saue* is here adj.

128-9. *ys: flessh*: The rime requires the alternative forms *es* (as in l. 7) and *fles(s)*. Cp. note to VII 4.

132. *3ow þar nat aske*: 'There is no need for you to ask'; *3ow* is dative after the impersonal *þar*.

156-7. *werynes: dos*. The rime is false. Perhaps Mannyng wrote: *As many body for goyng es* [sc. *wery*], and a copyist misplaced *es*, writing: *As many body es for goyng*. If *body es* were read as *bodyes*, a new verb would then be added.

169. Note the irony of the refrain. The Letter of Otbert adds the picturesque detail that they gradually sank up to their waists in the ground through dancing on the same spot.

172. *De Emperoure Henry*: Probably Henry II of Germany, Emperor from 1014 to 1024. A certain vagueness in points of time and place would save the bearers of the letter from awkward questions.

188-9. *banned*: *woned*. The rime (OE. *bannan* and *wunian*) is false, and the use of *woned* 'remained' is suspicious. Mannyng perhaps wrote *bende* 'put in bonds': *wende* (= *jede* l. 191) 'went'; or (if the form *band* for *banned(e)* could be evidenced so early) *band* 'cursed': *wand*, pret. of *winden*, 'went'.

195. *fal yn a swone*: So MS., showing that by the second half of the fourteenth century the pp. adj. *aswon* had been wrongly analysed into the indef. article *a* and a noun *swon*. Mannyng may have written *fallen aswone*. See Glossary, *s. v. aswone*.

234. *Wyth sundyr lefys*: 'with separate leaps'; but *Wyth* was probably added by a scribe who found in his original *sundyrlephys*, adv., meaning 'separately',—

*Kar suvent par les mains*

*Des mauvais escrivains*

*Sunt livre corruptut.*

240. *Seynt Edyght*. St. Edith (d. 984) was daughter of King Edgar, and abbess of Wilton. The rime is properly *Edit*: *Teodric*, for *t* and *k* are sufficiently like in sound to rime together in the best ME. verse; cp. note to XV g 27.

246. *Brunyng . . . seynt Tolous*: Latin *Bruno Tullanus*. Robert probably did not hesitate to provide a rime by turning Toul into Toulouse. Bruno afterwards became Pope Leo IX (1049-54).

254-5. *trowed*: *God*. Read *trōd*, a shortened form, revealed by rimes in North Midland texts. The identical rime occurs three times in Mannyng's *Chronicle* (ed. Hearne, p. 339; ed. Furnivall, ll. 7357-8, 8111-12); and, again with substitution of *troud* for *trod*, in *Havelok*, ll. 2338-9.

## II

**Dialect**: South-Western, with some admixture of Northern forms due to a copyist.

**Inflexions**:—

VERB: pres. ind. 1 sg. *ichause*, &c. (see note to l. 129).

2 sg. *makest* 169, *worst* 170.

3 sg. *geþ* (in rime) 238; contracted *fiut* 239, *last* 335, *sitt* 443, *stont* 556.

2 pl. *ȝe beþ* 582.

3 pl. *strikeþ* 252 (proved by rime with 3 sg. *likeþ*).

imper. pl. *make* 216, *chese* 217; beside *dop* 218.

pres. p. *berking* 286 (in rime with verbal sb.);  
*daunceing* (in rime) 298. The forms *kneland*  
 250, *liggeand* 388, are due to a Northern  
 copyist.

strong pp. (various forms): *go* (: *wo*) 196, *ygo* (: *mo*)  
 349, *ydone* (: -*none*) 76, *comen* 29, *come* 181,  
*ycomen* 203, *yborn* 174, *bore* 210.

infin. Note *aski* (OE. *acsian*) 467 (App. § 13 vii).

PRONOUN 3 PERS.: fem. nom. *he* 408, 446, *hye* 337, beside  
*sche* 75, 77, &c.

pl. nom. *he* (in rime) 185, *hye* 91,  
 beside *hai* 32, 69, &c.; poss. *her*  
 'their' 87, 413, 415; obj. *hem*  
 69, &c.

NOUN: Note the plurals *honden* 79, *berien* 258.

The original text preserved final -e better than the extant  
 MSS., e.g.

*And seyd(è) þus þe king(è) to* 119.

*Þat nobing help(è) þe no schal* 172.

*Al þe vt(è)mast(è) wal* 357.

*So, sir, as ȝe seyd(è) nouþe* 466.

Sounds: *ȝ* for OE. *ǣ* is proved in rime: *biholde* (OE.  
*behdaldan*): *gold* (OE. *gôld*) 367-8 (cp. 467-8); and *yhote*  
 (OE. *gehâten*): *note* (OFr. *note*) 601-2.

The rime *frut*: *lite* 257-8 points to original *frut*: *lut* (OE. *lýt*),  
 with Western *û*, from OE. *ȳ*, riming with OFr. *û*.

1-22. These lines, found also in *Lai le Freine*, would serve  
 as preface to any of the Breton lays, with the couplet ll. 23-4  
 as the special connecting link. In the Auchinleck MS., *Orfeo*  
 begins on a fresh leaf at l. 25, without heading or capitals to  
 indicate that it is a new poem. The leaf preceding has been  
 lost. There is good reason to suppose that it contained the  
 lines supplied in the text from the Harleian MS.

4. *frely*, 'goodly': *Lai le Freine* has *ferly* 'wondrous'.

12. MS. *moost to lowe*: means 'most (worthy) to be praised',  
 and there are two or three recorded examples of *to lowe* = *to*  
*alowé* in this sense. But MS. Ashmole and the corresponding  
 lines in *Lai le Freine* point to *most o loue* 'mostly of love' as  
 the common reading. The typical 'lay' is a poem of moderate  
 length, telling a story of love, usually with some supernatural  
 element, in a refined and courtly style.

13. *Brytayne*, 'Brittany': so *Brytouns* 16 = 'Bretons'. Cp.  
 Chaucer, *Franklin's Tale*, *Prologue*, beginning

*This olde gentil Britons in hir dayes*

*Of diverse adventures maden layes*

*Rymeyd in hir firste Briton tonge,*

*Whiche layes with hir instruments they songe, &c.*



20. The curious use of *it* after the plural *layes* is perhaps not original. *Lai le Freine* has: *And maked a lay and yaf it name.*

26. *In Ingland*: an alteration of the original text to give local colour. Cp. ll. 49-50 and l. 478.

29-30. *Pluto*: the King of Hades came to be regarded as the King of Fairyland; cp. Chaucer, *Merchant's Tale*, l. 983 *Pluto that is the kyng of fairye*. The blunder by which Juno is made a king is apparently peculiar to the Auchinleck copy.

33-46. These lines are not in the Auchinleck MS., but are probably authentic. Otherwise little prominence would be given to Orfeo's skill as a harper.

41 ff. A confused construction: *In þe world was neuer man born* should be followed by (*þat*) *he* (*ne*) *schulde þinke*; but the writer goes on as if he had begun with 'every man in the world'. *And* = 'if'.

46. *ioy and* overload the verse, and are probably an unskilful addition to the text.

49-50. These lines are peculiar to the Auchinleck MS., and are clearly interpolated; cp. l. 26 and l. 478. Winchester was the old capital of England, and therefore the conventional seat of an English king.

57. *comessing*: The metre points to a disyllabic form *comsing* here, and to *comsi* in l. 247.

80. *it bled wete*: In early English the clause which is logically subordinate is sometimes made formally co-ordinate. More normal would be *þat (it) bled wete* 'until (or so that) it bled wet'; i. e. until it was wet with blood.

82. *reuey(se)d* or some such form of *ravished* is probably right. *reneyd* 'apostate' is a possible reading of the MS., but does not fit the sense. *N. E. D.* suggests *remewed*.

102. *what is te?*: 'What ails you?'; cp. l. 115. *Te* for *þe* after *s* of *is*. Such modifications are due either to dissimilation of like sounds, as *þ*: *s* which are difficult in juxtaposition; or to assimilation of unlike sounds, as *þatow* 165, for *þat þow*.

115. 'What ails you, and how it came about?'; cp. l. 102.

129. *ichil* = *ich wille*; and so *ichauē* 209, *icham* 382, *ichot* xv b 23. These forms, reduced to *chill*, *cham*, &c., were still characteristic of the Southern dialect in Shakespeare's time: cp. *King Lear*, IV. vi. 239 *Chill not let go, Zir*.

131. *þat nouȝt nis*: 'That cannot be'; cp. l. 457 *þat nouȝt nere*.

157-8. *palays*: *ways*. The original rime was perhaps *palys*: *wys* 'wise'.

170. 'Wherever you may be, you shall be fetched.'

201-2. *barouns*: *renouns*. Forms like *renouns* in rime are usually taken over from a French original.

215. The overloaded metre points to a shorter word like *wite* for *understood*.

216. *Make þou þan a parlement*: *þou* is not nom., but dat. 'for yourselves'. Observe that Orfeo acts like a constitutional English king.

241. *þe fowe and griis*: A half translation of OFr. *vair et gris*. *Vair* (Lat. *varius*) was fur made of alternate pieces of the grey back and white belly of the squirrel. Hence it is rendered by *fowe*, OE. *fāg* 'varicolor'. *Griis* is the grey back alone, and the French word is retained for the rime with *biis*, which was probably in the OFr. original.

258. *berien*: The MS. may be read *berren*, but it is better to assume that the *i* has been carelessly shaped by the scribe.

289. *him se*, 'see (for himself)', and similarly *slep þou þe xv g 13*. This reflexive use of the dative pronoun, which cannot be reproduced in a modern rendering, is common in OE. and ME., especially with verbs of motion; cp. note to XV g 24. But distinguish *went him* 475, 501, where *him* is accusative, not dative (OE. *wente hine*), because the original sense of *went* is 'turned', which takes a reflexive object.

342. *me no reche* = *I me no reche*. The alternative would be the impersonal *me no recheþ*.

343. *also spac* = *also bliue* 142 = *also swiþe* 574: 'straight-way', &c.

363. MS. *auowed* (or *anowed*) is meaningless here. *Anow(rn)ed*, or the doubtful by-form *anow(r)ed* 'adorned', is probably the true reading.

364. *aumal*, 'enamel'. Holthausen's correction for *animal* (*Anglia*, vol. xlii, p. 427) is confirmed by the MS.

382. The line is too long—a fault not uncommon where direct speech is introduced, e.g. l. 419 and 178. Usually a correct line can be obtained by dropping words like *quath he*, which are not as necessary in spoken verse as they are where writing alone conveys the sense. But sometimes the flaw may lie in the forms of address: l. 382 would be normal without *Parfay*; l. 419 may once have been:

*And seyð 'Lord, ȝif þi wille were'.*

There is no task more slippery than the metrical reconstruction of ME. poems, particularly those of which the extant text derives from the original not simply through a line of copyists, but through a line of minstrels who passed on the verses from memory and by word of mouth.

388. The line seems to be corrupt, and, as usual, the Harleian and Ashmole MSS. give little help. *Ful* can hardly be a sb. meaning 'multitude' from the adj. *full*. Some form of *fele* (OE. *fela*) 'a great number' would give possible grammar and sense (cp. l. 401), but bad metre. Perhaps *ful* should be deleted

as a scribe's anticipation of *folk* in the next line; for the construction *seize . . . of folk* cp. XVI 388; and *Hous of Fame*, Bk. iii, ll. 147 ff.

433. *ƿei we nouȝt welcom no be*: Almost contemporary with *Sir Orfeo* is the complaint of an English writer that the halls of the nobles stood open to a lawyer, but not to a poet:

*Exclusus ad ianuam poteris sedere  
Ipse licet venias, Musis comitatus, Homere!*

'Though thou came thyself, Homer, with all the Muses, thou mightst sit at the door, shut out!', T. Wright, *Political Songs* (1839), p. 209.

446. *hadde he*, 'had she'. For *he* (OE. *hēo*) = 'she' cp. l. 408.

450. 'Now ask of me whatsoever it may be'. The plots of mediaeval romances often depend on the unlimited promises of an unwary king, whose honour compels him to keep his word. So in the story of Tristram, an Irish noble disguised as a minstrel wins Ysolde from King Mark by this same device, but is himself cheated of his prize by Tristram's skill in music.

458. 'An ill-matched pair you two would be!'

479. The halting verse may be completed by adding *sum tyme* before *his*, with the Harley and Ashmole MSS.

483. *ybill* of the MS. and editors cannot well be a pp. meaning 'housed'. I prefer to take *bilt* as sb. = *bild*, *build* 'a building'; and to suppose that *y* has been miswritten for *ȳ*, the contraction for *yn*.

495. *gan hold*, 'held'; a good example of the ME. use of *gan* + infinitive with the sense of the simple preterite.

515. An unhappy suggestion *home* for the second *come* has sometimes been accepted. But a careful Southern poet could not rime *home* (OE. *hām*) and *some* (OE. *sūm*). See note to VI 224.

518. *For mi lordes loue Sir Orfeo*, 'for my lord Sir Orfeo's love'. Logically the genitive inflexion should be added to both of two substantives in apposition, as in OE. *on Herodes dagum cyninges* 'in the days of King Herod'. But in ME. the first substantive usually has the inflexion, and the second is uninflected; cp. v 207 *kynges hous Arthor* 'the house of King Arthur'; and notes to I 44, VI 23.

544. *Allas! wreche*: *wreche* refers to the speaker, as in l. 333.

551. *hou it geþ* —: The sense is hard to convey without some cumbrous paraphrase like 'the inexorable law of this world —'.

552. *It nis no bot of manes deþ*: 'There is no remedy for man's death', i.e. violent grief will do no good. Note *it nis* 'there is (not)'. In ME. the anticipated subject is commonly *it* where we use *there*.

565. *in ynome*: '(had) taken up my abode'; *in* 'dwelling' = NE. 'inn'. But *her* may be for 'her' rather than 'here'; and Ashmole MS. points to *oure*. See ll. 484 f.

599. *herof* overloads the line and is omitted in the Ashmole MS.

### III

**Dialect**: Pure Kentish of Canterbury.

**Inflexions** are well preserved, and are similar to those found in contemporary South-Western texts.

**VERB**: pres. ind. 3 sg. *multipliep* 1; contracted *ret* 3, 16.  
1 pl. *habbeþ* 2.

strong pp. *yyeue* 25, *yhote* 29.

**PRONOUN** 3 PERS.: the new forms *she*, *they*, *their*, *them* are not used. 3 sg. fem. nom. *hi* 32, *hy* 45; poss. *hare* 33, beside *hire* 36; pl. nom. *hi* 58. Note the objective form *his(e)* = 'her' 32, 53 (twice); and = 'them' 7, 8, 28.

**NOUN**: plurals in *-en* occur: *uorbisnen* 2, *ken* 56. In *diaknen* 5, *-en* represents the dat. pl. inflexion.

**ADJECTIVE**: *onen* dat. sg. 4, *opren* dat. pl. 53, *pane* acc. sg. masc. 59, *þet* (*word*) nom. sg. neut. 57, show survivals rare even in the South at this date.

**Sounds**: Characteristic of the South-East is *ž* for OE. (West-Saxon) *ȝ*: *kertel* (OE. *cyrtel*) 39, *ken* (OE. *cȝ*) 56.

Old diphthongs are preserved in *greate* (OE. *grēat*) 9, *yeaf* 22. In *hyerof* 1, *ykyerde* 49, *hier* 2, *þieues* 18, *ye*, *ie* represent diphthongs developed in Kentish rather than simple close *ē*.

Initial *z* = *s* in *some* 'some' 2, *sede* 'said' 12, *zuo* 'so' 17; and initial *u* = *f* in *uele* 2, *uayre* 2, *uram* 4, *bevil* 41, evidence dialectal changes which occurred also in the South-West.

**Syntax**: The constructions are distorted by slavish following of the French original; see note to ll. 48–60.

3. Saint Germain of Auxerre (MS. *Aucerne*) is famous for his missions to Britain in the first half of the fifth century. This particular story is found in the *Acta Sanctorum* for July 31, p. 229.

16. St. John the Almoner (d. 616) was bishop of Alexandria. For the story see *Acta Sanctorum* for January 23, p. 115.

27–8. *and huanne he hit wiste þe ilke xelue þet his hedde onderuonge*: an obscure sentence. Perhaps: 'and when he, the same who had received them (i. e. John, who had received the five hundred pounds), knew it' (sc. the truth).

38. This tale of Boniface, bishop of Ferentia in Etruria, is told in the *Dialogues* of Gregory the Great, Bk. i, chap. 9. Its first appearance in English is in the translation of the *Dialogues*

made by Bishop Wærferth for King Alfred (ed. Hans Hecht, Leipzig 1900, pp. 67 ff.).

48-60. The French original of the passage, taken from an elegant fourteenth-century MS., Cotton Cleopatra A.V., fol. 144a, will show how slavishly Dan Michael followed his source:—

*Après il fu un poure home, sicom on dit, qui auoit une vache; e oi dire a son prestre en sarmon que Dieu disoit en leuangle que Dieu rendoit a cent doubles quanque on donast por lui. Le prodomme du conseil sa femme dona sa uache a son prestre, qui estoit riches. Le prestre la prist uolentiers, e lenuoia pestre auoc les autres quil auoit. Kant uint au soir, la uache au poure home sen uint a son hostel chies le poure homme, com ele auoit acoustume, e amena auoques soi toutes les uaches au prestre, iukes a cent. Quant le bon home uit ce, si pensa que ce estoit le mot de leuangle que li auoit rendu; e li furent aiugiees deuant son euesque contre le prestre. Cest ensample moustre bien que misericorde est bone marchande, car ele multiplie les biens temporels.*

58-9. 'And they were adjudged to him before his bishop against the priest', i.e. the bishop ruled that the poor man should have all the cows.

The French *fabliau* 'Brunain' takes up the comic rather than the moral aspect of the story. A peasant, hearing the priest say that gifts to God are doubly repaid, thought it was a favourable opportunity to give his cow Blérain—a poor milker—to the priest. The priest ties her with his own cow Brunain. To the peasant's great joy, the unprofitable Blérain returns home, leading with her the priest's good cow.

#### IV

**Dialect:** Northern of Yorkshire.

**Inflections:** are reduced almost as in Modern English.

**VERB:** pres. ind. 1 sg. *settes* a 30; beside uninflected *sygh* a 69, *sob* a 69.

3 sg. *lastes* a 1.

1 pl. *flese* b 86: beside *we drede* b 85.

3 pl. *lyse* a 61, *lufes* b 7, &c.; beside *pay take*, *pay halde* b 12, &c., which agree with the Midland forms.

pres. p. *lastand* a 25, *byrmand* a 26, riming with *hand*.

strong pp. *wryten* a 2.

Note the Northern and North Midland short forms *mase* 'makes' a 15, *tane* 'taken' a 53 (in rime).

PRONOUN 3 PERS.: sg. fem. *scho* b1; pl. nom. *þai* a60; poss. *þar* a59 or *þair* a65; obj. *thaym* b2. The demonstrative *thire* 'these' at b55, b59 is specifically Northern.

Sounds: OE. *a* is regularly represented by *ā*, not by *ø* of the South and most of the Midlands: *wa* a2, *euermare* a20, *balde* 'bold' a51; *bane* (in rime) a54.

*ø* becomes *ū* (*ü*?) in *gud(e)* b9, b15; and its length is sometimes indicated by adding *y*, as in *ruysand* 'vaunting' b80.

a. This poem is largely a translation of sentences excerpted from Rolle's *Incendium Amoris*, cc. xl-xli (Miss Allen in *Mod. Lang. Review* for 1919, p. 320). Useful commentaries are his prose *Form of Perfect Living* (ed. Horstmann, vol. i, pp. 3 ff.), and *Commandment of Love to God* (ibid. pp. 61 ff.), which supply many parallels in thought and phrasing; see, for example, the note to l. 48 below.

a1. *feste*. Not the adj. 'fast', but pp. 'fastened', and so in l. 82.

a5. *louyng*, 'beloved one', here and in l. 56. This exceptional use of the verbal noun occurs again in *my þhernyng* 'what I yearn for', a22; *my couaytyng* 'what I covet', a23.

a9-12. The meaning seems to be: 'The throne of love is raised high, for it (i. e. love) ascended into heaven. It seems to me that on earth love is crafty, for it makes men pale and wan. It goes very near to the bed of bliss (i. e. the bridal bed of Christ and the soul) I assure you. Though the way may seem long to us, yet love unites God and man.'

a24. *louyng*, 'praise' here and in xvi 405, from OE. *lof* 'praise'; quite distinct from *louyng*, *lufyng*, in ll. 5 and 56.

a36. *fle þat na man it maye*, 'which no man can escape'. See Appendix § 12, Relative.

a42. *styll*, 'always' rather than 'motionless'.

a43-4. Apparently 'the nature of love (*þat kyend*) turns from care the man (*þe lyfe*) who succeeds in finding love, or who ever knew it in his heart; and brings him to joy and delight.'

a48. Cp. *Form of Perfect Living*, ed. Horstmann, vol. i, pp. 39-40: *For luf es stalworth als þe dede, þat slaes al lyuand thyng in erth; and hard als hell, þat spares noght till þam þat er dede*. In *The Commandment of Love* Rolle explains: *For als dede slas al lyuand thyng in bis worlde, sa þerfite lufe slas in a mans sawle all fleschly desyres and erthly couaytise. And als hell spares noght til dede men, bot tormentes al þat commes bartill, als wa a man þat es in þis* [sc. the third, called 'Singular'] *degré of lufe noght any he forsakes þe wretched solace of þis lyf, bot als wa he couaytes to sofer pynes for Goddes lufe*. (Ibid. p. 63.)

*b 4. scho takes erthe*: From the *Historia Animalium* attributed to Aristotle, Bk. ix, c. 21. This is the authority referred to at l. 18, and at l. 33 (Bk. ix, c. 9); but the citations seem to be second hand, as they do not agree closely with the text of the *Historia Animalium*.

*b 21-2*. 'For there are many who never can keep the rule of love towards their friends, whether kinsmen or not.' MS. *ynesche* has been variously interpreted; but it must be corrected to *ynence*.

*b 47. strucyo or storke*: the ostrich, not the stork, is meant. Latin *struthio* has both meanings. On the whole, fourteenth-century translators show a fair knowledge of Latin, but the average of scholarship, even among the clergy, was never high in the Middle Ages. In the magnificent Eadwine Psalter, written at Canterbury Cathedral in the twelfth century, Ps. ci. 7 *similis factus sum pellicano* is rendered by 'I am become like to the skin of a dog' (= *pellis canis*), though an ecclesiastic would recite this psalm in Latin at least once every week. The records of some thirteenth-century examinations of English clergy may be found in G. G. Coulton, *A Medieval Garner* (London 1910), pp. 270 ff. They include the classic answer of Simon, the curate of Sonning, who, being examined on the Canon of the Mass, and pressed to say what governed *Te* in *Te igitur, clementissime Pater, . . . supplices rogamus*, replied '*Pater*, for He governeth all things'. As for French, Michael of Northgate, a shaky translator, is fortunate in escaping gross blunders in the specimen chosen (III); but the English rendering of Mandeville's *Travels* is full of errors; see the notes to IX.

*b 60. teches*: better *toches*, according to the foot-note.

## V

**Alliterative Verse.** The long lines in *Gawayne*, with *The Destruction of Troy*, *Piers Plowman*, and *The Blacksmiths* (xv h), are specimens of alliterative verse unmixed with rime, a form strictly comparable with Old English verse, from which it must derive through an unbroken oral tradition. While the detailed analysis of the Middle English alliterative line is complex and controversial, its general framework is describable in simple terms. It will be convenient to take examples from *Gawayne*, which shows most of the developments characteristic of Middle English.

1. The long line is divided by a caesura into two half lines, of which the second is the more strictly built so that the rhythm may be well marked. Each half line normally contains two principal stresses, e. g.

*And went on his wáy || with his wýze óne* 6.

*Þat schulde tēche hym to tǫurne || to þat tēne plāce* 7.

But three stresses are not uncommonly found in the first half line:

*Brókeþ býled and bréke || bi bǫnkkēþ abóute* 14;

and, even for the simpler forms in Old and Middle English, the two-stress analysis has its opponents.

2. The two half lines are bound together by alliteration. In alliteration *ch*, *st*, *s(c)h*, *sk*, and usually *sp*, are treated as single consonants (see lines 64, 31, 15, 99, 25); any vowel may alliterate with any other vowel, e. g.

*Þis brítore is ýgly || with érbeþ ouergrówen* 122;

and, contrary to the practice of correct OE. verse, *h* may alliterate with vowels in *Gawayne*:

*Hálde þe now þe hýze hóde || þat Árpur þe rázt* 229.

*The hápel hédet hym fró || and on his áx résted* 263.

3. In correct OE. verse the alliteration falls on one or both of the two principal stresses of the first half line, and invariably on the first stress only of the second half line. This is the ordinary ME. type:

*Þat schulde tēche hym to tǫurne || to þat tēne plāce* 7;

though verses with only one alliterating syllable in the first half line, e. g.

*Bot í wyl to þe chápel || for chǫunce þat may fálle* 64,

are less common in ME. than in OE. But in ME. the fourth stress sometimes takes the alliteration also:

*Þay clómben bi clýffes || þer clēnges þe cólde* 10.

And when there is a third stress in the first half line, five syllables may alliterate:

*Míst múged on þe mór || mǫlt on þe móunteþ* 12.

In sum, Middle English verse is richer than Old English in alliteration.

4. In all these verses the alliteration of the first stress in the second half line, which is essential in Old English, is maintained; but it is sometimes neglected, especially when the alliteration is otherwise well marked:

*With hēze hēlme on his hēde || his láunce in his hǫnde* (129; cp. 75), where the natural stress cannot fall on *his*.

5. So far attention has been confined to the stressed syllables, around which the unstressed syllables are grouped. Clearly the richer the alliteration, the more freedom will be possible in the treatment of the unstressed syllables without undue weakening of the verse form. In the first two lines of *Beowulf*—

*Hwæt we Gárdéna || in géardagum*

*Þeodcýninga || þrým gefrúnon—*

three of the half lines have the minimum number of syllables—four—and the other has only five. In Middle English, with



more elaborate alliteration, the number of unstressed syllables is increased, so that the minimum half line of four syllables is rare, and often contains some word which may have had an additional flexional syllable in the poet's own manuscript, e. g.

|| *þe self* (e) *chápel* 79.  
|| *dr̥eʒ in hert* (e) 209.

The less regular first half line is found with as many as eleven syllables; e. g.

*And syþen he kēuereʒ bi a cr̥agge* || 153.

6. The grouping of stressed and unstressed syllables determines the rhythm. In Old English the falling rhythm predominates, as in || *Gawayn þe nōble* 81; and historically it is no doubt correct to trace the development of the ME. line from a predominantly falling rhythm. But in fact, owing to the frequent use of unstressed syllables before the first stress (even in the second half line where they are avoided in the OE. falling rhythm) the commonest type is:

|| *and þe brōde ʒāteʒ* 1,  
(x x ˌx ˌx)

which from a strictly Middle English standpoint may be analysed as a falling rhythm with introductory syllables (x x | ˌx ˌx), or as a rising rhythm with a weak ending (x x ˌx ˌx | x). A careful reader, accustomed to the usage of English verse, will have no difficulty in following the movement, without entering into nice technicalities of historical analysis.

7. *The Destruction of Troy* is more regular than *Gawayne* in its versification, and better preserves the Old English tradition. *Piers Plowman* is looser and nearer to prose, so that the alliteration sometimes fails altogether, e. g. Extract a 95, 138. Such differences in technique may depend on date, on locality, or on the taste, training, or skill of the author.

**Dialect:** West Midland of Lancashire or Cheshire. (There is evidence of local knowledge in the account of Gawayne's ride in search of the Green Chapel, ll. 691 ff. of the complete text.)

**Vocabulary.** *Sir Gawayne* shows the characteristic vocabulary of alliterative verse.

It is rich in number and variety of words—Norse, French, and native. Besides common words like *race* 8, *wylle* 16, *kyrk* 128, *aʒ* 267 (which displace native English forms *rēs*, *wylde*, *chyrche*, etc), Norse gives *mug* (g)ed 12, *cayreʒ* 52, *scowtes* 99, *skayned* 99, *wro* 154, *brope* 165, *fyked* 206, *snyrt* 244, &c. French are *baret* 47, *oritore* 122, *fylor* 157, *giserne* 197, *kauelacion* 207, *frounses* 238, &c. *Myst-hakel* 13, *orpedly* 164 are native words; while the rare *strype* 237 and *rapeled* 226 are of doubtful origin.

Unless the alliteration is to be monotonous, there must be

many synonyms for common words like *man*, *knigt*: e.g. *burne* 3, *wyȝe* 6, *lede* 27, *gome* 50, *freke* 57, *tulk* 65, *knaȝe* 68, *renk* 138, most of which survive only by reason of their usefulness in alliterative formulae. Similarly, a number of verbs are used to express the common idea 'to move (rapidly)': *boȝen* 9, *schouwued* 15, *wonnen* 23, *ferked* 105, *romeȝ* 130, *keuereȝ* 153, *whyrlande* 154, &c. Here the group of synonyms arises from weakening of the ordinary prose meanings; and this tendency to use words in colourless or forced senses is a general defect of alliterative verse. For instance, it is hard to attach a precise meaning to *note* 24, *gedereȝ* 92, *glodes* 113, *wruxled* 123, *kest* 308.

The *Gawayne* poet is usually artist enough to avoid the worst fault of alliterative verse—the use of words for mere sound without regard to sense, but there are signs of the danger in the empty, clattering line:

*Bremly brope on a bent þat brode watȝ aboute* 165.

**Inflections:** The rime *waȝe*: *ta þe* 287-9 shows that organic final *-e* was sometimes pronounced in the poet's dialect.

**VERB:** pres. ind. 1 sg. *haf* 23; *leue* 60.

2 sg. *spelleȝ* 72.

3 sg. *prayses* 4; *tas* 237.

2 pl. *ȝe han* 25.

3 pl. *han* 345.

imper. pl. *gotȝ* (= *gōs*) 51, *cayreȝ* 52.

pres. p. normally *-ande*, e.g. *schaterande* 15; but very rarely *-yng*: *gruchyng* 58.

strong pp. *born* 2, *wonnen* 23; *tone* (= *taken*) 91.

The weak pa. t. and pp. show occasional *-(e)t* for *-(e)d*: *halt* 11, *fondet* 57, &c.

Note that present forms in *-ie(n)* are preserved, and the *i* extended to the past tense: *louy* (OE. *lufian*) 27, *louies* 31; *spuryed* 25.

**PRONOUN** 3 PERS.: pl. nom. *þay* 9; poss. *hor* 345, beside *her* 352; obj. *hom*, beside *hem* 353.

**Sounds:** *ȝ* for older *ā* is common, and is proved for the original by rimes like *more*: *restore* (OFr. *restorer*) 213-15, *þore*: *restore* 286-8. But *a* is often written in the MS.: *snaw* 20, 166 (note rimes), *halden* 29, &c.

*u* for OE. *y*, characteristic of Western dialects, is found especially in the neighbourhood of labial consonants: *spuryed* (OE. *spȳrian*) 25; *muryly* 268, 277; *munt* vb. 194 and sb. 282; beside *myntes* 284, *lyfte* 78, *hille* 13.

*u* for OE. *eo* (normal ME. *e*) is another Western feature: *burne* 3, 21, &c., *urde* 151.

*aw* for OE. *ēow* (normal ME. *ew*, *ow*) as in *trawe* 44, *trawȝe* 219, *rawȝe* 136, is still found in some Northern dialects.

**Spelling:** *ȝ* (= *s*) is commonly written for final *s*: *bredeȝ* 3,

&c.; even when the final *s* is certainly voiceless as in *forȝ*, 'force', 'torrent' 105, (*aȝ*-)*leȝ* 'fear-less' 267. *ȝ* is written for *s* in monosyllabic verbal forms, where it indicates the maintenance of voiceless final *s* under the stress (see rimes to *hatȝ* 'has', VI 81): *waȝ* 'was' 1, *goȝ* 'goes' 51, &c. In early Norman French *s* had the sound *ts*, and so could be written *ts*, as in *Fitz-Gerald* 'son (Mod. Fr.  *fils*) of Gerald'. But later, French (*t*)*s* fell together with *s* in pronunciation, so that the spelling *ts* was transferred to original *s*, both in fourteenth-century Anglo-French and in English.

*qu-* occurs for strongly aspirated *hw-* in *quyte* 'white' 20, *quat* 'what' 111; but the alliteration is with *w*, not with *k(w)*, e.g.

*And wyth quettyng awharf, er he wolde lyȝt* 152.

The spelling *goud* 5, 50, &c., for *gōd* 'good' may indicate a sound change.

Notable is the carefully distinguished use of *ȝ* in *ȝe*, but *y* in *yow*, e.g. at ll. 23-6.

3. *blessed hym*, 'crossed himself'; cp. XII b 86.

4-6. 'He gives a word of praise to the porter,—(who) kneeled before the prince (i.e. Gawayn) (and who) greeted him with "God and good day", and "May Ile save Gawayn!"—and went on his way, attended only by his man, who, &c.' Clumsiness in turning direct speech into reported speech is a constant source of difficulty in Middle English. For the suppressed relative cp. note to XIII a 36.

11. 'The clouds were high, but it was threatening below them.' *Halt* for *halet* pp. 'drawn up'.

16. 'The way by which they had to go through the wood was very wild.' Note the regular omission of a verb of motion after *shall*, *will*, &c. Cp. l. 64 *I wyl to þe chapel*; l. 332 *ȝe schal . . . to my woneȝ*, &c.

28. 'If you would act according to my wit (i.e. by my advice) you would fare the better.'

34. *Hestor*, *oper oper*, 'Hector, or any other'. Hector is quoted as the great hero of the Troy story, from which, and from the legends of Arthur, the Middle Ages drew their models of valour. The form *Hestor* occurs in Old French.

35. 'He brings it about at the green chapel (that)', &c.

37. *dyngeȝ*: for MS. *dynneȝ*; Napier's suggestion.

41. 'He would as soon (lit. it seems to him as pleasant to) kill him, as be alive himself.'

43. 'If you reach that place you will be killed, I may warn you, knight.' Possibly *I, y*, has fallen out of the text after *y* of *may* (cp. VI 3), though there are clear instances in Old and Middle English where the pronominal subject must be understood from the context, e.g. I 168, VIII a 237, 273. Note the

transitions from plural *je* to singular *þe* in ll. 42-3; and the evidence at l. 72 f. that *bou* could still be used in addressing a superior.

44. *Trawe je me þat: trow* has here a double construction with both *me* and *þat* as direct objects.

56. 'That I shall loyally screen you, and never give out the tale that you fled for fear of any man that I knew.'

64. *for chaunce þat may falle*, 'in spite of anything that may happen'.

68-9. 'Though he be a stern lord (lit. a stern man to rule), and armed with a stave'. The short lines are built more with a view to rime than to sense.

72-4. 'Marry!' said the other, 'now you say so decidedly that you will take your own harm upon yourself, and it pleases you to lose your life, I have no wish to hinder you.'

76. *ryde me*: an instance of the rare ethic dative, which expresses some interest in the action of the verb on the part of one who is neither the doer of the action nor its object. Distinguish the uses referred to in the notes to II 289, XV g 24.

86. *Lepeþ hym*, 'gallops'. For *hym*, which refers to the rider, not the horse, cp. note to XV g 24.

92. *Gryngolet*: the name of Gawayn's horse. *gedereþ þe rake* seems to mean 'takes the path'. No similar transitive use of 'gather' is known.

95. *he wayted hym aboute*, 'he looked around him'. Cp. l. 221 *wayteþ*, and note to l. 121.

99. 'The clouds seemed to him grazed by the crags'; i. e. the crags were so high that they seemed to him to scrape the clouds. I owe to Professor Craigie the suggestion that *skayned* is ON. *skeina* 'to graze', 'scratch'.

102-4. 'And soon, a little way off on an open space, a mound (as it appeared) seemed to him remarkable.'

107. *kacheþ his caple*, 'takes control of his horse', i. e. takes up the reins again to start the horse after the halt mentioned at l. 100.

109. *his riche*: possibly 'his good steed'. The substantival use of an adjective is common in alliterative verse, e. g. l. 188 *bat schyre* (neck); 200 *þe schene* (axe); 245 *þe scharp* (axe); 343 *þat cortays* (lady). But it has been suggested that *brydel* has fallen out of the text after *riche*.

114. 'And it was all hollow within, nothing but an old cave.'

115 f. *he coupe hit noȝt deme with spelle*, 'he could not say (which it was)'. For *deme* 'to speak', &c., cp. VI 1, XV b 29-30.

118. *Wheþer* commonly introduces a direct question and should not be separately translated. Cp. VI 205 and note to XI a 51.

121. *wysty is here*, 'it is desolate here'. Note *Wowayn* = *Wauwayn*, an alternative form of *Gawayn* used for the alliteration. The alternation is parallel to that in *guardian*: *warden*; *regard*: *reward* XIV c 105; *guarantee*: *warranty*; (*bi*)*gyled* 359: (*bi*)*wyled* 357; *werre* 'war' beside French *guerre*; *wait* 'watch' (as at l. 95) beside French *guetter*; and is due to dialectal differences in Old French. The Anglo-Norman dialect usually preserved *w* in words borrowed from Germanic or Celtic, while others replaced it by *gw*, *gu*, which later became simple *g* in pronunciation.

125. *in my fyue wytteȝ*: construe with *fele*.

127. *þat chekke hit bytyde*, 'which destruction befall!' *þat*... *hit* = 'which'. *chekke* refers to the checkmate at chess.

135. Had we not Chaucer's *Miller* and *The Reeves Tale*, the vividness and intimacy of the casual allusions would show the place of the flour-mill in mediaeval life. *Havelok* drives out his foes

*So dogges ut of milne-hous;*  
and the Nightingale suggests as fit food for the Owl  
*one frogge*

*þat sit at mulne vnder cogge.*

These are records of hours spent by the village boys amid the noise of grinding and rush of water, in times when there was no rival mechanism to share the fascination of the water-driven mill.

137-43. 'This contrivance, as I believe, is prepared, sir knight, for the honour of meeting me by the way. Let God work His will, Lo! It helps me not a bit. Though I lose my life, no noise causes me to fear.' It has been suggested that *wel o(r w)oo* 'weal or woe' should be read instead of the interjection *we loo!* But *Gawayn's* despair (l. 141) is not in keeping with ll. 70 f., 90 f., or with the rest of his speech. The looseness of the short lines makes emendation dangerous. Otherwise we might read *Hit helppeȝ þe not a mote*, i.e. whatever happens, mere noise will not help the Green Knight by making *Gawayn* afraid; or, alternatively, *hermeȝ* 'harms' for *helppeȝ*.

151. 'Yet he went on with the noise with all speed for a while, and turned away (to proceed) with his grinding, before he would come down.' The nonchalance of the Green Knight is marked throughout the poem.

155. *A Deneȝ ax*: the ordinary long-bladed battle-axe was called a 'Danish' axe, in French *hache danoise*, because the Scandinavians in their raids on England and France first proved its efficiency in battle.

158. *bi þat lace*, '(<measured> by the lace'. In *Gawayne* (ll. 217 ff. of the full text) the axe used at the first encounter is described. It had:

*A lace lapped aboute, þat louked at þe hede,  
And so after þe halme halched ful ofte,  
Wyth tryed tasselez þerto tacched innoghe, &c.*

'A lace wrapped about (the handle), which was fastened at the (axe's) head, and was wound about the handle again and again, with many choice tassels fastened to it', &c.

159. *as fyrst*, 'as at the first encounter', i. e. when he rode into Arthur's hall. His outfit of green is minutely described at ll. 151 ff. of the full text.

162. *Sette þe stele to þe stone*: i. e. he used the handle of the axe as a support when crossing rough ground. *stele* = 'handle', not 'steel'.

164. *hypped . . . strydez*: note the frequent alternation of past tense and historic present. So ll. 3-4 *passed . . . prayses*; 107-8 *kachez . . . com . . . lizez*; 280-1 *haldez . . . gef*, &c.

169 f. 'Now, sweet sir, one can trust you to keep an appointment.'

175. *þat þe falled*, 'what fell to your lot', i. e. the right to deal the first blow.

177. *oure one*, 'by ourselves'. To *one* 'alone' in early M.E. the dative pronoun was added for emphasis, *him one*, *us one*, &c. Later and more rarely the possessive pronoun is found, as here. *Al(I)* was also used to strengthen *one*; so that there are six possible M.E. types: (1) *one*, e. g. ll. 6, 50; (2) *him one*; (3) *his one*; (4) *al one* = *alone* l. 87; (5) *al him one*, or *him al one*; (6) *al his one*, or *his al one*.

181. *at a wap one*, 'at a single blow'.

183. 'I shall grudge you no good-will because of any harm that befalls me.'

189-90. 'And acted as if he feared nothing: he would not tremble (*dare*) with terror.'

196. He (Gawayn) who was ever valiant would have been dead from his blow there.'

200. It must not be supposed that the chief incidents of *Sir Gawayne* were invented by the English poet. The three strokes, for example, two of them mere feints and the third harmless, can be shown to derive from the lost French source, which has Irish analogues. See pp. 71-4 of *A Study of Gawain and the Green Knight* (London 1916), by Professor Kittredge, a safe guide in the difficult borderland of folklore and romance.

207. 'Nor did I raise any quibble in the house of King Arthur.' On *kyngez hous Arthor* see note to II 518.

222. *ryuez*: the likeness of *n* and *u* in MSS. of the time makes it impossible to say whether the verb is *riue* 'to cleave', which is supported by l. 278, or *rine*, OE. *hrinan*, 'to touch'.

230. 'And look out for your neck at this stroke, (to see) if it may survive.'

233. *I hope*: here, and often in ME., *hope* means 'believe', 'expect'.

250. Gawayn appears to have carried his shield on his back. By a movement of his shoulders he lets it fall in front of him, so that he can use it in defence.

258. *foo*, 'fiercely', adv. parallel with *zederly*.

269. *ry(n)kande*, 'ringing'; Napier's suggestion for MS. *rykande*.

271-2. 'Nobody here has ill-treated you in an unmannerly way, nor shown you <discourtesy>': the object of *kyd* being understood from *unmanerly mysboden*. *habbe* for MS. *habbe* is Napier's reading.

278-9. 'And cleft you with no grievous wound, <which> I rightly <merely> proffered you, because of the compact we made fast', &c. It is better to assume a suppression of the relative, than to put a strong stop after *rof* and treat *sore* as sb. object of *profered*. This latter punctuation gives *sore* the chief stress in the line, and breaks the alliteration and rhythm, which is correct as long as *sore* is taken with *rof*, so that its stress is subordinated.

286-7. 'Let a true man truly repay—then one need dread no peril.'

291. *weued*: perhaps not a weak pa. t. of *weave-woven*, but rather means 'to give', from OE. *wāfan*, 'to move'; *weue* in this sense occurs in *Gawayne* l. 1976.

294-5. 'And truly you seem to me the most faultless man that ever walked on foot.' The ME. construction, *on þe faultlest*, where *on* 'one' strengthens the superlative, is found in Chaucer, *Clerk's Tale* 212:

*Thanne was she oon the faireste under sonne,*

and still survives in Shakespeare's time, e.g. *Henry VIII*, II. iv. 48 f. *one the wisest prince*. It has been compared with Latin *unus maximus*, &c. In modern English the apposition has been replaced, with weakening of the sense: *one of the (wisest)*, &c.

298. *yow lakked* . . . *yow wonted*: impersonal, since *yow* is dative, 'there was lacking in you'.

319. 'Let me win your good-will', 'Pardon me'.

331. I have transposed MS. of *þe grene chapel at cheualrous knyȝtes*, because such a use of *at* is hardly conceivable. A copyist might easily make the slip. Cp. l. 35.

344. *Bope þat on and þat oper*: Besides the Green Knight's young wife, there was a much older lady in the castle, 'yellow', with 'rugh, ronkled chekeȝ', and so wrapped up

*Ðat noȝt watȝ bare of þat burde bot þe blake broȝes,  
þe tweyne yȝen, and þe nase, þe naked lypȝes,  
And þose were soure to se, and sellyly blered.*

*Gawayne* ll. 961-3.

350-1. 'And David afterwards, who suffered much evil, was (morally) blinded by Bathsheba.

352-6. 'Since these were injured with their wives, it would be a great gain to love them well, and not believe them—for a man who could do it [cp. note to XI b 209]. For these (Adam, Solomon, &c.) were of old the noblest, whom all happiness followed, surpassingly, above all the others that lived beneath the heavens.' *mused* 'thought' is used for the rime, and means no more than 'lived'. ll. 354-6 amount to 'above all other men'.

## VI

**Dialect:** West Midland, like *Gawayne*.

The metre occasionally gives clear evidence that final flexional -e of the original has not always been preserved in the extant MS., e.g.

*þaʒ cortaysly ʒe carþ(è) con* 21.

The most noteworthy verbal forms are:

pres. ind. 1 sg. *byswykeʒ* 208 (once only, in rime);

2 sg. *þou quyteʒ* 235;

3 sg. *lepeʒ* 17; *totʒ* (= *tʰs* = *tās* = *takes*) 153 (note).

1 pl. *we leuen* 65; *we calle* 70;

3 pl. *temen* 100 (and cp. ll. 151-2); *kawe* 145;  
but *þay gotʒ* 150, *þykeʒ* 213 (both in rime).

imperative pl. *dyspleseʒ* 62; *gos, dotʒ* 161.

pres. p. *spornande* 3.

pp. *runne* (in rime) 163, beside *wroken* 15, &c.

Characteristic Western forms are *burne* 37 (OE. *beorn*); *vrþe* 82 (OE. *eorþe*).

5. 'Like bubbling water that flows from a spring', i.e. his wild words rise from a heart that can no longer contain its affliction.

11-12. 'You, who were once the source of all my joy, made sorrow my companion.'

15. 'From the time when you were removed from every peril'. The child died before she was two years old (l. 123).

22. 'I am but dust, and lack manners.' The MS. has *marereʒ mysse*, which has been rendered 'botcher's waste'; but the poet is contrasting his own ill-mannered speech with the Pearl's courtesy.

23. 'But the mercy of Christ and of Mary and of John'. The genitive inflexion is confined to the noun immediately preceding *mersy*, while the two following nouns, which are logically



genitives with exactly the same construction as *Crystes*, remain uninflected. For analogies see note to II 518.

36. *and*: MS. *in*. The sign for *and* is easily mistaken for *i* = *in*. Cp. note to XVII 42.

48. *pat*, 'who'.

65. *pat* . . . *of*, 'from whom'; the later relative form of *quom* occurs at l. 93.

70. *Fenyx of Arraby*: the symbol of peerless perfection. Cp. Chaucer, *Death of Blanche the Duchess*, ll. 980-3

*Trewly she was to myn ye  
The soleyn Fenix of Arabye,  
For ther lyveth never but oon,  
Ne swich as she ne knew I noon.*

71. 'which was faultless in form'; *fleȝe* 'flew' is used with weakened sense because a bird is normally thought of as on the wing.

74. *folde up hyr face*, '(<with> her face upturned'; *folde* is pp.

91-2. 'And each would wish that the crowns of the others were five times as precious, if it were possible to better them.'

97. *Poule*: the common OFr. and ME. form, as at VIII a 25, 270, XI b 80. But the rime with *naule* 'nail' (ON. *nagl*) points to the form *Paule* for the original. The reference is to I Corinthians vi. 15 and xii. 12 ff.

100. *hys body*, 'its body', 'the body'. *t(r)yste*, Morris's emendation, is supported by the frequency of the phrase *trewre and tyste*. MS. *tyste* could only be explained as = *tyȝte* 'tight', with *st* for *ht*, like *myste* = *myȝte* at l. 102. See Appendix § 6 (end).

106. 'Because you wear a ring on arm or finger.'

109-11. 'I (<well>) believe that there is great courtesy and charity among you.' The construction of the next line (which conveys an apology, cp. l. 62) is not clear owing to the following gap in the MS.; nor is it easy to guess the missing rime word, as *among* can rime with OE. -*ung*- (e.g. with *þonge*, ll. 114, 175), or with OE. -*ang*-; see the note to XVII 400

116. *stronge* may be adj. 'violent' with *worlde*, but is more likely adv. 'severely'.

124-5. Note the cumulation of negatives. *cowþeȝ* has a double construction: 'You never knew how to please God nor pray to Him, nor (<did you know even>) the Paternoster and Creed.' The Lord's Prayer and the Apostles' Creed were prescribed by the Church as the elements of faith to be taught first to a child.

137. Matthew xx. 1-16.

139. 'He represented it very aptly in a parable.'

141. *My regne* . . . *on hyȝt*, 'My kingdom on high'

145. *pys hyne*: the labourers. *This, these* are sometimes used in early English to refer to persons or things that have not been previously mentioned, but are prominent in the writer's mind.

Cp. xv b 4, 19; and the opening of Chaucer's *Prologue* to the *Franklin's Tale* quoted in the note to II 13.

150. *pené*: in ME. the final sound developed from OFr. *-é* (*e*) fell together with the sounds arising from OE. *-ig*, OFr. *ie*, &c. Hence *pené* or *peny* 186 (OE. *penig*); *reprend* 184 for *repreny*; *cortaysé* 120, 121, beside *cortaysye* 72, 84, 96. The acute accent is editorial.

153. 'At midmornig the master goes to the market.' *tot* (= *tōs*) = *tās*, contracted form of *takes* 'betakes himself'; cp. *tone* = *taken* v 91. The spelling and rimes with *o* (which cannot develop normally from *ā* lengthened in open syllables because this lengthening is everywhere later than the change *ā* > *ō*) are usually explained as artificial. It is assumed that as Northern *bān* corresponded to Midland *bōn*, so from Northern *tā* 'take' an unhistorical Midland *tō* was deduced. But it is possible that the contraction of *tāke(n)*, and consequent lengthening *tā(n)*, is older than the ordinary lengthening *tāke* > *tāke*, and also older than the development of *ā* to *ō* in North Midland.

164. *I yow pay*: note the survival of the old use of the present to express future tense.

176. *bat at 3e moun*, 'what you can'. *At* as a relative appears usually to be from Old Norse *at*, with the same sense, and it is not uncommon in Northern English. But *bat at* here is more likely the normal development of *bat bat* > *bat tat* (note to II 102) > *bat at*.

179. *sumoun* is infin. not sb.: 'he had <them> summoned'; cp. note to VIII a 79.

192. 'It seems to us we ought to receive more.' *Vus bynk* is a remnant of the old impersonal construction of *bynceþ* 'it seems'. In this phrase, probably owing to confusion with *we bynk(en)*, the verb often has no flexional ending; cp. l. 192. *vus o3e* is formed by analogy, the verb being properly personal; cp. *must vs* XVII 292, 334.

200. *And*, 'If'.

205-8. *More*, which is necessary for the metrical form, is best taken as conj. 'moreover', 'further'; *weper* introduces a direct question (note to v 118). *lawly* is perhaps miswritten for *lawful* 'lawful', as the *Pearl-Garwayne* group often show the converse *au*, *aw* for normal *ou*, *ow*, e.g. *barwe* for *bowe*, *trawpe* for *trowpe*. 'Further, is my power to do what pleases me with my own lawful?' The meaning is fixed by Matthew xx. 15 'Is it not lawful for me to do what I will with mine own? Is thine eye evil because I am good?'

212. *myke3*. In the few recorded examples *mik*, *myk* seems to mean 'an intimate friend'. Here it is used for the sake of rime in an extended sense 'chosen companion of the Lord'.

221 f. *Wheper*, &c., 'Although I began <only> just now, coming into the vineyard in the eventide, <yet>', &c.

224. Note the rime (OE. *sūm*) with ON. *blóm(s)*, OE. *dōm, cōm*. Such rimes occur occasionally in Northern texts of the fourteenth century—never in the South.

233. Psalm lxii. 12 'Also unto Thee, O Lord, belongeth mercy; for Thou renderest to every man according to his work.'

237-40. Loosely constructed. 'Now, if you came to payment before him that stood firm through the long day, then he who did less work would be more entitled to receive pay, and the further (it is carried), the less (work), the more (claim to be paid).'

249-51. On the meaning of these lines there is no agreement. Gollancz and Osgood interpret: 'That man's privilege is great who ever stood in awe of Him (God) who rescues sinners. From such men no happiness is withheld, for,' &c. Yet it is difficult to believe that even a poet hard pressed would use *dard to Hym* to mean 'feared Him'. One of several rival interpretations will suffice to show the ambiguities of the text: 'His (God's) generosity, which is always inscrutable (lit. lay hidden), is abundant to the man who recovers his soul from sin. From such men no happiness is withheld', &c. The sense and construction of *dard* (for which the emendation *fard*, pret. of *fere* 'to go', has been suggested, the rest of the interpretation following Gollancz), and the obscurity of the argument, are the chief obstacles to a satisfactory solution.

## VII

**Dialect:** Irregular, but predominantly North-West Midland; cp. v and vi.

**Inflexions:—**

VERB: pres. ind. 3 sg. *warys* 19, *has* 20.

3 pl. *ben* 11, *sayn* 182, *haue* 31.

pres. p. *claterand* 137, *priuand* 158, *leymonde* 153;

beside *blowyng* 106, *doutyng* 114.

strong pp. *slydyn* 6, *stoken* 11.

The weak pp. and pa. t. have *-it*, *-(e)t* for *-(e)d*  
*dreþit* 9, *suet* 24.

PRONOUN 3 PERS.: pl. nom. *pai* 45; poss. *hor* 8, beside *pere* 9, 10; obj. *hom* 24.

**Sounds and Spelling:** Northern and North Midland forms are *gwiles* (= *whiles*) 39, *hondgwile* 117; and *wysshe* 4 (note). West Midland indications are *buernes* 'men' 90, 91 = OE. *beorn* (but *buerne* 'sea' 159 = OE. *burn-* is probably miswritten owing to confusion with *buern* 'man'); and perhaps the spelling *u* in unaccented syllables: *mecull* 10, *watur* 119, *wintur* 124.

4. *wysse* = *wisse* 'guide'. In the North final *sh* was commonly pronounced *ss*; cp. note to I 128-9, and the rimes in XVII 1-4. Conversely etymological *ss* was sometimes spelt *ssh*.

7-8. *strongest . . . and wisest . . . to wale*, 'the strongest . . . and wisest . . . that could be chosen' (lit. 'to choose').

15. *On lusti to loke*, 'pleasant to look upon'.

21 ff. A typical example of the vague and rambling constructions in which this writer indulges: apparently 'but old stories of the valiant <men> who <once> held high rank may give pleasure to some who never saw their deeds, through the writings of men who knew them at first hand (?) (*in dede*), <which remained> to be searched by those who followed after, in order to make known (*or to know?*) all the manner in which the events happened, by looking upon letters (i. e. writings) that were left behind of old'.

45. Benoît de Sainte-Maure says the Athenians rejected Homer's story of gods fighting like mortals, but charitably explains that, as Homer lived a hundred years after the siege, it is no wonder if he made mistakes:

*N'est merveille s'il i faillit,  
Quar onc n'i fu ne rien n'en vit.*

*Prologue*, ll. 55-6.

53-4. 'That was elegantly compiled by a wise clerk—one Guido, a man who had searched carefully, and knew all the actions from authors whom he had by him.' See Introductory note, pp. 68 f.

66-7. Cornelius Nepos was supposed to have found the Greek work of Dares at Athens when rummaging in an old cupboard (Benoît de Sainte-Maure, *Prologue*, ll. 77 ff.).

157. Note the slovenly repetition from l. 151. So l. 159 repeats l. 152.

168-9. I have transposed these lines, assuming that they were misplaced by a copyist. Guido's Latin favours the change, and the whole passage will illustrate the English translator's methods:

*Oyleus uero Ajax qui cum 32 nauibus suis in predictam incidit tempestatem, omnibus nauibus suis exustis et submersis in mari, in suis uiribus brachiorum nando semiuuius peruenit ad terram; et, inflatus pre nimio potu aque, uix se nudum recepit in littore, ubi usque ad superuenientis diei lucem quasi mortuus iacuit in arena, [et] de morte sua sperans potius quam de uita. Sed cum quidam ex suis nando similiter a maris ingluuie iam erepti nudi peruenissent ad littus, dominum eorum querunt in littore [et] si forsitan euasisset. Quem in arena iacentem inueniunt, dulcibus uerborum fouent affatibus, cum nec in uestibus ipsum nec in alio possunt subsidio refouere. (MS. Harley 4123, fol. 117 a—the bracketed words are superfluous.)*

178. *Telamon* was not at the siege, and his name appears here and in l. 150 as the result of a tangle which begins in the confusion of Oyleus Ajax with Ajax the son of Telamon. In classical writers after Homer it is Oyleus Ajax who, at the sack of Troy, drags Cassandra from the temple of Minerva. This is the story in Dictys. Dares, like Homer, is silent. In Benoît de Sainte-Maure's poem (ll. 26211–16), the best MSS. name Oyleus Ajax as Cassandra's captor, but others have '*Thelamon Ajax*', i.e. Ajax, the son of Telamon. Guido read Benoît in a MS. of the latter class, and accordingly makes *Telamonius Ajax* do the sacrilege. With the English translator this becomes *Telamon* simply (Bk. xxix, ll. 11993–7). So when later, in Bk. xxxi, he comes to describe the shipwreck, he replaces Guido's *Ajax* by *Telamon*, and spoils the story of Minerva's vengeance on the actual violator of her sanctuary.

## VIII

**Dialect:** South Midland, with mixture of forms.

**a. VERB:** pres. ind. 2 sg. *seist* 226, *wilnest* 256.

3 sg. *comaundeth* 16.

1 pl. *haue* 118, *preye* 119.

2 pl. *han* 11, *wasten* 127.

3 pl. *liggeth* 15, &c.; beside *ben* 50, *waste* 155.

imper. pl. *spynneth* 13.

pres. p. (none in *a*); *romynge* b 11.

strong pp. *bake* 187, *ybake* 278, *ybaken* 175.

Infinitives in *-ie* (OE. *-ian*) are retained: *erye* 4, *hatie* 52, *tilye* 229 (OE. *erian*, *hatian*, *tilian*).

**PRONOUN** 3 PERS.: pl. nom. *pei* 126, &c., beside *hii* 15; poss. *her* 54; obj. *hem* 2.

**Sounds:** OE. *y* often shows the Western development, as in *huyre(d)* 108, 133, &c.; *abugge* 75, 159; beside *bigge* 275. So *Cornehulle* b 1. But such forms were not uncommon in the London dialect of the time.

*b.* The second extract has a more Southern dialectal colouring. Note especially the gen. pl. forms *lollarene* 31, *knaucene* 56, *lordene* 77, continuing or extending the OE. weak gen. pl. in *-ena*; and *menne* 29, 74, retaining the ending of the OE. gen. pl. *manna*.

The representation of unaccented vowels by *u* in *hure* (= 'their') 50, (= 'her') 53; (*h*)*us* 'his' 60, 101; *clerkus* 65, is commonest in Western districts. *h(w)* is no longer aspirated:

wanne I, werby 35, MS. eggen 19; and conversely *hyf* 'if' 43, *his* 'is' 105.

a 9. *for shedyng*, 'to prevent spilling'; and so *for colde* 62 'as a protection against cold'; *for bollyng* 209 'to prevent swelling'; *for chillyng* 306, &c.

a 11. *Pat 3e han silke and sendal to sowe*: The construction changes as if Piers had begun: *Ich praye 3ow*, which is the reading in the C-text. The difficulty of excluding modern ideas from the interpretation of the Middle Ages is shown by the comment of a scholar so accomplished as M. Petit-Dutaillis: 'Il attaque les riches peu miséricordieux, les dames charmantes aux doigts effilés, qui ne s'occupent pas des pauvres' (*Soulèvement*, p. lxii). But there is no hint of satire or reproach in the text. The poet, always conventional, assigns to high-born ladies the work which at the time was considered most fitting for them. So it is reported in praise of the sainted Isabella of France, sister of St. Louis: *Quand elle fust introduicte des lettres suffisamment, elle s'estudioit à apprendre à ouurer de soye, et faisoit estolles et autres paremens à sainte Eglise*—'When she was sufficiently introduced to letters, she set herself to learn how to work in silk, and made stoles and other vestments for Holy Church.' (Joinville, *Histoire d. S. Louys*, Paris 1668, pt. i, p. 169.)

a 19. *for þe Lordes loue of heuene*: cp. l. 214, and notes to I 44, I 83, II 518.

a 23. *on þe teme*, 'on this subject'; *teme* 'theme' is a correct form, because Latin *th* was pronounced *t*. The modern pronunciation is due to the influence of classical spelling.

a 32. *affaite þe*, 'tame for thyself'; cp. l. 64 (*I shal*) *brynge me* = 'bring (for myself)', and the note to II 289.

a 40-1. 'And though you should fine them, let Mercy be the assessor, and let Meekness rule over you, in spite of Gain.' This is a warning against abuse of the lord of the manor's power to impose fines in the manorial court with the object of raising revenue rather than of administering justice. Cp. Ashley, *Introduction to English Economic History*, vol. i (1894), pt. ii, p. 266. For *maugré Medes chekes* cp. 151.

a 49. Luke xiv. 10.

a 50. *yuel to knowe*, 'hard to distinguish'.

a 72-5. These clumsy lines, which are found in all versions, exemplify the chief faults in *Piers Plowman*: structural weakness and superfluous allegory.

a 79. *I wil . . . do wryte my biqueste*, 'I will have my will written'; *make(n)*, *ger (gar)*, and *lete(n)* are commonly used like *do(n)* with an active infinitive, which is most conveniently rendered by the passive; so *do wryte* 'cause to be written'; *dyd werche* 'caused to be made' I 218; *mad sumoun*

'caused to be summoned' VI 179; *gert dres up* 'caused to be set up' X 16; *leet make* 'caused to be made' IX 223, &c.

a 80. *In Dei nomine, amen*: A regular opening phrase for wills.

a 84. 'I trust to have a release from and remission of my debts which are recorded in that book.' *Rental*, a book in which the sums due from a tenant were noted, here means 'record of sins'.

a 86. *he*: the parson, as representing the Church.

a 91. *doustres*. In l. 73 only one daughter is named. In the B-text, Passus xviii. 426, she is called *Kalote* (see note to b 2 below).

a 94. *bi þe rode of Lukes*: at Lucca (French *Lucques*) is a Crucifix and a famous representation of the face of Christ, reputed to be the work of the disciple Nicodemus. From Eadmer and William of Malmesbury we learn that William the Conqueror's favourite oath was 'By the Face of Lucca!', and it is worth noting that the frequent and varied adjurations in Middle English are copied from the French.

a 114. 'May the Devil take him who cares!'

a 115 ff. *faitoures* (cp. ll. 185 ff.), who feigned some injury or disease to avoid work and win the pity of the charitable, multiplied in the disturbed years following the Black Death. Statutes were passed against them, and even against those who gave them alms (Jusserand, *English Wayfaring Life*, pp. 261 ff.). But the type was long lived. In the extract from *Handlyng Synne* (No. 1), we have already a monument of their activities.

a 141. 'And those that have cloisters and churches (i. e. monks and priests) shall have some of my goods to provide themselves with copes.'

a 142. *Robert Renne-about*. The type of a wandering preacher; *posteles* are clearly preachers with no fixed sphere of authority, like the mendicant friars and Wiclif's 'poor priests'. Against both the regular clergy constantly complained that they preached without the authority of the bishop.

a 186. *þat seten*: the MS. by confusion has *þat seten to seten to begge*, &c.

a 187. *þat was bake for Bayarde*: i. e. 'horse-bread' (l. 208), which used to be made from beans and peas only. *Bayard*, properly a 'bay horse', was, according to romance, the name of the horse given by Charlemagne to Rinaldo. Hence it became the conventional name for a horse, just as *Reynard* was appropriated to the fox. Chaucer speaks of *proude Bayard* (*Troilus*, Bk. i. 218) and, referring to an unknown story, *Bayard the blynde* (*Canon's Yeoman's Tale*, 860).

a 221. *Michi vindictam*: Romans xii. 19.

a 224. Luke xvi. 9.

a 229. Genesis iii. 19.

a 231. *Sapience*: the Book of Wisdom, but the quotation is actually from Proverbs xx. 4.

a 234. *Mathew with mannes face*. Each of the evangelists had his symbol: Matthew, a man; Mark, a lion; Luke, a bull; John, an eagle; and in early Gospel books their portraits are usually accompanied by the appropriate symbols.

a 235 ff. Matthew xxv. 14 ff.; Luke xix. 12 ff.

a 245. *Contemplatyf lyf or actyf lyf*. The merits of these two ways of life were endlessly disputed in the Middle Ages. In XI b Wiclif attacks the position of the monks and of Rolle's followers; and the author of *Pearl* (VI 61 ff.) takes up the related question of salvation by works or by grace.

a 246. Psalm cxxviii. 1.

a 264. Jusserand gives a brief account of the old-time physicians in *English Wayfaring Life*, pp. 177 ff. The best were somewhat haphazard in their methods, and the mountebanks brought discredit on the profession. Here are a few fourteenth-century prescriptions:

*For hym that haves the squynansy ['quinsy']*:—

Tak a fatte katte, and fla hit wele and clene, and draw oute the guttes; and tak the grees of an urcheon ['hedgehog'], and the fatte of a bare, and resynes, and feinygreke ['fenugreek'], and sauge ['sage'], and gumme of wodebynde, and virgyn wax: al this mye ['grate'] smal, and farse ['stuff'] the catte within als thu farses a gos: rost hit hale, and geder the grees, and enoynt hym tharwith. (*Reliquiae Antiquae*, ed. Wright and Halliwell (1841), vol. i, p. 51.)

*3yf a woud hund hat ybite a man*:—

Take tou(n)karsyn ['towncress'], and pulyole ['pennyroyal'], and seþ hit in water, and 3ef hym to drynke, and hit schal caste out þe venym: and 3if þou miste ['might'] haue of þe hundys here, ley hit þerto, and hit schal hele hit. (*Medical Works of the Fourteenth Century*, ed. G. Henslow, London 1899, p. 19.)

*A goud oynement for þe goute*:—

Take þe grece of a bor, and þe grece of a ratoun, and cattys grece, and voxis grece, and hors grece, and þe grece of a brok ['badger']; and take feþeruoye ['feverfew'] and eysyl ['vinegar'], and stampe hem togedre; and take a litel lynnesed, and stampe hit wel, and do hit þerto; and meng al togedre, and het hit in a scherd, and þerwith anoynte þe goute by the fuyre. Do so ofte and hit schal be hol. (*Ibid.*, p. 20.)

a 284. *Lammasse tyme*: August 1, when the new corn (l. 294) would be in. On this day a loaf was offered as firstfruits: whence the name, OE. *hlāf-masse*.

a 307 ff. Owing to repeated famines, the wages of manual labour rose throughout the first half of the fourteenth century. A crisis



was reached when the Black Death (1349) so reduced the number of workers that the survivors were able to demand wages on a scale which seemed unconscionable to their employers. By the Statute of Labourers (1350 and 1351) an attempt was made to force wages and prices back to the level of 1346. For a day's haymaking 1*d.* was to be the maximum wage; for reaping 2*d.* or 3*d.* Throughout the second half of the fourteenth century vain attempts were made to enforce these maxima, and the penalties did much to fan the unrest that broke out in the Peasants' Revolt of 1381.

a 309-10. From Bk. i of the *Disticha* of Dionysius Cato, a collection of proverbs famous throughout the Middle Ages.

a 321. Saturn was a malevolent planet, as we see from his speech in Chaucer's *Knigh't's Tale*, 1595 ff.

a 324. *Deth*: the Plague.

b 1. *Cornehulle*. Cornhill was one of the liveliest quarters of fourteenth-century London, and a haunt of idlers, beggars, and doubtful characters. Its pillory and stocks were famous. Its market where, if *The London Lickpenny* is to be credited, dealing in stolen clothes was a speciality, was privileged above all others in the city. See the documents in Riley's *Memorials of London*.

b 2. *Kytte*: In the B-text, Passus xviii. 425-6, *Kytte* is mentioned again:

*and riȝt with þat I waked*

*And called Kitte my wyf and Kalote my douȝter.*

b 4. *lollares of London*: The followers of Wiclif were called 'Lollards' by their opponents; but the word here seems to mean 'idlers' as in l. 31. *lewede heremytes*: 'lay hermits': hermits were not necessarily in holy orders, and so far from seeking complete solitude, they often lived in the cities or near the great highways, where many passers would have opportunity to recognize their merit by giving alms. See Cutts, *Scenes and Characters of the Middle Ages*, pp. 93 ff.

b 5. 'For I judged those men as Reason taught me.' Skeat's interpretation—that *made of* means 'made verses about'—is forced. The sense is that the idlers and hermits thought little of the dreamer, and he was equally critical of them.

b 6. *as ich cam by Conscience*: 'as I passed by Conscience', referring to a vision described in the previous Passus, in which Conscience is the principal figure.

b 10 f. *In hele and in vnitt*, 'in health and in my full senses', and *Romyng in remembraunce* qualify me.

b 14. *Mowe oþer mowen*, 'mow or stack'. For these unrelated words see the Glossary.

b 16. *haywarde*: by derivation 'hedge-ward'. He watched over enclosures and prevented animals from straying among the crops. Observe that ME. nouns denoting occupation usually

survive in surnames:—Baxter 'baker', Bow(y)er, Chapman, Dyer, Falconer, Fletcher 'arrow-maker', Fo(re)ster, Franklin, Hayward, Lister (= litster, 'dyer'), Palmer, Reeve(s), Spicer, Sumner, Tyler 'maker or layer of tiles', Warner 'keeper of warrens', Webb, Webster, Wright, Yeoman, &c.

b 20-1. 'Or craft of any kind that is necessary to the community, to provide food for them that are bedridden.'

b 24. *to long*, 'too tall': cp. B-text, Passus xv. 148 *my name is Longe Wille*. Consistency in such details in a poem full of inconsistencies makes it probable that the poet is describing himself, not an imagined dreamer.

b 33. Psalm lxii. 12.

b 45. 1 Corinthians vii. 20.

b 46 ff. Cp. the note to XI b 131f. The dreamer appears to have made his living by saying prayers for the souls of the dead, a service which, from small beginnings in the early Middle Ages, had by this time withdrawn much of the energy of the clergy from their regular duties. See note to XI b 140 f.

b 49. *my Seuene Psalmes*: the Penitential Psalms, normally vi, xxxii, xxxviii, li, cii, cxxx, cxliii, in the numbering of the Authorised Version. The *Prymer*, which contained the devotions supplementary to the regular Church service, included the Placebo, Dirige, and the Seven Psalms: see the edition by Littlehales for the Early English Text Society.

b 50. *for hure soules of suche as me helpen*: combines the constructions *for þe soules of suche as me helpen*, and *for hure soules þat me helpen*.

b 51. *vochen saf*: supply *me* as object, 'warrant me that I shall be welcome'.

b 61. 1 Thessalonians v. 15; Leviticus xix. 18.

b 63. *churches*: here and in l. 110 read the Norse form *kirkes* for the alliteration, as in a 28, 85. But the English form also belongs to the original, for it alliterates with *ch* at a 12, 50.

b 64. *Dominus*, &c.: Psalm xvi. 5.

b 83. *Symondes sone*: a son of Simon Magus—one guilty of simony, or one who receives preferment merely because of his wealth.

b 90. Matthew iv. 4.

b 103-4. *Simile est*, &c.: Matthew xiii. 44. *Mulier que*, &c.: Luke xv. 8 ff.

## IX

**Dialect:** South-East Midland.

**Vocabulary:** A number of French words are taken over from the original, e.g. *plee* 81, *ryot* 83, *violastres* 97, *saphire loupes* 116, *gowrdes* 139, *clowe gylofres* 157, *canell* 158, *awaied*

195, *trayne* (for *taynere*?) 222, *bugles* 256, *gowtes artetykes* 314, *distreynten* 315.

**Inflections:** Almost modern.

**VERB:** pres. ind. 3 sg. *schadeweth* 19, *turneth* 23.

3 pl. *ben* 4, *han* 14, *wexen* 22, *loue* 100.

pres. p. *fle(e)yng* 148, 252; *recordyng* 317.

strong pp. *jouen* 90, *begonne* 171.

**PRONOUN 3 PERS.:** pl. *pei* 5; *here* 71; *hem* 20.

**Sounds:** OE. *a* becomes *ø*: *hoot* 11, *cold* 31.

OE. *y* appears as *y* (= *i*): *byggynge* 90, *kyñ* 'kine' 256; except regular *left* (hand) 69, 71, 72, where Modern English has also adopted the South-Eastern form of OE. *lyft*.

21-3. The French original says that the children have white hair when they are young, which becomes black as they grow up.

24-5. The belief that one of the Three Kings came from Ethiopia is based on Ps. lxxviii. 31: 'Princes shall come out of Egypt, Ethiopia shall soon stretch out her hands unto God.' In mediaeval representations one of the three is usually a negro.

27. *Emlak*: miswritten for *Euilak*, a name for India taken from *Havilah* of Genesis ii. 11.

28. *pat is*: *pe more*: *Ynde* has probably fallen out of the text after *is*.

34-5. *3alow cristall draweth {to} colour lyke oylle*: the insertion of *to* is necessary to give sense, and is supported by the French: *cristal iaunastre trehant a colour doile*. (MS. Harley 4383, f. 34b.)

36-7. The translation is not accurate. The French has: *et appelle homme les dyamantz en ceo pais 'Hamese'*.

64 ff. It was supposed that the pearl-bearing shell-fish opened at low tide to receive the dew-drops from which the pearls grew.

74. *3if 3ou lyke*, 'if it please you', impersonal = French *si vous plect*.

75. *pe Lapidarye*, Latin *Lapidarium*, was a manual of precious stones, which contained a good deal of pseudo-scientific information about their natures and virtues, just as the *Bestiary* summed up popular knowledge of animals. A Latin poem by Marbod bishop of Rennes (d. 1123) is the chief source of the mediaeval lapidaries, and, curiously enough, there is a French prose text attributed by so intimate an authority as Jean d'Outremeuse to Mandeville himself. Several Old French texts have been edited by L. Pannier, *Les Lapidaires Français du Moyen Âge*, Paris 1882. Their high repute may be judged from the inclusion of no less than seven copies in the library of Charles V of France (d. 1380); and it is surprising that no complete ME. version is known. But much of the matter was absorbed into encyclopaedic

works like the *De Proprietatibus Rerum* of Bartholomaeus, which Trevisa translated.

97. Mistranslated. The French has: *qi sont violastre, ou plus broun qe violettes*.

100-1. *But in soth to me*: French: *Mes endroit de moy*, 'but for my part'; the English translator has rendered *en droit* separately.

108. *perfore*: the context requires the sense 'because', but the translator would hardly have used *perfore* had he realized that ll. 108-9 correspond to a subordinate clause in the French, and do not form a complete independent sentence. He was misled by the bad punctuation of some French MSS., e.g. Royal 20 B. x and (with consequent corruption) Harley 4383.

136. *Cathaye*: China. See the classic work of Colonel Yule, *Cathay and the Way Thither*, 2 vols., London 1866. The modernization of the Catalan map of 1375 in vol. i gives a good idea of Mandeville's geography.

142. *withouten wolle*: the story of the vegetable lamb is taken from the Voyage of Friar Odoric, which is accessible in Hakluyt's *Voyages*. Hakluyt's translation is reprinted, with the Eastern voyages of John de Plano Carpini (1246) and of William de Rubruquis (1253), in *The Travels of Sir John Mandeville*, ed. A. W. Pollard, London 1900. The legend probably arose from vague descriptions of the cotton plant; and Mandeville makes it still more marvellous by describing as without wool the lamb which had been invented to explain the wool's existence.

143-4. *Of pat frute I haue eten*: This assertion seems to be due to the English translator. The normal French text has simply: *et cest bien grant merueille de ceo fruit, et si est grant oure [= œuvre] de nature* (MS. Royal 20 B. x, f. 70 b).

147. *the Bernakes*: The barnacle goose—introduced here on a hint from Odoric—is a species of wild goose that visits the Northern coasts in winter. It was popularly supposed to grow from the shell-fish called 'barnacle', which attaches itself to floating timber by a stalk something like the neck and beak of a bird, and has feathery filaments not unlike plumage. As the breeding place of the barnacle goose was unknown, and logs with the shell-fish attached were often found on the coasts, it was supposed that the shell-fish was the fruit of a tree, which developed in the water into a bird. Giraldus Cambrensis, *Topographia Hibernica*, l. xv, reproves certain casuistical members of the Church who ate the barnacle goose on fast-days on the plea that it was not flesh; but himself vouches for the marvel. The earliest reference in English is No. 11 of the Anglo-Saxon *Riddles*, of which the best solution is 'barnacle goose'. For a full account see Max Müller's *Lectures on the Science of Language*, vol. ii, pp. 583-604.

157. *grete notes of Ynde*, 'coco-nuts'.

163-4. *Goth and Magoth*: see Ezekiel xxxviii and xxxix. The forms of the names are French.

170. *God of Nature*: Near the end of the *Travels* it is explained that all the Eastern peoples are Deists, though they have not the light of Christianity: *pei beleeven in God þat formede all thing and made the world, and clepen him 'God of Nature'*.

191-2. *þat þei schull not gon out on no syde, but be the cost of hire lond*: the general sense requires the omission of *but*, which has no equivalent in the original French text: *gils ne(nt) issent fors deuers la coste de sa terre* (MS. Sloane 1464, f. 139 b). But some MSS. like Royal 20 B. x have *fors qe deuers*, a faulty reading that must have stood in the copy used by the Cotton translator. Cp. note to l. 108.

199-200. *a four grete myle*: renders the French *iiii grants lieus*. There is no 'great mile' among English measures.

209ff. In the Middle Ages references to the Jews are nearly always hostile. They were hated as enemies of the Church, and prejudice was hardened by stories, like that in the text, of their vengeance to come, or of ritual murder, like Chaucer's *Prioress's Tale*. England had its supposed boy martyrs, William of Norwich (d. 1144), and Hugh of Lincoln (d. 1255) whom the Prioress invokes:

*O yonge Hugh of Lyncoln, slayn also  
With cursed Jewes, as it is notable,  
For it is but a litel while ago,  
Preye eek for us, &c.*

Religion was not the only cause of bitterness. The Jews, standing outside the Church and its laws against usury, at a time when financial needs had outgrown feudal revenues, became the money-lenders and bankers of Europe; and with a standard rate of interest fixed at over 40 per cent., debtors and creditors could hardly be friends. In England the Jews reached the height of their prosperity in the twelfth century, so that in 1188 nearly half the national contribution for a Crusade came from them. In the thirteenth century their privileges and operations were cut down, and they were finally expelled from the country in 1290 (see J. Jacobs, *The Jews of Angevin England*, 1893). The Lombards, whose consciences were not nice, took their place as financiers in fourteenth-century England.

222. *trayne*: read *taynere*, OFr. *taignere* 'a burrow'.

237-8. The cotton plant has already given us the vegetable lamb (l. 142). This more prosaic account is taken from the *Epistola Alexandri ad Aristotelem*: '*in Bactriacen . . . penitus ad abditos Seres, quod genus hominum foliis arborum decerpendo lanuginem ex silvestri vellere vestes detexunt*' (Julius Valerius,

ed. B. Kübler, p. 194). From the same text come the hippopotami, the bitter waters (Kübler, p. 195), and the griffins (Kübler, p. 217). The *Letter of Alexander* was translated into Anglo-Saxon in the tenth century.

254 ff. *talouns* etc.: In the 1725 edition there is a reference to 'one 4 Foot long in the Cotton Library' with the inscription, *Griphi Unguis Divo Cuthberto Dunelmensi sacer*, 'griffin's talon, sacred to St. Cuthbert of Durham'. This specimen is now in the Mediaeval Department of the British Museum, and is really the slim, curved horn of an ibex. The inscription is late (sixteenth century), but the talon was catalogued among the treasures of Durham in the fourteenth century.

260. *Prestre Iohn*: Old French *Prestre Jean*, or 'John the Priest', was reputed to be the Christian ruler of a great kingdom in the East. A rather minatory letter professing to come from him reached most of the princes of Europe, and was replied to in all seriousness by Pope Alexander III. Its claims include the lordship over the tribes of Gog and Magog whom Alexander the Great walled within the mountains. Official missions were sent to establish relations with him; but neither in the Far East nor in Northern Africa, where the best opinion in later times located his empire, could the great king ever be found. The history of the legend is set out by Yule in the article *Prestre John* in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica*.

261. *Yle of Pentexoire*: to Mandeville most Eastern countries are 'isles'. *Pentexoire* in the French text of Odoric is a territory about the Yellow River (Yule, *Cathay*, vol. i, p. 146).

262 ff.: For comparison the French text of the Epilogue is given from MS. Royal 20 B. x, f. 83 a, the words in < > being supplied from MS. Sloane 1464:

'Il y a plusours autres diuers pais, et moutz dautres meruailles par de la, qe ieo nay mie tout veu, si nen saueroye proprement parler. Et meismement el pais en quel iay este, y a plusours diuersetes dont ieo ne fais point el mencion, qar trop serroit long chose a tout deuiser. Et pur ceo qe ieo vous ay deuisez dascuns pais, vous doit suffire quant a present. Qar, si ieo deuisoie tout quantqz y est par de la, vn autre qi se peneroit et trauielleroit le corps pur aler en celles marches, et pur sercher la pais, serroit empeschez par mes ditz a recompter nuls choses estranges, qar il ne purroit rien dire de nouelle, en quoy ly oyantz y puissent prendre solaces. Et lem dit toutdis qe choses nouvelles pleisent. Si men taceray a tant, saunz plus recompter nuls diuersetes qi soyent par de la, a la fin qe cis qi vourra aler en celles parties y troeue assez a dire.

'Et ieo, Iohan Maundeulle dessudit, qi men party de nos pais et passay le mer lan de grace mil cccxxii<sup>de</sup>; qi moint terre et moint passage et moint pays ay puis cerchez; et qy ay este en

moint bone compaignie et en molt beal fait, come bien qe ieo (ne fuisse dignes, et) ne feisse vncqes ne beal fait ne beal emprise; et qi meintenat suy venuz a repos maugre mien, pur goutes artetikes qi moy destreignont; en preignan solacz en mon cheitif repos, en recordant le temps passe, ay cestes choses compilez et mises en escript, si come il me poet souuenir, lan de grace mil ccc.lvi<sup>m</sup>, a xxxiiii<sup>te</sup> an qe ieo men party de noz pais.

'Si pri a toutz les lisauntz, si lour plest, qils voillent Dieu prier pur moy, et ieo priera pur eux. Et toutz cils qi pur moy dirrout vne *Paternoster* qe Dieu me face remissioun de mes pecches, ieo les face parteners et lour ottoie part dez toutz les bons pelrinages et dez toutz les bienfaitz qe ieo feisse vnqes, et qe ieo ferray, si Dieu plest, vncqore iusques a ma fyn. Et pry a Dieu, de qy toute bien et toute grace descent, qil toutz les lisantz et oyantz Cristiens voille de sa grace reemplir, et lour corps et les almes sauuer, a la glorie et loenge de ly qi est trinz et vns, et saunz comencement et saunz fin, saunz qualite bons, saunz quantite grantz, en toutz lieus present et toutz choses contenant, et qy nul bien ne poet amender ne nul mal enpirer, qy en Trinite parfite vit et regne par toutz siecles et par toutz temps. Amen.'

274. *blamed*: The Old French verb *empescher* means both 'to hinder, prevent', and 'to accuse, impeach'. But here *empesches* should have been translated by 'prevented', not 'blamed'.

284-306. This passage, which in one form or another appears in nearly all the MSS. in English, has no equivalent in the MSS. in French so far examined: and, as it conflicts with ll. 313 ff., which—apart from the peculiarities of the Cotton rendering—indicate that the *Travels* were written after Mandeville's return, it must be set down as an interpolation.

The art of forging credentials was well understood in the Middle Ages, and the purpose of this addition was to silence doubters by the *imprimatur* of the highest authority, just as the marvel of the Dancers of Colbek is confirmed by the sponsorship of Pope Leo IX (I 246-9). The different interpretation of the latest editor, Hamelius, who thinks it was intended as a sly hit at the Papacy (*Quarterly Review* for April 1917, pp. 349 f.) seems to rest on the erroneous assumption that the passage belonged to the French text as originally written.

The anachronism by which the author is made to seek the Pope in Rome gives a clue to the date of the interpolation. From the beginning of the fourteenth century until 1377 Avignon, and not Rome, was the seat of the Pope; and for another thirty years there was doubt as to the issue of the conflict between the popes, who had their head-quarters at Rome and were recognized by England, and the antipopes, who remained at Avignon and had the support of the French. The facts were notorious, so that the anachronism would hardly be possible to

one who wrote much before the end of the century, even though he were a partisan of the Roman court.

From internal evidence it would seem that the interpolation first appeared in French. The style is the uniform style of translation, with the same tags—and *see schull vnderstonde = et sachiez*; *if it lyke you = si vous flect*; and the same trick of double rendering, e.g. *of dyuerse secte and of beleewe*; *wyse and discreet*; *the auctour ne the persone*. More decisive is an example of the syntactical compromise explained in the note to l. 329: *be the whiche the Mappa Mundi was made after*. With so many French MSS. of Mandeville in use in England, an interpolation in French would have more authority than one that could not be traced beyond English; and it can hardly be an insuperable objection that no such French text exists to-day, since our knowledge of the Cotton and Egerton versions themselves depends in each case on the chance survival of a single MS.

The point has a bearing on the vexed question of the relations of the English texts one to another. For brevity we may denote by D the defective text of the early prints and most MSS., which is specially distinguished by a long gap near the beginning; by C the Cotton text (ed. Halliwell, Pollard, Hamelius); by E the Egerton text (ed. Warner). Nicholson (in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica*) and Warner give priority to D, and consider that C and E are independent revisions and expansions of D by writers who had recourse to the French original. Their argument seems to be this: There is precise evidence just before the gap that D derives direct from a mutilated French text (see *Enc. Brit.*), and if it be granted that a single translation from the French is the base of C, D, and E, it follows that C and E are based on D.

A fuller study by Vogels (*Handschriftliche Untersuchungen über die Englische Version Mandeville's*, Crefeld 1891) brings to light a new fact: the two Bodleian MSS., E Museo 116 and Rawlinson D 99, contain an English translation (say L) made from a Latin text of the *Travels*. Vogels also shows that E is based on D, because the characteristic lacuna of D is filled in E by a passage which is borrowed from L and is not homogeneous with the rest of E. So far there is no conflict with the view of Nicholson and Warner. But, after adducing evidence in favour of the contention that C, D, and E are at base one translation, Vogels concludes that D derives from C, arguing thus: There is good evidence that C is a direct translation from the French, and if it be granted that a single translation from the French is the base of C and D, it follows that D derives from C.

In short, the one party maintains that C is an expansion of D, the other that D is an abridgement of C; and this flat opposition



results from the acceptance of common ground: that C and D represent in the main one translation and not two translations.

To return to our interpolation:

(1) Vogels's first piece of evidence that C, D, and E are at base one translation is the appearance in all of this interpolation, which is absent from the MSS. in French. But a passage so remarkable might spread from one to the other of two independent English texts; or if the interpolation originated in England in a MS. of the French text since lost, it might be twice translated.

(2) Vogels assumes that the interpolation first appeared in type C. But C is the form in which it would be least likely to originate, because here the contradiction of statement is sharpest owing to the rendering at ll. 313-14: *and now I am comen hom*, which is peculiar to C (see the French).

(3) If, in order to eliminate individual peculiarities, we take two MSS. of the D type—say Harley 2386 and Royal 17 C. XXXVIII—we find that their text of the interpolation is identical with that of E. This is consistent with Vogels's finding that the body of E derives from D; and it confirms the evidence of all the defective MSS. that the interpolation in this particular form was an integral part of the D type.

(4) But between the text of the interpolation in D and that in C there are differences in matter, in sentence order, and in phrasing, which, while they do not exclude the possibility of interdependence, do not suggest such a relation. In D the passage is a naked attempt at authentication; in C it is more artfully though more shamelessly introduced by the touch of piety conventional in epilogues. And as the signs of a French original that appear in C are absent from D, it is unlikely that the text of the interpolation in C derives from D.

(5) Again, in D and E the addition follows the matter of ll. 307-20. Unfortunately, though the balance of probability is in favour of the order in C, the order intended by the interpolator is not certain enough to be made the basis of arguments. But such a difference in position is naturally explained from the stage when the interpolation stood in the margin of a MS., or on an inserted slip, so that it might be taken into the consecutive text at different points. And an examination of the possibilities will show that if the interpolation originated in French, the different placing is more simply explained on the assumption that C and D are independent translations than on the assumption that one of them derives from the other.

To sum up: the central problem for the history of the English texts is the relation of C and D. Taken by itself the evidence afforded by the text of the interpolation is against the derivation of C from D; it neither favours nor excludes the derivation of D from C; it rather favours independent translation in C and D

For the relations of the rest of the text these deductions afford no more than a clue. Against independent translation of C and D stands the evidence adduced by Vogels for basic unity. Much of this could be accounted for by the coincidences that are inevitable in literal prose translations from a language so near to English in vocabulary and word order; and a few striking agreements might be due to the use of French MSS. having abnormal variants in common, or even to reference by a second translator to the first. The remainder must be weighed against a considerable body of evidence in the contrary sense, e.g. several places where the manuscripts of the French text have divergent readings, of which C translates one, and D another.

It is unlikely that any simple formula will be found to cover the whole web of relationships: but any way of reconciling the conclusions of the authorities should be explored; and the first step is an impartial sifting of all the evidence, with the object of discovering to what extent C and D are interdependent, and to what extent independent translations. The chief obstacle is the difficulty of bringing the necessary texts together; for an investigator who wished to clear the ground would have to face the labour of preparing a six-text *Mandeville*, in the order, French, C, D, E, L, Latin.

301. *Mappa Mundi*: OFr. and ME. *Mappemounde*, was the generic name for a chart of the world, and, by extension, for a descriptive geography of the world. It is not clear what particular *Mappa Mundi* is referred to here, or whether such a map was attached to the manuscript copy of the *Travels* in which this interpolation first appeared.

329. *fro whom all godenesse and grace cometh fro*: cp. 24-5 *the lond of the whiche on of the þre Kynges . . . was kyng offe*; 76-8 *þei . . . of whom all science . . . cometh from*; and 301-2 *be the whiche the Mappa Mundi was made after*. The pleonasm is explained by the divergence of French and ME. word order. In French, as in modern literary English, the preposition is placed at the beginning of the clause, before the relative (*de qui*, *dont*, &c.). ME. writers naturally use the relative *that*, and postpone the preposition to the end of the clause: e.g. *þat all godenesse cometh fro*. The translator compromises between his French original and his native habit by placing the preposition both at the beginning and at the end.

## X

Dialect: Northern (Scots): the MS. copy was made in 1487 more than a century after the poem was composed.

Vocabulary: Note *till* 'to' 4, 77 (in rime); *syne* 'afterwards' 35, 112; the forms *sic* 'such' 135, *begouth* 94, and the

short verbal forms *ma* (in rime) 'make' 14, *tane* (in rime) 'taken' 19.

**Inflections:**

VERB: pres. ind. 3 sg. *has* 76.

3 pl. *has* 52, *mais* 72; but *thai haf* 16.  
pres. p. *rynand* 17, *vyndland* 129 (in rime).  
strong pp. *gane* 84, *drawyn* 124.

PRONOUN 3 PERS.: sg. fem. nom. *sche* (in rime) 80; pl. *thai* 1;  
*thair* 28; *thame* 3.

Sounds: OE. *a* remains: *brynstane* (in rime) 20, *sare* 51.

OE. *ō* (close *ō*) appears as *u* (*ū*?) : *gude* 36, *ful* 57, *tume* 143.

Unaccented *-(e)d* of weak pa. t. and pp. becomes *-(i)t*: *passit* 2, &c.

Spelling: *i* (*y*) following a vowel indicates length: *weill* 10, *noyne* 'noon' 67.

OE. *hw*-appears as *guh*-(indicating strong aspiration): *guhelis* 'wheels' 17, *quhar* 18.

*v* and *w* are interchanged: *vithall* 9, *behevin* 163, *in swndir* 106.

Book XVII of *The Bruce* begins with the capture of Berwick by the Scots in March 1318. Walter Stewart undertakes to hold the city, and is aided in preparing defences by a Flemish engineer, John Crab. Next year King Edward II determines to recapture the stronghold by an attack from both land and sea. He entrenches his forces and makes the first assault unsuccessfully early in September 1319. In this battle the Scotch garrison capture a clever engineer (see note to l. 71 below). King Robert Bruce meanwhile orders a raid into England as a diversion, and on 20 September 1319, an English army, led by the Archbishop of York, is disastrously defeated by the invaders at Mitton. Our extract gives the story of the second assault on Berwick, which was also fruitless. The fortress fell into English hands again as a result of the battle of Halidon Hill in 1333: see XIV a 35-6.

5-6. 'They made a sow of great joists, which had a stout covering over it.' The *sow* was essentially a roof on wheels. The occupants, under shelter of the roof, pushed up to the walls of the besieged place and tried to undermine them. For an illustration see Cutts, *Scenes and Characters of the Middle Ages*, Pt. VI, chap. vi, where other military engines of the time are described.

15. *Crabbis consale*: John Crab was the engineer of the garrison. He is no doubt the same as the John Crab who in 1332 brought Flemish ships round from Berwick to attack the English vessels at Dundee. There was an important Flemish colony at Berwick from early times.

36. *Schir Valter, the gude Steward*: Walter Steward, whose surname denotes his office as Steward of Scotland, was the father of Robert II, the first king of the Stuart line.

42. *Rude-eyyn*: September 13, the eve of the feast of the Exaltation of the Cross.

49. *thame . . . of the toune*, 'the defenders of the town'.

51. *or than*, 'or else'.

71 ff. *The engynour*: an English engineer captured by the garrison in the previous assault and forced into their service.

80. *scho*, 'she', some engine of war not previously referred to: apparently a mechanical sling.

123 ff. The boats were filled with men and hoisted up the masts, so as to overtop the walls and allow the besiegers to shoot at the garrison from above. The same engine that proved fatal to the sow was used to break up the boats.

146. *thar wardane with him had*, 'their warden (who) had with him'; cp. note to XIII a 36.

158-61. A confused construction. The writer has in mind: (1) 'Of all the men he had there remained with him only one whom he had not left to relieve', &c.; and (2) 'There were no members of his company (except one) whom he had not left', &c.

192. *sicht*, perhaps for *ficht*, cp. l. 115 [C.S.].

## XI

**Dialect**: South Midland.

**Inflexions**: *u* for inflexional *e*, as in *knowun* a 2, *seun* a 51, *aʒenus* a 29, *mannus* b 114 is found chiefly in West Midland.

**VERB**: pres. ind. 2 sg. *madist* b 214.

3 sg. *groundip* a 4.

3 pl. *seyn* a 1, *techen* b 5.

pres. p. *brennynge* b 67.

strong pp. *knowun* a 2, *ʒouen* b 264, *take* b 271.

**PRONOUN** 3 PERS.: pl. *pey*, *pei*, a 3, b 9; possessive usually *ber* in a 1, 23, &c.; but *her* a 52, and regularly *here* in b 25, 36, &c.; objective *hem* a 4, b 3.

**Sounds**: OE. *a* appears regularly as *o*, *oo*: *more* a 7, *Hooly* a 10, *toolde* a 65.

OE. *y* appears as *y*, *i*: *synne* a 61, *stiren* b 93.

The form *poup* (= *pouʒ*) b 190 probably indicates sound-substitution; and in *ynowbʒ* (= *ynouʒ*) b 149 there is wavering between the two forms.

a 12. *Wit Sunday*: the first element is OE. *hwīt* 'white', not 'wit'.

a 25 ff. Translations of the Bible were common in France at

this time. No less than six fine copies survive from the library of John, Duke of Berry (d. 1416). About the middle of the fourteenth century King John of France ordered a new translation and commentary to be made at the expense of the Jews, but it was never finished, although several scholars were still engaged on it at the end of the century. The early French verse renderings, which incorporate a good deal of mediaeval legend, are described by J. Bonnard, *Les Traductions de la Bible en Vers Français au Moyen Âge* (Paris 1884); the prose by S. Berger, *La Bible Française au Moyen Âge* (Paris 1884). Of the surviving manuscripts mentioned in these excellent monographs several were written in England.

a 28 ff. In earlier times, when most of those who could read at all were schooled in Latin, the need for English translations of the Scriptures was not so pressing, and the partial translations that were made were intended rather for the use of the clergy and their noble patrons than for the people. Bede (d. 735) completed a rendering of St. John's Gospel on his death-bed. Old English versions of the Gospels and the Psalms still survive. Abbot Aelfric (about A.D. 1000) translated the first five books of the Old Testament; and more than one Middle English version of the Psalms is known. Wiclif was perhaps unaware of the Old English precedents because French renderings became fashionable in England from the twelfth century onwards, and he would probably think of the Psalter more as a separate service book than as an integral part of the Bible. But the prologue to the Wiclifite version attributed to John Purvey quotes the example of Bede and King Alfred; and the Dialogue on Translation which, in Caxton's print, serves as preface to Trevisa's translation of Higden, emphasizes the Old English precedents. Both may be read in *Fifteenth Century Prose and Verse*, ed. A. W. Pollard, London 1903, pp. 193 ff. The attitude of the mediaeval Church towards vernacular translations of the Bible has been studied very fully by Miss M. Deanesly, *The Lollard Bible and other Medieval Biblical Versions*, Cambridge 1920.

a 34. *be play of York*. The York Paternoster Play has not survived, but there are records from 1389 of a Guild of the Lord's Prayer at York, whose main object was the production of the play. It seems to have been an early example of the moral play, holding up 'the vices to scorn and the virtues to praise', and it probably consisted of several scenes, each exhibiting one of the Seven Deadly Sins. The last recorded representation was in 1572. See Chambers, *The Mediaeval Stage*, vol. ii, p. 154. The association of the friars with the production of religious plays is confirmed by other writings of the time. They were quick to realize the value of dramatic

representation as a means of gaining favour with the people, and their encouragement must be reckoned an important factor in the development of the Miracle Play.

*a* 51. *wher*, 'whether'; cp. *b* 207. In ll. 197, 266, 274, it introduces a direct question; see note to v 118.

*b* 20. *Gregory*, Gregory the Great. See his work *In Primum Regum Expositiones*, Bk. iii, c. 28: *praedicatores autem Sanctae Ecclesiae . . . prophetae ministerio utuntur* (Migne, *Patrologia*, vol. lxxix, col. 158).

*b* 44. (*God*). Such omissions from the Corpus MS. are supplied throughout from the copy in Trinity College, Dublin, MS. C. III. 12.

*b* 79-80. Cp. Luke xxi. 36 and I Thessalonians v. 17.

*b* 89-91. Proverbs xxviii. 9.

*b* 126. *as Ambrose*: In 386 St. Ambrose, besieged in the Portian Church at Milan by Arian sectaries, kept his followers occupied and in good heart by introducing the Eastern practice of singing hymns and antiphons. See St. Augustine's *Confessions* Bk. ix, c. 7.

*b* 131-2. *placebo*. Vespers of the Dead, named from the first word of the antiphon, *Placebo Domino in regione vivorum* (Psalm cxiv. 9).

*dirige*. Matins of the Dead, named from the first word of the antiphon, *Dirige, Domine, Deus meus, in conspectu tuo viam meam* (Psalm v. 9). Hence our word *dirge*.

*comendacion*: an office in which the souls of the dead are commended to God.

*matynes of Oure Lady*: one of the services in honour of the Virgin introduced in the Middle Ages.

The whole question of these accretions to the Church services is dealt with by our English master in liturgical study, the late Mr. Edmund Bishop, in his essay introductory to the Early English Text Society's edition of the *Prymer*, since reprinted with additional notes in his *Liturgica Historica* (Oxford 1918), pp. 211 ff.

*b* 137f. *deschaunt, cowntre note, and orgon, and smale brekyng*. The elaboration of the Church services in mediaeval times was accompanied by a corresponding enrichment of the music. To the plain chant additional parts were joined, sung in harmony either above or below the plain chant. *Descant* usually means the addition of a part above, *organ* and *cowntre-note* (= counter-point) the addition of parts either above or below. All these could be composed note for note with the plain chant. But *smale brekyng* represents a further complication, whereby the single note in the plain chant was represented by two or more notes in the accompanying parts.

*b* 140f. The abuse is referred to in *Piers Plowman*:

*Persones and parsheprestes pleyne to the bisshop  
That hure parshens ben poore sitthe the pestelence tyme,  
To haue licence and leue in Londone to dwelle,  
And synge ther for symonye, for seluer ys swete.*

*Prologue ll. 81-4.*

and by Chaucer in his description of the Parson :

*He sette nat his benefice to hyre,  
And leet his sheepe encombred in the myre,  
And ran to Londoun, unto Seint Poules,  
To seken hym a chaunterie for soules.*

*Prologue ll. 507-10.*

b 183. *Ordynalle of Salisbury*. An 'ordinal' is a book showing the order of church services and ceremonies. In mediaeval times there was considerable divergence in the usage of different churches. But after the Conquest, and more especially in the thirteenth century, there was developed at Salisbury Cathedral an elaborate order and form of service which spread to most of the English churches of any pretensions. This was called 'Sarum' or 'Salisbury' use.

b 209. *bei demen it dedly synne a prest to fulfille, &c.* For this construction, cp. Chaucer, *Prologue* 502 *No wonder is a lewed man to ruste*; Shakespeare, *Two Gentlemen of Verona*, v. iv. 108 f. *It is the lesser blot . . . Women to change their shapes, &c.* The same construction, where we now insert *for*, is seen in *Gawayne* (v. 352-3) *hit were a wyne huge . . . a leude, þat coupe, to luf hom wel, &c.*

b 221-3. 'They say that a priest may be excused from saying mass, to be the substance of which God gave Himself, provided that he hears one.'

b 228 f. *newe costly portos, antifeners, graielis, and alle opere bokis*. *Portos*, French *porte hors*, represents Latin *portiforium*, a breviary convenient for 'carrying out of doors'. The *antifener* contained the antiphons, responses, &c., necessary for the musical service of the canonical hours. The *graiel*, or *gradual*, was so called from the gradual responses, sung at the steps of the altar, or while the deacon ascended the steps of the pulpit: but the book actually contained all the choral service of the Mass.

b 230. *makyng of biblis*. Wiclif in his *Office of Curates* (ed. Matthew, p. 145) complains of the scarcity of bibles. *But fewe curatis han þe Bible and expositiouns of þe Gospelis, and litel studien on hem, and lesse donne after hem. But wolde God þat euery parische chirche in þis lond hadde a good Bible!* &c.

b 234. At this time books, especially illuminated books, were very dear. The Missal of Westminster Abbey, which is now shown in the Chapter-house, was written in 1382-4 at a cost of £34 14s. 7d.—a great sum in those days, for the scribe, Thomas Preston, who took two years to write it, received only

£4 for his labour, 20s. for his livery, and board at the rate of 21s. 8d. the half year. The inscription in British Museum MS. Royal 19 D.11, a magnificently illustrated Bible with commentary, shows that it was captured at Poitiers with King John of France, and bought by the Earl of Salisbury for 100 marks (about £66). Edward III gave the same sum to a nun of Amesbury for a rich book of romance. In France John, Duke of Berry, paid as much as £200 for a breviary, and the appraisalment of his library in 1416 shows a surprisingly high level of values (L. Delisle, *Le Cabinet des Manuscrits*, vol. iii, pp. 171 ff.). These were luxurious books. The books from the chapel of Archbishop Bowet of York (d. 1423) sold more reasonably: £8 for a great antiphonar and £6 13s. 4d. *pro uno libro vocato 'Bibill'*, were the highest prices paid; and from his library there were some fascinating bargains: 4s. for a small copy of Gregory's *Cura Pastoralis*; 5s. *pro uno libro vocato 'Johannes Andrewe', vetere et debili*, which would probably turn out to be a dry work on the Decretals; and 3s. 4d. for a nameless codex, *vetere et caduco*, 'old and falling to pieces'. (*Historians of the Church of York*, ed. J. Raine, vol. iii, pp. 311, 315.)

But the failing activity of the monastic scriptoria, and the formation of libraries by the friars and by rich private collectors, made study difficult for students at the universities, where at this time a shilling per week—a third of the price of Bowet's most dilapidated volume—was reckoned enough to cover the expenses of a scholar living plainly. The college libraries were scantily supplied: books were lent only in exchange for a valuable pledge; or even pawned, in hard times, by the colleges themselves.

These conditions were not greatly improved until printing gave an easy means of duplication, and for a time caused the humble manuscripts in which most of the mediaeval vernacular literature was preserved to be treated as waste paper. As late as the eighteenth century Martène found the superb illuminated manuscripts left by John, Duke of Berry, to the Sainte Chapelle at Bourges serving as roosting places to their keeper's hens (*Voyage Littéraire*, Paris 1717, pt. i, p. 29).

b 261-3. The reference is to Acts vi. 2, 'It is not reason that we should leave the word of God, and serve tables.'

b 266. *wisere þan*. After these words the Corpus MS. (p. 170, col. i, l. 34 mid.), without any warning, goes on to the closing passage of an entirely unrelated 'Petition to the King and Parliament'. By way of compensation, the end of our sermon appears at the close of the Petition. Clearly the scribe (or some one of his predecessors) copied without any regard for the sense from a MS. of which the leaves had become disarranged.

b 285. Cp. Acts iii. 6.



## XII

**Dialect:** London (SE. Midland) with Kentish features.

**Inflexions:**

**VERB:** pres. ind. 3 sg. *loveth a 5*; contracted *stant a 74*.  
3 pl. *schewen a 136*, *halsen a 148*, *be* (in rime) *a 92*.

pres. p. *growende a 80*.

strong pp. *schape* (in rime) *a 130*, beside *schapen a 169*.

**PRONOUN** 3 PERS.: sg. fem. nom. *sche a 32*; pl. *thei a 148*; *here a 144*; *hem a 112*.

Unaccented final *-e* is treated as in Chaucer, having its full value in the verse when it represents an inflexion or final vowel in Old English or Old French, e. g.

*And for he scholdè slepè softè a 93*

*An apè, which at thilkè throwè b 5*

**Sounds:** *e* appears as in Kentish for OE. *y*: *hell 'hill' a 65*, 79, 86; *keste 'kissed' a 178*; note the rimes *unschette: lette a 71-2*; *pet 'pit': let b 9-10*; and less decisive *pet: knet* (OE. *knyttan*) *b 29-30*, 53-4; *dreie: beie b 23-4*.

**Spelling:** *ie* represents close *ē*: *fielende a 157*, *hier b 34*; *diemed b 216*.

**Syntax:** The elaborate machinery of sentence connexion deserves special attention; and many turns of phrase are explained by Gower's fluency in French.

*a 1.* Gower follows Ovid, *Metamorphoses*, Bk. xi. Chaucer tells the story of Ceix and Alcyone in his *Death of Blanche the Duchess*, ll. 62 ff. This is presumably the early work to which the *Man of Law* refers:

*I kan right now no thrifty tale seyn  
But Chaucer, thogh he kan but lewedly  
On metres and on rymyng craftily,  
Hath seyð hem, in swich Englissh as he kan,  
Of olde tyme, as knoweth many a man;  
And if he have noght seyð hem, leve brother,  
In o book, he hath seyð hem in another;  
For he hath toold of loveris up and down  
Mo than Ovide made of mencion  
In his Epistelles, that been ful olde.  
What sholde I tellen hem, syn they ben tolde?  
In youthe he made of Ceys and Alcione, &c.*

(Link to *Man of Law's Tale*, ll. 46 ff.)

Gower's rendering is the more poetical.

*a 2. Trocinie.* Ovid's *Trachinia tellus*, so called from the city of Trachis, north-west of Thermopylae.

a 23. *As he which wolde go*: otiose, or at best meaning no more than 'desiring to go'. Cp. b 25 *As he which hadde* = 'having' simply; and similarly b 37, 203. It is an imitation of a contemporary French idiom *comme celui qui*.

a 26. *and*: the displacement of the conjunction from its natural position at the beginning of the clause is characteristic of Gower's verse. Cp. l. 152 *Upon the morwe and up sche sterte* = 'and in the morning she got up', and a 45, 49, b 121, 124, 135, 160, 182. See notes to ll. 32, 78 f.

a 32. Editors put a comma after *wepende*, and no stop after *seileth*: but it is Alceoun who weeps. The displacement of *and* is exemplified in the notes to l. 26 and ll. 78 f.

a 37. 'One had not to look for grief'; a regular formula of understatement, meaning 'her grief was great'.

a 53. *Hire reyny cope*, &c.: the rainbow, which was the sign or manifestation of Iris.

a 59 ff. *Prope Cimmerios longo spelunca recessu,  
Mons cavus, ignavi domus et penetralia Somni.*  
(*Metamorphoses* xi. 592-3.)

Much of the poetry of Gower's description is due to Ovid.

a 78 f. Editors put no stop after *may* and a comma after *hell*. Hence *The New English Dictionary* quotes this passage as an isolated instance of *noise*, transitive, meaning 'disturb with noise'. But *noise* is intransitive, *hell* is governed by *about* *round*, and the position of *bot* is abnormal as in l. 105. Cp. notes to ll. 26, 32, and render 'But all round about the hill'.

a 105. For the word order see notes to ll. 26, 32, 78 f.

a 117. *The lif*, 'the man', cp. IV a 43.

a 118. *Ithecus*: for *Icelos*. According to Ovid 'Icelos' was the name by which he was known to the gods, but men called him 'Phobetor'.

a 123. *Panthasas*: Ovid's *Phantasos*.

a 152. See note to l. 26.

a 197. The halcyon, usually identified with the kingfisher, was supposed to build a floating nest on the sea in midwinter, and to have power to calm the winds and waves at that season, bringing 'halcyon weather'.

b 2. *I finde*. Matthew Paris in his *Chronica Maiora* (ed. Luard, Rolls Series, vol. ii, pp. 413 ff.) gives a similar story, which, he says, King Richard the First often told to rebuke ingratitude. In this version, Vitalis of Venice falls into a pit dug as a trap for wild beasts. The rescued animals are a lion and a serpent; the rescuer is nameless, and the gem given to him by the serpent has not the magic virtue of returning whenever sold. Nearer to Gower is the story told in Nigel Wireker's *Speculum Stultorum*, a late twelfth-century satire in Latin verse, which, from the name of its principal character Burnellus the

Ass, who is ambitious to have a longer tail, is sometimes called *Burnellus*; cp. Chaucer, *Nun's Priest's Tale*, l. 492:

*I have wel rad in Daun Burnel the Asse*

*Among his vers, &c.*

The poem is printed in T. Wright's *Anglo-Latin Satirical Poets and Epigrammatists of the Twelfth Century* (Rolls Series, 1872), vol. i. At the end the Ass returns disappointed to his master Bernardus (= Bardus). Bernardus, when gathering wood, hears Dryanus (= Adrian), a rich citizen of Cremona, call from a pit for help. The rescued animals are a lion, a serpent, and an ape. The gem given by the serpent in token of gratitude always returns to Bernardus, who, with more honesty than Gower's poor man shows, takes it back to the buyer. The fame of the marvellous stone reaches the king; his inquiries bring to light the whole story; and Dryanus is ordered to give half his goods to Bernardus.

Gower probably worked on a later modification of Nigel's story.

b 86. *blessed*, 'crossed (himself)'.

b 89. *Between him and his asse*, i.e. pulling together with the ass. The ass is, of course, the distinguished Burnellus.

b 116. *his ape*: for *this ape* (?).

b 191. *Justinian*, Emperor of the Eastern Roman Empire (d. 565), was best known for his codification of the Roman law, and so is named here as the type of a lawgiver.

### XIII

**Dialect:** South-Western, with some Midland forms.

**Inflections:**

VERB: pres. ind. 3 sg. *bloweþ a 7, casteþ a 8.*

3 pl. *bup a 10, habbeþ a 15.*

pres. p. *slyttyng, frotyng b 59.*

strong pp. *yknowe a 12, ysode a 30.*

NOUN: Note the plural in *-(e)n, tren* 'trees' *a 44, 51, 53*;  
*chyldern b 16* is a double plural.

PRONOUN 3 PERS.: pl. *hy a 17; here a 61; ham a 23.*

Note the unstressed 3 sg. and 3 pl. form *a*, e.g. at *a 13, 27.*

**Sounds:** There is no instance of *v* for initial *f*, which is evidenced in the spelling of early South-Western writers like Robert of Gloucester (about 1300), or of *z* for initial *s*, which is less commonly shown in spelling. *u* for OE. *y* occurs in *hulles* 'hills' *a 18* (beside *bysynes b 24*, where Modern English has *u* in spelling but *i* in pronunciation; and *lyft* (OE. *lyft*) *b 39*, where Modern English has the South-Eastern form *left*).

a 2-3. *Mayster ... Minerva ... hys*: Trevisa appears to have understood 'Minerva' as the name of a god.

a 6-49. Higden took all this passage from Book i of the twelfth-century Annals of Alfred of Beverley (ed. Hearne, pp. 6-7). The *Polychronicon* is a patchwork of quotations from earlier writers.

a 7. *Pectoun*. Higden has *ad Peccum*, and Alfred of Beverley *in monte qui vocatur Pec*, i.e. The Peak of Derbyshire. *cc* and *ct* are not distinguishable in some hands of the time, and Trevisa has made *Peccum* into *Pectoun*.

a 14. *Cherdhol*. Hearne's text of Alfred of Beverley has *Cherole*; Henry of Huntingdon (about 1150), who gives the same four marvels in his *Historia Anglorum*, has *Chederhole*; and on this evidence the place has been identified with Cheddar in Somerset, where there are famous caves.

a 22. *an egle hys nest*: cp. b 23 *a child hys brouch*. This construction has two origins: (1) It is a periphrasis for the genitive, especially in the case of masculine and neuter proper names which had no regular genitive in English; (2) It is an error arising from false manuscript division of the genitive suffix *-es*, *-is*, from its stem.

a 36. (*bat*) here and in l. 52 is inserted on the evidence of the other MSS. Syntactically its omission is defensible, for the suppressed relative is a common source of difficulty in Middle English; see the notes to v 4-6, 278-9; x 146; xiv e 54; xvii 66.

a 50. *Wynburney*. Wimborne in Dorset. Here St. Cuthburga founded a nunnery, which is mentioned in one of Aldhelm's letters as early as A.D. 705. The information that it is 'not far from Bath', which is hardly accurate, was added by Higden to the account of the marvel he found in the *Topographia Hibernica* of Giraldus Cambrensis (vol. v, p. 86 of the Rolls Series edition of his works).

a 54-64. Higden took this passage from Giraldus, *Itinerarium Cambriae*, Bk. ii, c. 11 (vol. vi, p. 139 of the Rolls edition).

a 60-1. *be at here aboue*, 'be over them', 'have the upper hand'.

a 63. *Pimbilmere*: the English name for Lake Bala.

b 6-7. *pe Flemmynges*. The first settlement of Flemings in Pembrokeshire took place early in the twelfth century, and in 1154, Henry II, embarrassed alike by the turbulence of the Welsh, and of the new host of Flemish mercenaries who had come in under Stephen, encouraged a further settlement. They formed a colony still distinguishable from the surrounding Welsh population.

b 11-12. The threefold division of the English according to their Continental origin dates back to Bede's *Ecclesiastical*

*History.* But the areas settled by Bede's three tribes do not correspond to Southern, Northern, and Midland. The Jutes occupied Kent, whence the South-Eastern dialect; the Saxons occupied the rest of the South, whence the South-Western dialect; and the Angles settled in the Midlands and the North; so that the Midland and Northern dialects are both Anglian, and derive from the same Continental tribe or tribal group.

b 26. *þe furste moreyn*: the Black Death of 1349. There were fresh outbreaks of plague in 1362, 1369, 1376.

b 26-42. The bracketed passage is an addition by Trevisa himself, and is of primary importance for the history of English and of English education. See the valuable article by W. H. Stevenson in *An English Miscellany Presented to Dr. Furnivall*, pp. 421 ff.

b 27-8. *Iohan Cornwall, a mayster of gramere*. A 'master of grammar' was a licensed teacher of grammar. Mr. Stevenson points out that in 1347-8 John of Cornwall received payment from Merton College, Oxford, for teaching the boys of the founder's kin. His countryman Trevisa probably had personal knowledge of his methods of teaching.

b 39-40. *and a scholle passe þe se*, 'if they should cross the sea'.

b 47-8. The bracketed words are introduced by Trevisa.

b 50 f. *and ys gret wondur*: *and* is superfluous and should perhaps be deleted.

b 58-65. Though still often quoted as a fourteenth-century witness to the pronunciation of Northern English (e.g. by K. Luick, *Historische Grammatik der englischen Sprache*, 1914, pp. 40 f.), this passage, as Higden acknowledges, comes from the Prologue to Book iii of William of Malmesbury's *Gesta Pontificum*, completed in the year 1125: see the Rolls Series edition, p. 209.

#### XIV

a 2. *Bannockburn*. Minot's subject is not so much the defeat of the English at Bannockburn in 1314, as the English victory at Halidon Hill on 19 July 1333, which he regards as a vengeance for Bannockburn.

a 7. *Saint Iohnes toune*: Perth, so called from its church of St. John the Baptist. It was occupied by the English in 1332 after the defeat of the Scots at Dupplin Moor.

a 13. *Striflin*, 'Stirling'.

a 15. Hall suggests that this refers to Scotch raids on the North of England undertaken to distract Edward III from the siege of Berwick.

*a 19f. Rughfute riueling . . . Berebag:* nicknames for the Scots, the first because they wore brogues (*riuelings*) of rough hide; the second because, to allow of greater mobility, each man carried his own bag of provisions instead of relying on a baggage train.

*a 22. Brig = Burghes l. 25, 'Bruges'.* At this time Scots, English, and French had all close connexions with the Netherlands. Observe that John Crab, who aided the Scots in the defence of Berwick (note to x 15), was a Fleming.

*a 35. at Berwik.* Berwick fell as a result of the battle of Halidon Hill which the Scots fought with the object of raising the siege. For an earlier siege of Berwick, in 1319, see No. x.

*a 36. get, 'watch', 'be on the look out' (ON. gáta).*

*b 5-6.* Calais was at this time a convenient base for piracy in the Channel.

*b 19. A bare:* Edward III, whom Minot often refers to as 'the boar'.

*b 24-6.* In preparation for the long siege Edward III had built a regular camp beside Calais.

*b 32. Sir Philip.* Philip de Valois, Philip VI of France (1293-1350). His son, John Duke of Normandy (1319-64), who succeeded him in 1350, is of good memory as a lover of fine books. Two are mentioned in the notes to xi a 25 ff. and xi b 234. A splendid copy of the *Miracles de Notre Dame*, preserved until recently in the Seminary Library at Soissons, seems also to have been captured with his baggage at Poitiers, for it was bought back from the English by King Charles V. Another famous book produced by his command was the translation of Livy by Bersuire, with magnificent illuminations. The spirit of the collector was not damped by his captivity in England from 1356-60, for his account books show that he continued to employ binders and miniaturists, to encourage original composition, and to buy books, especially books of romance. See *Notes et Documents relatifs à Jean, Roi de France, &c.*, ed. by Henry of Orleans, Duc d'Aumale (Philobiblon Soc., London 1855-6).

*b 40. pe Cardinales.* Pope Clement VI had sent cardinals Annibale Ceccano bishop of Frascati, and Etienne Aubert, who became Pope Innocent VI in 1352, to arrange a peace between France and England. But the English were suspicious of the Papal court at Avignon, and accused the cardinals of favouring the French cause.

*b 82. Sir Iohn de Viene.* Jean de Vienne, seigneur de Pagny (d. 1351), a famous captain in the French wars.

*c 5f.* 'They (friends) are so slippery when put to the test, so eager to have (for themselves), and so unwilling to give up (to others).'

c 14. *And*, 'if'.

c 47. King John of France was captured at Poitiers in 1356 and held in England as a prisoner until the Treaty of Bretigny in 1360. See note to XIV b 32.

c 54. Note the omission of the relative: 'which recked not a cleat for all France', and cp. ll. 43-4, XIII a 36 (note).

c 59. *his helm*, 'its helm'—the bar by which the rudder was moved.

c 61. 'The King sailed and rowed aright'; on *him*, see note to XV g 24.

c 83. *An ympe*: Richard II.

c 90. *sarri*: not in the dictionaries in this sense, is probably OFr. *serré*, *sarré*, in the developed meaning 'active', 'vigorous', seen in the adv. *sarrément*.

c 103-4. 'If we are disloyal and inactive, so that what is rarely seen is straightway forgotten.'

c 108. 'Who was the fountain of all courage.'

c 111. *los*, 'fame'.

d 1. SCHEP: here means 'shepherd', 'pastor', a name taken by Ball as appropriate to a priest.

*Seynte Marie prest of 3ork*, 'priest of St. Mary's of York' (cp. note to I 44), a great Benedictine abbey founded soon after the Conquest; see Dugdale, *Monasticon Anglicanum*, vol. iii, pp. 529 ff. *Marie* does not take the *s* inflexion, because it has already the Latin genitive form, cp. *Mary-ȝet* x 163.

d 2. *Iohan Nameles*, 'John Nobody', for *nameless* has the sense 'obscure', 'lowly'.

d 6. *Hobbe þe Robbere*. *Hob* is a familiar form for *Robert*, and it has been suggested that *Hobbe þe Robbere* may refer to Robert Hales, the Treasurer of England, who was executed by the rebels in 1381. But *Robert* was a conventional name for a robber, presumably owing to the similarity of sound. Already in the twelfth century, Mainerus, the Canterbury scribe of the magnificent Bible now in the library of Sainte-Geneviève at Paris, plays upon it in an etymological account of his family: *Secundus* (sc. *frater meus*) *dicebatur Robertus, quia a re nomen habuit: spoliator enim diu fuit et praedo*. From the fourteenth century lawless men were called *Roberts men*. In *Piers Plowman* Passus v (A- and B-texts) there is a confession of 'Robert the Robber'; and the literary fame of the prince of highway-men, 'Robin Hood', belongs to this period.

d 14. *do wel and bettre*: note this further evidence of the popularity of *Piers Plowman*, with its visions of *Dowel*, *Dobet*, and *Dobest*.

## XV

a 8. *þe clot him clingge!* 'May the clay cling to him!' i.e. 'Would he were dead!'

a 12. *þider*: MS. *Yider*, and conversely MS. *þiif* 23 for *Yiif* 'if'. *y* and *þ* are endlessly confused by scribes.

b 1. *Lenten ys come . . . to tounne*. In the Old English *Metrical Calendur* phrases like *cymed . . . us to tūne Martius rede*, 'fierce March comes to town', are regular. The meaning is 'to the dwellings of men', 'to the world'.

b 3. *þat*: construe with *Lenten*.

b 7. *him þreteþ*, 'chides', 'wrangles' (ON. *þræta*?). See the thirteenth-century debate of *The Thrush and the Nightingale* (*Reliquiae Antiquae*, vol. i, pp. 241 ff.), of which the opening lines are closely related to this poem.

b 11. *Ant wlyteþ on huere wynter wele*, 'and look at their winter happiness (?)'. This conflicts with *huere wynter wo* above; and the explanation that the birds have forgotten the hardships of the past winter and recall only its pleasures is forced. Holthausen's emendation *wynne wele* 'wealth of joys' (cp. l. 35) is good.

b 20. *Miles*: a crux. It has been suggested without much probability that *miles* means 'animals' from Welsh *mīl*.

b 28. *Deawes donkeþ þe dounes*. Of the suggestions made to improve the halting metre the best is *þise* for *þe*. The poet is thinking of the sparkle of dew in the morning sun; cp. *Sir Gawayne* 519 f.:

*When þe donkande dewe dropez of þe leuez*

*To bide a blysfyl blusch of þe bryzt sunne.*

b 29-30. 'Animals with their cries (*rounes*) unmeaning to us (*derne*), whereby they converse (*domes for te deme*). For the weakened sense of *deme* (*domes*) see note to V 115.

c 30. *Wery so water in wore*: the restless lover (l. 21) has tossed all night like the troubled waters in a *wore*; cp. *I wake so water in wore* in another lyric of the same MS. It has been suggested that *wore* = Old High German *wnor* 'weir'; but the rimes in both passages show that the stem is OE. *wār*, not *wōr*.

d 2. *the holy londe*: because Ireland was *par excellence* 'the Land of the Saints'.

f. I am obliged to Professor Carleton Brown for the information that this poem is found, with three additional stanzas, in MS. 18. 7. 21 of the Advocates' Library, Edinburgh. The complete text is now available in his *Religious Poems of the Fourteenth Century*, Oxford 1924.

f 4. *bere* (OE. *bȳre*) riming with *fere* (OE. (*ge*)*fēra*) indicates a South-Eastern composition.

g 1. *Scere Þorsday*: Maundy Thursday, the Eve of Good Friday.



*g1-2. aros : Iudas :* the alternative form *aras* may have given the rime in the original, but it is not justifiable to accept this as certain and so to assume an early date of composition for the poem. Morsbach, *ME. Grammatik*, § 135, n. 4, quotes a number of parallel rimes with proper names, and the best explanation is that *o* in *aros* still represented a sound intermediate between *a* and *ō*, and so served as an approximate rime to *ā* in proper names.

*g6. cunesmen :* as *c* and *t* are hard to distinguish in some ME. hands, and are often confused by copyists, this reading is more likely than *tunesmen* of the editors—Wright-Halliwell, Mätzner, Child, Cook (and *N. E. D.* s.v. *townsman*). For (1) *tunesman* is a technical, not a poetical word. (2) In a poem remarkable for its terseness, *tunesmen* reduces a whole line to inanity, unless the poet thinks of Judas quite precisely as a citizen of a town other than Jerusalem; and in the absence of any Biblical tradition it is unlikely that a writer who calls Pilate *pe riche Ieu* would gratuitously assume that Judas was not a citizen of Jerusalem, where his sister lived. (3) Christ's words are throughout vaguely prophetic, and as Judas forthwith *imette wid is soster*—one of his kin—*cunesmen* gives a pregnant sense. [I find the MS. actually has *cunesmen*, but leave the note, lest *tunesmen* might appear to be better established.]

*g8.* The repetition of ll. 8, 25, 30 is indicated in the MS. by 'ii' at the end of each of these lines, which is the regular sign for *bis*.

*g16.* 'He tore his hair until it was bathed in blood.' The MS. has *top*, not *cop*.

*g24. In him com ur Lord gon.* In the MS. *ġst = Crist* has been erased after *Lord*. Note (1) the reflexive use of *him*, which is very common in OE. and ME. with verbs of motion, e.g. *Up him stod* 27, 29; *ƿau Pilatus him com* 30; *Als I me rode* XV a 4; *The Kyng him rod* XIV c 61; cp. the extended use *ar þe coc him crowe* 33, and notes to II 289, v 86: (2) the use of the infinitive (*gon*) following, and usually defining the sense of, a verb of motion, where Modern English always, and ME. commonly (e.g. *ȝede karoland* I 117; *com daunceing* II 298), uses the pres. p.: 'Our Lord came walking in'.

*g27. am I þat ?* 'Is it I?', the interrogative form of *ich hit am* or *ich am hit*. The editors who have proposed to complete the line by adding *wrech*, have missed the sense. The original rime was *þet : spec*, cp. note to I 240.

*g30. cnistes :* for *cniste = cnihte* representing the OE. gen. pl. *cnihta*. On the forms *meist* 6, *heiste* 18, *eiste* 20, *bitaiste* 21, *iboust* 26, *miste* 29, *cnistes* 30, *fiste* 31, all with *st* for OE. *ht*, see Appendix § 6 end.

*h 17-18.* Difficult. Perhaps 'The master smith lengthens

a little piece [sc. of hot iron], and hammers a smaller piece, twines the two together, and strikes [with his hammer] a treble note'.

*h* 21-2. *clophemerys* . . . *brenwaterys*: not in the dictionaries, but both apparently nonce names for the smiths: they 'clothe horses' (for by the end of the fourteenth century a charger carried a good deal of armour and harness), and 'burn water' (when they temper the red-hot metal).

*i* 4. *Pat*: dat. rel. 'to whom'; cp. VI 64. But *lowte* is sometimes transitive 'to reverence'.

*i* 6. This line, at first sight irrelevant, supplies both rime and doctrine. See in Chaucer's Preface to his *Tale of Melibens* the passage ending:

*I meene of Marke, Mathew, Luc and John—  
Bot doutelees hir sentence is all oon.*

An erased *t* after *Awangelys* in the MS. shows that the scribe wavered between *Awangelys* 'Gospels' and *Awangelystes*.

*i* 7. *Sent Geretrude*: Abbess of Nivelles (d. 659), commemorated on March 17. She is appropriately invoked, for one or more rats make her emblem.

*i* 11. *Sent Kasi*. Professor Bruce Dickins kindly informs me that St. Nicasius (Dec. 12) was celebrated in Northern France as an enemy of rats. I cannot trace his acts against them, but parallels are not wanting. St. Ivor, an Irish saint, banished rats from his neighbourhood *per imprecationem* because they gnawed his books; and the charm-harassed life of an Irish rat was still proverbial in Shakespeare's day: 'I was never so berhymed' says Rosalind (*As You Like It*, III. ii) 'since Pythagoras' time, that I was an Irish rat'. In the South of France the citizens of Autun trusted more to the processes of the law, and brought a suit against the rats which ended in a victory for the defendants because the plaintiffs were unable to guarantee them safe conduct to the court (see Chambers, *Book of Days*, under Jan. 17). Even in such little things the Normans showed their practical genius:—A friend chancing to meet St. Lanfranc by the way inquired the cause of the strange noises that came from a bag he was carrying: 'We are terribly plagued with mice and rats', explained the good man, 'and so, to put down their ravages, I am bringing along a cat' (*Mures et ruti valde nobis sunt infesti, et idcirco nunc affero catum ad comprimendum furorem illorum*). *Acta Sanctorum* for May 28, p. 824.

## XVI

Dialect: Yorkshire.

Inflexions:

VERB: pres. ind. 2 sg. *þou royis* 99, *þou is* 360; beside *þou hast* 69.3 sg. *bidis* 23, *comes* 57.1 pl. *we here* 169.2 pl. *þe haue* 124.3 pl. *þei make* 103, *þei crie* 107, *dwelle* (rime) 102; beside *musteres* 104, *sais* 108.imper. pl. *harkens* 37, *beholdes* 195; but *vndo* 182.pres. p. *walkand* 53 (in rime); beside *shynnyng* 94.strong pp. *stoken* 193, *brokynne* 195, &c.Contracted verbal forms are *mase* pres. 3 pl. (in rime) 116, *bus* pres. 2 sg. 338, *tane* pp. 172.PRONOUN 3 PERS.: 1 pl. nom. *þei* 21; poss. *thare* 18, *þer* 20; obj. *þame* 9; but *hemselue* 307. The demonstrative *þer* 'these' 97, 399, is Northern.Sounds: *a* remains in rimes: *are*: *care* 345-7, *waa*: *gloria* 406-8, *lawe*: *knaue* 313-15, *moste* (for *māste*): *taste* 358-60; but *ȝ* is also proved for the original in *restore*: *euermore*: *were* (for *wȝre*): *before* 13 ff.Spelling: In *fois* (= *fōs*) 30, the spelling with *i* indicates vowel length.17. *were*: rime requires the alternative form *wȝre*.39. *Foure thowsande and sex hundereth ȝere*. I do not know on what calculation the writer changes 5,500, which is the figure in the Greek and Latin texts of the Gospel of Nicodemus, in the French verse renderings, and the ME. poem *Harrowing of Hell*. Cp. l. 354.40. *in þis stedde*: the rimes *hadde*: *gladde*: *sadde* point to the Towneley MS. reading *in darknes stad*, 'set in darkness', as nearer the original, which possibly had *in bister(nes) stad*.49. *we*: read *ȝe* (?). For what follows cp. Isaiah ix. 1-2.59. *puþlisshid*: the rime with *Criste* shows that the pronunciation was *puþlist*. Similarly, *abasshed*: *traste* 177-9. In French these words have *-ss-*, which normally becomes *-sh-* in English. It is hard to say whether *-ss-* remained throughout in Northern dialects, or whether the development was OFr. *-ss-* > ME. *-sh-* > Northern *-ss-* (notes to I 128, VII 4).62. *þis*: read *His* (?). *freendis*: here 'relatives', 'parents' (ON. *frændi*); see Luke ii. 27.

65-8. Luke ii. 29-32.

73-82. Matthew iii. 13-17, &amp;c.

75. *hande*: the rime requires the Norse plural *hend* as at l. 400; cp. XVII 255, IV a 65 (foot-note).

86 ff. Cp. Matthew xvii. 3 ff., Mark ix. 2 ff.

113. *Astrotte*: cp. 2 Kings xxiii. 13 'Ashtoreth, the abomination of the Zidonians'. I cannot identify *Anaball* among the false gods.

115. *Bele-Berit*: Judges viii. 33 'the children of Israel . . . made Baal-Berith their god'. For *Belial* see 2 Cor. vi. 15.

122-4. A common misrendering for 'Be ye lift up, ye everlasting doors', Psalm xxiv. 7.

125 ff. postulate a preceding *et introibit rex glorię*, which the writer has not been able to work into the frame of his verse.

128. *a kyng of vertues clere* = *dominus virtutum*, rendered 'Lord of Hosts' in Psalm xxiv. 10.

154-6. *ware:ferre*: the rime indicates some corruption. *ware* probably stands for *werre* 'worse'. The Towneley MS. has *or it be war*.

162. John xi.

165. John xiii. 27.

171 ff. 'And know he won away Lazarus, who was given to us to take charge of, do you think that you can hinder him from showing the powers that he has purposed (to show)?' But it is doubtful whether *what* is a true relative. Rather 'from showing his powers—those he has purposed (to show)'.

188. *I prophicied*: MS. *of prophicie* breaks the rime scheme.

190. Psalm cvii. 16 'For he hath broken the gates of brass, and cut the bars of iron in sunder.'

205 ff. The rimes *saide:braide:ferde:grathed* are bad. For the last two read *flaide* = 'terrified', and *graid*, a shortened form of *grathed*.

208. *and we wer moo*, 'if we were more', 'even if there were more of us'.

220. *as my prisoune* might be taken closely with *here*: 'in this place as my prison'. The Towneley MS. has *in* for *as*. Better would be *prisoune(s)* 'prisoners'.

240. *wolle*: read *wille* for the rime.

241. *God(ys) sonne*: MS. *God sonne* might be defended as parallel to the instances in the note to XVII 88.

256. Apparently, 'you argue his men in the mire', i.e. if Jesus is God's Son, the souls should remain in hell because God put them there. But the text may be corrupt.

267 ff. Cp. Ezekiel xxxi. 16, &c.

281 ff. *Salamon saide*: Proverbs ii. 18-19 taken with vii. 27 and ix. 18. It was hotly disputed in the Middle Ages whether Solomon himself was still in hell. Dante, *Paradiso*, x. 110, informs a world eager for tidings that he is in Paradise: but Langland declares *Ich leyue he be in helle* (C-text, iv. 330); and, more sweepingly, coupling him with Aristotle: *Al holy chirche holden hem in helle* (A-text, xi. 263).

285-8. Perhaps a gloss on Job xxxvi. 18 'Because there is wrath, beware lest he take thee away with his stroke: then a great ransom cannot deliver thee.'

301. *menys*, the reading of the Towneley MS. is better than *mouys*, which appears to be a copyist's error due to the similarity of *n* and *u*, *e* and *o*, in the handwriting of the time.

308. Judas hanged himself, according to Matthew xxvii. 3-5; Acts i. 18 gives a different account of his end. *Archedefell*: Ahithophel who hanged himself (2 Samuel xvii. 23) after the failure of his plot against David.

309. *Datan and Abiron*: see Numbers xvi.

313-16. 'And all who do not care to learn my law (which I have left in the land newly, and which is to make known my Coming), and to go to my Sacrament, and those who will not believe in my Death and my Resurrection read in order—they are not true.'

338. *þou bus*, 'you ought'; *bus*, a Northern contracted form of *behoves*, is here used as a personal verb, where *þe bus*, 'it behoves thee', is normal. See note to XVII 196.

360. *moste*: read *maste* to rime with *taste*.

371. *Of þis comyng*: the Towneley MS. reading of *Thi commyng* is possible.

378-80: Corrupt. The copy from which the extant MS. was made seems to have been indistinct here. The Towneley MS. has:

*Suffre thou neuer Thi sayntys to se  
The sorow of thaym that won in wo,  
Ay full of fylth, and may not fle,*

which is more intelligible and nearer Psalm xvi. 10:

*Nec dabis sanctum tuum videre corruptionem.*

405. *louyng*: 'praise', cp. IV a 24 (note).

## XVII

**Dialect:** Late Yorkshire.

**Vocabulary:** Northern are *then* 108 (note), and *at* 'to' 235.

**Inflections:**

VERB: pres. ind. 2 sg. *thou spekis* 206.

3 sg. *ligis he* 84; *he settis* 92; (*God*) *knowes* 202.

1 pl. *we swete or swynk* 195.

2 pl. *ye carþ* (in rime) 360.

3 pl. *thay ryn* (in rime) 277, 357; *beside* *has* 345, *renys* 351.

pres. p. *liffand* 73, *bowand* 76, *wirkand* 120 (all in rime); beside *lifyng* 47, 48; *standyng* 416; *taryyng* 497.

strong pp. *rysen* 442; *fon* 'found' 503 is a Northern short form.

PRONOUN 3 PERS.: sg. fem. nom. *she* 186; pl. *they* 27; *thare* 75; *thaym* 31. (MS. *hame* 143 is miswritten for *thame*.)

Sounds: OE. *ā* appears as *ȃ* in rime: *old*: *cold*: *mold* (OE. *mōld*) 60-2, and probably *dold*: *old* 266-70; *sore*: *store*: *therfor*: *more* 91-4; but elsewhere remains *ā*, e.g. *draw* (OE. *drāgan*): *knew* 245-6. The spelling with *o* is the commoner.

See notes on *emong* 400; *grufe* 463.

Spelling: Note the Northern spellings with *i*, *y* following a vowel to indicate length: *moyne* 'moon' 6, *bayle* 'bale' 26, *leyde* = *lede* 48; and conversely *farest* 'fairest' 79, *fath* 'faith' 330.

The maritime associations of the play of *Noah* made it a special favourite with the Trinity House guild of master mariners and pilots at Hull; and some of their records of payments for acting and equipment are preserved, although the text of their play is lost (Chambers, *Mediaeval Stage*, vol. ii, pp. 370-1):

*anno* To the minstrels, 6d.

1485. To Noah and his wife, 1s. 6d.

To Robert Brown playing God, 6d.

To the Ship-child, 1d.

To a shipwright for clinking Noah's ship, one day, 7d.

22 kids for shoring Noah's ship, 2d.

To a man clearing away the snow, 1d.

Straw for Noah and his children, 2d.

Mass, bellman, torches, minstrels, garland &c., 6s.

For mending the ship, 2d.

To Noah for playing, 1s.

To straw and grease for wheels,  $\frac{1}{2}$ d.

To the waits for going about with the ship, 6d.

1494. To Thomas Sawyr playing God, 10d.

To Jenkin Smith playing Noah, 1s.

To Noah's wife, 8d.

The clerk and his children, 1s. 6d.

To the players of Barton, 8d.

For a gallon of wine, 8d.

For three skins for Noah's coat, making it, and a rope to hang the ship in the kirk, 7s.

To dighting and gilding St. John's head, painting two tabernacles, beautifying the boat and over the table, 7s. 2d.

Making Noah's ship, £5. 8s.

Two wrights a day and a half, 1s. 6d.

A halser [i. e. hawser] 4 stone weight, 4s. 8d.

Rigging Noah's ship, 8d.

10. *is*: read *es* for the rime. Cp. note to I 128-9.

42. *and sythen*: MS. *in sythen*. Cp. note to VI 36.

49. *syn*: 3 pl. because *euery liffyng leyde* is equivalent to a plural subject 'all men'.

52. *coueteis*: MS. *couetous*.

56. *alod*: 'wide-spread' (?). Apparently the same as *alod* in a poem ascribed to Rolle (ed. Horstman, vol. i, p. 73, l. 22) where it means 'dispersed'. But see Onions, *Medium Aevum*, i. 206.

57. *Sex hundreth yeris and od*: the *od* thrown in to rime, as Noah was exactly 600 years old according to Genesis vii. 6.

66. *and my fry shal with me fall*: 'and the children (that) I may have' (?).

88. *for syn sake*: 'because of sin'. Until modern times a genitive preceding *sake* usually has no *s*, e.g. *for goodness sake*. The genitive of *sin* historically had no *s* (OE. *synne*), but the omission in a Northern text is due rather to euphony than to survival of an old genitive form. Cp. *for tempest sake* I 177.

108. *then*: 'nor', a rare Northern usage, which is treated as an error here in England and Pollard's text, though it occurs again at l. 535. Conversely *nor* is used dialectally for *than*.

109. *Hym to mekill wyn*: 'to his great happiness'.

137 *take*: 'make', and so in l. 272.

167-71. *knowe*: *awe*. The rime requires *knāwe* or *ȝwe*.

191. 'The worse (because) I see thee.'

196. *what thou thynk*: 'what seems to you best', 'what you like'; *thou thynk for thee thynk*—the verb being properly impersonal; see notes to XVI 338 and VI 192.

200. *Stafford blew*: from the context this line might mean 'you are a scaremonger', for blue is the recognized colour of fear, and it might be supposed that 'Stafford blue' represents a material like 'Lincoln green'. But Mätzner is certainly right in interpreting the line 'you deserve a beating'. *Stafford blew* would then be the livid colour produced by blows. The reference, unless there is a play on *staff*, is obscure.

202. *led*: 'treated'.

211. *sory*: the rime requires *sary*.

220. *Mary*: the later *marry*! = 'by (the Virgin) Mary!' cp.

l. 226. So *Peter*! 367 = 'by St. Peter!'

246. *to know*: 'to confess'.

247-8. *daw to ken*: 'to be recognized as stupid', 'a manifest fool'.

272. *castell*: note the rime with *sayll*: *nayll*: *gayll*, which

may be due to suffix substitution on the analogy of *catail* beside *catel* 'cattle'. For *take* see note to 137.

281. *chambre*: the rime points to a by-form *chamb(o)ur*, but the uninflected form is awkward. Cp. *thre chese chambres* 'three tiers of chambers' 129, where the construction is the same as the obsolete *three pair gloves*.

289-92. Read *lider*, *hider*, *togider*.

292. *must us*: cp. l. 334 and note to VI 192.

298. 'There is other yarn on the reel', i.e. there is other business on hand.

320. *brether sam*: 'brothers both'. Some editors prefer to read *brother Sam* 'brother Shem'.

336 ff. Chaucer refers to the quarrels of Noah and his wife in the *Miller's Tale* (ll. 352 ff.):—

*'Hastou nat herd', quod Nicholas, 'also  
The sorwe of Noe with his felaweshipe  
Er that he myghte brynge his wyf to shipe?  
Hym hadde be levere, I dar wel undertake,  
At thilke tyme, than alle his wetheres blake,  
That she hadde had a shipe herself allone.'*

The tradition is old. In the splendid tenth-century Bodleian MS. Junius 11, which contains the so-called Caedmon poems, a picture of the Ark shows Noah's wife standing at the foot of the gangway, and one of her sons trying to persuade her to come in.

370. *Yei* is defensible; cp. l. 353. *þe* 'the' has been suggested.

383. *Wat Wynk*: an alliterative nick-name like *Nicholl Nedy* in l. 405.

400. *emong*: OE. *gemang*, here rimes as in Modern English with *u* (OE. *iung*: *tunge*: *lungen*), cp. note to VI 109 ff.; but in ll. 244-7 it rimes with *lang*: *fang*: *gang*—all with original *a*.

417. (*floodis*). Some such word is missing in the MS. Cp. ll. 454f. and 426.

461. *How*: MS. *Now*. The correction is due to Professor Child. Initial capitals are peculiarly liable to be miscopied.

463. *gruse*: a Northern and Scottish form of the verb *grow*. The sb. *ro* 'rest' 237 sometimes has a parallel form *rufe*.

525. *stold*: for *stalled* 'fixed'. Note the rime words, which all have alternative forms *behold*: *bald*: *wald*.



## APPENDIX

### THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE IN THE FOURTEENTH CENTURY

§ 1. GENERAL. Gower's work shows that at the end of the century Latin and French still shared with English the place of a literary language. But their hold was precarious.

Latin was steadily losing ground. The Wiclifite translation of the Bible threatened its hitherto unchallenged position as the language of the Church; and the Renaissance had not yet come to give it a new life among secular scholars.

French was still spoken at the court; but in 1387 Trevisa remarks (p. 149) that it was no longer considered an essential part of a gentleman's education: and he records a significant reform—the replacement of French by English as the medium of teaching in schools. After the end of the century Anglo-French, the native development of Norman, was practically confined to legal use, and French of Paris was the accepted standard French.

English gained wherever Latin and French lost ground. But though the work of Chaucer, Gower, and Wiclif foreshadows the coming supremacy of the East Midland, or, more particularly, the London dialect, there was as yet no recognized standard of literary English. The spoken language showed a multiplicity of local varieties, and a writer adopted the particular variety that was most familiar to him. Hence it is almost true to say that every considerable text requires a special grammar.

Confusion is increased by the scribes. Nowadays a book is issued in hundreds or thousands of uniform copies, and within a few months of publication it may be read in any part of the world. In the fourteenth century a book was made known to readers only by the slow and costly multiplication of manuscripts. The copyist might work long after

the date of composition, and he would then be likely to modernize the language, which in its written form was not stable as it is at present: so of Barbour's *Bruce* the oldest extant copies were made nearly a century after Barbour's death. Again, if the dialect of the author were unfamiliar to the copyist, he might substitute familiar words and forms. Defective rimes often bear witness to these substitutions.

Nor have we to reckon only with copyists, who are as a rule careless rather than bold innovators. While books were scarce and many could not read them, professional minstrels and amateur reciters played a great part in the transmission of popular literature; and they, whether from defective memory or from belief in their own talents, treated the exact form and words of their author with scant respect. An extreme instance is given by the MSS. of *Sir Orfeo* at ll. 267-8:

Auchinleck MS.: *His harp, whereon was al his gle,  
He hidde in an holwe tre;*

Harley MS.: *He takeþ his harpe and makeþ hym gle,  
And lyþe al nyȝt vnder a tre;*

Ashmole MS.: *In a tre þat was holow  
þer was hys haule euyñ and morow.*

If the Ashmole MS. alone had survived we should have no hint of the degree of corruption.

And so, before the extant MSS. recorded the text, copyists and reciters may have added change to change, jumbling the speech of different men, generations, and places, and producing those 'mixed' texts which are the will-o'-the-wisps of language study.

Faced with these perplexities, beginners might well echo the words of Langland's pilgrims in search of Truth:

*This were a wikked way, but whoso hadde a gyde  
That wolde folwen vs eche a fote.*

There is no such complete guide, for the first parts of Morsbach's *Mittelenglische Grammatik*, Halle 1896, Richard Jordan's *Handbuch der Mittelenglischen Grammatik*, Heidelberg 1925 and Luick's *Historische Grammatik der englischen Sprache*, Leipzig 1914-, remain unfinished. Happily two distinguished scholars—Dr. Henry Bradley in *The Making of English* and his chapter in *The Cambridge*

*History of English Literature*, vol. i, Dr. O. Jespersen in *Growth and Structure of the English Language*—have given brief surveys of the whole early period which are at once elementary and authoritative. But for the details the student must rely on a mass of dissertations and articles of very unequal quality, supplemented by introductions to single texts, and, above all, by his own first-hand observations made on the texts themselves.

Some preliminary considerations will be helpful, though perhaps not altogether reassuring :

(i) A great part of the evidence necessary to a thorough knowledge of spoken Middle English has not come down to us, a considerable part remains unprinted, and the printed materials are so extensive and scattered that it is easy to overlook points of detail. For instance, it might be assumed from rimes in *Gawayne, Pearl*, and the Shropshire poet Myrc, that the falling together of OE. *-ang-*, *-ung-*, which is witnessed in NE. *among* (OE. *gemang*), *-monger* (OE. *mangere*), was specifically West Midland, if the occurrence of examples in Yorkshire (xvii 397-400) escaped notice. It follows that, unless a word or form is so common as to make the risk of error negligible, positive evidence—the certainty that it occurs in a given period or district—is immeasurably more important than negative evidence—the belief that it never did occur, or even the certainty that it is not recorded, in a period or district. For the same reason, the statement that a word or form is found 'in the early fourteenth century' or 'in Kent' should always be understood positively, and should not be taken to imply that it is unknown 'in the thirteenth century' or 'in Essex', as to which evidence may or may not exist.

(ii) It is necessary to clear the mind of the impression, derived from stereotyped written languages, that homogeneity and stability are natural states. Middle English texts represent a spoken language of many local varieties, all developing rapidly. So every linguistic fact should be thought of in terms of time, place, and circumstance, not because absolute precision in these points is attainable, but because the attempt to attain it helps to distinguish accurate knowledge from conclusions which are not free from doubt.

If the word or form under investigation can be proved to

belong to the author's original composition, exactness is often possible. In the present book, we know nearly enough the date of composition of extracts I, III, VIII, x, XI *a*, XII, XIII, XIV; the place of composition of I, III, x, XI *a*, XII, XIII, XVI, XVII (see map).

But if, as commonly happens, a form cannot be proved to have stood in the original, endless difficulties arise. It will be necessary first to determine the date of the MS. copy. This is exactly known for *The Bruce*, and there are few Middle English MSS. which the palaeographer cannot date absolutely within a half-century, and probably within a generation. The place where the MS. copy was written is known nearly enough for IV *b*, *c*, XII, XIV *e*, XV *b*, *c* (possibly Leominster), XVI, XVII; and ME. studies have still much to gain from a thorough inquiry into the provenance of MSS. Yet, when the extant copy is placed and dated, it remains to ask to what extent this MS. reproduces some lost intermediary of different date and provenance; how many such intermediaries there were between the author's original and our MS.; what each has contributed to the form of the surviving copy—questions usually unanswerable, the consideration of which will show the exceptional linguistic value of the *Ayenbyte*, where we have the author's own transcript exactly dated and localized, so that every word and form is good evidence.

Failing such ideal conditions, it becomes necessary to limit doubt by segregating for special investigation the elements that belong to the original composition. Hence the importance of rimes, alliteration, and rhythm, which a copyist or reciter is least likely to alter without leaving a trace of his activities.

§ 2. DIALECTS. At present any marked variation from the practice of educated English speakers might, if it were common to a considerable number of persons, be described as dialectal. But as there was no such recognized standard in the fourteenth century, it is most convenient to consider as dialectal any linguistic feature which had a currency in some English-speaking districts but not in all. For example, *bat* as a relative is found everywhere in the fourteenth century and is not dialectal; *þir* 'these' is recorded only in Northern districts, and so is dialectal. Again, *þ* represents OE. *ð* in

the South and Midlands, while the North retains  $\bar{a}$  (§ 7 b i): since neither  $\bar{o}$  nor  $\bar{a}$  is general, both may be called dialectal.

If a few sporadic developments be excluded because they may turn up anywhere at any time, then, provided sufficient evidence were available,<sup>1</sup> it would be possible to mark the boundaries within which any given dialectal feature occurs at a particular period: we could draw the line south of which *þire* 'these' is not found, or the line bounding the district in which the Norse borrowing *kirke* occurs; just as French investigators in *L'Atlas linguistique de la France* have shown the distribution of single words and forms in the modern French dialects.

Of more general importance is the fixing of boundaries for sound changes or inflexions that affect a large number of words, a task to which interesting contributions have been made in recent years on the evidence of place-names (see especially A. Brandl, *Zur Geographie der altenglischen Dialekte*, Berlin 1915, which supplements the work of Pogatscher on the compounds of *street* and of Wyld on the M.E. developments of OE.  $y$ ). For example, on the evidence available, which does not permit of more than rough indications, OE.  $\bar{a}$  remains  $\bar{a}$ , and does not develop to  $\bar{o}$ , north of a line drawn west from the Humber (§ 7 b i); *-and(e)* occurs in the ending of the pres. p. as far south as a line starting west from the Wash (§ 13 ii); farther south again, a line between Norwich

<sup>1</sup> Sufficient evidence is not available. If in the year 1340 at every religious house in the kingdom a native of the district had followed the example of Michael of Northgate, and if all their autograph copies had survived, we should have a very good knowledge of Middle English at that time. If the process had been repeated about every ten years the precision of our knowledge would be greatly increased. For the area in which any feature is found is not necessarily constant: we know that in the pres. p. the province of *-ing* was extending throughout the fourteenth century; that the inflexion *-es* in 3 sg. pres. ind. was a Northern and North-Midland feature in the fourteenth century, but had become general in London by Shakespeare's time. And though less is known about the spread of sound changes as distinct from analogical substitutions, it cannot be assumed that their final boundaries were reached and fixed in a moment. There is reason to regret the handicap that has been imposed on M.E. studies by the old practice of writing in Latin or French the documents and records which would otherwise supply the exactly dated and localized specimens of English that are most necessary to progress.

and Birmingham gives the northern limit for *Stratton* forms as against *Stretton* (§ 8 iv, note).<sup>1</sup> The direction of all these lines is roughly east and west, yet no two coincide. But if the developments of OE. *y* (§ 7 b ii) are mapped out, *u* appears below a line drawn athwart from Liverpool to London, and normal *e* east of a line drawn north and south from the western border of Kent. Almost every important feature has thus its own limits, and the limits of one may cross the limits of another.

What then is a ME. dialect? The accepted classification is

Southern	{	South-Western	= OE. West Saxon
		South-Eastern	= OE. Kentish
Midland	{	East Midland	} = OE. Mercian
		West Midland	
Northern			= OE. Northumbrian

with the Thames as boundary between Southern and Midland, and the Humber between Midland and Northern. And yet of five actual limiting lines taken at random, only the first coincides approximately with the line of Humber or Thames.

Still the classification rests on a practical truth. Although each dialectal feature has its own boundaries, these are not set by pure chance. Their position is to some extent governed by old tribal and political divisions, by the influence of large towns which served as commercial and administrative centres, and by relative ease of communication. Consequently, linguistic features are roughly grouped, and it is *a priori* likely that London and Oxford would have more features in common than would London and York, or Oxford and Hull; and similarly it is likely that for a majority of phenomena York and Hull would stand together against London and Oxford. Such a grouping was recognized in

<sup>1</sup> The evidence of place-names does not agree entirely with the evidence of texts. *Havelok*, which is localized with reasonable certainty in North Lincolnshire, has (*a*)*dradd* in rimes that appear to be original, and these indicate a North-Eastern extension of the area in which OE. *strāit*, *drædan* appear for normal Anglian *strēt*, *drēa(n)*. This evidence, supported by rimes in Robert of Brunne, is too early to be disposed of by the explanation of borrowing from other dialects, nor is the testimony of place-names so complete and unequivocal as to justify an exclusive reliance upon it.

the fourteenth century. Higden and his authorities distinguish Northern and Southern speech (xiii b); in the Towneley *Second Shepherds' Play*, ll. 201 ff., when Mak pretends to be a yeoman of the king, he adopts the appropriate accent, and is promptly told to 'take outt that Sothren tothe'. In the *Reeves Tale* Chaucer makes the clerks speak their own Northern dialect, so we may be sure that he thought of it as a unity.

But had Chaucer been asked exactly where this dialect was spoken, he would probably have replied, *Fer in the North,—I kan nat telle where*. A dialect has really no precise boundaries; its borders are nebulous; and throughout this book 'Southern', 'Northern', &c., are used vaguely, and not with any sharply defined limits in mind. The terms may, however, be applied to precise areas, so long as the boundaries of single dialect features are not violently made to conform. It is quite accurate to say that *-and(e)* is the normal ending of the pres. p. north of the Humber, and that *u* for OE. *y* is found south of the Thames and west of London, provided it is not implied that the one should not be found south of the Humber, or the other north of the Thames. Both in fact occur in *Gawayne* (Cheshire or Lancashire); and in general the language of the Midlands was characterized by the overlapping of features which distinguish the North from the South.

From what has been said it should be plain that the localization of a piece of Middle English on the evidence of language alone calls for an investigation of scope and delicacy. Where the facts are so complex the mechanical application of rules of thumb may give quick and specious results, but must in the end deaden the spirit of inquiry, which is the best gift a student can bring to the subject.

§ 3. VOCABULARY. The readiness of English speakers to adopt words from foreign languages becomes marked in fourteenth-century writings. But the classical element which is so pronounced in modern literary English is still unimportant. There are few direct borrowings from Latin, and these, like *obit* xvi 269, are for the most part taken from the technical language of the Church. The chief sources of foreign words are Norse and French.

(a) **Norse.** Although many Norse words first appear in English in late texts, they must have come into the spoken language before the end of the eleventh century, because the Scandinavian settlements ceased after the Norman Conquest. The invaders spoke a dialect near enough to OE. to be intelligible to the Angles; and they had little to teach of literature or civilization. Hence the borrowings from Norse are all popular; they appear chiefly in the Midlands and North, where the invaders settled; and they witness the intimate fusion of two kindred languages. From Norse we get such common words as *anger*, *both*, *call*, *egg*, *hil*, *husband*, *ill*, *law*, *loose*, *low*, *meek*, *take*, *till* (prep.), *want*, *weak*, *wing*, *wrong*, and even the plural forms of the 3rd personal pronoun (§ 12).

It is not always easy to distinguish Norse from native words, because the two languages were so similar during the period of borrowing, and Norse words were adopted early enough to be affected by all ME. sound changes. But there were some dialectal differences between ON. and OE. in the ninth and tenth centuries, and these afford the best criteria of borrowing. For instance in ME. we have *þou3*, *þof* (ON. *þōh* for \**þauh*) beside *þei(h)* (OE. *þē(a)h*) II 433; *ay* (ON. *ei*) 'ever' XVI 293 beside *oo* (OE. *ā*) XV b 7; *waik* (ON. *veik-r*) VIII b 23, where OE. *wāc* would yield *wōk*; the forms *wōre* XVI 17 (note) and *wāpin* XIV b 15 are from ON. *várum*, *vápn*, whereas *wēre(n)* and *wēppen* V 154 represent OE. (Anglian) *wēron*, *wēpn*. So we have the pairs *awe* (ON. *agi*) I 83 and *ay* (OE. *ege*) II 571; *neuen* (ON. *nefna*) 'to name' XVII 12 and *nem(p)ne* (OE. *nemnan*) II 600; *rot* (ON. *rót*) II 256 and *wort* (OE. *wyrt*) VIII a 303; *sterne*, *starre* (ON. *stjarna*) XVII 8, 423 and native *sterre*, *starre* (OE. *steorra*); *systyr* (ON. *systir*) I 112 and *soster* (OE. *sweostor*) XV g 10; *werre*, *warre* (ON. *verri*) XVI 154 (note), 334 and native *werse*, *wars* (OE. *wyrsa*) XVI 200, XVII 191; *wylle* (ON. *vill-r*) V 16 and native *wylde* (OE. *wilde*) XV b 19.

Note that in Norse borrowings the consonants *g*, *k* remain stops where they are palatalized in English words: *garn* XVII 298, *giue*, *gele* (ON. *garn*, *gefa*, *gela*) beside *zarn*, *ziue*, *for-zele* (OE. *gearn*, *giefan*, *for-gielan*); *kirke* (ON. *kirkja*) beside *chirche* (OE. *cirice*). Similarly OE. initial *sc-* regularly



becomes ME. *sh-*, so that most words beginning with *sk-*, like *sky*, *skin*, *skyfte* v 209 (English *shift*), *skirte* (English *shirt*), are Norse; see the alliterating words in v 99.

There is an excellent monograph by E. Björkman: *Scandinavian Loan-Words in Middle English*, 1900.

(b) **French.** Most early borrowings from French were again due to invasion and settlement. But the conditions of contact were very different. Some were unfavourable to borrowing: the Normans, who were relatively few, were dispersed throughout the country, and not, like the Scandinavians, massed in colonies; and their language had little in common with English. So the number of French words in English texts is small before the late thirteenth and the fourteenth centuries. Other conditions made borrowing inevitable: the French speakers were the governing class; they gradually introduced a new system of administration and new standards of culture; and they had an important literature to which English writers turned for their subject-matter and their models of form. Fourteenth-century translators adopt words from their French originals so freely (see note at p. 234, foot), that written Middle English must give a rather exaggerated impression of the extent of French influence on the spoken language. But a few examples will show how many common words are early borrowings from French: nouns like *country*, *face*, *place*, *river*, *courtesy*, *honour*, *joy*, *justice*, *mercy*, *pity*, *reason*, *religion*, *war*; adjectives like *close*, *large*, *poor*; and verbs *cry*, *pay*, *please*, *save*, *serve*, *use*.

Anglo-French was never completely homogeneous, and it was constantly supplemented as a result of direct political, commercial, and literary relations with France. Hence words were sometimes adopted into ME. in more than one French dialectal form. For instance, Late Latin *ca-* became *cha-* in most French dialects, but remained *ca-* in the North of France: hence ME. *catch* and (*pur*)*chase*, *catel* and *chatel*, *kanel* 'neck' v 230 and *chanel* 'channel' xiii a 57. So Northern French preserves initial *w-*, for which other French dialects substitute *g(u)*: hence *Wowayn* v 121 beside *Gawayn* v 4, &c. (see note to v 121). Again, in Anglo-French, *a* before nasal + consonant alternates with *au*:—*dance*: *daunce*; *chance*: *chaunce*; *change*: *chaunge*; *chambre* xvii 281: *chaum-*

*ber* 11 100. English still has the verbs *launch* and *lance*, which are ultimately identical.

As borrowing extended over several centuries, the ME. form sometimes depends on the date of adoption. Thus Latin *fidem* becomes early French *feid*, later *fei*, and later still *foi*. ME. has both *feiß* and *foy*, and by Spenser's time *foy* appears.

The best study of the French element in ME. is still that of D. Behrens: *Beiträge zur Geschichte der französischen Sprache in England*, 1886. A valuable supplement, dealing chiefly with Anglo-French as the language of the law, is the chapter by F. W. Maitland in *The Cambridge History of English Literature*, vol. i.

§ 4. HANDWRITING. In the ME. period two varieties of script were in use, both developed from the Caroline minuscule which has proved to be the most permanent contribution of the schools of Charlemagne. The one, cursive and flourished, is common in charters, records, and memoranda; see C. H. Jenkinson and C. Johnson, *Court Hand*, 2 vols., Oxford 1915. The other, in which the letters are separately written, with few flourishes or adaptations of form in combination, is the 'book hand', so called because it is regularly used for literary texts. Between the extreme types there are many gradations; and fifteenth-century copies, such as the Cambridge MS. of Barbour's *Bruce*, show an increasing use of cursive forms, which facilitate rapid writing.

The shapes of letters were not always so distinct as they are in print, so that copyists of the time, and even modern editors, are liable to mistake one letter for another. Each hand has its own weaknesses, but the letters most commonly misread are:—

*e*:*o* e.g. *Beuo* for *Bouo* 1 59; *wroche* for *wreche* 11 333; *teches* 1v b 60, where *toches* (foot-note) is probably right; *pesible* (MS. *possible*) xi b 67.

*u*:*n* (practically indistinguishable) e.g. *menys* (MS. *mouys*) xvi 301; *skayned* (edd. *skayued*) v 99; *ryuez* or *rynez* v 222 (note). This is only a special case of the confusion of letters and combinations formed by repetition of the downstroke, e.g. *u*, *n*, *m*, and *i* (which is not always distinguished by a stroke above). Hence *dim* 11 285 where modern editors have *dun*, although *i* has the distinguishing stroke.

*y*:*þ* e.g. *ye* (MS. *þe*) xiv d 11; see note to xv a 12. Confusion is increased by occasional transference to *þ* of the dot which historically may stand over *y*. *ȝ* for *þ* initially, as in xvi 170, is more often due to confusion of the letters *þ*:*y* and subsequent preference of *ȝ* for *y* in spelling (§ 5 i) than to direct confusion of *þ*:*ȝ*, which are not usually very similar in late Middle English script.

*b*:*h* e.g. *dop* (MS. *doh*) xv b 22; and notes to xii b 116, xvi 62.

*b*:*v* e.g. *vousour* (edd. *bonsour*) ii 363.

*c*:*t* e.g. *cunesmen* (edd. *tunesmen*) xv g 6 (note); *top* (edd. *cop*) ibid. 16; see note to xiii a 7.

*f*:*s* (= *s*) e.g. *slang* (variant *flang*) x 53.

*l*:*f* (= *s*) e.g. *al* (edd. *as*) ii 108.

*l*:*k* e.g. *kybeȝ* (MS. *lyþeȝ*) vi 9.

§ 5. SPECIAL LETTERS. Two letters now obsolete are common in fourteenth-century MSS.: *þ* and *ȝ*.

*þ*: 'thorn', is a rune, and stands for the voiced and voiceless sounds now represented by *th* in *this*, *thin*. The gradual displacement of *þ* by *th*, which had quite a different sound in classical Latin (note to viii a 23), may be traced in the MSS. printed (except x, xii). *þ* remained longest in the initial position, but by the end of the fifteenth century was used chiefly in compendia like *þe* 'the', *þat* 'that'.

*ȝ*: called 'ȝoȝ' or 'yogh', derives from *g*, the OE. script form of the letter *g*. It was retained in ME. after the Caroline form *g* had become established in vernacular texts, to represent a group of spirant sounds:

(i) The initial spirant in *ȝoked* ix 253 (OE. *geoc-*), *ȝere* i 151 (OE. *gēar*), where the sound was approximately the same as in our *yoke*, *year*. Except in texts specially influenced by the tradition of French spelling, *y* (which is ambiguous owing to its common use as a vowel = *i*) is less frequent than *ȝ* initially. Medially the palatal spirant is represented either by *ȝ* or *y*: *eȝe* (OE. *ē(a)ȝ-*) xv c 14 beside *eyen* viii a 168; *iseȝe* (OE. *gesegen*) xiv c 88 beside *iseye* xiv c 16. The medial guttural spirant more commonly develops to *w* in the fourteenth century: *awe* (ON. *agi*) i 83, *felaue* (ON. *fēlagi*) xiv d 7, *halwes* (OE. *halg-*), beside *aȝ-* v 267, *felaȝ-* v 83, *halȝ-* v 54.

(ii) The medial or final spirant, guttural or palatal, which

is lost in standard English, but still spelt in *nought*, *through*, *night*, *high*: ME. *noȝt*, *þurȝ*, *nyȝt*, *hyȝ*: OE. *noht*, *þurh*, *niht*, *hēh*. The ME. sound was probably like that in German *ich*, *ach*. The older spelling with *h* is occasionally found; more often *ch* as in *mycht* x 17; but the French spelling *gh* gains ground throughout the century. Abnormal are *write* for *wrightle* xvi 230, *wyles*, *nyles* for *wyȝles*, *nyȝles* xv i 19 f.

(iii) As these sounds weakened in late Southern ME., *ȝ* was sometimes used without phonetic value, or at the most to reinforce a long *i*: e.g. *Engliȝsch* xi a 28, 37, &c.; *kyȝn* 'kine' ix 256.

N.B.—Entirely distinct in origin and sound value, but identical in script form, is *ȝ*, the minuscule form of *z*, in *Aȝone* (= *Azone*) i 105, *clȝffeȝ* 'cliffs' v 10, &c. It would probably be better to print *z* in such words.

§ 6. SPELLING. Modern English spelling, which tolerates almost any inconsistency in the representation of sounds provided the same word is always spelt in the approved way, is the creation of printers, schools, and dictionaries. A Middle English writer was bound by no such arbitrary rules. Michael of Northgate, whose autograph MS. survives, writes *diaknen* iii 5 and *dyacne* 9; *vyf* 22, *uif* 23, *vif* 37; *bouȝond* 30 and *þousend* 34. Yet his spelling is not irrational. The comparative regularity of his own speech, which he reproduced directly, had a normalizing influence; and by natural habit he more often than not solved the same problem of representation in the same way. Scribes, too, like printers in later times, found a measure of consistency convenient, and the spelling of some transcripts, e.g. i and x, is very regular. If at first ME. spelling appears lawless to a modern reader, it is because of the variety of dialects represented in literature, the widely differing dates of the MSS. printed, and the tendency of copyists to mix their own spellings with those of their original.

The following points must be kept in mind:

(i) *i*: *y* as vowels are interchangeable. In some MSS. (for instance, i) *y* is used almost exclusively; in others (viii a) it is preferred for distinctness in the neighbourhood of *u*, *n*, *m*, so that the scribe writes *hym*, but *his*.

(ii) *ie* is found in later texts for long close  $\bar{e}$ : *chiere* XII a 120, *fielende* XII a 157, *diemed* XII b 216.

(iii) *ui* (*uy*), in the South-West and West Midlands, stands for  $\bar{u}$  (sounded as in French *amuser*): *puit* XIV c 12; *vnkuynde* XIV c 103. The corresponding short  $\bar{u}$  is spelt *u*: *hull* 'hill', &c.

(iv) Quite distinct is the late Northern addition of *i* (*y*), to indicate the long vowels  $\bar{a}$ ,  $\bar{e}$ ,  $\bar{o}$ : *neid* x 18, *noyne* 'noon' x 67.

(v) *ou* (*ow*) is the regular spelling of long  $\bar{u}$  (sounded as in *too*): *hous*, *now*, *founden*, &c.

(vi) *o* is the regular spelling for short *u* (sounded as in *put*) in the neighbourhood of *u*, *m*, *n*, because if *u* is written in combination with these letters an indistinct series of down-strokes results. Hence *loue* but *luf*, *come* infin., *some* 'son', *dronken* 'drunk'. In *Ayenbyte* *o* for  $\bar{u}$  is general, e.g. *grochinge* III 10. In other texts it is common in *bote* 'but'.

(vii) *u* : *v* are not distinguished as consonant and vowel. *v* is preferred in initial position, *u* medially or finally: *valay* 'valley', *vnder* 'under', *vuel* (= *üvel*) 'evil', *loue* 'love'. (Note that in XII the MS. distinction of *v* and *u* is not reproduced.)

(viii) So *i*, and its longer form *j*, are not distinguished as vowel and consonant. In this book *i* is printed throughout, and so stands initially for the sound of our *j* in *ioy*, *iuggement*, &c.

(ix) *c* : *k* for the sounds in *kit*, *col*, are often interchangeable; but *k* is preferred before palatal vowels *e*, *i* (*y*); and *c* before *o*, *u*. See the alliterating words in v 52, 107, 128, 153, 272, 283.

(x) *c* : *s* alternate for voiceless *s*, especially in French words: *sile* 'city' VII 66, *resayue* 'receive' v 8, *vyse* 'vice' v 307, *falce* v 314; but also in *race* (ON. *rás*) v 8 beside *rase* XVII 429.

(xi) *s* : *z* (*ȝ*) are both used for voiced *s*, the former predominating: *kyssedes* beside *razlez* v 283; *bouzond* III 30 beside *bousend* III 34. But *ȝ* occasionally appears for voiceless *s*: (*az*)-*lez* 'awe-less' v 267, *forȝ* 'force' 'waterfall' v 105.

(xii) *sh* : *sch* : *ss* are all found for modern *sh*, OE. *sc*: *shuld* I 50; *schert* II 230; *sserte* III 40; but *sal* 'shall', *suld*

'should' in Northern texts represent the actual Northern pronunciation in weakly stressed words.

(xiii) *v* : *w* : In late Northern MSS. *v* is often found for initial *w* : *vithall* x 9, *Valler* x 36. The interchange is less common in medial positions : *in sundir* x 106.

(xiv) *wh* : *qu(h)* : *w* : —*wh* is a spelling for *hw*-. In the South the aspiration is weakened or lost, and *w* is commonly written, e.g. viii *b*. In the North the aspiration is strong, and the sound is spelt *qu(h)*-, e.g. *quhelis* 'wheels' x 17. Both *qu*- and *wh*- are found in *Gawayne*. The development in later dialects is against the assumption that *hw*- became *kw*- in pronunciation.

See also § 5.

The whole system of ME. spelling was modelled on French, and some of the general features noted above (e.g. ii, iii, v, vi, x) are essentially French. But, particularly in early MSS., there are a number of exceptional imitations. Sometimes the spelling represents a French scribe's attempt at English pronunciation : *foret* in xv *g* 18 stands for *forþ*, where *-rþ* with strongly trilled *r* was difficult to a foreigner ; and occasionally such distortions are found as *knith*, *knit*, and even *kint* (*Layamon*, *Havelok*) for *knizt*, which had two awkward consonant groups. More commonly the copyist, accustomed to write both French and English, chose a French representation for an English sound. So *st* for *ht* appears regularly in xv *e* : *seuenist* 'sennight', and xv *g* : *iboust* 'bought', &c. The explanation is that in French words like *beste* 'bête', *gist* 'gît', *s* became only a breathing before it disappeared ; and *h* in ME. *ht* weakened to a similar sound, as is shown by the rimes with *Kryste* 'Christ' in vi 98-107. Hence the French spelling *st* is occasionally substituted for English *ht*. Again, in borrowings from French, *an* + consonant alternates with *aun* : *dance* or *daunce* ; *change* or *chaunge* (p. 273) ; and by analogy we have *Irlande* or *Irlaunde* in xv *d*. Another exceptional French usage, *-ts* for final voiceless *-s*, is explained at p. 219, top.

§ 7. SOUND CHANGES. (a) **Vowel Quantity.** No fourteenth-century writer followed the early example of Orm. Marks of quantity are not used in fourteenth-century texts ; doubling of long vowels is not an established rule ; and

there are no strictly quantitative metres, or treatises on pronunciation. Consequently it is not easy to determine how far the quantity of the vowels in any given text has been affected by the very considerable changes that occurred in the late OE. and ME. periods.

Of these the chief are:

(i) In unstressed syllables original long vowels tend to become short. Hence *ūs* (OE. *ūs*), and *bōte* (OE. *būtan*) 'but', which are usually unstressed.

(ii) All long vowels are shortened in stressed close syllables (i.e., *usually*, when they are followed by two consonants): e.g. *kēpen*, pa. t. *kēpte*, pp. *kēpt*; *hūsband* beside *hous*; *wīmmen* (from *wīf-men*) beside *wīf*.

*Exception.* Before the groups *-ld*, *-nd*, *-rd*, *-rð*, *-mb*, a short vowel is lengthened in OE. unless a third consonant immediately follows. Hence, before any of these combinations, length may be retained in ME.: e.g. *fēnd* 'fiend', *bīnden*, *chīld*; but *children*.

(iii) Short vowels *ǣ*, *ĕ*, *ø* are lengthened in stressed open syllables (i.e., *usually*, when they are followed by a single consonant with a following vowel): *tǣke* > *tāke*; *mēte* > *mēte* 'meat'; *brøken* > *brōken*. To what extent *ĭ* and *ū* were subject to the same lengthening in Northern districts is still disputed. Normally they remain short in South and S. Midlands, e.g. *drīuen* pp.; *lōuen* = *lūven* 'to love'.

There are many minor rules and many exceptions due to analogy; but roughly it may be taken that ME. vowels are:

*short* when unstressed;

*short* before two consonants, except *-ld*, *-nd*, *-rd*, *-rð*, *-mb*;

*long* (except *ī(y)*, *u*) before a single medial consonant;

otherwise of the quantity shown in the Glossary for the OE. or ON. etymon.

(b) **Vowel Quality.** The ME. sound-changes are so many and so obscure that it will be possible to deal only with a few that contribute most to the diversity of dialects, and it happens that the particular changes noticed all took effect before the fourteenth century.

(i) OE. and ON. *ā* develop to long open *ǣ* (sounded as in *broad*), first in the South and S. Midlands, later in the N. Midlands. In the North *ā* (sounded approximately as

in *father*) remains: e.g. *bane* 'bone' iv a 54, *balde* 'bold' iv a 51. The boundary seems to have been a line drawn west from the Humber, and this approximates to the dividing line in the modern dialects. There are of course instances of  $\bar{p}$  to the north and of  $\bar{a}$  to the south of the Humber, since border speakers would be familiar with both  $\bar{a}$  and  $\bar{p}$ , or would have intermediate pronunciations; and poets might use convenient rimes from neighbouring dialects.

(ii) OE.  $\check{y}$  (deriving from Germanic  $\check{u}$  followed by  $i$ ) appears normally in E. Midlands and the North as  $\check{i}$  ( $\check{y}$ ): e.g. *kȳn*, *hill* (OE. *cȳ*, *hyll*). In the South-East, particularly Kent, it appears as  $\check{e}$ : *kēn*, *hell*. In the South-West, and in W. Midlands, it commonly appears as *u*, *ui* (*uy*), with the sound of short or long  $\check{u}$ . London was apparently at a meeting point of the *u*, *i*, and *e* boundaries, because all the forms appear in fourteenth-century London texts, though  $\check{u}$  and  $\check{e}$  gradually give place to  $\check{i}$ . The extension of  $\check{u}$  forms to the North-West is shown by *Gawayne*, and a line drawn from London to Liverpool would give a rough idea of the boundary. But within this area unrounding of  $\check{u}$  to  $\check{i}$  seems to have been progressive during the century. N.B.—It is dangerous to jump to conclusions from isolated examples. Before *r* + consonant *e* is sometimes found in all dialects, e.g. *schert* II 230. *Church*, spelt with *u*, *i*, or *e*, had by etymology OE. *i*, not *y*. And in Northern texts there are a number of *e*-spellings in open syllables, both for OE. *y* and *i*.

(c) Consonants:

(i)  $f > v$  (initial): this change, which dates back to OE. times, is carried through in *Ayenbyte*: e.g. *uele uayre uorbisnen* = Midland '*fele fayre forbisnes*'. In some degree it extended over the whole of the South.

(ii)  $s > z$  (initial), parallel to the change of *f* to *v*, is regularly represented in spelling in the *Ayenbyte*: *zome* 'some', &c. Otherwise *z* is rare in spelling, but the voiced initial sound probably extended to most of the Southern districts where it survives in modern dialect.

§ 8. PRONUNCIATION. One of the best ways of studying ME. pronunciation is to learn by heart a few lines of verse in a consistent dialect, and to correct their repetition as more



precise knowledge is gained. The spelling can be relied on as very roughly phonetic if the exceptional usages noted in § 6 are kept in mind. Supplementary and controlling information is provided by the study of rimes, of alliteration, and of the history of English and French sounds.

**Consonants.** Where a consonant is clearly pronounced in Modern English, its value is nearly enough the same for ME. But modern spelling preserves many consonants that have been lost in speech, and so is rather a hindrance than a help to the beginner in ME. For instance, the initial sounds in ME. *knizt* and *nizt* were not the same, for *knizt* alliterates always with *k-* (v 43, 107) and *nizt* with *n-* (vii 149); and initial *wr-* in *wringe*, *wrizle* is distinct from initial *r-* in *ring*, *rizt* (cp. alliteration in viii a 168, v 136). Nor can *wrizle* rime with *write* in a careful fourteenth-century poem. In words like *lerne*, *doghter*, *r* was pronounced with some degree of trilling. And although there are signs of confusion in late MSS. (iv a, xvi, xvii), double consonants were generally distinguished from single: *sonne* 'sun' was pronounced *sūn-ne*, and so differed from *sone* 'son', which was pronounced *sū-ne* (§ 6 vi).

**Vowels.** Short vowels *ă*, *ĕ*, *ĭ*, *ō*, *ŭ* (§ 6 vi) were pronounced respectively as in French *patte*, English *pet*, *pit*, *pot*, *put*. Final unstressed *-e* was generally syllabic, with a sound something like the final sound in *China* (§ 9).

The long vowels *ā*, *ī*, *ū* (§ 6 v) were pronounced approximately as in *father*, *machine*, *crude*. But *ē* and *ō* present special difficulties, because the spelling failed to make the broad distinction between open *ē* and close *ē*, open *ō* and close *ō*—a distinction which, though relative only (depending on the greater or less opening of the mouth passage), is proved to have been considerable by ME. rimes, and by the earlier and subsequent history of the long sounds represented in ME. by *e*, *o*.

(i) Open *ē* (as in *broad*) derives:

- (a) from OE. *ā*, according to § 7 b i: OE. *brād*, *bāt*, *bāld* > ME. *brȳd*, *bȳt*, *bȳld* > NE. *broad*, *boat*, *bold*.

The characteristic modern spelling is thus *oa*.

- (b) from OE. *ō* in open syllables according to § 7 a iii: OE. *brācen* > ME. *brōke(n)* > NE. *broken*.

NOTE.—In many texts the rimes indicate a distinction in pronunciation between  $\bar{e}$  derived from OE.  $\bar{a}$  and  $\bar{e}$  derived from OE.  $\bar{e}$ , and the distinction is still made in NW. Midland dialects.

- (ii) Close  $\bar{e}$  (pronounced rather as in French *beau* than as in standard English *so* which has developed a diphthong *ou*), derives from OE.  $\bar{o}$ : OE. *gōs, dōm, gōld* > ME. *gōs, dōm, gōld* > NE. *goose, doom, gold*. The characteristic modern spelling is *oo*.

NOTE.—(1) After consonant + *w*,  $\bar{e}$  often develops in ME. to  $\bar{e}$ : OE. (*al*)*swā, twā* > ME. (*al*)*sē, twē* > later (*al*)*sē, twē*.

(2) In Scotland and the North  $\bar{e}$  becomes regularly a sound (perhaps  $\bar{u}$ ) spelt *u*: *gōd* > *gud, blōd* > *blud, &c.*

Whereas the distribution of  $\bar{e}$  and  $\bar{e}$  is practically the same for all ME. dialects, the distinction of open  $\bar{e}$  and close  $\bar{e}$  is not so regular, chiefly because the sounds from which they derive were not uniform in OE. dialects. For simplicity, attention will be confined to the London dialect, as the forerunner of modern Standard English.

- (iii) South-East Midland open  $\bar{e}$  (pronounced as in *there*) derives:

- (a) from OE. (Anglian)  $\bar{æ}$ : Anglian *dǣl* > SE. Midl. *dē̄l* > NE. *deal*;
- (b) from OE.  $\bar{ea}$ : OE. *bēatan* > ME. *bēte(n)* > NE. *beat*;
- (c) from OE.  $\bar{e}$  in open syllables according to § 7 a iii: OE. *mēte* > ME. *mēte* > NE. *meat*.

The characteristic modern spelling is *ea*.

- (iv) South-East Midland close  $\bar{e}$  (pronounced as in French *été*) derives:

- (a) from OE. (Anglian)  $\bar{e}$  of various origins: Anglian *hēr, mēta(n), (ge)lēfa(n)* > SE. Midl. *hēre, mēte(n), lēue(n)* > NE. *here, meet, (be)lieve*.
- (b) from OE.  $\bar{eo}$ : OE. *dēop, þēof* > ME. *dēp, bēf (bief)* > NE. *deep, thief*.

The characteristic modern spellings are *ee*, and *ie* which already in ME. often distinguishes the close sound (§ 6 ii).

NOTE.—The distinction made above does not apply in South-Eastern (Kentish), because this dialect has ME. *ea, ia, ya* for OE.  $\bar{ea}$  (iii b), and OE.  $\bar{e}$  for Anglian  $\bar{æ}$  (iii a). Nor does it hold for South-Western, because the West Saxon

dialect of OE. had *geliefan* for Anglian *gelēfa(n)* (iv a). West Saxon also had *stræ̃l*, *-dræ̃dan*, where normal Anglian had *strēt*, *-drēda(n)*, but the distribution of the place-names *Stratton* beside *Stretton*, and of the pa. t. and pp. *dradd(e)* beside *dredd(e)* (p. 270 and n.), shows that the *æ̃* forms were common in the extreme South and the East of the Anglian area; so that in fourteenth-century London both *ē̃* and *ē̄* might occur in such words, as against regular West Midland and Northern *ē̄*.

In NE. Midland and Northern texts some *ē̄* sounds which we should expect to be distinguished as open and close rime together, especially before dental consonants, e. g. *ȝēde* (OE. *ēode*): *lēde* (Anglian *lēda(n)*) I 152-3.

§ 9. INFLEXIONS. Weakening and levelling of inflexions is continuous from the earliest period of English. The strong stress falling regularly on the first or the stem syllable produced as reflex a tendency to indistinctness in the unstressed endings. The disturbing influence of foreign conquest played a secondary but not a negligible part, as may be seen from a comparison of some verbal forms in the North and the N. Midlands, where Norse influence was strongest, with those of the South, where it was inconsiderable:

		Normal OE.	Early Sth. ME.	Early Nth. and N. Midl.	Old Norse
Inf.	...	<i>drīfan</i>	<i>driuc(n)</i>	<i>driue</i>	<i>drīfa</i>
Pres. p.	...	<i>drīfende</i>	<i>driuinde</i>	<i>driuande</i>	<i>drīfandi</i>
Pp. strong	.	<i>gedrīfen</i>	<i>ȝdriue</i>	<i>driuen</i>	<i>drīfenn</i>

and although tangible evidence of French influence on the flexional system is wanting (for occasional borrowings like *gowies* *arietykes* IX 314 are mere literary curiosities), every considerable settlement of foreign speakers, especially when they come as conquerors, must shake the traditions of the language of the conquered. A third cause of uncertainty was the interaction of English dialects in different stages of development.

The practical sense of the speakers controlled and balanced these disruptive factors. There is no better field than Middle English for a study of the processes of vigorous growth: the regularizing of exceptional and inconvenient forms; the choice

of the most distinctive among a group of alternatives ; the invention of new modes of expression ; the discarding of what has become useless.

At the beginning of the fourteenth century the inflexional endings are : *-e* ; *-en* ; *-ene* (weak gen. pl.) ; *-er* (comparative) ; *-es* ; *-est* ; with *-eb*, *-ede* (*-de*, *-te*), *-ed* (*-d*, *-t*), *-ynge* (*-inde*, *-ende*, *-ande*), which are verbal only.

NOTE.—(a) Sometimes one of these inflexions may be substituted for another : e.g. when *-es* replaces *-e* as the Northern ending of the 1st sg. pres. ind. Such analogical substitutions must be distinguished from phonetic developments.

(b) In disyllabic inflexions like *-ede*, *-ynge* (*-ande*), final *-e* is lost early in the North. In polysyllables it is dropped everywhere during the century.

(c) The indistinct sound of flexional *-e-* covered by a consonant is shown by spellings with *-i-*, *-y-* : *woundis* x 51 ; *madist* xi b 214 ; *blyndip* xi b 7 ; *fulfillid* xvi 6 ; *etin* xiv b 76 ; *brokynne* xvi 195. And, especially in West Midland texts, *-us*, *-un* (*-on*) appear for *-es*, *-en* : *mannus* xi b 234 ; *foundun* xi a 47 ; *laghton* vii 119. Complete syncope sometimes occurs : *days* i 198, &c.

Otherwise all the inflexions except *-e*, *-en*, are fairly stable throughout the century.

**-en** : In the North *-en* is found chiefly in the strong pp., where it is stable. In the South (except in the strong pp.) it is better preserved, occurring rarely in the dat. sg. of adjectives, e.g. *onen* iii 4, dat. pl. of nouns, e.g. *diaknen* iii 5, and in the infinitive ; more commonly in the weak pl. of nouns, where it is stable, and in the pa. t. pl., where it alternates with *-e*. In the Midlands *-en*, alternating with *-e*, is also the characteristic ending of the pres. ind. pl. As a rule (where the reduced ending *-e* is found side by side with *-en*) *-e* is used before words beginning with a consonant, and *-en* before words beginning with a vowel or *h*, to avoid hiatus. But that the preservation of *-en* does not depend purely on phonetic considerations is proved by its regular retention in the Northern strong pp., and its regular reduction to *-e* in the corresponding Southern form.

**-e** : Wherever *-en* was reduced, it reinforced final *-e*, which

so became the meeting point of all the inflexions that were to disappear before Elizabethan times.

*-e* was the ending of several verbal forms; of the weak adjective and the adjective pl.; of the dat. sg. of nouns; and of adverbs like *faste*, *deepe*, as distinguished from the corresponding adjectives *fast*, *deep*.

That *-e* was pronounced is clear from the metres of Chaucer, Gower, and most other Southern and Midland writers of the time. For centuries the rhythm of their verse was lost because later generations had become so used to final *-e* as a mere spelling that they did not suspect that it was once syllabic.

But already in fourteenth-century manuscripts there is evidence of uncertainty. Scribes often omit the final vowel where the rhythm shows that it was syllabic in the original (see the language notes to I, II). Conversely, in *Gawayne* forms like *burne* (OE. *beorn*), *race* (ON. *rás*), *hille* (OE. *hyll*) appear in nominative and accusative, where historically there should be no ending. The explanation is that, quite apart from the workings of analogy, which now extended and now curtailed its historical functions, *-e* was everywhere weakly pronounced, and was dropped at different rates in the various dialects. In the North it hardly survives the middle of the century (IV a, x). In the N. Midlands its survival is irregular. In the South and S. Midlands it is fairly well preserved till the end of the century. But everywhere the proportion of flexionless forms was increasing. It may be assumed that, in speech as in verse, final *-e* was lost phonetically first before words beginning with a vowel or *h*.

§ 10. NOUNS: Gender, which in standard West Saxon had been to a great extent grammatical (i.e. dependent on the forms of the noun), was by the fourteenth century natural (i.e. dependent on the meaning of the noun). This change had accompanied and in some degree facilitated the transfer of nearly all nouns to the strong masculine type, which was the commonest and best defined in late OE.:

	OE.	ME.		OE.	ME.
Sg. nom. acc.	<i>cniht</i>	<i>knizt</i>	Pl. nom. acc.	<i>cnihtas</i>	<i>kniztes</i>
gen.	<i>cnihtes</i>	<i>kniztes</i>	gen.	<i>cnihta</i>	<i>kniztes</i>
dat.	<i>cnihte</i>	<i>knizte</i>	dat.	<i>cnihtum</i>	<i>kniztes</i>

In the North final *-e* of the dat. sg. was regularly dropped early in the fourteenth century, and even in the South the dat. sg. is often uninflected, probably owing to the influence of the accusative. In the plural the inflexion of the nom. acc. spreads to all cases; but in early texts, and relatively late in the South, the historical forms are occasionally found, e.g. gen. pl. *cniste* (MS. *cnistes*) xv g 30 (note), dat. pl. *diaknen* iii 5.

**Survivals:** (i) The common mutated plurals *man* : *men*, *fof* : *fet*, &c., are preserved, and in viii b a gen. pl. *menne* (OE. *manna*) occurs; *ky* pl. of *cow* forms a new double pl. *kyn*, see (iii) below; *hend* pl. of *hand* is Norse, cp. xvi 75 (note).

(ii) Some OE. neuters like *shep* 'sheep' viii b 18, *3er* 'year' ii 492, *þing* ii 218, *folk* ii 389, resist the intrusion of the masculine pl. *-es* in nominative and accusative. Pl. *hors* ii 304, xiii a 34 remains beside *horses* xiv b 73; but *deores* 'wild animals' occurs at xv b 29, where Modern English preserves *deer*.

(iii) In the South the old weak declension with pl. *-en* persists, though by the fourteenth century the predominance of the strong type is assured. The weak forms occur not only where they are historically justified, e.g. *eyzen* (OE. *ēagan*) ii 111, but also by analogy in words like *honden* (OE. pl. *honda*) ii 79, *tren* (OE. pl. *trēo*) xiii a 51, *platen* (OFr. *plate*) xv g 4. The inflexion still survives in three double plural formations: *children* viii b 70 beside *childer* (OE. pl. *cildru*); *bretheren* viii a 201 beside *brether* xvii 320 (OE. pl. *brōþor*); and *kyzn* ix 256 for *ky* (cp. (i) above). The OE. weak gen. pl. in *-ena* leaves its traces in the South, e.g. *knaune* viii b 56, xv h 4, and unhistorical *lordene* viii b 77.

(iv) The group *fader*, *moder*, *broþer*, *doghter* commonly show the historical flexionless gen. sg., e.g. *doghtyr arme* i 136; *moder wombe* xi b 29 f.; *brother hele* xii a 18; *Fadir voice* xvi 79.

(v) The historical gen. sg. of old strong feminines remains in *soule dede* (OE. *sāwle*) i 212; but *Lady day* (OE. *hlāfdigan dæg*) i 242 is a survival of the weak fem. gen. sg.

§ 11. ADJECTIVES. Separate flexional forms for each gender

are not preserved in the fourteenth century; but until its end the distinction of strong and weak declensions remains in the South and South Midlands, and is well marked in the careful verse of Chaucer and Gower. The strong is the normal form. The weak form is used after demonstratives, *the, his, &c.*, and in the vocative. As types *god* (OE. *gōd*) 'good' and *grene* (OE. *grēne*) 'green' will serve, because in OE. *grēne* had a vowel-ending in the strong nom. sg. masc., while *gōd* did not. The ME. paradigms are:

Singular.		Plural.
Strong	Weak	Strong and Weak
<i>god</i>	<i>godē</i>	<i>godē</i>
<i>grene</i>	<i>grene</i>	<i>grene</i>

Examples: Strong sg. *a gret serpent* (OE. *grēat*) XII b 72; *an unkindē man* (OE. *uncynde*) XII b 1; *a stillē water* (OE. *stille*) XII a 83. Weak sg. *The gretē gastli serpent* XII b 126; *hire oghnē hertes lif* XII a 4; *O lef liif* (where the metre indicates *leuē* for the original) II 102. Strong pl. *þer wer widē wones* II 365. Weak pl. *the smalē stones* XII a 84.

Note that strong and weak forms are identical in the plural; that even in the singular there is no formal distinction when the OE. strong masc. nom. ended in a vowel (*grēne*); that monosyllables ending in a vowel (e.g. *fre*), polysyllables, and participles, are usually invariable; and that regular dropping of final *-e* levels all distinctions, so that the North and N. Midlands early reached the relatively flexionless stage of Modern English

**Survivals.** The *Ayenbyte* shows some living use of the adjective inflexions. Otherwise the survivals are limited to set phrases, e.g. gen. sg. *nonēs cunnes* 'of no kind', *enes cunnes* 'of any kind', xv g 20, 22. That the force of the inflexion was lost is shown by the early wrong analysis *no skynnes, al skynnes, &c.*

**Definite Article.** Parallel to the simplification of the adjective, the full OE. declension *sē, sēo, þæt, &c.*, is reduced to invariable *þe*. The *Ayenbyte* alone of our specimens keeps some of the older distinctions. Elsewhere traces appear in set phrases, e.g. neut. sg. *þat, þet* in *þat on* 'the one', *þat oþer* 'the other' v 344, and, with wrong division, *þe ton* XI b 27,

*the toþer ix 4*; neut. sg. dat. *þen* (OE. *þēm*), with wrong division, in *alle nale* (for *at þen ale*) *viii a 109*.

§ 12. PRONOUNS. In a brilliant study (*Progress in Language*, London 1894) Jespersen exemplifies the economy and resources of English from the detailed history of the Pronoun. In the first and second persons fourteenth-century usage does not differ greatly from that of the Authorized Version of the Bible. But the pronoun of the third person shows a variety of developments. In the singular an objective case replaces, without practical disadvantages, the older accusative and dative: *him* (OE. *hine* and *him*), *her(e)* (OE. *hiē* and *hiere*), (*h*)*it* (OE. *hit* and *him*). The possessive *his* still serves for the neuter as well as the masculine, e.g. *þat ryuer . . . chaungeþ hys fordes* *xiii a 55 f.*; though an uninflected neuter possessive *hit* occasionally appears in the fourteenth century. In the plural, where one would expect objective *him* from the regular OE. dat. pl. *him*, clearness is gained by the choice of unambiguous *hem*, from an OE. dat. pl. by-form *heom*.

But as we see from *Orfeo*, ll. 408, 446, 185, in some dialects the nom. sg. masc. (OE. *hē*), nom. sg. fem. (OE. *hēo*), and nom. pl. (OE. *hiē*), had all become ME. *he*. The disadvantages of such ambiguity increased as the flexional system of nouns and adjectives collapsed, and a remedy was found in the adoption of new forms. For the nom. sg. fem., *s(c)he*, *s(c)ho* (mostly Northern), come into use, which are probably derived from *sxē*, *sxō*, the corresponding case of the definite article. The innovation was long resisted in the South, and *ho*, an unambiguous development of *heō*, remains late in W. Midland texts like *Pearl*.

In the nom. pl. ambiguous *he* was replaced by *bei*, the nom. pl. of the Norse definite article. This is the regular form in all except the Southern specimens *ii* (orig.), *iii*, *xiii*. And although the full series of Norse forms *bei*, *beir*, *þe(i)m* is found in Orm at the beginning of the thirteenth century, Chaucer and other Midland writers of the fourteenth century as a rule have only *bei*, with native English *her(e)*, *hem* in the oblique cases. (For details see the language note to each specimen.)

The poss. pl. *her(e)*, beside *hor(e)*, was still liable to confusion with the obj. sg. fem. *her(e)*, cp. *ii 92*. Consequently this was



the next point to be gained by the Norse forms, e.g. in VII 181. In the Northern texts x, xvi, xvii, all from late MSS., the Norse forms *þai*, *þa(i)r*, *þa(i)me* are fully established; but (*h*)*em*, which was throughout unambiguous, survived into modern dialects in the South and Midlands.

Note the reduced nominative form *a* 'he', 'they' in XIII; and the objective *his(e)* 'her', 'them' in III, which has not been satisfactorily explained.

**Relative:** The general ME. relative is *þat*, representing all genders and cases (note to xv i 4). Sometimes definition is gained by adding the personal pronoun: *þat . . . he (sche)* = 'who'; *þat . . . it* = 'which'; *þat . . . his* = 'whose'; *þat . . . him* = 'whom', &c.; e.g. *a well, þat in the day it is so cold* IX 5-6, cp. v 127 (note); *oon That with a spere was thirled his brest-boon* 'one whose breast-bone was pierced with a spear', *Knight's Tale* 1851. For the omission of *þat* see note to XIII a 36.

In later texts, *which*, properly an interrogative, appears commonly as a relative, both with personal and impersonal antecedents, e.g. *Alceone . . . which . . . him loveth* XII a 3 ff.; *þat steede . . . fro whilke þe feende fell* XVI 13 f. Under the influence of French *lequel*, &c., *which* is often compounded with the article *þe*, e.g. *a gret serpent . . . the which Bardus anon up drouh* XII b 72 f.; *no thing of newe, in the whiche the hereres myghten hauen . . . solace* IX 275 f. Further compounding with *þat* is not uncommon, e.g. *the queen of Amazoine, the whiche þat maketh hem to ben kept in cloos* IX 190 f.

More restricted is the relative use of *whos*, *whom*, which are originally interrogatives, though both are found very early in ME. as personal relatives. Examples of the objective after prepositions are: *my Lady, of quom . . .* VI 93; *God, fro whom . . .* IX 328 f.; *my Sone . . . in whome* XVI 81 f. The possessive occurs in *Seynt Magne . . . yn whos wurschyp* I 90 f.; *I am . . . the same, whos good* XII b 78 f.; and, compounded with the article, in *Morpheus, the whos nature* XII a 113. The nominative *who* retains its interrogative meaning, e.g. *But who ben more heretikis?* XI b 77 f.; or is used as an indefinite, e.g. *a tasse of grene stickes . . . to selle, who that wolde hem beie* XII b 22 ff.; but it is never used as a relative; and probably *what* in XVI 174 is better taken as in apposition to *myghtis* than as a true relative.

§ 13. VERB. Syntactically the most interesting point in the history of the ME. verb is the development of the compound tenses with *have*, *be*, *will*, *shall*, *may*, *might*, *mun*, *can*, *gan*. But the flexional forms of the simple tenses are most subject to local variation, and, being relatively common, afford good evidence of dialect. Throughout the period, despite the crossings and confusions that are to be expected in a time of uncertainty and experiment, the distinction between strong and weak verbs is maintained; and it will be convenient to deal first with the inflexions common to both classes, and then to notice the forms peculiar to one or the other.

(i) **The Infinitive** had already in Northumbrian OE. lost final *-n*: *drifa* 'to drive'. Hence in ME. of the North and N. Midlands the ending is *-e*, which becomes silent at varying rates during the fourteenth century; e.g. *dryue* I 171, *to luf* IV a 17. In the South and S. Midlands the common ending is *-e*, e.g. *telle* III 3, which usually remains syllabic to the end of the century; but *-(e)n* is also found, especially in verse to make a rime or to avoid hiatus: e.g. *sein* (: *a3ein*) XII a 27; *to parte and 3iven half his good* XII b 201.

(ii) **The Present Participle** (OE. *drifende*) in the North and N. Midlands ends in *-and(e)*, though *-yng(e)*, *-ing(e)* is beginning to appear in v, vii, xvi, xvii. In S. Midlands the historical ending *-ende* still prevails in Gower; but Chaucer has more commonly *-yng(e)*; and in ix, xi, both late texts, only *-yng(e)* appears. In the South *-yng(e)* is established as early as the beginning of the century, e.g. in II.

N.B. Carefully distinguish the verbal noun which always ends in *-yng(e)*. Early confusion resulted in the transference of this ending to the participle.

(iii) **Present Indicative.**

(a) Singular: OE. 1 *drife*, 2 *drif(e)s(f)*, 3 *drif(e)ð* (late Northumbrian *drifes*).

In ME. *-e*, *-est*, *-eþ* are still the regular endings for the South and most of the Midlands. Shortened forms like *fint* = *findeþ* II 239; *stant* = *standeþ* XII a 74 are commonest in the South, where in OE. they were a feature of West Saxon and Kentish as distinguished from Anglian. Distinct are the Northern and N. Midland *mas(e)* 'makes', *tas* 'takes', with contracted

infinitives *ma*, *ta*; and *bus* 'behooves', which Chaucer uses in his imitation of Northern English, *Reeves Tale* 172.

In N. Midlands the modern 3rd sg. *-(e)s* is common (v, vi, but not in earlier 1). Farther North it is invariable (iv, x, xvi, xvii). The distribution of *-es* as the ending of the 2nd sg. is the same, and it is extended even to the 1st person.

(b) Plural: OE. *drīfað* (late Northumbrian *drīfas*).

Only Southern ME. retains the OE. inflexion as *-eþ* (ii, iii, xiii). The Midland ending, whence the modern form derives, is *-e(n)*; though in the N. Midlands *-es* occasionally appears. Northern has regularly *-es*, unless the personal pronoun immediately precedes, when the ending is *-e*, as in the Midlands, e.g. *þei make* xvi 103.

N.B. In applying this test, care must be taken to exclude inversions, which are subject to special rules; to distinguish the subjunctive (e.g. *falle* xiii a 52, *drawe* xiii b 6) from the indicative; and, generally, to choose examples that are syntactically free from doubt, because concord of number is not always logical in ME.

#### SUMMARY.

	OE.	ME.			
		South	S. Midl.	N. Midl.	North
1. sg. <i>drīf-e</i>		<i>-e</i>	<i>-e</i>	<i>-(e)</i>	<i>(e)</i> or <i>(e)s</i>
2. <i>drīf-es(t)</i>		<i>-est</i>	<i>-est</i>	<i>-es(t)</i>	<i>-es</i>
3. <i>drīf-eð</i> (Nth. <i>-es</i> )	<i>-eþ</i>	<i>-eþ</i>	<i>-eþ</i>	<i>-eþ</i> or <i>-es</i>	<i>-es</i>
pl. <i>drīf-að</i> (Nth. <i>-as</i> )	<i>-eþ</i>		<i>-e(n)</i>	<i>-e(n)</i> or <i>-es</i>	<i>-es</i> or <i>-(e)</i>

(iv) **The Imperative Plural** might be expected to agree with the pres. ind. pl. In fact it has the ending *-eþ* not merely in the South, but in most of the Midlands, e.g. i, viii, Gower and Chaucer. Northern and NW. Midland (v, vi, xiv b, xvi) have commonly *-es*. But Chaucer, Gower, and most late ME. texts have, beside the full inflexion, an uninflected form, e.g. *undo* xvi 182.

#### (v) Past Tense.

(a) Strong: The historical distinctions of stem-vowel were often obscured in ME. by the rise of new analogical forms, the variety of which can best be judged from the detailed evidence presented in the *New English Dictionary* under each verb. But, for the common verbs or classes, the South

and S. Midlands preserved fairly well the OE. vowel distinction of past tense singular and plural; while North and N. Midlands usually preferred the form proper to the singular for both singular and plural, e.g. *þey bygan* I 72; *þey ne blan* I 73; *thai slang* x 53, where OE. has sg. *gan* : *gunnon*; *blan* : *blunnon*; ON. *slong* : *slungu*.

(b) **Weak**: In the South and Midlands the weak pa. t. 2nd sg. usually ends in *-est* (N. Midland also *-es*): *hadest* II 573; *cursedest* I 130; *kyssedes*, *raztez* v 283. In the North, and sometimes in N. Midland, it ends in *-(e)*: *þou hadde* xvi 219. The full ending of the pa. t. pl. is fairly common in the South, S. Midlands, and NW. Midlands: *wenten* II 185, *hedden* III 42, *maden* XII b 196, *sayden* vi 174.

(vi) **Past Participle (Strong)**: OE. *(ge)drifen*.

In the North and N. Midlands the ending *-en* is usually preserved, but the prefix *y-* is dropped. In the South the type is *y-driue*, with prefix and without final *n*. S. Midland fluctuates—for example, Gower rarely, Chaucer commonly, uses the prefix *y-*.

(vii) **Weak Verbs with -i- suffix**: In OE. weak verbs of Class II formed the infinitive in *-ian*, e.g. *acsian*, *lufian*, and the *i* appeared also in the pres. ind. and imper. pl. *acsiad̃* and pres. p. *acsiende*. In ME. a certain number of French verbs with an *-i-* suffix reinforced this class. In the South and W. Midlands the *-i-* of the suffix is often preserved, e.g. *aski* II 467, *louy* v 27, and is sometimes extended to forms in which it has no historical justification, e.g. pp. *spuryed* v 25. In the North and the E. Midlands the forms without *i* are generalized.





## INDEX OF NAMES.

For the personifications in VIII, generic names (as *Bayarde*),  
and names of peoples (as *Brytouns*), see also the Glossary.

- Abell*, Abel, XVI 306.  
*Abirdene*, Aberdeen, XIV a 1.  
*Abiron*, Abiram, XVI 309.  
*Adam(e)*, Adam, V 348, XIV *introd.*, XVI 37, 45, &c., XVII 3c.  
*Adrian*, XII b 2 (note), 34, 56, 68, 78, 208; *Adrianes*, gen. 219.  
*Azone*, Azo, I 46, 105, 110, 122.  
*Ajax*; *Oelius Ajax*, Oileus Ajax, VII 155 (see 178 note).  
*Alceone*, Halcyone, XII a 3, 132;  
*Alceoun*, XII a 195, 197 (note).  
*Alsandre*, King Alexander the Great, IX 166, 223, 232.  
*Alysoun*, Alison, XV c 12, 40.  
*Amazone*, Amazonia, land of the Amazons, IX 190, 206.  
*Ambrose*, St. Ambrose, XI b 126.  
*Anaball*, a dependent of Satan, XVI 113 (note).  
*Antecrist*, Antichrist, IX 210, 221;  
*Anticristis*, gen. XI b 55.  
*Arabye*, Arabia, IX 38; *Fenyx of Arraby*, VI 70 (note).  
*Archedefell*, (corrupt. of) Ahithophel (Ahitophel), XVI 308.  
*Arestotill*, Aristotle, IV b 18; *Arys-totill*, IV b 33.  
*Armonye*, Armenia, XVII 466.  
*Arpur*, King Arthur, V 229; *Ar-purez*, gen. V 34, 261; *kyngezhous Arthor*, V 207 (note).  
*Astrolte*, Ashtoreth (Astarte), XVI 113.  
*Atthenes*, Athens, VII 67.  
*Aucerre*, Auxerre, \*III 3 (MS. Aucerne).  
*Aue*, I 48, 80, 106, 126, 138, 209, 216.  
*Austyn*, St. Augustine of Hippo, XI b 87, 94, 142; *Saynt Austyne*, IV b 70.  
*Austin*; *Sauynt Austin*, St. Augustine of Canterbury, III *introd.*; *Saynt Austines*, St. Augustine's (monastery), III *introd.*  
*Bacharie*, -ye, Bactria, IX 137, 236.  
*Banochburn*, Bannockburn, XIV a heading; *þe Bannokburn*, XIV a 2  
*Baptist*, St. John the Baptist, XI b 28; *Ion Baptist*, XI b 24, 34; *Iohan(nes) Baptista*, XVI 73; *Baptista* XVI 361.  
*Barus*, XII b 20, 50, 63, 73, 80, 87, 94, 134, 155, 194; see XII b 2 note.  
*Barsabe*, Bathsheba, V 351.  
*Bathe*, Bath, XIII a 51.  
*Bele-Berit*, Baal-Berith, XVI 115.  
*Belliall*, Belial, XVI 139; *Belial* XVI 115.  
*Belsabub*, Beelzebub, XVI 97, 109, 137, 169, 198, 205, 345.  
*Berwik*, Berwick, XIV a 1, 35.  
*Betannye*, Bethania, XVI 162.  
*Bethleem*, Bethlehem, IX 25.  
*Beuo*, (in Latin) I 59; *Beu(u)ne*, I 55 (note); *Beuolyns*, diminutive for rime, I 62.  
*Boece*, Boëtius, Introduction xxi.  
*Boniface*, Saint, St. Boniface of Ferentia, III 38 (note).  
*Brytayne*, Little Britain, Brittany, II 13; *Bretaine*, II 597.

# INDEX OF NAMES

*Brytayne*, (Great) Britain, XIII a 1, 6.

*Brig*, Bruges, XIV a 22 (note); see *Burghes*.

*Brunne wake*, Bourn (in Kesteven, Lincs.), I *introd.* *Wake* is the name of the family, part of whose estates lay about Bourn.

*Brunyng*, Bruno, afterwards St. Leo IX, I 246 (note).

*Bukcestre*, *Seynt*, sister of St. Magnus, I 35 (note).

*Burghes*, Bruges, XIV a 25; see *Brig*.

*Cayme*, Cain, XVI 306.

*Calabre*, Calabria; see glossary.

*Calais*, XIV b heading, 59, 91, 95; *Calays*, XIV b 1 (as adj.), 42, 53.

*Caldithe*, † Korea, the land where the lamb-gourd grows, IX 138.

*Cam(e)*, Ham, XVII 142, 528.

*Canterheri*, Canterbury, III *introd.*

*Casppe*, Caspia, lands about the Caspian Sea, IX 161, 216; See *of Casppe*, Caspian Sea, IX 175, 178.

*Cassandra*, VII 179.

*Cathaye*, Cathay, China, IX 136 (note).

*Caton*, Dionysius Cato, traditional name of the author of *Disticha de moribus ad filium*; gen. *Catones*, VIII a 309.

*Cecile*, *Seynt*, St. Cecilia, Introduction xxi.

*Ceix*, Celix, XII a 2.

*Chaucer*, XII *introd.*

*Cherdhol*, † Cheddar, XIII a 14 (note).

*Chestre*, Chester, XIII a 54.

*Chymerie*, Cimmeria, land of fabulous Cimmeri who dwelt in perpetual darkness (form perhaps due to assoc. with OFr. *chimere*, *chimera*), XII a 61.

*Cipre*, *Ile of*, Cyprus, IX 40.

*Clyron*, alleged name of 'strait passage' leading out of land of the enclosed Jews, IX 205.

*Colbek*, Kölbick (in Anhalt, Saxony), I 32 (note).

*Colchestre*, Colchester, XIV d 2.

*Cornehulle*, Cornhill, VIII b 1 (note).

*Cornelius*, Cornelius Nepos, VII 70 (note).

*Cornwal*, *Iohan*, a 'Master of Grammar', XIII b 28.

*Crab*, *lohne*, a Flemish engineer, x 110; *Crabbis*, gen. \*x 15 (Mss Craggis, Crabys).

*Crist(e)*, Christ, IV a 1, 39, &c.;

*Cryst(e)*, I 185, IV a 16, &c.;

*Kryst(e)*, V 52, VI 98, 209;

*Cristes*, gen. VIII b 63; *Cristis*,

XI b 7, 38, &c.;

*Crystes*, VI 23,

VIII a 214; *Crystys*, I 83; *bi*

*Crist*, &c., VIII a 22, 24, 280,

b 93.

*Cusis*, alleged name of Ethiopia, IX 17; see *Saba*, and cf. Cush,

Genesis x. 6-8.

*Dalyda*, Delilah, V 350.

*Dares*, Dares Phrygius, reputed author of the *De Excidio Troiae*, VII 60, 64.

*Datan*, Dathan, XVI 309 (note).

*David*, David, XVI 127, 187, 369, 373; *Dauyth*, V 350.

*Dawe*, Daw ('s typical peasant's name), VIII a 325.

*Dedalion*, Dædalion, XII a 7.

*Dee*, *pe ryuer*, the R. Dee, XIII a 54, 62.

*Dites*, Dictys Cretensis, reputed author of the *De Bello Troiano*, VII 61; *Dytes*, VII 60.

*Dondé*, Dundee, XIV a 24.

*Edyght*, *Seynt*, St. Edith of Wilton, I 240 (note), 245.

*Edward*, King Edward the Confessor, I 27.

*Edward*, King Edward III. XIV b heading, 36, 56; *King Edward*, XIV a 4; *E. pe bridde*, XIV c 58; *Sir Edward*, XIV a 9, 16, b 4, 44, 60, 62; *pe third Edwardes tyme*, I *introd.*

*Edward*, *Prince*, the Black Prince, XIV c 107; see also 59, 62.

*Emanuel*, XV i 17.

*Emlak* (for \**Enilak*), Havilah IX 27 (note).



# INDEX OF NAMES

- Englund*, England, XI a 29, 33;  
*Engelond*, XIII a 55, 58, b 20,  
 33, 46, 48, 54, 63; *Ingländ*,  
 I 26, XIV b 84; *Inglond*, II 26.  
*Erceldoun*, Thomas of Erceldoun,  
 Introduction xxxiii.  
*Ethiope*, Ethiopia, IX 1, 12, 16,  
 21, 23 (note), 26.  
*Eua*, Eve. XVI 45; *Eue*, XIV  
*introd.*, XVI 357, XVII 30.  
  
*Felyp, Dane*, Dom Philip de  
 Burton, prior of Sempringham  
 (? 1303-1332), I *introd.*  
*Fraunce*, France, XIII b 48, XIV c  
 44, 46, 54; *Fraunse*, XI a 25;  
*France*, XIV b 32, 70.  
  
*Gawayn*, V 5, 58, 81, 88, 137, 146,  
 171, 182, 192, 197, 202, 212,  
 224, 231, 297. *Sir Gawayn(e)*,  
 V 50, 167, 328; *Wowayn*, V  
 121 (note).  
*Genesis*, (personification of) the  
 Book of Genesis, VIII a 228.  
*Geretrude, Sent*, St. Gertrude,  
 XV i 7 (note).  
*Gerlew*, Gerlevus, I 40, 56; see  
*Gryslý*.  
*German, Saint*, St. Germanus of  
 Auxerre, III 3 (note); *Germanyn*,  
 III 6.  
*Gydo*, Guido de Columna, com-  
 piler of the *Historia Troiana*,  
 VII 54, 76.  
*Gill*, see glossary.  
*Goth and Magot*, Gog and Magog,  
 IX 163 4 (note).  
*Gregori, Saint* St. Gregory the  
 Great (Pope 590-604), III 38  
 (note) *Gregory* XI b 20 (note),  
 94; *Seynt Gregoryes*, gen. XI b  
 52.  
*Grese*, Greece, VII 90; *Grice*, VII  
 40.  
*Gryngolet*, Gawayn's horse, V 92.  
*Gryslý*, error for *Gerlew*, I 65  
 (note).  
  
*York*, York, XI a 34, XIII b 58,  
 XIV d 1.  
  
*Hector*, \*v 34 (MS. Hestor).  
*Hele*, Elias, XVI 87.  
*Henri, Duk Henry*, first Duke of  
 Lancaster, XIV c 65.  
*Henry, þe Emperoure*, Henry II  
 of Germany, I 172 (note), 218.  
*Herodis, Dame*. Eurydice, II 52;  
*Dam(e) Heurodis*, II 63, 322,  
 406, 594.  
*Hobbe*, XIV d 6, see notes and  
 glossary.  
*Homer*, VII 38.  
  
*Iacke, lak*, see glossary.  
*Iame, Seynt*, St. James; *bi Seynt*  
*Iame*, VIII a 57.  
*Iaphet*, Japheth, XVII 142, 528.  
*Ierom. Seynt*, St. Jerome, XI a 17.  
*Ieromye*, Jeremiah, XI b 20.  
*Iesu*, IV a 74, &c., VI 93, XIV b 30,  
 XV f 1, 7, XVI 349; *Iesus*, XV g  
 19, XVI 1, 121, &c.; *Iesu*  
*(rist(e))*, &c., IV b 30, VI 98,  
 XI a 23, &c.; *Iesus Crist*, XI b  
 77.  
*Ingland*, &c., see *Englund*.  
*Innocent, Pope*, Innocent III,  
 author of *De Miseria Con-*  
*ditionis Humane*, Introduction  
 xxi.  
*Iob*. Job, XVI 285.  
*Iohn(e), Ion*, &c., see the accom-  
 panying names.  
*Iohn: Sir Iohn (of France)*, son  
 of Philip VI and afterwards  
 King John of France, XIV b 32,  
 70, 92.  
*Iohnes: Saint Iohnes toune*,  
 Perth, XIV a 7 (note).  
*Iohn Schep*, 'John Pastor', pseu-  
 donym of John Ball, XIV d 1.  
*Ion*, St. John the Evangelist, VI  
 23, XV 5; *Iones Gospel*, XI b  
 269.  
*Ion þe Amoner*. St. John the Al-  
 mouer, III 16 (note).  
*Jordanne, flume*, the R. Jordan,  
 XVI 76.  
*Irla(u)nde*, Ireland, XV d 1, 3, 7.  
*Ithecus*. Icelos (according to Ovid),  
 XII a 118 (note).  
*Judas*, Judas Iscariot, XV g 2, 3,  
 8, 12, 14, 27, XVI 147, 165, 308.

## INDEX OF NAMES

*Judas*, St. Jude, Judas brother of James, III *introd.*

*Juno*, the goddess Juno, XII *a* 40, 44, 102; *King Juno*, as ancestor of Orpheo's mother, II 30 (note).

*Jursel'm*, Jerusalem, XV *g* 3, 17.

*Justinian*, Justinian, XII *b* 191 (note).

*Kasi, Sent*, XV *i* 11 (note).

*Kendale*, Thomas of Kendal, Introduction xxxiii.

*Kent*, III *introd.*

*Kesteuene*, Kesteven, southern division of Lincs, I *introd.*

*Kytte*, VIII *b* 2 (note).

*Lazar* Lazarus, XVI 162, 171.

*Leoun, þe pope*. St. Leo IX, I 249.

*Lethes, the riwere*. the River Lethe (Oblivion). XII *a* 85. Properly gen. sg. (Ovid, *Metamorphoses*, Bk xi 603, rivus aquae Lethes).

*Londen(e)*, London, VIII *b* 46; *London*, VIII *b* 4.

*Lucifer*, XVII 16; as dependent of Satan XVI 119, 197.

*Luke*. St. Luke, XV *i* 5.

*Lukes*, Lucca, VIII *a* 94 (note).

*Macedoyne*, Macedonia. IX 41.

*Magdaleyne*, St. Mary Magdalen, XI *b* 56; *Magdeleyne*, XI *b* 59, 68; *Maudeleyne*, Introduction xxi.

*Magne, Seynt*. St. Magnus, I 34 (note), 90; *Seynt Magnes*, gen. I 37.

*Maguth*, see *Goth*.

*Mahounde*, Mahomet; as a dependent of Satan, XVI 343.

*Malton*, Malton, Yorks., site of a house of the Gilbertine order, I *introd.*

*Marie*, Mary, XVI 231, 250; *Mary(e)*, VI 65, XV *i* 3; gen. VI 23 (note), also in *Seynte Marie prest*, XIV *d* 1 (note); *Mary-æt*. X 163, 177. *Mary* (as oath), V 72, XVII 209, 220, 226.

*Mark*, St. Mark, XV *i* 5.

*Mathew*, St. Matthew (in his

Gospel), VI 137 (note), XV *i* 5; *Mathew Gospel*, XI *a* 35; *Mathew with mannes face*, VIII *a* 234 (note).

*Maundeuyll, Iohn*, IX 307 (see IX *introd.*).

*Mede, Media*, land of the Medes, IX 30.

*Melane*, Milan, III 4.

*Merswynde*, I 42, 52; *Merswyne*, I 62 (see I 55 note); *Merswyn-dam* (accus., in Latin), I 60.

*Michel*. Michael; *Dan Michelis* (gen.) of *Northgate*, III *introd.*

*Mighill*, St. Michael the Archangel, XVI 339, 389. Forms with *ȝ*, *gh*, &c., appear only to be used of the archangel.

*Mynerua*, the goddess Minerva (or Athene), \*VII 177 (MS *Mynera*); taken as a male divinity, XIII *a* 3.

*Moses*, Moses, XVI 85, 86.

*Moretane*, Mauretania (modern Morocco and part of Algeria), IX 3.

*Morpheus*, son of the God of Sleep, XII *a* 113, 131.

*Neptalym*, Naphtali, XVI 51 (see 49 note).

*Nicholl Nedy*, 'Nicholas Nedy', allit. nickname used mockingly, XVII 105.

*Noe*, Noah, XVII 65, 106, 110, 118, &c.; *Noy*, XVII 532.

*Oelius*, see *Ajax*.

*Origenes*, Origen, to whom was falsely attributed a *De Maria Magdalena*, Introduction xxi.

*Orpheue, Sir*, Orpheus, II 24; (*Sir*) *Orfeo*, II 25, 97, 120, 182, 314, 379, 518, 524, 543, 558, 603; as name of a lay, 601; *King Orfeo*, II 175, 553, 576, 503; *Orpheo*, II 33, 42.

*Ouyde*, Ovid, VII 48.

*Panthasas*, Phantasos (according to Ovid), XII *a* 123.

*Pectoun*, the Peak of Derbyshire, XIII *a* 7 (note).

# INDEX OF NAMES

*Pemerych, Richard*, XIII b 29, 30.  
*Pentexoire, Yle of*, IX 261 (note).

*Peres, Piers* (Peter), VIII a 106, 180, 191, &c.; *Pieres*, VIII a 35, 38, 111, &c.; *Piers*, VIII a 9, 225; *Pieres*, gen. VIII a 72; *Pieres þe plowman*, VIII a 147, 152; *Peres plouzman*, as type of honest labourer, XIV d 5 (see 14 note).

*Perkyn*, diminutive of prec. (applied to same character), VIII a 25, 59, 99, 102, 105; *Perkyn þe plouman*, VIII a 3.

*Persie*, Persia, IX 181.

*Peter*, St Peter, XI b 285, XV g 29, 32; *bi Seynt Peter of Rome*, VIII a 3; *Peter I*, XVII 367.

*Philip, Sir*, Philip (de Valois) VI of France, XIV b 32 (note), 47, 69, 92; *Philip þe Valas*, XIV b 51.

*Pilatus*, Pilate, XV g 18, 30.

*Pimbilwre*, Lake Bala in Wales, XIII a 63.

*Pluto, King*, as ancestor of Orpheo's father, II 29 (note).

*Poul*, St. Paul, XI b 80, 82; *Saynt Poule*, VI 97; *bi Seynt Poule*, VIII a 25, 270.

*Prestre Iohn*, Prester John, fabled Christian Emperor of the far East, IX 260 (note).

*Richard, þe secunde Kyng*, King Richard II, XIII b 32; *Kyng Richard*, XIV e 2.

*Robert, Robert*, surnamed *Mann- yng, of Brunne*, I introd (q.v.).  
*Robert*; *Danz Robert of Malton*, I introd.

*Robert*, priest of *Colbek*, I 45; *Syre Robert*, I 201.

*Robert Renne-about*, 'Robert the Vagabond', as type of itinerant preacher, VIII a 142 (note).

*Rome*, I 172, 232, 250, III 4, VIII a 3, IX 285, XII b 3, 84, 189.

*Saba*, a city of Ethiopia, IX 23; cf. *Cusis*, and Psalm lxxii. 10; Isaiah lx. 6.

*Salamon, Solomon*, v 349, XVI 281; *Salomon*, XI b 91 (note).

*Salesbury, Salisbury*, XIII a 10; *Salisbury* XI b 2, 183, *Salisbury vss(e)*, XI b 189, 196, 228, 308.

*Samson*, v 349.

*Satan*, XVI 117, 199; *Sattan*, XVI 125, 133, 145, &c.; *Sir Sattan*, XVI 169; *Sathanas*, gen. XI b 311.

*Salurne, Saturn*, VIII a 321 (note).

*Sem, Shem*, XVII 142, 528; see 320 note.

*Symeon, Simeon*, XVI 60, 61.

*Symon*, St. Simon (Zelotes), III introd.

*Symondes sone*, son of Simon Magus, practiser of simony, VIII b 83.

*Sympryngham(e)*, Sempringham, Lincs, I introd.

*Sythye, Scythia*, IX 166.

*Sixille, Sixhull*, Lincs., I introd.

*Stafford*, XVII 200 (note); see glossary, s.v. *Blew*.

*Steward, Schir Valler the gude*, Walter the Steward of Scotland, X 36 (note); *Schir Valler Steward*, X 170.

*Stonhenge*, Stonehenge, XIII a 9.

*Striflin*, Stirling, XIV a 13.

*Telamon, Telamon* (properly Telamonius Ajax), VII 178 (note); *Kyng Telamon*, VII 150.

*Teodryght*, Theodric, I 241.

*Tolous, Toulouse* (for rime's sake substituted for Toul), I 246 (note).

*Traciens* (Thracians), Thrace: identified with Winchester, II 47-50.

*Trocinie*, 'Trachinia tellus', the land about the city of Trachis, XII a 2.

*Troy*, VII 27, 63.

*Valas, Valois*; see *Philip*.  
*Valler*, see *Steward*.

## INDEX OF NAMES

*Vber*, alleged local name of the mountains of Caspia, IX 162.

*Viene*. *Sir John de*, *Jean de Vienne*, XIV b 82 (note).

*Virgille*, Vergil, VII 49.

*Wake*, see *Brunne*.

*Wales*, XIII a 58, b 7.

*Wat Wynk*, allit. nickname used mockingly, XVII 382. *Wat* is an abbreviation of *Walter*.

*Wybessyne*, I 42, 52.

*Williem*, William; a typical man's name, XI b 177.

*Wyndburney*, Wimborne (in Dorset), XIII a 50.

*Winchester*, II 49, 478; *Wynchestre*. XIII a 41.

*Wowayn*, see *Gawayn*.

*Ynde*. India. vaguely applied to central, southern, and eastern Asia, IX 26, 27, 43, 49, 50, 97, 157 (note), 260 (note): *high Ynde*, IX 27. 137: *Ynde þe lesse*, IX 29; (*Ynde*) *þe more*, IX 28

*Yris*, Iris, messenger of Juno, XII a 46, 51, 98.

*Ysaas*, Isaiah, XVI 50; *Isaiah*, \*XVI 49 (MS. Isaac).

*Zabulon*, Zebulun, XVI 52 (see 49 note).

